

Book 1

Prologue

In the beginning, there were only the Gods. Aeons untold passed as they drifted aimlessly through the Void, until they grew bored with this state of affairs. In their infinite wisdom they brought into existence Creation, but with Creation came discord. The Gods disagreed on the nature of things: some believed their children should be guided to greater things, while others believed that they must rule over the creatures they had made.

So, we are told, were born Good and Evil.

Ages passed in fruitless argument between them until finally a wager was agreed on: it would be the mortals that settled the matter, for strife between the gods would only result in the destruction of all. We know this wager as Fate, and thus Creation came to know war. Through the passing of the years grooves appeared in the workings of Fate, patterns repeated until they came into existence easier than not, and those grooves came to be called Roles. The Gods gifted these Roles with Names, and with those came power. We are all born free, but for every man and woman comes a time where a Choice must be made.

It is, we are told, the only choice that ever really matters."

– First page of the Book of All Things

The sun was setting on a field of corpses.

Black passed by a group of orcs building a pyre, nodding absently when they stopped piling up logs to salute – green eyes swept over the bloodied plains, taking in the devastation the Legions of Terror had wrought. Camp fires were already burning in the distance, sprawled across the hills, and by the sound of it the officers had already distributed the night's ale rations. He would join them in time, but for a little longer he felt the need to stay here. To stand in the middle of what a decade of planning had brought forth. Callow's standing army had been annihilated today, over two thirds of their number slaughtered before they broke ranks. The Wizard of the West had fled, his power broken. Good King Edward's head had been popped off like a bottlecap by an ogre and the Shining Prince had been mobbed by a company of goblins until one drew a red smile across his throat. The Kingdom of Callow's strength had been crushed in the span of an afternoon, and Black would see to it that it never recovered.

"It's getting dark out, Black," the voice came from behind. "You should return to camp."

It never ceased to amuse him how a woman the size of Captain could be so eerily quiet. Even decked out in full plate, the olive-skinned woman had been noiseless in her approach. If not for the other senses that his Role afforded him, he would never have sensed her closing in. Turning to have a look at his right hand, Black raised an eyebrow when he was presented with the sight of Scribe standing next to the woman in question. Unusual of her to wander onto a battlefield, even one where the fighting was long over.

"Soon," he agreed. "Scribe, you have a report?"

The plain-faced woman fished out a scroll from the bandolier hanging across her shoulder and handed it to him without a word. Breaking the seal absently, Black unfurled the parchment and scanned the lines. A moment passed until the barest hint of a smile quirked his lips.

"That should keep the Procer occupied for the time being," he murmured. "By the time the fighting dies down we'll have the border secure."

Handing back the scroll to Scribe, he returned his attention to the battlefield. The companies assigned to the thankless work of burning the bodies would have to work through the night, at this rate. He'd have to see about arranging a rotation when he returned to camp, if sufficiently sober soldiers could be produced. A tall silhouette striding forward purposefully caught his attention as the dark-skinned man it belonged to deftly sidestepped a pair of orcs carrying a log twice the size of a grown man.

"You could have told me we were having an after-battle get together," Warlock teased as soon as he was close enough to be heard. "I'd have brought a few bottles, though admittedly the scenery's a little morbid for my tastes."

Black rolled his eyes, though he caught Captain discreetly suppressing a smile. Scribe eyed Warlock with the same mild bemusement as always, as if she couldn't believe the charmingly smiling man standing in front of them had been the one to call down a rain of hellfire on the enemy barely an hour earlier. Not an unusual reaction: sorcerers with that kind of power were rarely so jovial.

"Happenstance," he replied. "We'll be heading back to camp soon enough."

Warlock cast a look around, looking for the fifth member of their little band and coming up empty.

"Ranger's already gone?" he asked.

"As soon as the battle was done," Captain informed him.

The dark-skinned man grimaced.

"I didn't think she would actually..." he said, trailing off after a sideways look at Black's face.

"What's done is done," the Black Knight cut through, and that was the end of that.

The four stood in silence for a long moment, watching the night slowly crawl over the fields of Streges.

"Ten years," Black finally said.

"Six, for the earliest ones," Scribe disagreed quietly.

With a last look at the battlefield, the Black Knight turned away without a word and started for camp. Warlock slung a friendly arm over Captain's shoulder, murmuring something that drew a smile from the much larger woman as Scribe methodically adjusted her bandolier before following. The Dread Empire of Praes may have won the war, but the clock was already ticking. The Legions of Terrors had made a lot of angry orphans through the afternoon's bloody work, and in time that would mean one thing –

Heroes.

Unmaker

Possible typos:

In the beginning, there was only the Gods.
In the beginning, there were only the Gods.
(Gods were, not Gods was)

Aeons
Eons
(probably written as intended)

really matters."
(very hard to see, but the closing quote is in opening quote style)

Reactions:

“some believed they must rule over the creatures they had made, while the others believed their children should be guided to greater things. So, we are told, were born Good and Evil.”
The order of those two statements is odd – is it Good for gods to rule over the creatures they had made?

George

I think Good and Evil are the paths the gods set man upon in order to get what they wanted, rather than actually applying their ethics to the gods in question. That is, the gods who champion Good aren't necessarily Good – certainly different from many settings and classical mythologies.

Race

How the fuck do you have such good eyes? I was just going to comment that i liked the hook and plan to continue the series, but you are so adept at editing that you should get paid. I mean, did anyone else notice reverse quotes? Wtf. Supernatural powers or some shit.

NerfContessa

Starting reread Nr one.

9nce I reach the end I'll have at least 15 new chapters.

「」

Great correction, except for the “aeon”. It's actually how you spell it. Both spellings (aeon and eon) are right.

Maidas

Bro, your eyes are godly

Todd

I'm really enjoying the story thus far (though it now seems that I'll be cursed to read every other chapter without stopping now)



Handsome Reading

Reading in binges? Seek help Todd. Words are the devil.

[euodiachloris](#)

I kinda of like that. Her Name (with a little help from Black) was basically lecturing along the lines of, “Anti-Heroes are not Anti-Villains, no matter how dark they go: quit trying for ‘Hero’. You can, perhaps, choose your level of Anti-, but we definitely need the ‘Villain’ bit to get anything done.” 😊

Ethan Smith

I like the quote things at the top of the pages...

stevenneiman

"The Legions of Terror[s] had made a lot of angry orphans"
So far I love the story. Interested in seeing where it goes from here.

[ensj](#)

As a person who enjoys reading dark fantasy, I'm glad that I have found this. Thank you for writing this. Thank you so very much. Also, I can only assume that this rhyme
"Ranger's already gone?"
"As soon as the battle was done,"
could only be an intentional piece of work— please confirm if I'm right 😊

[erraticerrata](#)

Coincidence, actually.

[Thomas H. Johnson III](#)

How do you contact erraticerrata??

[erraticerrata](#)

Number of people asking that question has been growing, so I've added my email address to the home page. Under the update frequency.

Race

Holy shit. God speaks to some of us.

someguy

that doesn't rhyme

[serpentrose](#)

That depends on your accent.

Cpt. Obvious

Think I re-read that at least five times before I found the rhythm needed for it to rhyme.

[bastardjas](#)

When did you quietly change that second paragraph? It's a good change, as far as I can tell. The book of a Good church wouldn't

encourage that association between ruling and Good, and encouragement and Evil. But it makes me wonder if that change is meant to encourage our misconceptions, or to represent theirs?

Evil has been said to encourage ambition.
Good has been shown to have strict rules about behavior.

Evil encourages conquest.
Good raises heroes.

It makes one wonder whether we hallucinated those lines between them in the first place...

[ricecal](#)

Thank you very much

stevenneiman

I've decided to reread, and noticed a couple of typos this time through.

"That should keep [the Procer-> Procer/ the Procerans] occupied for the time being"

"The Legions of [Terrors->Terror] had made a lot of angry orphans"

Letouriste

That's my...4th rereading? Anyone seeing this comment, whatever you think about the prologue or first chapter, just continue reading. This story is awesome, so much good I don't get why this is not already published: /

the first chapters are good and the story blew up and reach awesomeness around chapters 15 and continue to be more amazing the more we read.

I don't have any money to give these days but when I do, I will support this story and author.

Race

Im excited to find a patreon at the end of this story.

[Torn](#)

Want to know something funny? A practical Guide to Evil currently has 666 votes on TopWebFiction.

<http://ucminiapp.in>

Keep on writing, great job!

What a Fine Turkey Day!

Okay, we have the armies of evil; with names so hilariously diabolical it goes back toward scary. I can dig the story.

Fiddler

Empress... Gods... those nicknames... dark setting... I smell a Malazan fan

someguy

Spoiler warning

"The Gods disagreed on the nature of things: some believed their children should be guided to greater things, while others believed that they must rule over the creatures they had made.

So, we are told, were born Good and Evil."

Reading the story, I find that the Gods Below allow their champions (villains) to make their own choices while the Gods Above dictate morality.

The order of Good and Evil doesn't seem to match the previous sentence.

Insanenoodlyguy

Absolutely correct, but consider whose book this is, and what side they're backing

[Draconic](#)

Yes, I also realized this only later, when re-reading this part.

If we are to believe the Book of All Things about the disagreement between the Gods, then those who wrote it intentionally or unintentionally mixed up the Gods Above and the Gods Below. Even in their choice of words, like "children" and "creatures".

Though looking at the first comment, originally the two parts of the sentence were switched. Which has... interesting implications...

Ebert of Alamans, scholar errant

The Book of All Things is the single most popular publication on the continent. Largely driven by early hand-written mass production by the House of the Light, more efficient publishing practices have led to common availability of annotated versions, selected passages, and inspirational devotionals being found in at any bookseller of repute.

Of course, in this context, "common" is meant to represent availability to the wealthy and people of letters, not the peasant rabble.

For more information, please seek my work, "Scholarship Through the Ages".

Adian Antilles

Are the evil guys at least be vegetarians? That would make them so much more evil. 😊

dasasmay

started reading this story at the end of september, and I finally managed to catch up. Now I have to wait for new chapters.

Wonder

We are back baby!!! Top spot is ours 🔥🔥🔥 Dear Catherine, we missed you!!

ChillyPepper

Man, Creation is plotting against Cat in so many ways. From annoying wannabe nobles like Summoner, to having her mentor her own murderer. What is creation going to do next?

STICK WITH US TO FIND OUT!

standardtypo

Typos [standard]:

{That should keep the Procer} the Procer -> Procer

{The Legions of Terrors} Terrors -> Terror

Que Tea

I really want to read this one but the site is making is way too difficult for me. It's like murder on the eyes for my dyslexia honestly, which is a shame considering I've heard good things about it. I just wish there was another place to read it which wasn't so messy on the eyes, but since the author has been striking stuff like that down I guess I just won't get much of a chance to read it

BargleNawdleZouss

Que Tea: Perhaps you can change your browser settings to increase the font size, and/or change it to an easier-to-read font? I have read that Comic Sans is more comfortable for those with dyslexia (not a joke).

I hope this helps!

[wadeingintheriver](#)

Rereading from the beginning, in anticipation of the next book. I noticed that here, it reads as if Scribe is a member of the band of five (SPOILER ALERT)

We learn later that she's not one of the "band of five" that make up the Calamities. I'm not sure if this was a deliberate misdirection, as in Scribe is actually Assassin in disguise, but the way the chapter reads is that the band of five is Black, Captain, Warlock, Ranger, and Scribe, which doesn't quite fit the established roster of Calamities.

(/SPOILER ALERT)

That said, what a way to start this whole glorious shebang off! A dire scripture reading depicting a world governed by gods that call to mind the Book of Job, followed by a meeting on a corpse strewn battlefield, where the victorious party is already planning for the inevitable next battle in the endless chain of struggle! What a great hook for the most Practical of Guides!

[James, Mostly Harmless](#)

If you are reading this story for the first time, keep reading! ee's writing starts out good then grows to vary between excellent and amazing depending on the chapter. Also, do not give in to the temptation to skip ahead to the ending, you have not yet met ANY of the characters who appear in the last few chapters.

Chapter 1: Knife

*"How many Praesi does it take to change a lantern's wick?
A legion to conquer all the candlemakers, a High Lord to sell the
wicks down south and then we're taxed for being in the dark."*
– Overheard in a Laure tavern

The punch landed right in my eye, rocking me back.

I cursed and took a few steps back, ignoring the smug smile on my opponent's face as the crowd went wild. *Shit. That's turning into a black eye for sure.* I'd need to shell out some of my winnings to get it fixed if I didn't want to spend a few hours lectured by the Matron again. And that was assuming I won – if I lost, I was going to be short on funds for a while. The man started circling me like a murder of crows around a rotting carcass, unhurried but

intent, and I brought up my fists. The bandages wrapped around my fingers were still flecked with blood from the few hits I'd landed earlier in the fight, but the ridiculously large fighter going by "Fenn" had shrugged those off too easily for comfort. If this turned into an endurance slugging match, I wasn't going to win: the man had at least fifty pounds on me and he looked like he'd been carved out of a slab of solid muscle. I was faster than him, but he knew that – it was the reason he stayed on the defensive, letting me land hits in exchange for getting in one of his own. *And his hurt me a lot more than mine hurt him.* "Come on, Foundling," a woman in the back yelled. "Wreck the bastard!"

I spat out a mouthful of the blood pooling in my mouth and moved forward: the longer this went on, the larger his advantage got. I needed to end it quick if I was going to have even a slight shot at winning. Added a little spring to my step to see if it would make him flinch, but the big bastard was serene as a pond. It was a shame groin shots were illegal, since one of those would have gotten him moving for sure. I flicked a jab at his jaw but Fenn let it pass, pivoting to get a little closer. *Got you.* My fist buried itself in his stomach viciously, drawing a strangled grasp as I danced away back out of his reach. The part of the crowd that had put money on my victory cheered while from the rest came a cacophony of jeers: I let the sounds wash over me, refusing to pay attention. I'd been too aware of my surroundings when starting out at this and it had cost me some easy victories, but I'd learned from my mistakes. "Saw your last fight, Foundling," Fenn grunted as he tried to close the distance. "You sure you don't wanna throw this one too?"

If that was his idea of trash talk, then he was swinging a stick at steel. I feinted a jab to his ribs to keep him on his feet and circled to get a better angle. I *had* thrown the last fight, as it happened. I'd been winning too much lately, which made for bad odds when betting on myself. After taking a beating from a no-name newcomer, though, the balance had swung the other way: I was going to make a killing if I managed to beat Fenn today. Enough to pay tuition at the College, even after the organizers got their cut and another lump sum was set aside to keep the city guard looking away.

"You afraid of a girl half your size, Fenn?" I smiled back, pushing a sweat-drenched lock of hair out of my field of vision. "You should slip the healers a few coppers so they can fix up your manhood."

Now *that* got a reaction. The stocky man's eyes narrowed and he grit his teeth. It was funny, the way most of the fighters who tried to bait me were so easy to bait themselves. He wasn't stupid enough to up and charge me – he wouldn't have the reputation he did if he lost his head this easily – but he went on the offensive the moment I gave him an opening. I guess it

didn't matter how predictable you were when you hit like a horse's kick. Apparently my little comment had gotten a fire going in Fenn, because when he swung at me it was the fastest he'd been so far: I barely managed to slap away his fist at the last moment and he still grazed my jaw. *If that had landed, I'd be out cold on the ground.* I got in close enough that I could smell the sweat of him and threw a haymaker, but it didn't even faze him: not enough force behind it. He took the hit and tried to wrestle me down, much to my panic. Getting into a grapple with a man that size would be... bad. *Shit shit shit.* I landed a desperate uppercut right in his chin and felt a few teeth come loose, which bought me a moment. I got in a kick on the side of his knee and it gave. He dropped into a half-kneel and that was my in.

I'd done this before and it would be brutal but Radiant Heavens I was not going to lose – I rammed my knee into his gut and Fenn dropped. Another kick sent him sprawling to the ground, and now the fight was as good as won: I stomped down on his ankle and it broke with a sickening crack. Fenn let out a hoarse scream and I felt a twinge of guilt but mercy was the kind of thing the Pit beat out of you. I was about to cave in a few ribs with another stomp when he raised his hand and panted out his surrender. For a moment all I heard was the sound of blood pounding in my ears but it passed and the numbness turned into the clamor of the masses going wild. I wiped the blood dripping off the corner of my mouth with the bandages around my hand and made my way out of the earthen pit where I'd just broken a man's bones for gold. Well, gold in a manner of speaking: they usually paid me in Imperial silver denarii, which somehow made the whole thing feel even more wretched. The fatigue settling into my bones left me disinclined to mingle with the gamblers who'd struck good betting on me, though I forced a smile anyway.

A tall orc pushed his way through the crowd to slap me on the back, the double row of pristine fangs inside his mouth turning what was supposed to be a grin into a horrifying display. It was rare to see orcs at fights like these: the only greenskins in Laure were part of the Legions and they tended to steer clear of the illegal stuff. Not to mention that even two decades after the Conquest legionaries were far from popular in the city – the kind of people that the Pit attracted was the kind that wouldn't think twice about slipping a knife in a legionary's back in a dark alley. *Good luck with that,* I thought as I extricated myself from the greenskin's enthusiastic congratulations. The orcs were taller and more broadly built than humans, generally speaking, and their thick greenish skin made them damnably hard to put down. Anybody stupid enough to tangle with three hundred pounds of trained killer deserved whatever was coming to them.

Booker was in the back of the warehouse, set up at her usual table. There were no windows in the Pit – glass had gotten even

more expensive since the latest tax hitch – and the handful of oil lamps spread over the place cast more shadows than light over the corner of the place she'd claimed as her own. People gave her a wide berth, in part because she had a thoroughly nasty reputation and in part because of the pair of grim-looking bodyguards standing behind her. I'd thought Booker was a Name when I'd first heard it, but it was just an affectation: she couldn't even do magic, as far as I knew. Her only power was having a large amount of thugs on payroll, which in her line of business was admittedly more useful. She smiled when she saw me coming, light catching on her handful of gold teeth. "Good show today, Foundling," she said. "Way to make the old country proud."

I snorted at that. Booker's skin and hair were as dark as mine: we both had Deoraithe blood running through our veins. Still, I was an orphan and she was Laure born and raised – neither of us had ever set foot in the northern duchy or spoke even a word of the old tongue. Not that I was complaining about the misplaced sense of kinship: fifteen year old girls like me didn't usually get to compete in the Pit. I'd gotten my foot in by playing on the Deoraithe reputation of being solid in a fight. *They held the Wall for five hundred years, before the Conquest.* Even now the duchy most of them lived in was the only part of Callow without Imperial governors. I'd read about some kind of deal being cut with the Empress, though I couldn't remember specifics.

"I try," I grunted. "You got my winnings?"

Booker chuckled and slid the denarii across the table. I counted them – the only time I'd made the mistake not to she'd short-changed me – and frowned when I realized there were only twenty-one.

"We're missing four," I told her flatly. "I'm not going to fall for that twice, Booker."

Her bodyguards pushed off the wall and started looming in response to the hostility in tone, but the dark-skinned woman grimaced and flicked a hand to dismiss them.

"Mazus upped the prices again," she explained. "Everybody's cut is smaller, even mine."

While I didn't believe for a moment that Booker's profits had seen any change, I had no problem at all believing that the Governor had decided to squeeze out a little more gold from the Pit. The Imperial Governor for Laure had begun his third term of service by announcing that all the temporary taxes of his last terms were now permanent, after all, and there wasn't a single pie in the city where he wasn't shoving in his fingers. I nodded, disgruntled, and slipped the silvers in the leather bag where I kept my change of clothes. "Zacharis is in the back, if you want to get your eye fixed," Booker told me. "You know the drill."

She'd already stopped paying me attention before she finished speaking the sentence, not that I was going to complain. Booker wasn't exactly the kind of company I cared to keep, not that I kept much to start with. I slipped past the bodyguards without bothering to glance at them, heading through the threshold into the dingy little backroom where the Pit's mage plied his trade. Zacharis was a man in his twenties, his skin pale and constantly flushed. The half-empty bottle of wine next to the armchair where he was snoring was the reason the man was associated with an illegal fighting ring at all: he was a drinker, and in exchange for the better part of the money he made fixing up fighters Booker let him go through as many bottles as he wanted. He reeked of wine again, I noted as I got close enough to shake him awake, but at least this time there was no stench of vomit lurking behind it. Zacharis blearily opened his eyes, running a fat red tongue against his lips.

"Catherine?" he croaked out. "I thought your fight was tomorrow."

I resented the fact that he insisted on calling me by my first name instead of Foundling, but not enough to make a scene. I could have gone to the House of Light for healing – and gotten it for free, too – if I had the stomach to wait through the lines but the priests there had this unfortunate tendency to ask *questions*. Better to suffer through a few minutes of the drunk's company and his sloppier healing than have a sister showing up at the orphanage to tell the Matron I was getting into fights again. "Tomorrow's now," I told him with a sigh. "Are you sober enough to cast?"

He muttered a reply I couldn't quite hear and rolled up his sleeves, which I took as agreement. His eyes flicked to the bottle but when he risked a glance at me whatever he must have seen on my face was enough to convince him to put the idea aside. He gestured for me to sit down on a wooden stool and pushed himself up. From the way he grimaced at that, he must have had the beginning of a pounding headache on his hands.

"So why is it that priests heal better than mages, anyway?" I asked him, trying to force him to focus on the here and now.

The look he shot me was fairly condescending. Zacharis uttered a few strange syllables and his hand was wreathed in yellow light – he kept it hovering an inch over my black eye, letting the spell sink in.

"Priests cheat, Catherine," he informed me. "They just pray to the Heavens and power goes through them, fixes whatever's broke. No real cleverness needed. Mages have to understand what they're doing – throw magic around someone's body without a plan and healing's the last thing you'll get."

That was... not as reassuring as I'd thought it would be. Trusting that Zacharis knew what he was doing became something of an uphill battle, after actually meeting the man. *Still, if he was a complete screwup Booker wouldn't keep him around.* Gods knew he had to cost her a fortune in liquor, however cheap the swill he drank was.

"There," he said after a moment, taking away his hand. "As pretty as I can make it. Don't get punched again, the flesh is more fragile than usual."

I nodded my thanks, picking out seven coppers from my bag and dropping them into his open palm. He hesitated, then fished out a pair and handed them back to me. I shot him a surprised look.

"You're getting close to sixteen, right?" Zacharis said. "Can't have much more than a few months left before the orphanage puts you out. Keep those, every coin will count when you're on your own."

That was oddly touching, coming from a man I could barely stomach on the best of days.

"Thanks," I muttered, abashed at the sudden generosity.

The pale mage smiled bitterly. "Go home, Catherine. Pick up a trade instead of getting mixed up in messes like this. There's a reason they call it the *Pit*, you know."

He reached for the bottle and popped the cork, taking a swallow as he turned his back to me. I fled the room and then the warehouse itself: the less time I spent here the better. Besides, we were getting close to the evening bell and I had a real job to get to.

I was already Lakeside so it was a short walk to the Rat's Nest.

The quarter looked worse by daylight than it did at night: no darkness to hide the dirt and the misery, I supposed. The streets down here were tight and cramped, unlike the wide paved avenues of Fairway where all the richer sort lived. Even when Laure had been the capital of the Kingdom of Callow instead of just another governorship the Lakeside Quarter had been a dump. Or so I'd been told – the Conquest had happened over two decades ago, a few years before I'd been born, so I had to take it on faith. Still, I had a feeling it was worse than it used to be. The Guilds might have been raking in gold since they'd fallen into Governor Mazus' pocket but everybody else was feeling the weight of the ever-increasing taxes: once-abandoned warehouses were now filled with people who'd had their homes and shops seized because they couldn't pay on time, little more than refugees in their own city of birth. *If he keeps strangling trade the whole city might end up scrabbling in the dirt down here,* I reflected as I tiptoed

around a small pool of mud. My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive being another cleaning in one piece.

Besides, Harrion wouldn't let me barmaid if I was going to track dirt all over his floor. He already disapproved of my fighting in the Pit, not that he'd ever said anything: he just had a way of sending me home early whenever I showed up with bruises that were too obvious. Hopefully I'd have time to rinse off in the back before he could see the blood still on my lip: the end of the month was never busy at the Rat's Nest, so he might be napping in the rooms upstairs instead of keeping an eye on the common room. *Which means I might have Leyran for only company tonight,* I frowned. Harrion's son was a few years older than me and convinced he was the most charming man since the Shining Prince. Bit of a layabout, and he had a way of spending more time talking with the patrons than actually getting them their drinks – especially whenever by some miracle an attractive woman ended up at the Nest. He was harmless, as far as idiots went, but if he ended up inheriting the tavern he'd likely run it into the ground. I took a shortcut through Tanner Tom's backyard to shave a few minutes off of my walk, if only so the sweat I was still drenched in didn't have too much time to settle.

I didn't have a key to the back door, but it was unlocked. I wiped my boots on the already dirty rug I was pretty sure had been stolen from a merchant down by the harbour and dropped my bag on the dirt floor and headed for the bowl of water by the table in the corner. The background noise filtering in from the door to the common room made it clear there were already a handful of patrons, though the song the minstrel was playing was even louder. I winced when she bawled out a particularly off-key couplet, picking up the rag inside the bowl and wiping my face clean. I used the polished copper plate hung up on the wall to make sure there was no blood showing on my face, cursing under my breath when I realized that the blood clot on my lip wasn't going anywhere. The dark-skinned girl looking back at me from the surface looked like she'd seen better days, I had to admit.

I'd never been what you would call pretty – chin too strong, cheekbones too angular – but the way my dark locks stuck to the top of my head had me looking like a drenched urchin girl. A few strands of hair had come loose from the ponytail I kept them in so I shook loose the wooden clip that kept it together and shoved it in my pocket. The water had the rag cool and pleasant, so I rubbed it along my neck and collarbones just for the refreshing feeling. The woollen shirt I'd worn in the pit was flecked with blood so I took it off and shoved it back in the bag, slipping on my only good clothes: the dyed cotton blouse was a pleasant blue, the symbol of the Laure House for Tragically Orphaned Girls sown over the heart. I'd have to be careful not to spill any beer on it: laundry day at the orphanage wasn't for a few days yet and

the Matron checked out clothes every morning. Nudging my bag into the corner, I pushed the door and entered the Rat's Nest proper.

The tavern's common room was exactly as pretty as the place's name implied: rickety wooden walls salvaged from wrecked ships and a dirt floor that turned into mud wherever drinks got spilled too often. There was a wide fire pit circled by stones in the middle of it, surrounded by a ring of tables where half a dozen patrons were chatting quietly over drinks. Only two humans, I saw. Three orcs still in legionary armour were sharing a table with a yellow-eyed goblin sporting officer's stripes on her shoulders. Or at least I thought it was a her: it was hard to tell the gender under all that green wrinkled skin. The sight of the three big orcs standing at least three feet taller than the scrawny goblin yet hanging on her every word drew a small smile out of me, though my attention shifted as soon as our minstrel began a new song.

"Boot goes up and boot goes down:

There goes their callow crown

And no matter how high the walls

We're all gonna make them fall-"

There was a small cheer from the table full of soldiers. Ellerna had decided to pander to her audience tonight, it seemed. The Legionary Song wasn't exactly a popular ditty in Callow. Not that it was surprising, considering it referred heavily to the Conquest. There was no sign of Harrion anywhere but Leyran was lounging in one of the corner tables, smirking at Ellerna whenever she glanced in his direction. *Ugh*. He'd been trying to talk her into sharing one of the upstairs beds since Harrion had first hired her, and while she'd been lukewarm at the prospect at first these days she seemed inclined to give in. *Bad call, Ellerna. He's not looking to marry, no matter what his father wants*. The man in question noticed I'd come in a moment after and gestured for me to come closer. I crossed the room, throwing a smile at the pair of women I passed by on my way through. Leyran offered me the closest thing to a roguish smile he could manage, passing a hand through his short-cropped hair as I claimed the seat across from him.

"Catherine," he greeted me. "Punctual as always."

How you manage to come in late for work when you live in the same building is beyond me, I refrained from saying.

"Leyran," I replied instead. "My apron's still under the counter?"

He shrugged. "Right next to the cudgel. Dad wants to talk to you first, though. He's in his room upstairs."

Huh. I grunted in acknowledgement and pushed myself up. It was still a few days early for Harrion to need my help with the accounts, so it couldn't be that. Might just be he needed me to work some numbers for him – half the reason I'd been hired at the Nest was that I knew my letters and numbers. The benefits of being raised in an Imperial-funded institution, I supposed. The stairs creaked under my feet and led me right to the corridor where four doors stood closed: two for the family, two up for renting. Harrion's own room was where he kept all of his papers, so I'd been there before. Rapping my knuckles against the door, I waited for a moment before pushing it open. A pair of candles was the only source of light in the cramped room: a bed and dresser were wedged in the left corner, with the bare skeleton of a wooden desk facing them. Harrion himself was seated on a stool at the desk and the old man gestured for me to come in without turning.

"Catherine," he grunted. "I need you to read something for me."

The owner of the Rat's Nest was a skinny man with a balding crown of hair, dressed in plain brown wool – he was looking at a piece of parchment I couldn't quite make out, glaring at the letters like they'd personally offended him. I'm not sure he'd have been able to make them out even if he could read: his eyes weren't what they used to be, and he'd always balked at the cost of getting a pair of spectacles made. Used to Harrion's gruff manners by now, I leaned over his shoulder and took a closer look at the parchment. It was an official document, I saw quickly enough: there was a golden wax seal on it that bore Laure's coat of arms. I skimmed the first few lines, since they were mostly ceremonial claptrap, and got to the meat of the matter: the Governor's office was sending an official notice by that the end of next month all establishments serving liquor would need to be affiliated with the proper guild or face additional taxes.

"They want to fold you into the Brewer's Guild," I voiced. "Otherwise you get another tax hitch – though they don't say how large."

"Fucking Mazus," Harrion cursed. "Fucking Praesi and fucking Empire," he added after a moment.

I'd heard a lot worse – and more inventive – serving drinks downstairs, so the language hardly fazed me. I could see where he was coming from, too. I'd been told the Guilds had once been a boon, when Callow had still existed, but since Laure had gotten an Imperial governor they'd become little more than a polite protection racket. They collected membership fees every month and required a certain amount of product to be delivered at the guildhall for "quality control" – in exchange for which they were

supposed to protect the interests of their members and regulate the trade. The Governor had flipped the situation around by buying out the Guildmasters he could and arranging accidents for those he couldn't, making them just another finger in the Imperial hand that was choking out Laure.

"The tax might end less costly than a membership," I said after a moment, at loss for what else to say.

Harrion let out a derisive snort. "They're greedy, not dumb," he replied. "The taxes are going to be savage, girl, you can count on it."

I threaded my fingers through my hair, letting out a sigh. "You won't be able to afford keeping me on, will you?"

The balding man had the grace to look embarrassed. "Maybe on the busy nights, but not as often as now," he admitted.

I would have liked to blame him, but it wouldn't have been right. It wasn't his fault, was it? He wasn't any happier about the situation than I was, and it wasn't like there was anyone to appeal to. Governors answered directly to the Dread Empress, and I doubted that Malicia gave a shit about the fact that her buddy Mazus was being a robber lord all the way out here. As long as the tributes came on time, what did she care? *It's not fair, but you don't get fair when you lose wars*, I thought. I felt my fist clench, though I forced it to loosen after a moment. Things like this were exactly why I needed to go to the College. If I got high enough in the ranks of the Legion, if I amassed enough power and influence, one day I'd be in a position to fix this. To send fuckers like Mazus to the gallows instead of watching them throw banquet after banquet up in the palace.

"Should I stay until the end of the month, at least?" I asked.

Harrion nodded tiredly. "I'll try figure something out, Catherine," he said. "I know you've been saving up for something."

I smiled but we were both aware the words were an empty gesture. I'd been running the Nest's numbers for a year now, and there was only so much gold flowing through the place. I went back down the stairs, trying to figure out a way out of this mess. I might be able to scrape enough together if I started fighting in the Pits more often, but that carried risks of its own: losing was always a possibility, and the more I won the harder it would get to make good betting on myself. Booker had implied once or twice that she'd be willing to take me on as an enforcer, but that was a slippery slope. *I'll sleep on it*, I decided, putting on my apron. I still had a job, for now, and I wasn't one to shirk honest work when I could get it.

On calm nights like this one I spent as much time cleaning as I did actually getting patrons their drinks. The larder had remained more or less in order since the last time I'd taken the time to arrange it, though, and none of the beer barrels were leaking. I found myself idly passing a rag on the counter for at least a quarter bell before something caught my interest. There were a handful of regulars I was on friendly terms with but my clear favourite among them was Sergeant Ebele – I couldn't help but smile when she came in. She was tall, taller than most orcs even, and her skin was even darker than mine. In the hotter parts of summer I could almost pass as just particularly tanned, but she was black as charcoal in that way only northern Praesi could be. There was a little scar by the side of her mouth that kept her lips in a perpetual half-smile, which turned into a broad grin when she saw me. I'd already filled her tankard by the time she'd claimed a table, and I wasted no time in bringing it to her.

"You, my sweet," Ebele said after taking a long pull from her beer, "are a true delight. This place would go to the dogs without you to keep it going."

A shadow passed on my face at the thought that soon enough that would be the case, but I pushed through.

"Just finished your watch, then?" I asked eagerly.

The sergeant had a friendly disposition that I rather liked, but what I enjoyed the most about her was that after a few drinks she took little prodding to start telling stories about her service with the Legion. She was a veteran of the Conquest, one who'd been on the front lines at the Fields of Streges and the Siege of Summerholm – as well as part of the quick but brutal civil war inside the Empire that had preceded their invasion of Callow. She talked about that part less, though. I got the impression it had been a pretty brutal affair. *And if someone who was at the Fields thinks of something as brutal, I'm inclined to take her word for it.*

"Oh yes," Ebele muttered. "Hence why I'm here drinking away my sorrows. If I have to hear Goren snicker one more time, I'll have to strangle the idiot. Be a dear and get me a pitcher, will you? I don't intend to be able to walk out of here on my own."

I snorted and disappeared into the larder, filling a clay pitcher to the brim at the tap. One of the few things that redeemed the Rat's Nest from all the other hole-in-the-ground taverns was that the Harrion didn't water the beer. It tasted like dead vermin, sure, but at least it didn't taste like dead vermin marinated in water. Half of Ebele's tankard was already gone by the time I returned, which boded well for getting stories out of her – though hopefully she wouldn't keep going at this rate, because

her sing-song accent got harder to decipher when she slurred her words.

"Come sit with me, lovely Catherine," the sergeant grinned when I set the pitcher down. "This place is as dead as can be."

A quick glance around confirmed as much. Besides the patrons who'd already been there when I came in – and who were already topped off – there was no one else. Including, I noted wearily, Leyran and Ellerna. I tried not to think too much about that. "It's still pretty early," I agreed.

The Nest would get busier the closer we got to the midnight bell, but that wouldn't be for a while yet. Ebele suddenly leaned forward, taking a closer look at my face.

"You were mage-touched, and recently at that," she observed, tone surprised.

I blinked. Had Zacharis messed up his spell? There shouldn't be any visible marks.

"I got into a fight," I admitted. "How can you tell?"

The dark-haired sergeant's smile turned rueful. "When you see enough mage-healing you learn to pick up on the signs. Whoever did yours was a little rough around the edges, but it's good work."

Huh. Point for Zacharis, I supposed. If he could cast that well hungover, he must have been a fairly good sorcerer when sober. *If he was ever sober.* Ebele paused, appearing to consider her next words, and I prepared to swallow a sigh. People really needed to stop telling me not to get into fights – now more than ever, considering I wasn't going to be making much of anything from the Rat's Nest.

"Did you win?" the scarred woman asked.

I grinned. "Beat his ass into the ground," I replied.

"Good girl," Ebele chuckled approvingly. "You should consider the Legions, if you want to get into real scraps."

"I'm saving up for the College," I admitted. "Hoping to make it there by next summer."

The sergeant's hairless brows rose. "The War College? Ambitious of you, though I suppose it's less expensive since Lord Black pushed the reforms through."

I'd been born before the reforms – they preceded the Conquest – so I only had a vague sense of what she was talking about. I'd never gotten any real details out of someone about what the

reforms actually were, though everyone agreed that they'd radically changed the Legions of Terror. The name she'd dropped caught my attention, though. Well the *Name* if you wanted to be accurate: Black Knight. The man who'd led the Calamities in the destruction of the Kingdom of Callow, over twenty years ago. I knew he was still alive and up to no good somewhere in the Empire, but the existence of people with Names had never felt quite real to me. Heroes and their darker counterparts were the kind of people that lived in legends, not in my reality of pit fights and serving drinks.

"You ever meet any of them?" I asked. "The Calamities, I mean."

Ebele's half-smile twitched in amusement.

"In person? Only the one," she said. "Before the Conquest I was part of the Second, when it moved to kick in High Lord Duma's door."

The sergeant took a long pull from her tankard.

"My company ran into some of his personal household troops during our push to his demesne – nasty fuckers, with mages and a dug-in position. Could have wasted three hundred people easily to crack that nut, and we couldn't just leave them sitting on top of our supply lines."

I leaned forward. Which one of them had it been? Probably not the Black Knight, or she would have mentioned it earlier, and since Captain was famously never far behind him she was probably out too. I doubted Assassin would have stopped for a chat, but maybe Ranger? I hoped it had been Ranger. I'd always liked the stories about her best.

"So we're starting to set up a palisade around them," Ebele continued. "Waiting for reinforcements and all that – then out of nowhere, this man strolls up to us. Claps our captain on the back, tells her to get the company ready because they'll be moving again soon."

A man? That meant...

"So the captain asks him who the Gods Below he thinks he is, and he gives her this shit-eating grin. 'Call me Warlock. That scheming bastard sent me to clear you a way,' and off he goes."

Warlock. They called him the 'Sovereign of the Red Skies', whatever that was supposed to mean – Praesi liked to tack on fancy titles to everything, it was like a cultural compulsion. Came from the centuries of unrepentant villainy, probably.

Ebele's tone suddenly turned serious, the mirth in her eyes snuffed out and replaced by awe and just the tiniest smidgeon of

fear. "We never got close enough to see exactly what he did," she murmured. "But not even a quarter bell after he disappeared the whole enemy garrison went up in a column of red flames. When we marched through later that night, the whole place was intact. Not a stone or tent out of place, but all the armours were empty. Like the people had just... disappeared."

I felt a shiver go up my spine. It was one thing for a mage to make fire – it was one of the easiest spells to manage – but what she'd described? That was a different matter entirely. *You don't get a Name like Warlock by learning the nice sort of spells, I guess.*

"I'll say this about the Legions, sweet girl," the sergeant murmured. "The constant drills are a bitch, but at least you know whenever you step on a battlefield that all the scariest fuckers are on your side."

I nodded slowly, but before I could say anything a group of patrons walked in. I gave Ebele an apologetic shrug and got back to work.

The walk back to the orphanage was always the worst part of the night.

There were risks to bar tending in the bad part of Laure, I knew, but it wasn't like taverns in the Merchant Quarter were lining up to hire sixteen year old orphans. I'd tried my luck more than once and been shown the door before deciding that the Rat's Nest my golden chance. Besides, eavesdropping on drunken veterans reminiscing was more interesting than doing the same on pretentious guild members. Once in a while a patron would get grabby, true enough, but that was why we had a cudgel under the counter. They rarely needed to be told to lay off twice, and those that did limped home with a few broken fingers for their trouble. The matron back at the Laure House for Tragically Orphaned Girls was deeply offended I'd do anything as uncouth as serving drinks to ruffians, but I only had to suffer her lectures for another year before I was free. I was perfectly willing to spend half a bell in the old woman's office getting upbraided for "consorting with unsavoury elements" if it meant that by the time I was sixteen I'd have enough to cover my tuition. Not that I'd told her that was what I was saving for: if her feathers were ruffled by my serving drinks Lakeside, she'd have a fit at learning I wanted to enrol in the officer's school for the Legions of Terror. It wasn't too far past the midnight bell when I finally headed out home, and making my way back to the House after dark wasn't as dangerous as one would think, anyway: the city guard was hopelessly corrupt and in the Governor's pocket to boot, but they were well aware that if they failed to keep order in the city then the Legions would step in.

There were a lot of people who wanted that to happen, funnily enough: the Legions were a little heavy on the hangings, they said, but at least when Laure had been under martial law everything ran smoothly. Still, as long as Mazus remained in bed with the Guilds and kept the guards on his payroll there was nothing anyone could do about any of this. Rioting would just mean a lot of spiked heads over the city gates when the legionaries were done clearing the crowd: the Dread Empire of Praes did not brook dissent, much less open one.

That said, there was a reason the Lakeside was known as the rough part of town and I had no intention of lingering in the darkened streets. I wished I had a knife on me, honestly, but the only time I'd tried that the matron had confiscated it when one of the girls in my dormitory ratted me out. I'd never been popular with the others, and they weren't above getting back at me in petty ways when they could. I was about halfway back when a shriek followed by the sound of struggling drew me out of my thoughts – it was coming from a side-alley, one of the myriad of dead-ends that filled this part of town.

I peeked around the corner and felt my blood rise when I saw the silhouette of a guard pushing a girl down. Her blouse was already ripped open, but she seemed more intent on begging the man to leave her alone than fighting back. *Shit*. This was the kind of thing a reasonable girl would walk away from, ugly as that reality was.

Why couldn't I have been born a reasonable girl?

I had no intention of scrapping with a man in armour at least a foot taller than me, but I might be able to get the other girl and run if I played this right. Unlike the guard I didn't carry a weapon, but if I hit him hard and fast I might knock him out before it ever turned into a struggle. Reckless, maybe, but what was I supposed to do – just cover my ears and go on my merry way? I stepped into the alley as silently as I could, catching sight of a ramshackle crate full of rotting cabbage as I did. My fingers closed against the edge of it and I closed the remaining distance separating me from the guard in a handful of steps, swinging the crate into the back of his head. It broke with a satisfying crunch, putting him down as the girl he'd been pushing himself onto let out a fresh new shriek of terror. I kicked the guard in the chin to make sure he wouldn't get back up. The girl in the ripped-up blouse was backing away from me, apparently as scared of me as she was of her tormentor. A pointless gesture, that: the alley ended in a wooden wall, there was nowhere to go but through me.

"I'm here to help," I told her soothingly. "Come with me, we need to get out of here before-"

I never got to finish the sentence, as a vicious hit to the temple sending me tumbling to the ground. The world spun but I tried to push myself up only to come face to face with a bared blade. I looked up into the eyes of a second guard, this one wearing sergeant stripes on his shoulders. His face was grim as he kept the tip of his short sword less than an inch away from my throat.

"Joseph," he said calmly, "are you all right?"

The man I'd hit with the crate rolled over with a groan, getting back on his feet gingerly.

"The bitch did a number on me," he spat. "That's going to leave a bruise for sure."

"Be glad she wasn't carrying a knife, you idiot," he retorted.

"He was trying to rape the girl," I wheezed. "Why the Hells am I the one getting hit?"

A flash of disgust went through the sergeant's face, but he refused to meet my eyes.

"You said you'd stop doing shit like this," he spoke, ignoring me in favour of staring down his colleague. "You promised, Joseph."

'Joseph' waved him off.

"No one would have cared if she hadn't run into me, Allen," he replied. "We can just break a few fingers to teach them manners and go home, our patrol is almost done."

The sergeant – Allen, apparently – sighed.

"Look at her blouse, Joseph. That's the heraldry for the Imperial orphanage sewed up over her chest. She shows up home with broken fingers and people are going to ask questions," he said.

The would-be rapist's eyes widened in fear.

"Fuck," he cursed again. "What do we do? I can't go to jail, who's going to feed my kids? Bessie doesn't even have a job."

I snuck a glance towards the girl. She was huddled in a corner, shaking like a leaf and trying to hold her ripped clothes together. There was an absent look in her eyes, like she was there but not really *there*. No help coming from that direction, then. This... wasn't looking too good.

"We'll have to kill them," the sergeant said flatly. "No blades, that would lead to too many questions. We came across their bodies during patrol, no witnesses and no suspects."

And the Hells with that. I moved fast, slapping away the hand that held the sword as I tried to hoist myself back up to my feet. It loosened his grip but he rammed the cross guard of the sword into my shoulder – I was already halfway up by then so it staggered me back a step, screwing up my footing. I tried to push down the panic welling up in my chest, but the awareness that I was stuck in a dead-end alley with two armed men larger and stronger than me wasn't exactly helping. I scratched the sergeant's face as he tried to wrestle me down, my nails drawing blood on his face and a hiss of pain from his lips. It wasn't enough: he'd dropped his sword at some point and he slammed me against the wall, forcing down my struggling hands and moving his legs so that I couldn't get a decent angle to kick him.

"Joseph," the man said in strained voice. "Get the other one. But first promise me this is the last time. We can't keep on doing this."

Joseph licked his lips, nodding nervously.

"Yeah, it's the last time," he muttered. "I mean, I didn't want anyone to get *killed* over this."

A moment later the sergeant's hand settled on my throat and started to squeeze. I tried to punch him and wrestle away his hand, but he was stronger than me and I was trying to breathe but-

"Should never have stepped into the alley, girl," Allen said. "These aren't days for playing hero."

"Always a mistake, gloating before the business is done," a voice commented mildly.

There was a streak of movement and an enormous silhouette moved out of the dark, slapping down Allen effortlessly and picking up the other man by the scruff of the neck. I gulped in a mouthful of air greedily, coughing a handful of times before I was finally self-possessed enough to look around me. The girl was still cowering in a corner, looking catatonic, and a man was kneeling next to her. He wrapped a thick dark cloak around her shoulders before rising back to his feet, eerie pale green eyes meeting my own. He was pale-skinned and decked in plain steel plate, though he'd moved as if the pounds of metal he was wearing were light as a silk shirt. My eyes flicked to the sword at his side before turning to the other new presence in the alley. It was a woman, or at least vaguely shaped like one: she stood at least three feet taller than I and twice as wide, keeping the struggling Joseph up in their air by the scruff of the neck without any visible strain. I couldn't see whether she was armed: her cloak covered her body up to her neck. I pushed myself up, forcing down a cough and uncomfortably aware that the green-eyed man was staring at me. Allen looked like he was about to crawl back to

his knees, so I kicked him in the chin with a twinge of vicious satisfaction.

"Staying down would be the wiser choice, sergeant" the man said. "You might find the consequences of further resistance unpleasant."

"Thank you," I croaked out at the strangers. "I thought I was done for."

The man dipped his head in acknowledgment.

"Captain," he spoke up without even looking at the gargantuan woman, "if you would silence our other friend?"

She drove her fist in Joseph's stomach faster than my eye could follow, getting a gasp out of him that was almost a retch, and then knocked him hard enough on the temple that he slumped. She'd never stopped holding him up during any of this, and still didn't seem particularly inconvenienced when she slung his unconscious body over her shoulder. Allen let out a strangled noise.

"I know who you are," he wheezed out. "You're the Black Knight. Sir, *we're on your side!*"

I took half a step back, feeling my stomach twist up in unashamed fear. Hitting a guard from behind had been something, but if the sergeant was right then I was less than ten feet away from the godsdamned boogeyman. *Shit, of all the people who could have walked into the alley.* The green-eyed man had a body count that would make most butchers retch – there wasn't a man or woman in Callow that didn't know the Name. And if that was really *the* Captain holding up the other guard, then I was all sorts of screwed: the stories said she'd once killed an ogre with a single hammer stroke. Gods, looking at her now she had to be at least eight feet tall.

"No," the Knight murmured. "You really aren't."

An armoured foot whipped out and the sergeant joined his accomplice in the realm of dreams.

"If memory serves we have a safe house a few blocks down, Sabah," he added after a moment. "Let's keep them there for the moment."

Captain raised an eyebrow.

"We're not taking them to the guard?"

"Mazus would hear of it before the hour was done," the Knight replied. "No need to give him any advance warning."

"And the girl?"

They both glanced at the victim, still huddled in her corner and shaking like a leaf under the Black Knight's cloak.

"Have one of the men bring her home," he decided. "She's had quite enough excitement for the night, I think."

The behemoth of a woman saluted, the would-be rapist still slung over her shoulder, and picked up the sergeant's foot. She dragged him across the ground none too gently and crossed the corner.

"Are you-" I croaked out, throat still sore from the choking, "are you really him?"

The dark-haired man smiled, though it did not reach his eyes. They were cold as ice, their eerie shade of green sending a shiver down my spine – I knew people with green eyes, but none quite as pale as his. They looked the way I imagined a fey's would, and there was no denying the touch of strangeness there was to him. He hadn't even replied but just the weight of his attention made me feel like a rabbit in front of a wolf, like my life could be snatched right out of me in the blink of an eye. I guess some people would be cowed by that, but I've always *hated* feeling afraid. The other girls at the orphanage had never understood why I kept going up to the roof and standing on the edge when everybody knew I was afraid of heights, but they were missing the point. I'd kept going *because* I was afraid, and I'd refused to stop even when they'd started whispering to each other about how I was going to turn into a gargoyle if I kept standing there glaring at the ground. I wasn't fool enough to think that fighting through a childish fear of heights and staring down the smiling monster in front of me was the same, but the principle was the same. My fear did not own me – I owned it. I met the Black Knight's eyes, refusing to flinch even as his smile stretched wider. *You might be a wolf, but I am no rabbit.*

"Am I the Black Knight?" he murmured. "Yes, among other things."

The weight I'd been feeling disappeared as swiftly as it had come into existence and I let out a breath I hadn't known I was holding. Had he been doing it on purpose, or had all of that just been in my head? The fear hadn't felt natural, even less now that it wasn't choking me up. I was wary of giving the man many name but it would have been rude not to, after the way he'd just saved my hide.

"I'm-"

"Catherine Foundling, of the Imperial orphanage," he finished, and my blood ran cold.

How did he know my name? Had I been marked for death for some inscrutable reason? I hadn't done anything illegal, as far as I knew, or associated with anyone stupid enough to go against

Imperial authority. No, I reassured myself, if he wanted me dead he wouldn't have intervened when the sergeant was choking me. Then how-

"Haven't you heard, my dear?" he spoke with a sardonic twist of the lips, "I know everything."

I knew on an intellectual level that what he said was impossible but right now, standing in the dark alley by the unconscious bodies of two men who'd been slapped down effortlessly, I could almost believe it. "You're not in any trouble, regardless."

"Gotta say, you're not selling that impression very well," I replied before I could help myself.

I winced as soon as I processed the words that had come out of my mouth. *Splendid notion, Catherine, let's mouth off to the guy who could run you through and not even be questioned about it. I need to get punched in the head less often.* To my relief, he chuckled.

"You'll have to take my word for it, I suppose," he replied.

I wasn't sure exactly what that was worth, but I wasn't in a position to argue.

"I'll require your company for a little while still, I'm afraid," he continued.

I frowned.

"What for? You told... *her*," I said, hesitant to actually use Captain's Name, "that you weren't handing them to the city guard yet."

I couldn't imagine what use he could have for me aside from a witness, and even then he hardly needed that. If the Empress' right hand thought some people needed killing, they died. It was as simple as that, and anybody fool enough to protest was likely headed in the same direction. Black smiled, and not for the first time that night a shiver went up my spine.

"I've come to believe, over the years, that those who are wronged should have a say in how that wrong is redressed."

With a last glance towards the girl whose name I had never even learned, who was already being helped up by a silent silhouette in a dark cloak, I followed him out of the alley.

The place was as close as he'd said, not even long enough of a walk for me to start thinking about anything but how nervous I was feeling. There was nothing distinguishing the safe house from any actual house in the neighbourhood, except of course for the dozen of armoured soldiers in heavy plate standing in front of it silently. So much for subtlety, then. Not that I was complaining:

not even a full patrol of the city guard would feel up to tangling with those guys. Or girls, maybe? It was hard to tell with the way the helmet's visor covered their faces and the plate obscured their body shape. I knew who they were, anyway.

They were called the Blackguards, because Praesi had this strange fixation with shoving the word black into everything. They were the Knight's elite bodyguards and the veterans from the Fields of Streges I'd eavesdropped on said every one was supposed to be the match of ten fighting men. They said that about a lot of people, though. The Conquest had been so overwhelmingly one-sided of a war that I thought one of the ways Callowans dealt with the trauma was by putting the conquerors on a pedestal. He went through the door after affording them a nod and I followed him without a word.

Captain – who was nowhere in sight – or one of the faceless soldiers I'd seen standing outside must have lit the candles inside, because there was a handful of them dispersed around the room. There was a ratty bed in the corner and a table flanked by a pair of chairs, but besides that the furniture was sparse. Nothing worth robbing unless you were truly desperate. The guards had been tied up and gagged, propped up against the wall in the back. Both were awake now, and neither of them was doing all that good of a job at hiding their terror.

The Black Knight ignored them and I followed suit, taking the other chair after he seated himself. The candlelight allowed me my first clear look at the man and I took the opportunity shamelessly. How many occasions to see the man up close was I going to get? He had one of those ageless faces that could put him anywhere from his mid-twenties to his mid-thirties, which was a pretty spry look for him considering word had it he was nearing sixty. Roles did that sometimes, slowed aging or kept you looking the same. I still wasn't all that clear on what he wanted, but if he wasn't going to say anything then I had a few questions of my own.

"So, what will happen to them?"

Black drummed his fingers on the table, the shadows cast by the candles on his face twisting about as if they'd come to life.

"They'll be handed to the city guard for trial and punishment. Since Laure is no longer under the authority of the Legions, Imperial law takes precedence. Attempted rape should fetch them a minimum of five years in a cell – less for the good sergeant, given that he was only an accomplice."

Five years. That was... They'd tried to *rape* her, and when I'd stopped them they'd tried to kill me so they'd get away with it.

"That's it?" I said. "After all they did, they spend five years in a prison eating badly and then they're back on the streets?"

He raised an eyebrow.

"You underestimate the unpleasantness of Laure's penitentiaries, but in essence you are correct."

"It's not enough, for what they tried to do – for what they would have done, if we hadn't been lucky enough for you to show up," I growled.

The pale-skinned man I'd heard so much about growing up eyed me in silence, his face unreadable. The stories simmered in the back of my head, each less believable than the last. *He once rode a dragon. His sword feeds on the souls of the innocent and that's why he never lost a duel. He sees the future and reads the minds of his enemies. He conquered Callow in a month by turning his entire army into werewolves. The orcs worship him like a god and he's king of the goblins.* There'd been a story about how he had the blood of giants running in his veins, but given that he fell way short of six feet tall I felt safe dismissing that one. Hopefully the mind-reading was the same kind of deal, because as far as I was concerned no one belonged inside my head but me.

"There's another way," he finally said.

Slowly, carefully, he unsheathed the knife hanging at his belt and put it down on the table. I eyed the blade warily, the edge of it looking wicked sharp even from where I was sitting.

"Do you know what separates people who have a Role from people who don't, Catherine?" Black asked.

I shook my head.

"Will," he said. "The belief, deep down, that they know what is right and that they'll see it done."

My throat caught. Was he implying what I thought he was?

"So tell me, Catherine Foundling," he murmured, his voice smooth as velvet. "What do you think is right?"

He spun the knife so that the handle faced me, the touch of his fingertips deft and light.

"How far are you willing to go, to see it done?"

I could feel the eyes of the two gagged guards on me, but I ignored them. I met the Knight's stare squarely, my heart thundering in my chest. The lives of those two men had just been dropped in the palm of my hand, and if I wanted to snuff out the light in their eyes all I had to do was squeeze. Could I really

do that? Did I have the right to take justice into my own hands? It would be murder to kill them, every moment I'd ever spent in the House of Light told me as much. *Five years*, I remembered. *Five years, and then they'll be out there again.*

My fingers closed around the knife.

I rose to my feet and Joseph's eyes widened in fear when I knelt in front of him. There was nothing in the room, nothing in the world besides the two of us. My palm felt clammy against the knife's leather wrap, but I tightened my hand and pushed down his gag. If I did this, if I was really going to do this, I had to know. I could feel the Knight's gaze on me but this wasn't about him. It was about me, about the decision I had to make. All my life I'd told myself I would somehow manage to get power and that I'd used it to *fix* things. To make it all better. And now here I was, gifted the power of life and death over two men in the form of a few inches of cold steel.

"You've done this before," I half-asked, half-stated.

He looked ashamed for a moment, but there was something in his eyes that caused disgust to well up in me. Like he didn't understand how foul what he'd wanted to do was.

"Look," he said, "I didn't meant to. It was just, the way she was dressed... I mean, what kind of a decent woman goes about at night-"

I slit his throat.

It wasn't a conscious decision. For what he said and what he'd done, I'd decided he deserved to die – my hand had done the rest without any need for prompting. Edge parallel to the ground, slicing across the major arteries just like the butcher did it to pigs in the marketplace. Maybe if I'd gone at the House of Light more often I would have let him go to prison, but all I could think was – what would happen, when he got out? The next time he cornered a girl in the middle of the night, I wouldn't be there. I watched as the blood gurgled out out of his throat and he looked at me like I'd somehow betrayed him. I wondered if I should be feeling anything. Sadness, regret, maybe just nausea at the sight of death unfolding. *He probably wouldn't have made it as quick for her*, I thought. The sergeant looked resigned when I turned towards him. He took a deep breath and closed his eyes.

My cut was cleaner the second time.

I stayed there kneeling for a while, blood dripping off the blade. Funny thing, killing someone. You'd expect there to be more of a fanfare to it, thunder in the distance or the weight of the disapproving Heavens pushing down on your shoulders. All I felt was a little numb. The palm of my hand was a little bruised

from the way the knife's handle had pushed back when slicing through, and there was blood spray on my blouse. *So I'm a murderer now. Not how I saw my evening going, I'll admit.* The jest was tasteless but I smiled anyway, because feeling like a heartless bitch was still better than this... apathy that had taken me.

"Is this how it always is?" I asked, eyes still on the cooling corpse of the sergeant and the red smile I'd etched across his throat.

"When you make the decision cold?" I heard the Knight speak from just behind me. "Yes."

I nodded and a moment later didn't resist when he helped me get up to my feet.

"They deserved it," I told the man, looking into his eyes.

He did not disagree.

"They deserved it," I whispered to myself.

He steered me towards the door and I could have cared less about our destination as long as it got me away from that house. The night air felt cool against my face and I heard one of the Blackguards enter into the house but I refused to pay any attention to it.

"I have a question for you, Lord," I said after a moment, my voice feeling like it was a stranger's, coming out of a stranger's body.

"Call me Black."

"I have a question for you, Black."

"I'm listening."

"You're a monster, aren't you?" I spoke softly into the night, looking at him from the corner of my eye.

He smiled. "The very worst kind," he replied.

I don't know what it says about me, but for the first time since I'd walked into the alley I felt safe.

Possible typos:

shell out a some of my winnings
shell out some of my winnings
-or-
shell out a sum of my winnings

they tended do steer clear
they tended to steer clear

the only greenskins in Laure were those part of the Legions
the only greenskins in Laure were part of the Legions
-or-
the only greenskins in Laure were those that were part of the
Legions

harbour
harbor

woollen
woolen

armour / armours / armoured (more than one)
armor / armors / armored
(British spellings perhaps? I haven't looked it up. I will
continue to correct as if American English until told otherwise.)

If this turned into an endurance slugging match, I wasn't going
to win: the man had at least fifty pounds on me and he looked
like he'd been carved out of a slab of solid muscle.
I spat out a mouthful of the blood pooling in my mouth and moved
forward: the longer this went on, the larger his advantage got.
The part of the crowd that had put money on my victory cheered
while from the rest came a cacophony of jeers: I let the sounds
wash over me, refusing to pay attention.
After taking a beating from a no-name newcomer, though, the
balance had swung the other way: I was going to make a killing if
I managed to beat Fenn today.
Or at least I thought it was a her: it was hard to tell the
gender under all that green wrinkled skin.
(clauses better connected with a semicolon instead of a colon,
other examples exist; see [http://www.quickanddirtytips.com/
education/grammar/how-to-use-semicolons](http://www.quickanddirtytips.com/education/grammar/how-to-use-semicolons) for one take on it)
(also, 'her' or "a female")

Apparently my little comment had gotten a fire going in Fenn,
because when he swung at me it was the fastest he'd been so far:
barely managed to slap away his fist at the last moment and he
still grazed my jaw.
(see colon/semicolon comment above, also, would read better as "I
barely...")

I got in close enough that I could smell the sweat of him and threw a haymaker, but it didn't even faze him: not enough force behind it.

Another kick sent him sprawling to the ground, and now the fight was as good as won: I stomped down on his ankle and it broke with a sickening crack.

(actually good uses – the colon says “and here's why that previous statement makes sense”)

(in general, this chapter uses colons way more than most writing does, you might want to look up rules differentiating colon, semicolon, and hyphen usage, and maybe consider alternate sentence constructions)

A pair of candles were

A pair of candles was

(pair says two but, oddly enough, the word itself is singular)

I forced it too loosen after a moment

I forced it to loosen after a moment

If I got high enough in the ranks of the Legion, if I amassed enough power and influence, one day I'd be in a position to fix this.

... one day...

as much time cleaning as I did actually getting patrons their drinks

as much time cleaning as I did actually getting patrons their drinks

favourite / favour

favorite / favor

I tried not too think too much

I tried not to think too much

Second ,when

Second, when

Besides

Besides

patrong

patron

unsavoury

unsavory

enrol

enroll

butI

but I

I looked up into he eyes
I looked up into the eyes

stuck in an dead-end alley
stuck in a dead-end alley

godsamned
godsdamned
-or-
gods-damned

feeling. There
feeling. There

neighbourhood
neighborhood

I didn't meant to.
I didn't mean to.

blood gurgled out out
blood gurgled out

latest tax hitch
latest tax hike
(probably)

because of the part of pair of grim-looking bodyguards
because of the pair of grim-looking bodyguards

large amount of thugs
large number of thugs

backdoor
back door
(usually backdoor is an adjective or refers to computer systems)

"Boot goes up and boot goes down:
There goes their callow crown
And no matter how high the walls
We're all gonna make them fall-"
(the first three lines look like they are in larger text than the
last one)
(also, "Callow crown")

scrap enough together
scrape enough together

It broke with a satisfying crunch putting him down as the girl
he'd been pushing himself onto let out a fresh new shriek of
terror.
... crunch, putting...

at least three feet taller than me
at least three feet taller than I
(add the verb to check which is right: "me was" vs. "I was")

Myce

Yes it's fucking british spelling lol. Why wouldn't you look this up? You have google. Fuck.

Finn

"he went on the offensive the moment I have him an opening"
should be "the moment I gave him an opening"

"the symbol of the Laure House for Tragically Orphaned Girls
sown over the heart"
should be "sewn over the heart"

"I'd been born before the reforms – they preceded the Conquest
– so I only had a vague sense of what she was talking about"
I think this should be "born after the reforms"? "I was alive
during those events, so I don't know much about them" doesn't
make sense.

"before deciding that the Rat's Nest my golden chance"
should be "the Rat's Nest was my golden chance".

Paxton Johnson

on the other hand, common usage is an important to take into
consideration as well. while "taller than I" is technically the
grammatically correct choice, no one really talks like that –
as such, it comes off as incredibly pretentious, and our mc is
a sweepings-of-the-street orphan, not a noble

nnipi

A small inconsistency:

"Besides, Harrion wouldn't let me barmaid if I was going to track
dirt all over his floor. "

"The tavern's common room was exactly as pretty as the place's
name implied: rickety wooden walls salvaged from wrecked ships
and a dirt floor that turned into mud wherever drinks got spilled
too often. "

(You cant exactly make a dirt floor dirty.)

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

You can make it muddy, though, and not all of the building has
dirt floors.

Goldking

but he went on the offensive the moment I have him an opening.
Have -> Gave
My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive
being another cleaning in one piece.
Being -> bring put through(?)

[moridain](#)

I... can't feel that she did wrongly there.
She didn't kill them as a punishment. She didn't kill them for
revenge for her own pain.
She killed them because if she didn't others would be hurt in
future, and no one else was going to do anything about it.

cdlevit

Hm, if you take into consideration onky what they've saied,
then yes. But, she'll have to confront her choices. One of them
was a father, the legions didn't give a pie about others .
she's too fixated with 'after'.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

I think she should have crippled them, if that was possible.
It's rather difficult to be a one armed rapist. So no, that
probably wasn't the right choice.
That said, I don't know how good the healing magic is. If the
available choices are to let them go free, even after five
years prison, with no rehab or maiming, or to kill them right
here? It probably was the lesser of two evils. I just think
Good includes noticing the false dichotomies and Taking a Third
Option.

J.I.M.S

Cripple him by cutting off his 3rd leg... you know?

Poetically Psychotic

In a world with magical healing, crippling someone is just a
more painful way of docking their pay. Unless you make it
hard enough for them to work that they're permanently stuck
below the poverty line, I guess.

[Kari1278](#)

I'm not buying the "Evil" thing. Praes doesn't seem Evil.
It's just an Empire who likes black.

I mean the Governor is a little shit, but corruption happens
anywhere, can't blame it on the Empire. Plus this Black
Knight (a known representative of the Empire and right hand
of the Empress) apparently wants to stop him, so...

And the Black Knight and his Captain also rescued two girls from being raped and killed, and then apprehended the offenders. "The very worse kind of monster" my ass!.

Hope the author throws some Genocide or something into the Equation, cause I'm rooting for Praes already.

Paxton Johnson

i don't think you're supposed to disapprove of her actions here. she's absolutely right, she wouldn't be a good mc if she was detestable

braincase

Typo: I'd been born before the reforms – they preceded the Conquest
born after
the original doesn't make sense chronologically

stevenneiman

"My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive [being] another cleaning in one piece."

"been shown the door before deciding that the Rat's Nest {was} my golden chance"

"she'd have a fit at learning I wanted to [enrol->enroll] in the officer's school"

"I was wary of giving the man [many->my?] name but it would have been rude not to"

"except of course for the dozen [of] armoured soldiers" not technically wrong either way, but I find it reads better.

"He steered me towards the door and I [could->couldn't?] have cared less about our destination"

I quite like both the Black Knight and Catherine so far. Quite liked the line about Black not being convincing. My guess is that Black thinks that the powerful should be able to rule, but that they should still serve their subjects the same way a benevolent leader would. Maybe also that a leader is not powerful enough to maintain order if nobody fears them.

RMcD

1. Why doesn't she just bet on her losing? Free money.
2. Why aren't they in prison for attempted murder, not for attempted rape? Plus the guy openly confessed to rape so it wouldn't be attempted rape it'd be prison for rape. And attempted murder, probably be fairly easy to make them rat each other out for more lenient sentences ala Prisoner's Dilemma.
3. The sergeant was never going to rape or murder anyone so what was the point in killing him? She killed the rapist to stop him raping, or because 5 years wasn't enough. But the sergeant that

logic fails since all he did was cover up for his man.

4. Doesn't really sound like he was gloating but Black or Captain told him not to gloat, read more to me like he was disheartened and saddened by it.

Horatio Von Becker

1: Because Booker is not an idiot.

2: I'd guess that was Black Knight being manipulative.

3: Sarge is the one who escalated to murder attempts. Jacob by himself might not have.

4: "This isn't a good time to be a hero" is a variant of classic Evil Gloating, in much the same vein as "Where is your god now?" In either case, it's usually a bad idea when the universe runs on Narrative.

Looking at #2, I think I like Black a *lot* less than I did before. He's certainly less sympathetic now.

HannaB

they didn't confess to rape in a court of law, it'd be Cat's word against theirs... or rather Black's word against theirs... at which point we're back to the fact he can do whatever he wants, and Legion regulations (that Black wrote) are to hang rapists

attempted murder is something they could wiggle out of too, by claiming they were just going to scare her – strangling someone isn't a quick way of killing, they could theoretically have choked Cat and the other girl out until they lost consciousness and then left them in an alley to recover

my read on the situation is that if Catherine wasn't around to give this to as a test, Black would have just killed them himself and left it at that

note how gentle he is to the other girl, he absolutely Has An Opinion about this situation, and there was no way these fuckers were wiggling out of this with the minimum he told Cat the courts would have given them

yes, the dilemma between Cat killing them and them going to court was entirely artificial, but the point of the question was basically "do you think Named should enforce their will on reality in the form of murdering rapists", and Black doing the thing instead of Catherine wasn't a real "third option" there

James, Mostly Harmless

Catharine's killing of the guards provides a nice preview of the dual nature of how she lives her life and role. Yes, she did

something evil in killing the guards in cold blood. But she did it not out of hate or revenge, but in order to prevent future evil.

NerfContessa

Ah, yes.

The beginning of Catherine path.

Seeing an injustice, and judging it.

Gonna be important to her name and into book 6.

Dont want to spoiler more, but remember this exact moment.

Catherine judging.

ANON

I am afraid a few of these foxes might be repeats?

Key: parenthesis remove, bracket add: My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive (being) another cleaning in one piece.

. One of the few things that redeemed the Rat's Nest from all the other hole-in-the-ground taverns was that (the) Harrion didn't water the beer.

. I'd tried my luck more than once and been shown the door before deciding that the Rat's Nest [was] my golden chance

she'd have a fit at learning I wanted to enrol[l] in the officer's school for the Legions of Terror.

the Dread Empire of Praes did not brook [any] dissent, much less open [an] one.

****Maybe?****

They were the Knight's elite bodyguards and the veterans from the Fields of Streges I'd eavesdropped on said (every)[each] one was supposed to be the match of ten fighting men.

****Maybe?****

Kitebroken

but he went on the offensive the moment I have him an opening.

Should be "I gave him"

[Touch Pu'uhonua](#)

My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive being another cleaning in one piece.

→

My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive another cleaning in one piece.

Which means I might have Leyran for only company tonight

→

Which means I might only have Leyran for company tonight

laundry day at the orphanage wasn't for a few days yet and the Matron checked out clothes every morning

→

laundry day at the orphanage wasn't for a few days yet and the Matron checked our clothes every morning

the Governor's office was sending an official notice by that the end

of next month all establishments serving liquor would need to be affiliated with the proper guild or face additional taxes

→

the Governor's office was sending an official notice that by the end

of next month all establishments serving liquor would need to be affiliated with the proper guild or face additional taxes

Otherwise you get another tax hitch

→

Otherwise you get another tax hike

"I'll try figure something out, Catherine,"

→

"I'll try to figure something out, Catherine,"

I'd tried my luck more than once and been shown the door before deciding that the Rat's Nest my golden chance

→

I'd tried my luck more than once and been shown the door before deciding that the Rat's Nest was my golden chance

I never got to finish the sentence, as a vicious hit to the temple

sending me tumbling to the ground

→

I never got to finish the sentence, as a vicious hit to the temple

sent me tumbling to the ground

She was huddled in a corner, shaking like a leaf

→

She was huddled in a corner, shaking like a leaf

"Joseph," the man said in strained voice

->

"Joseph," the man said in a strained voice

slapping down Allen effortlessly

->

slapping Allen down effortlessly

keeping the struggling Joseph up in their air

->

keeping the struggling Joseph up in the air

to think that fighting through a childish fear of heights and
staring

down the smiling monster in front of me was the same

->

to think that fighting through a childish fear of heights and
staring

down the smiling monster in front of me were the same

I was wary of giving the man many name

->

I was wary of giving the man my name

except of course for the dozen of armoured soldiers

->

except of course for the dozen armoured soldiers

Maybe if I'd gone at the House of Light more often

->

Maybe if I'd gone to the House of Light more often

I watched as the blood gurgled out out of his throat

->

I watched as the blood gurgled out of his throat

Aran

This would have to be "after", right? The sentence would make
more sense that way, and she also said the Conquest was two
decades ago and she's fifteen.

stevenneiman

"reputation he did if he lost his head [this->that] easily"

"I'd tried my luck more than once and been shown the door before
deciding that the Rat's Nest {was} my golden chance."

"I was wary of giving the man [many->my] name but it would have
been rude not to" I assume that's what it was supposed to say

This somehow reminds me of Griffith and Casca from the Hawk knights in Berserk when reading this story. Despite the differences, it just reminds me so.

[elyandarin](#)

I have him an opening -> gave

checked out clothes -> our

Rani

Well this character just seems rather boring and cliché right now tbh. For all you claim that she's not going to be a stereotypical hero she fits the bill of stereotypical anti-hero very well. Hopefully that changes in the future but right now it's easy as hell to tell what she's going to do because we've all seen it dozens, if not hundreds, of times before.

The poor vagrant orphan who nonetheless is doing her best for her future with no real friends, goes to help someone most people wouldn't when she comes across something horrible and ends up losing to be saved by the strongest man around. He then offers her an apprenticeship and she leaves her world behind (because as we've already mentioned she's (like all f these characters always are) is an Orphan and a loner so the choice is always easy in the end after a bit of struggling with losing everything they've ever know), and they become the judges of evil. If they're fantasy based then they kill, if they're modern based... well they usually also kill but there's also a chance they'll be a Batman instead of a Punisher.

Still. Nothing new or original so far. Rather boringly cliché so far actually.

[HannaB](#)

if you know another story like this, rec pls

[Kari1278](#)

I love stories like these, people say stereotypical, I say traditional.

I'll recommend some amazing stereotypical stories that I've had the fortune of reading.

~ Red Sister by Mark Lawrence

Lonely street urchin saved by an adult and offered an education in violence, she'll save the world by book three.

~ Nevernight by Jay Kristoff

This is the one that best fits the description. This is girl a CLASSIC antihero. Awesome books!

Can't remember more at the moment, I'm afraid, but there's no better place to start. If I remember, I'll add more afterwards.

D. S. Oliver

Yea, so far I don't like where this is going.

Also, I always wonder why people feel one rape (without bruises, without killing, without maiming any body parts) is OMGAWDZ so much more terrible, unfair and devious than murder, massacres, slaughters, so on and so forth.

Our "heroine" very likely just condemned the family of the guard, an innocent woman and child to starve (since she has no job at all). Very heroic of her part.

And things like Legions of Terror, what the Warlock does, and what the Black Knight supposedly has done... they are all more justifiable than a rape in a dark alley? Because she seems very comfortable with Black even though she knows he's a monster MUCH worse than that guard she killed would ever be... ever.

Also, funny thing – the rapist might have actually done that for the last time. All the scene played like he was half-regreting what he had tried and that he had to murder people to cover it up. He probably felt it was the only way, but it was much more likely he wouldn't do this shit again for a long time, if ever. And – right when he decides never to rape again – comes his death. Truly, good deeds never go unpunished. Perhaps if he never repented and killed them quick and clean, the Blackguard might have never cared.

In fact, I very much think he's not the kind of guy who goes saving little girls in dark alleys as a hobby in his free time. There's obviously some unknown cogs at work here, perhaps a prophecy or destiny visions. He might be here for her for specific reasons, not blind chance.

And even if not that, I would say he enjoyed the sweetness of corrupting her into evil, might be more worth it than to keep already-evil guys alive.

Insanenoodlyguy

You are confusing Evil as an ideal with Evil as an application, and Black is clearly about the latter. He is not for some grand cause of advancing evil, he's of the idea that "If you have power, you can do as you like, adherence to some moral code will only weaken you." Catherine killing those men isn't about advancing the cause of evil, it's about her having the power and making the choice unbound by even HIS laws, if it comes to it.

Boobah

Our protagonist isn't the person who, knowing the penalty for rape, decided it was OK 'just this once.' No, the reason the Rapist's family lost their breadwinner was the Rapist.

The last time? Unlikely. The Rapist is playing for sympathy; probably unneeded, but then the sergeant's 'concern' that this be the last time was also just a bit of playacting. Consider that he'd concealed himself nearby to watch over his friend, yet did nothing until it appeared the Rapist might face consequences for his action. The whole exchange had a well-worn feel to it; the both of them have been in other dark alleys before, standing over other terrified women. Reading between the lines, I expect the sergeant's original plan was to murder the Rapist's victim once he was done.

kelioez

If it goes like how uve written, I'll give u a like and a gift.

Letouriste

I have a feeling the sergent was a good guy^^ whatever.

Rereading this for...the fourth time? More? I don't remember:/ I noted the healer is probably someone known, like a famous mage of the war or something. He didn't appeared again in the story yet but I think he will

[HannaB](#)

the sergeant taking sides against Cat and to help his buddy get away with this shit AGAIN tells you all you need to know

sure, he was probably more self aware about WHY Cat was killing him, but that doesn't change the fact the reason was good -_-

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Castration does seem like a reasonable alternative, yes. I might give them a choice, though – I would personally prefer to lose an arm to losing my ability to have children, but it seems like a choice that should be up to them.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Ah, that comment was meant in reply to J.I.M.S, for clarity.

[Mental Mouse](#)

In the real world, castration doesn't work too well against predators like that.

Briefly, their habits are already formed, and castrating an adult doesn't do half of what most people think. Even if they were fully emasculated (so they technically "don't have anything to rape with"), that in no way keeps them from brutalizing the vulnerable, *and* it gives them a standing grudge to take out on their victims.

Dizzregard YouTube

A longer chapter than I'm used to reading online. The only difference between Villains and Heroes, the people that believe in them. Hero isn't a noun, it is a verb. I'm excited to read more of this but I have to read a certain book before I can continue.

[HannaB](#)

"hero isn't a noun, it's a verb"

♥ ♥ ♥

Snowfire1224

Rereading and I just realized something, with the fact that Cat scratched the sergeants face up, they probably still would have been questions even though they didn't use blade to commit their crime

someguy

they might not survive being [put through] another cleaning in one piece.

especially whenever, by some miracle, an attractive woman ended up at the Nest. (added 2 commas)

but if he ended up inheriting the tavern, he'd likely run it into the ground.

by the harbour, dropped my bag on the dirt floor and ... (replaced and with comma)

The water made the rag [feel] cool and pleasant (replaced had with made)

and the Matron checked our clothes every morning. (replaced out with our)

the Governor's office was sending an official notice that by the end of next month, all establishments serving liquor would need to be affiliated with the proper guild or face additional taxes. ('by that' replaced with 'that by' and added comma after month)

but before I could say anything, a group of patrons walked in. (added comma)

before deciding that the Rat's Nest [was] my golden chance.

but besides that, the furniture was sparse. (added comma)

but for the first time since I'd walked into the alley, I felt safe. (added comma)

ALowVerus

"but he went on the offensive the moment I have him an opening."

"Gave" him an opening?

road

1. Captain takes the guards away. ("The behemoth of a woman saluted, the would-be rapist still slung over her shoulder, and picked up the sergeant's foot. She dragged him across the ground none too gently and crossed the corner.")

2. Guards are still lying around. ("...but right now, standing in the dark alley by the unconscious bodies of two men who'd been slapped down effortlessly...")

[What a Fine Patrick](#)

I'm intrigued.

D. S. Oliver

"but what was I supposed to do – just cover my ears and go on my merry way?"

...yes, that was what you were supposed to do, unless you are someone with a hero syndrome – I hate that sort.

Also, if you are even more careful, you could also stay hidden and just enjoy the show. When he finishes and leaves, you could slip away without danger. Or, if you are that hero-like prick, you could instead help the little raped girl, lead her to the hospital, etc.

The worst option is to risk your life for someone you have no idea who is and could very well have killed 10 children or envenomed husbands. You just DON'T know. Not everyone is innocent. In fact, I would say there is no innocence. Even today, we kill animals mercilessly to eat. Aren't they innocent too?

"In the struggle for life, perfidy is a tactic, cunning a necessity, ambush a right. You have to kill to live, or decide to die to let the ones who want to keep killing to live on."

P.s: I have mentioned this in other post but I repeat here. WHY people feel like rape is worse than basically every other evil there is?

Would you prefer to be raped 1 time or:

- Lose an arm
- Lose a leg
- Lose your tongue
- Lose your husband
- Lose your children
- Lose your brother
- Be robbed of everything you own.
- Have your house burnt down along with all your possessions (and you have no insurance)
- Live in constant hunger and misery
- Be tortured
- Lose all the money you have saved for your or your children's inheritance/future/school tuition
- Fall sick for years
- Get uncurable (or curable but very expensive to treat) cancer

I think most SANE people, faced with these choices, would say that a single rape is a minor evil than have any of those things happen to them. After, all, a rape doesn't maim you of anything, doesn't make you poorer or give you cancer.

I always find it so amazing that people consider rapists to be worse than thieves, murderers, torturers, arsonists, shark debtors, poisoners or disease carriers, and violent policeman, thugs or mafia who can maim you for life.

Are people even aware of how bleak life actually is? It might be we westerners are too protected from the true darkness of the world, if we think a rape is cause for a person to die.

P.s.2. Also, another funny thing is that no one considers whatever good a person has done in all his life. If he makes one thing evil, then that evil automatically and forever defines the person and is ALL that person truly is. For example, we don't know if that guard is a samaritan, how many people he saved from bandits, how many thugs he arrested, if he gives money to charity, how well he tries to raise his son, how well he treats his wife in a time where many don't care for women, etc. He is none of these things, he is A RAPIST. And nothing else matters to the public. Any negatives basically define a person and all the positives are just waved away like they are air. Like someone uses a "mask" and so everything he has done previously is just him "hiding" his TRUE self – when the contrary is most often true: the mask is often put exactly when people are doing evil things, their true character is most often very different.

[irrevariant](#)

A couple of things you may not have factored in:

1. The man was not just a rapist, he was also an attempted murderer.

2. Catherine didn't just kill him because he had raped multiple times in the past. She killed him because he gave every indication that he would just keep doing it again and again and again if given the chance.

Arguably the other guy was less culpable, but again: attempted murderer.

You sound like you have the seeds of a really interesting story of your own there, about a society whose justice system genuinely tries to weigh the balance of an entire life when passing judgement, rather than sentencing based on the crime as we do. I'd read that. 😊

[irrelevant](#)

P.S. In terms of the 'hierarchy of evil', rape may not be at the top but it's up there with all the other forms of torture that leave someone traumatised and impaired for an extended period.

Crimes that inflict harm and suffering on people are generally considered more heinous than crimes against property, and with good reason. I can see your argument that crimes against property that *result* in extended harm and suffering to people (eg. forces them to live on the streets, or leaves them unable to afford necessary medical care) can be just as serious, depending. That's a legitimate point.

We are indeed comparatively lucky in the West – life is *much* bleaker in some places. And it makes sense that people in those places, who already have an excess of suffering, would be much less charitable than we are towards the sort of people who deliberately assault and torture others.

Poetically Psychotic

Why is rape considered so evil, despite doing relatively little physical harm? Two reasons: agency, and justification. Rape robs the victim of a lot of agency, and rape is almost invariably poorly justified (and exceptionally difficult to justify in the first place). Let's expand on that.

Agency:

What elevates a crime from just "breaking the rules" to "evil"? The amount of suffering it inflicts is a pretty easy answer (which is why petty shoplifting isn't usually regarded as serious; the victim rarely loses anything but a very small

percentage of their wealth). However, suffering is a pretty vague term, and it breaks down in the specifics. Is painlessly murdering someone still wrong? How do you even compare different cases, when suffering is a subjective experience that can vary wildly from person to person and situation to situation in terms of duration, quality, and intensity (what hurts more, a 1-hour splitting headache, or a day of low-grade back pain?)?

A better metric, in my opinion, is loss of agency. Really just a subset of suffering, loss of agency refers to being unable to do the things you would normally be able to/want to do, and is relatively consistent between cases. Losing an arm could be anywhere from painless to agonizing, but no matter what the victim won't be able to feel the limb or use the limb for anything anymore. Another thing in favor of this metric is that humans, as a rule, value agency extremely highly (which is why the Bill of Rights is such a big deal, for example); I assume you agree with me about this based on your examples (loss of limbs, muteness, debilitating conditions; all unified in that they greatly reduce agency no matter how much pain was involved). Here are some examples, in roughly ascending order of loss of agency:

Beating – At the low end of the loss of agency scale is injuring someone in a superficial and nonpermanent way; the only real cost to bruises is a few days pain. Nobody seems upset with the main character for beating a man in the ring because a) it was his choice to be there and b) all it really cost him was some money for healing.

Crippling – these injuries have serious long-term effects on what the victim is capable of, and anyone dishing them out needs a good justification to not be labelled a bad person (more on justification later).

Forcing someone into poverty – this forces them to completely rearrange their life and severely curtails what options are available to them as well as their family, and as such this is a pretty immoral act (debilitating diseases also fall into this category, but I'm focusing on things that a person can do to another person).

Coercion – is a weird one, because it can vary from truly horrible (kill this person or I shoot your child, for instance) to relatively minor; ultimately I think the amount of agency lost increases the shittier the choice is, but also you do always at least have a choice.

Torture – Why is this so far down the scale? Because even if your torturer only deals superficial damage, you are absolutely in their power for the duration. There is almost *nothing* you can do that they haven't allowed you to (barring incompetence on their part); they have complete control of both your future and your body, and thus your agency has been reduced to almost zero. Every cut they make only reinforces that fact to the victim.

Killing – pretty much the final word as far as robbing someone of agency goes. They'll never be making a choice ever again.

So. Where does rape fit into this? As far as loss of agency, I rank it worse than torture. Not only does it inflict suffering, not only is the aggressor in control of your body, but because of how the human body is built you are forced to *enjoy* it. That is disgusting in a way typically reserved for the worst forms of mind control, and it represents total, 100% loss of agency (body, future, and mind). More than that, it's uniquely traumatizing, as cognitive dissonance will continue to wreak havoc in the victim's psyche for a long time to come, often leaving victims feeling like it's their own fault. There's a reason sexual assault has almost 50% odds of inflicting PTSD, significantly higher than any other trauma. For comparably vile single crimes, you've really only got torture (lesser degree, but potentially longer duration, and potentially greater risk of crippling), murder (total loss of agency, but at least your mind is your own until the end, and by definition the trauma is brief), and slavery (significantly less loss of agency, but far greater duration). Is rape some sort of ultimate evil compared to these? No, but that's only because all of them are in the very deepest parts of the alignment pool; comparing them is like comparing shades of black.

Justification:

The other part of what makes something evil (in most people's minds, at least) is the reason for doing it. We look far more favorably on a thief trying to feed their starving children than on one doing it for the sport. A good justification can make just about any crime seem non-evil, or at least sympathetic. This is most obvious when it comes to killing; there are so many reasons to kill, and they have such an impact on how said killing will be judged by others, that there are names for most of them that define or imply their justification. Self defense (typically seen as well-justified), manslaughter (instantaneous passion; poor justification, but is at least slightly sympathetic), accident (typically seen as well-justified unless it was a result of negligence), assassination (implies money was the motive; poorly justified in most cases), revenge (the justification is obvious, though YMMV on whether it holds water), or capital punishment (not opening that can of worms here, but it bears mentioning).

How does this apply to rape? Because, in fiction and in reality, the justification for rape is almost always "Because I enjoyed it and didn't care that it would hurt them" or "Because I couldn't help myself". The former is not not not a justification that holds any water at all in anything but a dystopia where morality has broken down and might makes right; I am more than comfortable declaring a person who commits any crime of this magnitude with that justification capital e Evil.

It implies such a disregard for morality, such a fundamental selfishness, that they *cannot* be considered a safe and functioning member of society, no matter how well they toe the line in other areas. The latter, when not just an excuse to cover up the former, signifies someone with so little control over their own actions they need serious help, as in therapy, medication, the whole works (and to be kept away from potential victims in the meantime); however, I would have a hard time disagreeing with a law decreeing that their victims deserved justice (and I would be comfortable with a *lot* more than 5 years).

burguulkodar

Well then, I have read your text but we have to agree on disagree.

I feel your classification based on agency is well-put, but then you go on and put Rape on a wrong shelf your own scaling.

As I see it, rape should be put over "Beating" (because it certainly is more grievous and the sexual side is one of the most fragile parts in most people bodies) but certainly below or at least equal rank with "Crippling".

The reason is, as I say, lost of agency – after a rape, you lose no agency whatsoever. Ok, your ego is bruised, you feel used, but hey, if a gang beats you up and then urinates over you, you'd feel pretty shitty too, wouldn't you? How is a rape so very worse than this?

Now, I have to make a larger add to this. I can agree with you to put Rape equal to Torture when it is done repeatedly and over a long time. For example, a father raping his daughter for years or a kidnapper who locks victims in the basement and then proceed to use them as fuck toys for as long as he wishes.

In those cases, even if there is no physical harm besides raping, it IS torture, although I would still find this less damage (If I were a judge and had to apply an amount of years) than someone who would keep a person and torture them by mutilation, because the loss of agency of someone mutilated is far greater than someone who has been raped but has their bodies otherwise completely fine.

I say all this because I don't believe "mental damage" on rape is so very much greater than actual loss of agency granted by body parts or even insanity (if someone is tortured until made insane, then that is a loss of agency even greater than mutilation, for sanity is the thing that keeps everything else in control).

Perhaps my personal view is different than most people because I don't see being violated (I'm a man and I'm gay, though) something so extremely humiliating and debasing that it makes me go into a lifelong trauma. I just can't see. Perhaps when I was a virgin and still not gay, but Idk.

I would certainly be pissed off, but I have a specific frame of mind that when i can't fight something, I should try and enjoy instead. That's what I would do in these situations, plus sometimes the rapist might even lose their pleasure if they notice the victim isn't afraid or struggling, since that's a huge part of the pleasure of doing it. And that would be a little bit of revenge right there.

I also wonder if perhaps men are less prone to depression and mental problems based on sex-stuff than women, but then some men that are too masculine might feel it destroys how they view themselves (although I might point that is their own fault for having delusions about themselves or life).

I have talked with several gay men that had been abused in some form or another during their youth and pretty much every one felt ok about it, and many were fond of those times, when looking back. It would make them hard while enjoying those memories even if at the time they didn't understand it yet (of course, most of that abuse wasn't very violent, was made by cousins or older children/teens), but even in some violent cases, some liked and went for more after a while.

Maybe this just works for men since they don't feel as a woman that it destroys their virginity and are not afraid of getting pregnant. Who knows.

About justification... hmm... well, "rape" when done to minors can be willing, so I wouldn't rank those people with major "E" of evil, because they aren't really forcing someone into it despite what they want. Or perhaps they are full of hormones (teenagers) and want to fuck their little cousin because they feel it is a "fun thing" to do and that their cousin would enjoy.

Or even fathers or teachers who feel a teen that likes them and wants to retribute.

But still, I understand your point, though I can't agree to it due to the reasons I exposed, and even with your classification I feel it should be a bit down in the scale. There are some rapists who need medical attention, but Rape in general is not that damaging as people see.

And who really cares about justifications, and not the effects of the act?

As our villain says,
"Justifications just matters to the just".

ShadeWraith

When it comes to rape its just another way that someone uses another person for the personal gains. IN this case it may be used as a form of sexual gratification.

When you want to writing evil characters and justifying this evil that, is the only justification.

"Because I enjoyed it and didn't care that it would hurt them" or "Because I couldn't help myself". The former is not not a justification that holds any water at all in anything but a dystopia where morality has broken down and might makes right;

That is the justification. I want to rub body against metatags for pleasure. What do you care about meatbags? they are meatbags. they dont deserve anything. Your little nonsense about consent and justice are trash will be tossed into the pigsty with your bloody corpse where they belong.

You also seem to be confused as what is safe for society. THis IS the society. Nothing is safe. Who cares about therapy and medication where humans are being eaten as food?

[elyandarin](#)

the Rat's Nest my golden chance. -> was my

Big I

Coming back to this chapter after reading much more of the story, it's easy to see Catherine's fight in the Pit as a metaphor for the battle of Above vs Below, and her part in it.

[wadeingintheriver](#)

I wonder, looking back from the current point in the story, if the minstrel in the Rat's Nest could more properly be Named a Bard? After all, it's interesting that a newly hired female singer who apparently can't carry a tune would be near our protagonist at the beginning of their Story.

Phthisical Void

My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive being another cleaning in one piece.
(Remove 'being' and the sentence is fine)

It is kinda late to be correcting you but I figure I can coming so late into this novel that the mistakes in the early chapters could use cleaning the most.

Ebert the Alamans, scholar errant

The role of socially accepted contests of violence in civilized culture often springs from the martial and legal history of the land in question. Imperial Callow is somewhat of a special case due to the unique blend of cultural identity and political restructuring following the annexation.

The invasion and rule of Callow, while political in nature, often saw influx of law and ideals determined by the nature of the occupying force, e.g., the reformed imperial military. While Callow was known for its mounted warriors, the imperial army fields little cavalry of note, relying on heavy foot for the majority of their fighting forces.

Thus, fighting for honor and coin became removed from the jousts and highly stylized fighting of the upper classes and became the (illegal) province of the poor, outcasts, and generally disaffected of society.

For more information, see my publication "Honor Duels to Brawls: Societal Violence in Times of Peace"

[Isaac Linn](#)

"Harrion himself was seated on a stool at the desk and the old man gestured for me to come in without turning."

Comma is needed before the and

[Isaac Linn](#)

"I'd tried my luck more than once and been shown the door before deciding that the Rat's Nest my golden chance."

insert "is"

[Isaac Linn](#)

Oops, "was" might work better

[Isaac Linn](#)

"if her feathers were ruffled by my serving drinks Lakeside, she'd have a fit at learning I wanted to enrol in the officer's school for the Legions of Terror."

enroll

[Isaac Linn](#)

"the Dread Empire of Praes did not brook dissent, much less open one."

insert "an"

katie

Really enjoying the story so far! Glad I find this!

Maidas

"When you make the decision cold?"

Is this referring to that she hadn't killed anyone before?

Lane Johnson

Correction: It should be " He steered me towards the door and I could NOT have cared less about our destination..."

Anonymous

Typo. Sixth paragraph:

"the moment I have him an opening",

"have" should be "gave".

Easy mistake to make with the benefit of modern auto-misspellers.

Rraune

"after all, and there wasn't a single pie in the city where he wasn't shoving in his fingers"

all, there wasn't a single pie in the city, that he wasn't shoving his fingers into

"My boots were old enough as it was, they might not survive being another cleaning in one piece."

survive another cleaning

"I'd tried my luck more than once and been shown the door before deciding that the Rat's Nest my golden chance."

Rat's Nest was my

"I was wary of giving the man many name but it would have been rude not to, after the way he'd just saved my hide."

man my name

Chapter 2: Invitation

"Before embarking on a journey of revenge, dig two graves. One for the fool and one for all those pesky relatives."

– Dread Emperor Vindictive the First

I took me a moment to remember where I was when I woke up.

They'd taken me to the inn they were staying at when I'd said I didn't want to go back to orphanage, though I couldn't remember actually saying the words. I was alone in the room, so allowed myself to luxuriate in the feeling of a soft bed twice the size of the one I had in my dormitory. The Praesi hadn't picked one of the really expensive places to stay in, but they hadn't picked a bad one either. The sun filtering in through the shutters told me it was late in the afternoon, so I'd slept through most of the day. *Who knew that slitting a pair of throats would take that much out of you*, I thought. I'd meant for the sentence to be a form of self-reproach but when trying to summon up regret for what I'd done last night, the well came up empty. I sat up in the bed and ran a somehow still-tired hand through my hair. It was a mess, the dark locks having gotten all tangled up overnight.

Now that I had a little bit of distance from the whole affair I was starting to think I'd been steered in the direction of taking those lives. For what reason, though, I couldn't even begin to imagine. Who knew why villains did what they did? *Not that it changes anything. I made the decision, and made it for my own reasons*. I wasn't sure if my actions had been just, but even under the light of day I didn't think my decision had been wrong. I used the large bowl of water by the bed to splash my face and wiped it off with the towel next to it, the last dregs of sleepiness driven off by the lukewarm water. There was a sheathed knife next to it, one I had no trouble remembering the last time I'd seen. Distantly I recalled trying to give it back the night before and being told it was now mine. *Not too sure how I should feel about that*.

So. What now?

I was starving, so I might as well see if I could get a meal of this. I didn't get the feeling that this whole business was done, but what more could the Knight want from me? *No, that's the wrong way to think about this*. If he wanted something, he'd get it: I didn't have the power to stop him. What I needed to think about was what I could manage to get out of this mess. It wasn't like I

was going to run into anyone that high up the Empire's ranks again anytime soon, so I had to find an angle. I'd bought this opportunity with blood, so I'd be damned if I didn't make it count. The Black Knight had a lot of pull in War College, I remembered hearing – which made sense, since he more or less commanded the Legions the cadets were being formed to join. Maybe if I played my cards right I could talk him into getting me a place in this year's classes. At the moment I had almost enough to cover my tuition, but the trip to the Wasteland was another expense, and not a cheap one. I was pretty sure a word from the Empress' right hand would take care of that swiftly, though. The only other obstacle I could think of was that anyone wanting to go into Praes proper from Callow would need papers, but for once being an orphan would be an advantage: the orphanages were an Imperial institution, so every one of us had been registered at the Governor's office.

Most Callowans still weren't registered, since forcing it after the Conquest would have caused the kind of civil unrest that the Empire had aimed to avoid, but it was becoming more common as time passed- there were all kinds of restriction on the kind of offices you could hold if you weren't. A lot of the older generation muttered under their breath that having your name on Imperial record couldn't possibly end well, and to be honest I wasn't sure if they were wrong. I'd served drinks and talked to enough legionaries that I no longer believed that they were always one moment away from malevolently setting fire to the city and dancing in the ashes – they had a better reputation than the city guard, these days – but those records were made for people back in Ater, the Empire's capital. From what I'd heard of the nobles that dwelled in the City of Black Gates they were not the kind of people you ever wanted to have your name. Even other Praesi spoke of them with distrust.

My blouse was still bloodstained from last night, I saw as I inspected my reflection in the mirror hung up on the wall. There were flecks of dried red on the blue in the shape of the blood spray that had been two men's lives and I didn't feel like walking through the streets with that damning mark on my clothes. It looked like they'd thought of everything: there was a long-sleeved shirt and a pair of trousers neatly folded on the dresser. I changed unhurriedly and slipped on my boots before leaving the room, procrastinating out of apprehension. Bad habit, I knew, but given the circumstances I was willing to let it slide.

A short flight of stairs down brought me to the inn's common room. It was deserted, which was unusual at this time of the day: there should have been travellers from outside the city trickling in and regulars huddled around their usual tables. Laure had been the capital of the Kingdom of Callow, before the Conquest, and even under the Empire it remained one of the wealthiest cities

around. Whose pockets that wealth ended up in was another story, but given that we were a major trade centre the good inns should be packed around this time of the year. No trace of the innkeep either, just a lone woman sitting at one of the tables by the hearth. She had a stack of paper around her and was writing on a sheet of parchment, dipping her quill with clockwork regularity. She hadn't raised her head from her work as I made my way down the stairs, so she must not have heard me.

"Take a seat," she spoke calmly, eyes still intent on the parchment.

... Or maybe she had. I claimed the chair across from her, not sure where I was supposed to go from here.

"The innkeeper will be along momentarily with breakfast," the stranger said.

I nodded, then felt foolish when I realized she hadn't so much as looked at me yet.

"I'm-" I started.

"I know who you are, Catherine Foundling," she cut in indifferently.

I raised an eyebrow.

"This is starting to be a pattern," I said. "What should I call you?"

"Scribe."

Oh. That wasn't a name, it was a Name. *And that's you shouldn't mouth off to strangers. Again.* The Conquest was laid at the feet of the five Calamities, in the stories: the Black Knight, Warlock, Captain, Ranger and Assassin. The woman in front of me wasn't one of them, and she didn't make it to the fore of the legends the way Ranger and Warlock did. I supposed her Role didn't exactly lend itself to flashy gestures – but she wasn't an unknown either. It was said that she followed Black around like a second shadow, tidying up everything behind the victories so that it would run smoothly. Thinking about it, I was a little surprised not to have seen her last night. Her actual level of authority in the Empire was subject to debate, but there were few people stupid enough to disagree that getting on her bad side would be a very bad idea. The innkeeper broken the awkward silence – well awkward on my part anyway, she didn't seem to notice – that settled between us by striding into the room with a

plate full of eggs and sausage, sliding it in front of me with a practiced smile.

"Ma'am," he greeted me. "Lady Scribe, are you sure I can't offer you tea or wine?"

"That won't be necessary," she replied.

It was reassuring to see I wasn't the only one she wouldn't raise her head for. The man slunk back to his kitchen after a respectful bow, leaving me to dig into my first meal of the day. It wasn't the fanciest of fares, but it was fresh and I was starving: I'd never eaten a better meal in my life. By the time I was polishing off the last of the sausage Scribe finished whatever it was she was doing, signing at the bottom of the parchment with a flourish before resting the tip of her quill against her inkwell.

"Black should be back before the evening bell," she told me. "He'll be wanting to speak to you."

I didn't reply immediately, partially because I wasn't sure how I felt about the most famous villain of our age wanting to speak to me again but also because I was studying the woman sitting across from me. She was rather plain-faced in appearance, with ink-stained fingers and a diminutive stature. *Though given we're about the same height, maybe I should have used more flattering phrasing.* She lacked the presence Black and Captain had shown yesterday, the way they could fill up a room just by standing in it. I would have been skeptical she even had a Name, if not for the way she'd effortlessly picked out my presence earlier. There was something tightly contained about Scribe, and I reminded myself that a Name didn't have to involve fighting to be dangerous.

"Any idea what he wants to talk about?" I asked.

"The matron at your orphanage has been notified you're still alive," she replied, ignoring the question entirely. "She was getting worried."

I let out a vaguely thankful noise. I didn't dislike Matron Nelter, even if her lecturing sometimes got on my nerves. She didn't approve of my working at the Rat's Nest, sure – and would have thrown a fit of epic proportions if she'd been aware I fought in the Pit – but then the Laure House for Tragically Orphaned Girls had a history of setting up its wards for work more glamorous than serving drinks. Girls usually left the orphanage with enough education to pick up a trade or serve as tutors for noble children. That she took the time to get on my case meant that she cared, in her own way. Scribe seemed to have decided our conversation was over, because she pulled out a fresh

sheet a parchment from the pile and dipped her quill. As it turned out, she was right about the Knight being back soon: I'd finished the sausage and I was halfway through a mug of tea when he strolled into the common room.

"Good evening, Catherine," he greeted me cheerfully. "Scribe."

"Black," the plain-faced woman replied, and I had to give her points for the amount of guts it took to snub the godsdamned *Black Knight* in favour of a sheet of parchment.

"The numbers confirm it?" he asked, apparently used to her cool indifference.

"Yes. Not that it matters, given the confession. Captain?"

"Having a talk with Orim as of this moment."

Some of that had gone over my head, but the last name was one I recognized. General Orim – Orim the Grim, his legionnaires called him with a fond smile – was the head of the Fifth Legion, which served as Laure's garrison. I finished the last of my tea, waiting for my turn.

"Catherine," Black said after a heartbeat, turning to face me, "you..."

He paused.

"Look like you have a question?" he finished.

"This is going to sound a little strange," I prefaced myself. "But I mean, I've heard stories and I think it needs to be asked. Could save a lot of trouble down the road and all."

He raised an eyebrow, remaining silent.

"So, uh, just to be sure," I said. "You wouldn't happen to be my long-lost father who put me in an orphanage so I'd be safe from his enemies and is coming to get me now that I'm old enough to take care of myself?"

To my mild horror, I drew a laugh out of the monster sitting across from me. He seemed genuinely amused by the question, so I guessed I was still an orphan. *Thank the Heavens for that*, I thought. Still, that meant I was now drawing a blank as to why he'd taken an interest in me.

"No," he replied, "I'm afraid I had no hand in your conception. Besides, one is never quite old enough to deal with the kind of enemies I have."

"I can imagine," I said, though I really couldn't.

Couldn't think of a lot of people who'd worry the man sitting across from me, truth be told. There was only one Duchess left in Callow and the woman in question was Deoraithe, who didn't really want anything to do with the rest of the country. The idea of her leading a rebellion against the Empire was pretty laughable, and there were no other nobles left with enough pull. The First Prince of the Principate, maybe? Rumours had it she'd finally put an end to their civil war, so they were probably going to start looking at their neighbours again.

"Speaking of questionable individuals," he said, "I was hoping we might have a word on the subject of the Governor."

I raised an eyebrow.

"I'm told most of the words I'd use for him aren't supposed to be spoken by proper ladies."

"Are you?" he smiled. "A proper lady, that is?"

I snorted. So he wanted to talk about Governor Mazus, huh. I could do that. He might not like what I had to say, but I could do that.

"He's probably the most hated man in the Empire," I told him honestly. "Nobody speaks up because if you do the guards come knocking at your door, but I don't think there's a lot of people in Laure who wouldn't shank him if they thought they could get away with it."

Black let out a thoughtful noise, sipping at his cup.

"I was under the impression he was on good terms with the Guilds, at least," he said.

I shrugged.

"With the amount of gold he's been throwing at the guild masters, that's kind of a given," I replied. "The few that didn't want anything to do with him met unfortunate accidents and their replacements were a lot more cooperative."

"Unfortunate accidents?" he probed.

"He's not even being subtle about it," I scowled. "Tara Goldeneye – she was in charge of the Spicer's Guild and told him she's rather go broke than take his bribes – drowned in a bathtub that barely had a inch of water in it. And don't even get me started on the city guard."

"I take it incidents like yesterday aren't unheard of?"

"They do what they're supposed to, mostly," I conceded. "But it's an open secret they're his thugs and they tend to get rough when they collect the extraordinary taxes."

His lips thinned.

"Ah yes, the famous taxes. He's been making quite a stir back in Ater with those."

"Funny the way they're all temporary but somehow never go away," I grunted.

The taxes were the main reason Mazus was so hated. Everyone expected whatever Praesi the Empress appointed Governor to try to turn Laure into his personal fiefdom, but after a decade of the Legions running the city people had become used to the people in charge being even-handed. As long as you didn't make a mess or commit a crime, the legionnaires didn't really care what Callowans did. Mazus poked his nose in everything, and the nose was usually followed by a hand that grabbing for more gold.

Food prices had been steadily hiking up for the last few years, and I'd heard people complain that merchandise that wasn't guild-approved was tariffed heavily. And since the guilds took a take of anything they approved – which Mazus got part of, of course – just the cost of joining could put smaller merchants out of business. More than being unfair, the whole thing infuriated me because it was *stupid*. Laure saw nowhere as much business as it had a decade ago, and these days at least half of the people at the Summer Fair were locals. The man was so focused on squeezing everything he could out of the city that he didn't realize he was strangling it.

"It's sheer idiocy," Black agreed, and I nearly jumped out of my skin.

Could he actually read minds, or had I said any of that out loud?

"Your face said it all," the green-eyed man told me with an amused smile.

My pulse quickened. I wasn't entirely sure he was telling me the truth. But he was agreeing with me. *Why?* Wouldn't more gold for the Empire be good from his point of view, regardless of how Mazus got it? Even if the situation ended up blowing up in the Governor's face, the Legion garrison would be enough to put down the riots. I had a dozen questions on the tip of my tongue, but I wasn't so sure I should ask them. He'd been reasonable so far, almost affable actually, but it wouldn't do to forget that the man across from me had brought an entire kingdom to its knees.

Maybe another girl would have thought that the way he kept smiling meant he was my friend, but I didn't have any of those to

confuse him with. And yet, I could feel that same old itch under my skin. The need to know *why* instead of stopping at "this is how it is", the compulsion to understand the way everything around me worked. And he'd been the one to make this a dialogue, hadn't he? He could have made it an interrogation – Hells, he could have asked someone better informed than a sixteen year old orphan girl – but for some reason he'd taken pains to prevent this from being one-sided.

"If he's an idiot," I spoke up against my better judgement, "then why is he Governor?"

Nothing about the Knight's face visibly changed, but there was a distinct feeling of... satisfaction to him. The kind people got when they were proved right about something.

"Mazus wasn't actually expected to make anything of himself here," he said. "It was a purely political appointment."

"The Empress wanted to reward him for something," I guessed, "so she gave him the richest city in Callow to rule."

"It wasn't a reward," Black replied, "it was a bribe. His father is a High Lord and after the Conquest we needed to appease them."

I blinked in surprise.

"Appease them?" I burst out. "She's the *Empress*, why would she need to appease anyone?"

The green-eyed man finished the last of his wine and put the goblet aside.

"You're thinking of power as an absolute, but that's a false perception. If the matron of your orphanage put on a crown and proclaimed herself Governess of Laure, would that somehow grant her authority over the city?"

"I'm guessing that's a rhetorical question," I replied drily.

He hummed in agreement, warming up to his subject.

"It's the same with Malicia. Sitting on the throne doesn't mean all of Praes obeys her every whim. She needs the backing of other people with power or her authority remains little more than a polite fiction."

His tone of voice wasn't all that different from the one the better tutors the orphanage hired used when they spoke about their favourite subject, which was just... odd. The image of the middle-aged scholar in charge of our lessons didn't interpose all that well with that of the villain in front of me.

"So she needs all the High Lords on her side?" I asked.

A sardonic smile quirked his lips.

"That would be quite the achievement, given the way they hate each other almost as much as they hate her," he murmured. "No, she simply needs enough of them under her thumb that the others think rebellion isn't feasible."

"And the best way to get the people she needs on her side is to give them a nice Callowan city to get taxes from," I frowned. "Even if that means the people who live in it get stuck with a bastard like Mazus."

"More or less," he agreed. "The crown receives a certain part of the taxes he collects, which has been a much larger amount of gold than anticipated for the last few years. Questions have been raised, as a consequence."

I raised an eyebrow.

"The Empress isn't pleased she's getting more than she thought she would?"

Black's eyes turned cold.

"Gold doesn't grow on trees, Catherine. Concerns have been raised about how well Laure is doing under that kind of a burden."

I let out a thoughtful noise.

"You're worried you're strangling the golden goose," I mused.

His hand waved dismissively.

"That's part of it, of course, but ultimately it's a minor issue. The real problem is that he's been causing unrest."

"Not that the idea of the Legion putting down a riot isn't all kinds of horrifying," I said, "but aren't they there exactly to deal with that kind of thing?"

I grimaced at myself, a little worried by how easy it had been to slip into the Imperial mindset. I planned to go into the Legions myself, sure, but I'd made that choice with the idea in mind that when I rose up high enough in the ranks I'd be able to prevent the very kind of thing I was talking about. Black poured himself a fresh cup of wine, silently offering to do the same for me. I shook my head. I wasn't that I disliked wine – I'd tried it a few times at the Rat's Nest and found I enjoyed some kinds – but I'd just eaten breakfast and it couldn't be that late anyway. Praesi started drinking early, though, so I wasn't exactly surprised he was on his second cup.

"They could suppress riots easily enough," Black conceded. "But there would be consequences."

Should I, or shouldn't I? *Hells, wouldn't even the most insolent thing I've said to him yet.*

"I didn't think dead Callowans was something you'd worry about all that much, sir."

I took pains to keep my tone polite. It was one thing to tug the dragon's tail, another to stick out your tongue at him at the same time.

"I abhor waste," the Knight replied, apparently nonplussed I'd just implied he was an unrepentant mass-murderer. I supposed I wasn't the first to do so. "And all killing the rioters would accomplish is driving the resentment underground."

He put aside his cup.

"The problem is broader in scope, Catherine. Take two nations, of roughly the same population. One annexes the other, but has no real legitimacy in doing so other than force of arms. How does one keep the annexed nation from rebelling?"

I wasn't sure why he was keeping the names of Praes and Callow out of his hypothetical exercise given how glaringly obvious it was what we were talking about. Detachment, maybe? I guess it was easier to talk about... unpleasant measures if I wasn't outright talking about my countrymen. Still, that was a mighty thing fig leaf.

"Use the Legions – I mean, the conquering nation's armies – to turn the screws on anybody who steps out of line. Hang enough people and nobody's going to pick a fight with you," I said after a moment.

In some ways it was a lot easier to rule when you were Evil. Pesky little concepts like justice or not murdering your way out of situations weren't something you had to worry about.

"Ah, rule through fear," he mused. "That works, to an extent. It's a delicate balance to maintain between having people fear you enough they won't revolt and them being so terrified they think they have nothing to lose. Which is why, when someone does drive the people to that level of terror, it is necessary to step in."

It clicked into place, like one of those fancy metal puzzles they sold in the marketplace.

"Mazus," I realized.

"The policy of the Empire is to *use* Callow, not abuse," Black said. "The Governor is doing more damage than he knows."

I kept the mild sense of disgust that caused in me away from my face. *Who even says something like that?* Yet even of that was still fairly evil, as far as policies went, at least it wasn't stupid. I'd pick having in charge a competent monster over a vicious idiot any day.

"You really think riots in Laure could spread all over?" I asked.

"The key to the Empire maintaining control over the lands it conquered isn't fear, my dear, it's apathy. As long as the common people can go about their business and live their lives mostly untroubled, what do they care who their taxes go to? The Governor is making people care about who rules them again, and that is a very dangerous thing."

"Huh. That explains a lot, actually," I admitted.

For one, it finally shed light on why the Legions of Terror – who took their cues from the Black Knight – had been so hands off compared to Mazus' tenure as ruler of Laure. That the Governor wasn't exactly an ally of the Empress also accounted for why the legionnaires never let an occasion to stick it to Mazus' cronies go by. I'd put it down to a mixture of disliking the man as much as we did and basic decency but it made sense there were also politics at work behind the scenes.

"There's also a subtler danger, and that one is the reason I came here personally," Black added after a moment.

I raised an eyebrow, curious but deciding I'd pushed enough for the day. I didn't know how much rope he was willing to give me, but I had a feeling I'd already drawn enough to hang myself with.

"Think of it as a story, if you will," the green-eyed man murmured. "A city, once the capital of a thriving kingdom, now ruined and oppressed. Its people are crushed under an ever-increasing burden and there is no hope in sight. Enter..."

"The hero," I finished just as quietly.

Shit. That did have the potential of becoming a nasty situation. Just like if you left dry firewood piled up long enough eventually there'd be a spark that set it on fire, if a city like what he'd just described was left unattended too long eventually a Role would emerge to fill the void. Would the hero beat the Black Knight? I doubted it. The last seven to try hadn't, after all, and I'd heard the one from five years ago hadn't even been about for a week before Assassin got him. If he riled up the people in the city enough, though, he could do a lot of damage before being put down. This was on another level, though – the Knight wasn't even fighting a hero, he was making sure the situation where a hero would be created never came to be.

"Heavens wept," I said softly. "No wonder you kill them every time. The arrow's nocked long before you let the sparrow fly."

Black's smile turned sharp as a knife.

"Just because I'm winning doesn't mean I won't cheat."

"So why are you telling me all this?" I asked, waving my hand to encompass the whole conversation. "Wouldn't that make me a liability? You don't seem like the kind of person that leaves loose ends behind."

He picked up his cup and sipped.

"Because you remind me of someone," he replied. "And because after you accompany me to the banquet, I will have an offer for you."

I scowled at the presumption I'd just go with him. It wasn't like he wasn't right – even if he didn't have the authority to force the matter, I was already curious enough to agree – but rubbing it in my face that I didn't have much of a choice just made him an ass.

"A banquet?" I grunted. "Sounds fancy. Should I be bringing anything?"

"It'll be the Governor's banquet," he mused. "So if nothing else, I'd bring the knife."

daniel73

I am loving your story, seriously well written characters

Unmaker

Possible typos:

ao I'd slept
so I'd slept

College ,
College,

travellers
travelers

Black Knight, Warlock, Captain, Ranger, Assassin
Black Knight, Warlock, Captain, Ranger, and Assassin

The woman in front of me rarely wasn't one of them
(a bit weird sounding, maybe meant:)
The woman in front of me really wasn't one of them

favour / favourite
favor / favorite

" you..."
"you..."

Rumours
Rumors

neighbours
neighbors

afable
affable

judgement
judgment

set it on fire
set it on fire

eugene2k

Words ending with "our" instead of "or" are British English.
FYI

name that will only be used once

Exactly, its not even incorrect. It's like correcting someone who has a different accent to you.

Todd

Another excellent chapter, thanks for the tale 😊

stevenneiman

Some more small mistakes:

"I didn't want to go back to {the} orphanage"

"I might as well see if I could get a meal {out} of this" Also, the tense shift makes this feel a bit off. Maybe "I figured I might as well see if I could get a meal out of this."

"commanded the Legions the cadets were being [formed->prepared?] to join."

"there were all kinds of [restriction->restrictions] on the kind of offices you could hold if you weren't." Alternatively "there was all kinds of restriction"

"The innkeeper [broken->broke] the awkward silence"

"but it was fresh and I was starving[:] I'd never eaten a better meal in my life." Should be a period or semicolon. Neurotic, I

know, but the colon isn't used like that.

"Laure saw nowhere {near?} as much business as it had a decade

"Hells, wouldn't even {be?} the most insolent thing I've said to him yet"

"Still, that was a mighty [thing->thin] fig leaf."

"Yet even [of->if] that was still fairly evil, as far as policies went"

Don't worry too much about catching all the typos as long as you're fixing them when noted. Just keep writing a marvelous story and people like me should be plentiful.

I'm really wondering how much Black is actually trying to make the world a better place and how much is just pragmatic villainy. The two can come remarkably close to one another.

[shawkeblog](#)

Perspective is what divides the two(making the a better place and pragmatic villainy)

[HannaB](#)

What does 'pragmatic villainy' even mean? Like, its difference from 'traditional praesi villainy' means that you're doing things for the sake of achieving an actual specific goal, and not just for the sake of being flashy and leaving a memory of yourself behind, right?

Wekesa's goal is to have a family and leave a good life.

Black's goal is...

well he's not going to call it a 'better world' obviously but at the point where one goes on a rant about how 'sacrifice is no substitute for hard labor needed to change things',

NerfContessa

Agreed.

The seeds are planted.

Finn

"I don't think there's a lot of people in Laure who wouldn't shank him if they thought they could get away with it" should be "shank him if they thought"

"told him she's rather go broke than take his bribes" should be "told him she'd rather go broke"

[rmcd94](#)

It is better to have a small piece of a giant pie than a giant piece of a small pie as the Empress might think. High taxes now mean less tax later.

ANON

Key: (subtract) [add]

I'd said I didn't want to go back to [the] orphanage, though I couldn't remember actually saying the words.

A short flight of stairs (down) brought me [down] to the inn's common room.

Oh. That wasn't a name, it was a Name. And that's you shouldn't mouth off to strangers. Again.

Hmm, a word feels like it might be missing?

The innkeeper broke(n) the awkward silence

"Tara Goldeneye – she was in charge of the Spicer's Guild and told him she'(s)[d] rather go broke than take his bribes drowned in a bathtub that barely had a[n] inch of water in it.

followed by a hand (that) grabbing for more gold.

read minds, o(f)[r] had I said any of that out loud?

Still, that was a mighty thin(g) fig leaf.

Yet even (o)[i]f that was still fairly evil

anon

Typos

who wouldn't shank him if they thought they could get away with it.

should be

who wouldn't shank him if they thought they could get away with it.

Still, that was a mighty thing fig leaf.

[Touch Pu'uhonua](#)

to go back to orphanage

→

to go back to the orphanage

And that's you shouldn't mouth off to strangers

→

And that's why you shouldn't mouth off to strangers

The innkeeper broken the awkward silence

→

The innkeeper broke the awkward silence

she pulled out a fresh sheet a parchment

→

she pulled out a fresh sheet of parchment

who wouldn't shank him if they thought they could get away with it

→

who wouldn't shank him if they thought they could get away with it

she's rather go broke than take his bribes

→

she'd rather go broke than take his bribes

a hand that grabbing for more gold

→

a hand grabbing for more gold

I wasn't that I disliked wine

→

It wasn't that I disliked wine

wouldn't even the most insolent thing

→

wouldn't even be the most insolent thing

that was a mighty thing fig leaf

→

that was a mighty thin fig leaf

Yet even of that was still fairly evil

→

Yet even if that was still fairly evil

it made sense there were also politics at work behind the scenes

→

it made sense there was also politics at work behind the scenes

mg021

"A banquet?" I grunted. "Sounds fancy. Should I be bringing anything?"

"It'll be the Governor's banquet," he mused. "So if nothing else, I'd bring the knife."

lol, brilliant!!

New reader, here, and I intend to binge read as much of this as I can get through as quickly as possible. Had to stop, though, and

comment that this is [i]really[/i] well written! I'm loving this story so far.

[Knight Magenta](#)

FYI: Nonplussed means "bewildered" <http://www.thefreedictionary.com/nonplussed>

You seem to have been using it to mean "unfazed." In this paragraph:

"I abhor waste," the Knight replied, apparently nonplussed I'd just implied he was an unrepentant mass-murderer. I supposed I wasn't the first to do so. "And all killing the rioters would accomplish is driving the resentment underground."

[HannaB](#)

Nonplussed means both 'bewildered' and 'unperturbed'. The English language contains a number of words that are their own antonyms at the same time for some reason

Boobah

And some words that have come through and out the other side; a 'moot point' was originally the answer to "Why are we gathered here today?" and now means something that doesn't matter to a meeting's goals.

I don't think I've ever seen use of the first definition in the wild, just as etymology trivia.

Cpt. Obvious

A bit late to the party but using "nonplussed" as meaning "unfazed" is a pretty recent development. It's easy to see how this came about as non usually means not, so to someone who sees the word for the first time it may appear to be a negation. So nonplussed sounds as not-something. And through looking at the sentence it is used in its often easy to deduce that the something is surprised, worried, disturbed or something similar. And so it would appear that in the sentence here Black is not surprised that Cat implies that he is a massmurder.

But that's 180 degrees wrong. What's actually written is that Black **is** surprised.

Now you may think this is just simplifying the language, making it just slightly more logical, which is sorely needed. But it is instead robbing people of the understanding of old written records.

It's been a while since I looked into the word but if my memory serves me right nonplussed was first used in writing some time in the early 17th century. Like a lot of words it has it's roots in Latin. Basically it's a contraction of non (nome?) and plus. Non means no or not so it is a negation, but plus mean something like enlightened. So nonplussed comes to mean not enlightened or surprised, confused or something like that.

The use of the word as meaning not surprised is much younger as the first documented use was in a newspaper printed in the 1930's if I remember correctly. Also I never found a thesaurus that listed the "new" definition of the word as being correct.

It may appear to be nitpicking but in my opinion it's worth preserving a words meaning when it has over 300 years of use in writing and in print.

As I'm writing this on a phone I'm pretty sure it's full of both grammatical and spelling errors. And thanks to WordPress not letting us edit our posts once we've pressed the button those will be forever preserved.

stevenneiman

"And that's {why} you shouldn't mouth off to strangers. Again."
"The innkeeper [broken->broke] the awkward silence"

[Wyrmeyrme](#)

You used nonplussed wrong. It really means confused, but the americanization of it means placid. <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/nonplus>

lucas morandini

Damn. This story is starting to look awesome.

Albedo's Ahoge

Sigh, i really can't get myself to read any further. There is no Kawainess in girl at all.

Her thought process & speech pattern seems more male like than female, especially for a 15 yr old.

I just find it awkward and not to my preference.

Agent J

Despite popular opinion, tomboys are indeed a thing. Plus, she spends a great deal of her off hours duking it out in the Fighting Pits. I'm fairly certain whatever "kawainess" she might of had has been well beaten out of her.

[HannaB](#)

Good riddance

Albedo's Ahoge

Yep, I dont have time to read trash~

Insanenoodlyguy

Too busy being weeaboo trash, got it.

Vadelent

He doesn't like loose ends that is true. And as to your part it this? That's why he found the person most likely to come into a Role and subtly nudged them down a path more beneficial to himself and the empire. A Hero would try and overthrow the empire. Well, they would if left unattended. But taken into hand and guided? It could become something other than a Hero. They could also help him raise the empire higher than it has before. The whole "Join me, and we will rule the "insert word here" together!" Except done well.

[HannaB](#)

Rereading this with the realization that Cat IS the potential hero she thought 'oh shit' about is just exquisite ♥ ♥ ♥

Goldking

And that's you shouldn't mouth off to strangers.

Should be

And that's you shouldn't mouth off to strangers.

[Burguulkodar](#)

That was exactly my impression as well. Very hero-like, our little girl, even though she scoffs at them the next day.

The hipocrisy is real.

At this point – actually, after what she did last chapter by interfering and "saving" someone she never even cared about afterwards – I just want her to die (I hate heroes, kind of why I tend to read stories like this and Reverend Insanity), but I guess she is the MC right now, so no chance of that. *sighs*

bp

This girl is way to "wise" for the just 15 year old you are trying to go with..

Poetically Psychotic

Type: "The innkeeper broken the awkward silence" => "The innkeeper [broke] the awkward silence" or possibly "The innkeeper [broke into] the awkward silence"

Dr Spamelot

Thanx for the chapter:) Typo: "Yet even of that was still fairly evil, " -> Yet even if that was still fairly evil,

Ebert the Alamans, scholar errant

The annexation of Callow left many significant problems in the hands of the Empire, of which one was: "what do we do with the children of all the people we killed?" After all, the annexation was a bloody affair which saw Callow lose their governing aristocracy either through battlefield death or disenfranchisement. There was not a native answer to this question because there was nobody to give it.

While governorship was meant to partly address the question of day to day running of Imperial Callow, the Empire had effectively eliminated the people who knew things, leaving the uneducated rabble.

Enter the Imperial Orphanages. A beautiful solution to multiple problems and, in this scholar's opinion, the likely brainchild of the Black Knight and the Scribe. Orphanages reduced the societal stress caused by the loss of primary caregivers while simultaneously training and educating a new generation of tradesmen, tutors, and scholars for the Empire to use.

While this scholar is hesitant to touch too heavily on Name lore due to the obvious repercussions, it has been suggested that the orphanages served the further purpose of reducing, influencing, and monitoring the gestation of emerging Callowan Named. After all, a mistreated orphan is a common enough beginning for those few Named whose pre-ascent/descent history are known.

For further information on this topic, see my publication "Won't Somebody Please Think of the Children: A History of Use of Nascent Human (or other) Resources"

Arthur Flake

None of the characters seem to be likable or interesting so far.

Jon

The final line absolutely killed me
I'm loving this story so far! Catherine is lovably scrappy and sassy, and her interactions with Black have been great.

Being Genre-Savvy is kind of a requirement to still be alive when you're the Black Knight, I suppose.

Jackp

"I was starving, so I might as well see if I could get a meal of this "

Shouldn't that read

"I was starving, so I might as well see if I could get a meal OUT of this."

Isaac Linn

"And that's you shouldn't mouth off to strangers."

insert "why"

"Speaking of questionable individuals," he said, "I was hoping we might have a word on the subject of the Governor."

omit second quotation mark

"I'm told most of the words I'd use for him aren't supposed to be spoken by proper ladies."

omit second quotation mark

Laure saw nowhere as much business as it had a decade ago, and these days at least half of the people at the Summer Fair were locals.

insert "near"

Yet even of that was still fairly evil, as far as policies went, at least it wasn't stupid.

Replace "of" with "if"

Rraune

"The Black Knight had a lot of pull in War College,"
in the War College ?

"And that's you shouldn't mouth off to strangers."
that's why you

"The First Prince of the Principate, maybe? Rumours had it she'd finally put an end to their civil war,"
First Princess ? Unless there's a story reason for the title being incongruent with her gender

"but I don't think there's a lot of people in Laure who wouldn't shank him if they thought they could get away with it.""
him, if they thought

"she was in charge of the Spicer's Guild and told him she's rather go broke than take his bribes"
told him she'd rather

"and the nose was usually followed by a hand that grabbing for more gold."
hand that's

"Could he actually read minds, of had I said any of that out loud?"
minds, or had I

" I wasn't that I disliked wine "
It wasn't

"Yet even of that was still fairly evil, "
even if that

Chapter 3: Party

"I see I'll have to take drastic measures to ensure intelligent conversation around here."

– Dread Empress Maledicta II, before having the tongues of the entire Imperial court ripped out

"So, aren't we a little underdressed for a palace visit?" I asked.

I was still wearing the shirt and trousers they'd had laid out for me in my room – and I was uncomfortably aware of exactly how well it fit. Did I want to know how they'd gotten my size? *Probably not*, I grimaced. I'd had enough shocks over the last few days as it was. Still, the dark grey cotton was more comfortable than anything I'd worn in a while. Hopefully I'd get to keep it after tonight, regardless of what the man's "proposition" was.

"Armour goes with everything," Black replied dryly.

He was still wearing the same plate set as last night. Now that I could get a good look in sunlight I was sure it was, well, regular steel plate. It could have been enchanted, of course – probably was – but it wasn't the dark obsidian or whatnot you'd have expected a man in his position to wear. His belt buckle didn't even have a skull on it! That *had* to break some kind of Imperial regulation.

"I guess it does, if you're out to stab people," I muttered, eyes watching his face closely to see if that got a reaction out of him.

Nothing. Not all that surprising: I was pretty good at picking up on tells in fights – I'd had to learn, to make it as far in the Pit as I had – but the social stuff had never been my strong suit. A regrettable lack of awareness and natural predisposition for insolence, our etiquette tutor had called it. I'd called him quite a few less polite things behind his back after that lesson, not that it made what he'd said any less true. We were drawing attention, I saw from the corner of my eye. People ducked into their houses and locked their doors when they saw two dozen soldiers escorting a pair of strangers – Scribe had stayed behind – if you were Lakeside or even Marketside, but we'd left both of those behind a while back for the sprawling avenues of Whitestone. This whole part of Laure was noble properties and guildhalls, all built in the pale sandstone that was the place's signature.

It hadn't expanded in the last few hundred years, mostly because nobles had passed a tricky little bit of law to keep everyone else out: every addition to the quarter had to be built with the stone from the original quarry that had made up the other buildings and, what did you know, that quarry had gone dry over a century back. Whoever had come up with that probably thought they were clever – I mostly thought they were an asshole. Wasn't that always the way with nobles, though? You got a title and a little land, then all these funny ideas started creeping in. Ideas like having a separate watch just for the Whitestone, and these were the very men and women staring at us right now. They kept their distance, of course, but there were more and more of them gathering every time we passed by a cluster of chainmail-decked cronies.

"They gonna give us trouble?" I grunted as we passed what must have been at least twenty nervous-looking watchmen.

Black cocked his head to the side.

"That seems unlikely," he murmured. "At best they'll try to send warning to their owners in the palace, but as it happens the entrance to it has already been secured."

I felt my brows raise.

"There's gotta be at least one of those with a sweetheart that works as a cook or a chambermaid," I told him flatly. "They'll know where the servant entrances are."

The pale-skinned man granted me an amused look.

"And legionaries should be barring those gates as well, Catherine."

Ah. Of course he'd have thought of that. Renowned evil strategist and all. I looked away so he couldn't see my cheeks flush.

"And here's Sabah," he mused out loud. "Everything is going as planned, it seems."

The latter sentence he said with an odd tone, like he was making a joke. I didn't quite get what the humorous part was so I just shot him a quizzical glance. I didn't think I'd met a Sabah before, but the silhouette that popped around the corner of Peony boulevard was easily recognizable. The olive-skinned woman better known as Captain still disdained wearing a helmet, but today she wasn't sporting a cloak – it was painfully easy to see exactly how tall and broad she was. Definitely over eight feet, and with more muscles to her frame than any orc I'd seen, and orcs were built *big*. Just the sight of her was enough to scatter the few watchmen still sticking around, though she ignored them and headed straight for us.

"Black," she greeted him. "Miss Foundling."

Her voice was deep, though the sing-song Praesi accent was still recognizable under it. I nodded back, taking the occasion to get a closer look at her. Strong nose and deep-set blue eyes with delicate eyelashes that seemed almost out of place on a face that, well, brutish. She looked more like an overgrown caricature of a person than someone real, and the enormous hammer hanging off her back did little to dispel that appearance.

"Orim has his legionaries in place?" the Knight asked mildly.

She nodded.

"He was unusually eager to lock down the palace," she noted. "Mazus managed to get on his bad side."

That certainly explained why the legionaries I served drinks too rarely had anything good to say about the Governor. That kind of dislike tended to trickle down the ranks, and I'd gotten the impression that General Orim was a fairly popular leader. *So they covered all the ways in and out of the palace.* Now the real question was, what for? That strange little talk I'd had with the Black Knight back at the inn had left me with the impression that Mazus was on the outs with the Empress. She was bound to have other means to discipline the man than sending her right hand to do the job, though. A pointed letter with the Imperial seal on it would have done it just as well, and without involving all the cloak-and-dagger business that was going on right now. *Is he getting his governorship revoked?* That would be pretty ideal, as far as I was concerned. Laure would go back under martial law

until the next Praesi bookend from the Wasteland arrived, and with a little luck the next idiot up in the palace would be more competent than this one. *They wouldn't have gone through all that trouble if that was all they'd planned, though*, I decided. *Not unless they expected trouble.*

"Now don't you just look like you're planning murder," a voice mused, breaking me out of my thoughts.

Both Black and Captain were looking at me, split somewhere between curious and entertained.

"That's a bit rich coming from you, sir," I replied, my mouth forming the words before my mind could intervene. Captain snorted, and hopefully that meant I wouldn't get murdered in broad daylight.

"The girl's not wrong," she gravelled. "I've never seen you looking like you're not up to something sinister."

The Knight wrinkles his nose in distaste. "'Sinister'? Wekesa's a bad influence on you. And to think you were so respectful when we first met."

The gargantuan woman rolled her eyes and I clenched my jaw so my disbelief wouldn't show. I'd never seriously imagined I'd end up meeting any of the Calamities, but the few times I'd thought about it there'd been a lot less... ribbing involved. Banter was something *people* did, not whatever they were. Besides, weren't heroes supposed to be the witty ones? The best villains got was monologues, in the stories, or maybe a disbelieving line about how absorbing power from the eldritch abomination bound in stone couldn't *possibly* have gone wrong. I pinched myself discreetly, just in case Zacharis had messed up my healing big time and I was having a particularly realistic fever dream. Captain took a look at the sky and frowned.

"We need to get a move on, to get here before the little shit's guests are drunk," she grunted.

Had she just called the Imperial Governor of Laure a little shit?

"I think you might be my favourite villain," I told the woman very honestly.

The Praesi's lips twitched.

"We should keep her," she gravelled at Black. "Everybody's been too afraid of you to mouth off since the Fields."

"Someone forgot to inform Warlock, clearly" the Knight muttered. "But you're right – we might have to kill a few to get them in the proper state of mind if they're too sloshed."

And just like that, it felt like someone had poured cold water down my back. The casual way the green-eyed man had just referred to murder had jarred me back into reality. *Villains. Funny and almost likeable, but still villains.* I'd seen beggar cripples Lakeside with missing limbs or a body entirely covered in burns gotten during the Conquest, through the handiwork of those two nonchalant people standing next to me. *Just because they hate the same people as me doesn't mean we're on the same side.* It wouldn't do to forget that. I was joining the Legions to exploit the system the Empire had built, not become another component of it. I kept my discomfort away from my face and followed the two of them when they started strolling towards the palace, the Blackguards doing the same without a word.

It was a little eerie how silent they were, actually. I couldn't recall a single one of them saying anything, or seeing one of their faces under the helmets.

There were rumours that all servants and bodyguards to the Imperial nobility had their tongues ripped out, but I had a hard time believing that. People peddling those stories were the same kind that said the reason the Dread Empress was so beautiful was that she bathed in the blood of the innocent. *Which is all kinds of stupid.* First off, there was bound to be a limited supply of innocents in Ater. Second, a bathtub-full of blood was a lot. Unless they had some sort of special spell to drain blood from people – which I wouldn't put past Praesi, on second thought – that meant killing at least three adults every time, and unless the Empress wanted to go through the rest of her day caked in dry blood she'd have to take another bath after. Seemed like a lot of trouble for a dubious reason, especially since beauty wasn't exactly a requirement for ruling. Emperor Nefarious, who'd been on the throne before Malicia, was said to have been a particularly ugly old man with a hook nose.

"I hear you fight in one of the rings," Captain gravelled suddenly.

I eyed the tall warrior in surprise. Hadn't expected the woman to try to get a conversation going again, but I supposed that even after my unpleasant realization from earlier chit chat was still better than walking all the way to the palace in silence.

"I, er, do," I agreed. "Though I wasn't aware you guys knew about those."

Captain frowned.

"Why wouldn't we?" she asked, glancing at Black.

"Fighting rings are illegal under Callowan law," he told her.

"Huh," the warrior grunted. "Barbaric."

I held back a scowl. *Not sure I want to hear that from a woman whose homeland practices human sacrifice.* Still, it had come out of the blue that the Imps were aware of the Pit. The reason the fighting rings were underground was because they were *illegal*, after all. Booker wouldn't have bothered to pay off the guards otherwise. Clearly Mazus must have known there were some, since he got a cut, but there was a difference between knowing about the Pit and knowing about the fight lineup.

"So Booker pays you off too?" I asked.

"In a manner of speaking," Black replied. "You could say we own her."

"Wait, if you guys run her then why is she paying off Mazus? Wouldn't that cut into your profits?"

"You're assuming that our people and the Governor's are the same."

Huh. I was reluctantly amused that Booker was getting fucked over by the Praesi on two fronts, truth be told. She'd always seemed so in control: it was a pleasant surprise she was being handled the way she handled just about everyone else.

"Anything else you guys are running on the down low?" I asked.

The Knight smiled but kept silent. I frowned.

"You wouldn't bother with small-time stuff like a fighting ring if you didn't have the bigger dogs on a leash," I realized. "Shit. How much of the underworld do you actually own?"

Black's smile broadened and he turned to Captain. "Told you she was sharp," he said.

The armoured woman nodded, studying me with a strange look on her face, but the compliment did little to stymie my curiosity.

"The Thieve's Guild, for sure," I muttered. "The Smugglers too?"

The green-eyed villain shrugged. "We have a working relationship with all of the so-called 'Dark Guilds'," he admitted. "Though I could do without the melodramatic titles they grant themselves."

That was more than a little ironic, coming from a man who'd named his personal bodyguards the *Blackguards* and dressed them up according to a colour theme.

"That doesn't really make sense to me," I grunted after a moment. "The Empire's the law, why would they work with you?"

"You're thinking in terms of legal and illegal," Black simply replied. "You should be thinking in terms of Good and Evil."

Oh. Put like that it made a little more sense. I supposed the kind of people who ran Laure's less savoury parts would see people like the Calamities as natural allies. And yet, this was still Imperial territory. Why would they allow anyone to run thieves and thugs on their ground, even if they got a cut? "Merchants they rob still have that much less to pay taxes with," I pointed out.

Captain seemed to have lost interest in the conversation, eyes wandering as she surveyed the streets. Couldn't really blame her: we'd kind of wandered away from me fighting in the Pit.

"When Laure was ruled by King Robert," Black said, "the Thieve's Guild still existed. Correct?"

I nodded. That was common enough knowledge – word had it the Thieves had been in business since the the first house in Laure had been built. Likely that was just a band of criminals giving themselves a mystique, but there was no denying they'd been around for ages.

"And yet, like all his predecessors, he aggressively pursued it's dismantlement," the Knight continued. "The reality of it is that there is no city in the world where such activities don't take place. Trying to eradicate them would simply drive a band of individuals highly proficient at sneaking about in the arms of the first hero to show up."

I rubbed the bridge of my nose. The way the man thought was starting to give me a headache.

"So you make a deal with them," I guessed. "They don't steal from the Empire and you look the other way?"

"There are quotas," Black replied. "And all killings of public figures had to be vetted beforehand."

There was a sort of pragmatic sense to it, but it still raised my hackles. The Empire wasn't even observing it's own laws. The Praesi weren't so much keeping order as they were making what already existed more orderly. *What's the point of having all that power if you don't use it to fix the parts of the world that need fixing?* Thankfully, I was spared any more small talk by the fact that we'd finally arrived at the palace.

The Royal Palace was all arcs and windows, built in dark grey granite instead of the sandstone that infested the rest of this part of the city. There was no stone of that kind in Callow itself – word had it it had been built from the remnants of the flying fortress of a Dread Empress when it had crashed over the old palace. It was an impressive mass, and I couldn't help but stare as we passed by the large ponds that dotted the front of it in arcane patterns. There was a low wall circling the entire

thing with a large gate in the middle, but the people keeping watch at the entrance were not city guard: a dozen legionnaires were standing at attention in front, decked out in full kit.

"I guess now's as good a time as any to ask why you brought me along," I said as our group headed towards them.

Black hummed. "We're going to ask a few pointed questions to the Governor," he replied.

I raised an eyebrow. "So I just stand there in silence and observe?"

"On the contrary," the Knight murmured. "You're welcome to interrupt as much as you like."

Well, wasn't that ominous. "You're testing me," I grunted,

"Life is a test," the green-eyed man replied easily.

I rolled my eyes. "I hope you didn't have to meditate under a waterfall to come up with that one."

Captain snorted, though the conversation was cut short as we passed the legionaries. They saluted in silence as we strolled by, taking a paved avenue to the palace proper. The entire place was deserted: I'd have expected servants to be milling about every which way while the Governor was receiving guests, but we were entirely alone. There was light and the sound of chatter trickling out through the open windows, gone as soon as we entered the torch-lit corridors of the inside. Black had come to the head of the party, taking one turn after another without hesitation: this wasn't his first time here, I guessed. Spent most of my time eyeing the painting and sculptures that covered every open space, noting that more than a few of them were in the Free Cities style – painted marble, usually of naked people in twisted-up poses.

"Ah, here we are," the Knight mused out loud as we arrived to a pair of closed wooden doors.

The noise of chatter and laughter coming from behind it made it clear we'd arrived at the banquet hall. Yet another staple of the Kingdom that was now just another trophy in the Governor's hands. "Captain, if you would do the honours?"

The gargantuan woman stepped forward, laying the palms of her hands against the wood and *pushing*. The massive doors swung open briskly, hitting the walls with a booming crack. There must have been at least fifty people inside, servants aside. Men and women dressed in colourful imported silks, drowning in jewel-incrusted gold: most of them over forty, though I could see a handful of younger ones. There were three long tables forming a U, the man

of the hour having taken residence at the head of the crowd: his dark-skinned stood out starkly across the pale Callowans in attendance. Idly I rubbed my thumb on the pommel of the knife strapped at my side – I wasn't sure whether Black's mention of bringing it had been a joke or not, but I certainly felt safer standing this close to the pack of cronies with a weapon at my hip.

The noise was snuffed out of the room the moment we walked in, the eyes of every single guest in attendance glued to the Knight's face. A few glanced at Captain and fewer at me – it was a little irritating to be dismissed so blatantly, but I had a feeling I'd be the one getting the last laugh tonight.

"Out," Black simply said. "All of you."

I'd never seen a room clear so quickly before. I could feel the same strange *weight* I'd felt last night when he'd stared me down in the alley, but this time it wasn't directed at me. It was like swimming just outside of a current: the pull was there, but it wasn't dragging me in. All those peacocks dressed in silk and carrying enough gold in rings and necklaces to feed a family for a decade were hurrying out without even bothering to pretend they weren't terrified. There was something darkly satisfying about seeing the rich and powerful of Laure jostling each other in their haste to get out the door as fast as they physically could. I didn't hide my smile. *I'm not here to make friends, and even if I was there's no one here I'd want to count as one.*

"So it's a Name thing, the way you mess with people's heads," I mused. "Seems like a useful trick."

The green-eyed man shot me an amused look.

"A fairly basic use of my power," he replied, looking over the fleeing throng, "but I won't deny it can be entertaining on occasion."

It couldn't have been more than thirty heartbeats when the only people left in the once-crowded banquet hall were Black, Captain, the Governor and myself. I took the occasion to have a closer look at the ruler of Laure, now that I was actually in the same room as the damned man. Governor Mazus was a tall man in his late thirties, dark-skinned like so many of the Praesi were. His hair was cut short and his beard cropped close, framed by the long gold earrings dangling from his ears. His robes were a riot of green and gold silk, and I was willing to bet diamonds to piglets that some of the stitches on them were actual gold thread. There was polished quality to the Governor, like every detail of his outfit and appearance had been attended to carefully. *He can certainly afford the servants to do it.*

"Amadeus," the Governor said, outwardly unaffected by the interruption as he leaned back on his chair while loosely holding a sculpted silver goblet. "An unexpected pleasure. I would have prepared a more fitting reception, if you'd sent word ahead of your visit."

The ice in Black's eyes could have frozen boiling water.

"There are very few people who get to call me by that name, Mazus," he replied very quietly, "and you were never one of them."

There was no hiding the flinch that went through him at that, though the aristocrat's face went blank immediately after as if to pretend it had never happened. I took notes: one of these days I was going to manage to get a flinch out of assholes without raising my voice too.

"Ah, of course," the Governor said. "I've had a little too much wine, it seems. To what do I owe the privilege of your presence, Lord Black?"

"The taxes you owe the Tower are late, Governor."

Mazus let out a regretful sigh.

"As I already informed Her Most Dreadful Majesty, the convoy was waylaid by bandits. I've already drafted extraordinary taxes to remedy to that, but the burned Callowans are being obstructive. Borders on treason, really."

Not that it matters, given the confession, Scribe had said back at the inn. The pieces were starting to come together, and what I was beginning to think was going to happen to Mazus was enough to smother the cold rage that flared up when he called it *treasonous* that the people of Laure didn't want their children to starve. I could have let the smarminess go, but really why bother? Black had already as good as said he wanted me to interrupt whenever I felt like it.

"Really?" I said. "Bandits attacking an Imperial tax convoy? He's supposed to buy *that*? They're outlaws, not idiots. They'd be swimming neck-deep in legionnaires before the month was done."

The aristocrat narrowed his eyes at me, apparently unused at that kind of insolence coming from one of the people he ruled over.

"I care little if you pick up stray dogs off the streets, Lord Black, but perhaps you should muzzle this one before she gets her tongue ripped out."

Oh, he did *not* just say that.

"Call me a dog again and I'm going to strangle you with your own intestines, you filthy Praesi prick," I promised, meaning every word of it.

Mazus sputtered.

"You're-"

"Callowan?" I interrupted. "A girl? Nobody important? All true. But if I were you, the thing I'd worry about is *carrying a knife*."

"I'd take that warning seriously if I were you, Mazus," Black mused from my side. "I've known her for a day and she already has a body count."

He sneered.

"Raising a hand to an Imperial Governor will get you drawn and quartered, girl. Your bravado does you little credit."

"Unless, of course," Black murmured, "said Governor has committed high treason."

Mazus paled.

"That's a serious accusation," he replied after a moment. "Making it without proof would have consequences."

"Oh, we're still talking in hypotheticals," the Knight demurred. "But if say, a hypothetical governor were to report his due to the Tower had been robbed, it would be possible that the Empress would get curious and send people to look into the matter."

"Sounds like she'd be a little ticked off," I contributed with a hard smile. "Hypothetically."

"The Empress has little patience for those who cross her, much less those doing it so gauchely," the green-eyed man agreed. "Now, imagine that these bandits were found, and that when... properly motivated, they had a story to tell. Would you care to guess what that story is, Catherine?"

"Someone paid them to rob the convoy," I grunted, the words flowing out easily. "Someone who'd then get a cut of the gold and buy their silence with the rest of it."

Black smiled, lean and mean.

"A little too clever to be a dog, don't you think?"

I stepped closer to the tables, grabbing an empty goblet and a pitcher of wine before pouring myself drink. I wasn't going to lie to myself and pretend I wasn't enjoying every moment of this

– it was payback for every time we'd had half-portions at the orphanage because food prices had hiked up, retribution for every time I'd seen the city guard rough up a shopkeeper late paying his taxes.

"People will say anything under torture," Mazus finally said. "I look forward to your trying to convince a court it's enough to have me put away."

I frowned, but took a sip of wine – fruity and strong, probably not from Callow. Figured the bastard would be drinking imported stuff. Black wasn't an idiot: he wouldn't have strolled in here so confidently if Mazus was going to get away with it all, and I was more than willing to wait another few moments to see that veneer of confidence stripped away from the man's face.

"The Empress had taken a personal interest," the Knight said coldly. "There is no need for a trial when the sentence has already been determined."

The Governor sneered. "This will be the ruin of her, you imbecile. My father will whip up the Truebloods in a frenzy when word gets out."

"Really?" I choked out with a laugh. "That's your defence – wait 'til my dad hears about this?"

"He has something of a point, Catherine," Black said. "Or he would, if High Lord Igwe wasn't already under arrest himself."

It was the second time that night I saw Mazus blanch, and it was every bit as delightful as the first.

"You're mad," the Governor whispered.

"Ever a subject of debate, I'm assured," the dark-haired man replied with a bland smile. "Truthfully, Mazus, I'm suprised. You've always been a little slow but this? How did you think it was going to end?"

"With me Chancellor," the other Praesi snarled. "It's just a matter of time until one of us claims the Role, you filthy upstart. You can't *destroy* a Name."

"You can't buy one either," the Knight replied. "Though that hardly matters now. Tell me, Catherine, how should a ruler deal with treason?"

I shrugged, feeling the weight of the Governor's gaze on me.

"I'm told Imperial policy about that involves heads and pikes," I mused. "Though that always struck me as a little tacky. It's not like you can tell *whose* head it was, a few weeks in. The crows tend to take care of that."

Mazus slowly forced his spine to straighten and his hands to stop shaking.

"Fine," he sneered. "I was caught. So be it. Unlike peasants, my breed knows how to go when the game is up. Have the mahogany chest in my rooms fetched, I'll drink the deathleaf extract with my wine."

Black laughed and unlike the few laughs I'd heard from him before this one was a wintry, sharp thing.

"You don't seem to understand your situation, Mazus," he smiled. "You belong to us, now. Your life, your death – all ours. And you're not dying a dignified death sitting on your throne. It's the gallows for you, Governor of Laure."

The Blackguards fanned into the room at Captain's order. Mazus tried to get up, eyes white and wild, but by the time he'd pushed back his chair there was a pair of plate-wearing soldiers grabbing his shoulders.

"No," he screamed. "Black, you can't – you wouldn't dare-"

They dragged him out of the room, his screams of protests echoing even as he disappeared into the corridor. I put down my goblet of wine, leaving it half-full. I felt a little guilty at the waste, but considering the banquet tables were full of food I was hardly the worst offender tonight.

"So," I said calmly. "Now is when you make your pitch, I'm guessing?"

[*Shell*](#)

I like what I've been reading so far. Can't wait for the next chapter.

Unmaker

Possible typos:

Armour / armoured

Armor / armored

(I will assume American English unless corrected)

I felt my brows raise.

I felt my brows rise.

Peony boulevard
Peony Boulevard

revoked? That
revoked? That

favourite
favorite

rumours
rumors

Thieve's Guild (several)
Thieves' Guild
(more than one thief in the guild)

colour / colourful
color / colorful

savoury
savory

the the first house
the first house

it's dismantlement
its dismantlement
(presumably, it's is "it is" and its is "a possession of it")

it's own laws
its own laws

honours
honors

defence
defense

suprised
surprised

(just a point to note, I think you are using "gravelled" to mean "spoke in a gravelly voice" and it works, but that isn't actually a definition I was able to find for the word)

Reactions:

"With me Chancellor"

Interesting – the Black Knight isn't the only one who attempts to manipulate the Roles. Not surprising, I suppose, but what is interesting is that the Role isn't already filled. Chancellor sounds like it could be either a Good or Evil role – can roles switch-hit? (Some are clearly always Evil, e.g. the Black Knight.)

NerfContessa

-our endings are not typos but British, and hence superior and original, English, you yank heathen. :p

Zachary Boyd

I would try to defend my country's brand of English but I love the way you put it. "You yank heathen." Too funny. Also, English in general is a shitty language if you think about it.

Todd

Gah~ I'm late for work, thanks for another excellent chapter

[moridain](#)

That seemed really, really cathartic for her. 😊

stevenneiman

It shouldn't be possible to inspire that much sympathy in someone laughing at another's misfortune, and yet ErraticErrata has managed it. Color me impressed. And amused.

stevenneiman

"drive a band of individuals highly proficient at sneaking about [in->into] the arms of the first hero to show up."

"jewel-[incrusted-encrusted] gold"

"his [dark-skinned->dark skin] stood out starkly"

[Asbolus](#)

A little arrogant?

anon

typos

Thieve's

The Empire wasn't even observing it's own laws.

And yet, like all his predecessors, he aggressively pursued it's dismantlement

stevenneiman

This reminds me very strongly of Jacob's reaction to hearing about Kevin's death in Genocide Man. If ever there was someone who deserved what he got even more than Mazus.

maresther23

> "Everything is going as planned, it seems."

> The latter sentence he said with an odd tone, like he was making a joke. I didn't quite get what the humorous part was so I just shot him a quizzical glance.

My dear, you will understand soon enough.

The Ellimist

"That's your defence – wait 'til my dad hears about this?"

defence → defense

Gustav Kuriga

You've never seen British English have you?

oliverwashere

Do random shower thoughts count as meditating under a waterfall? Because life being a test sounds like a shower thought.

Cpt. Obvious

It's falling water. I'd allow it.

Kaizoy

Hey! You totally stole the patricians thing from Ankh Morpork!

[Burguulkodar](#)

ha, so true!

Boobah

Hardly the least of the what was borrowed from Sir Pterry; this whole Name thing is an extension of Pratchett's narrative causality.

Speaking of, Chancellor is a Name that no one wants claimed in their own kingdom. Unless, I suppose, you've got a genre-savvy barbarian coming through the gates. Although at that point having a Chancellor may not be your biggest concern.

Ange Rose

"I was joining the Legions to exploit the system the Empire had built, not [became – become] another component of it."

I wonder, is any point in making typo corrections? Corrections were offered back in 2016 and are still there in 2019. Or am I reading an old version?

Typos may seem trivial, but they do spoil the flow for the reader and confuse the meaning. I'm happy to help by pointing out

corrections as I know how difficult it is to correct ones own writing.

But it's not worthwhile doing this if the work is never corrected.

Oh and PLEASE remember to always use 'who' for people, not 'that'.

Eg A person WHO owned a dog A thing / an idea / an animal / THAT became

Waltzoid

"I'm gonna tell my daddy on you!" is probably the least intimidating or dignified thing you'd expect to hear from a noble.

Boobah

"I'd seen beggar cripples Lakeside with missing limbs or a body entirely covered in burns gotten during the Conquest..."

Hitting the beginning of this sentence was like hitting a speed bump at speed. Could be fixed just by shifting the location to the beginning of the sentence. Or adding any number of words to advertise that you're moving on from the sentence's object to an adverbial clause.

It's not wrong, per se, but it's clunky.

Ebert the Alamans, scholar errant

Death sentences in the Wasteland are as varied and imaginative as one might expect from a culture which glorifies not just victory over one's foes, but crushing and unforgettable victory. In the ratified company of the elite, to simply slay your rival is considered gauche beyond compare.

Traditionally, Praesi nobles who fail to effectively hide their treasonous activities (there are likely no Praesi nobles NOT engaged in some form of treason or another) and become marked for death are allowed to lay down their lives in a dignified fashion, not unlike a shatranj player retiring from a game. However, this "kindness" is generally reserved for those the victor views with respect.

For those who "play a poor game," a method of death is chosen that is ignominious, ironic, serves a political purpose, or ideally all three.

For more information, please see my publication, "Death in the Wasteland: Aardvarks to Zymolysis"

Jon

I cackled at least three times during this chapter

12/10

Sangga

I like the half-empty half-full thingy

[Isaac Linn](#)

"And yet, like all his predecessors, he aggressively pursued it's dismantlement,"

Replace "it's" with "its"

"his dark-skinned stood out starkly across the pale Callowans in attendance."

Replace "dark-skinned" with "dark skin"

stevenneiman

It's interesting rereading this with a knowledge of how taciturn Black is most of the time and realizing just how much fun he must be having to let it show this much.

Onos

The Guide is such a good reread, just seeing the knife line and "all according to plan" had me in stitches. First few chapters are such a great introduction for Black and Cat.

midas0

loving this

Lynn

oh boy she have a flair for villainy. can't wait to read more!

Chapter 4: Name

"Power is mostly a matter of making the right corpses at the right time."

– Dread Empress Malicia the First

My words echoed in the now-emptied hall, and I had to hold back a wince when I realized how confrontational I'd sounded. Matter-of-fact, maybe, but there'd been a distinctly accusatory undertone to my voice I wished I could take back – not because I hadn't

meant it, but because pressing the green-eyed man standing in front of me seemed... ill-advised. *Too late to put the pot back together, though. Might as well go all out.*

"So first you talk me into killing the guards," I noted. "They had it coming, sure, but would I have made that call if you weren't egging me on? Not so sure. So now here I am, hands bloodied and not quite sure where to go from there."

I paused, expecting a falsely-offended denial. Black remained silent, though, and his face was still as a pond on a windless night: anything I'd see on there would be nothing more than a reflection of my own expectations. The Knight glanced at Captain, who was looming by the door, and offered her a half-nod. She left the room without a word, closing the massive doors behind her. The sound of the wooden gates closing shut in her wake was oddly sinister.

"You were getting to a point, I believe," Black prompted me, reaching for a glass and pouring himself a drink.

I steeled my spine and pushed on. "You might have done all that for the shits and giggles – I mean, I've heard weirder about villains – but you took me here tonight. Had me front and centre the whole time you were playing with a man I'd cheerfully stab given half a chance. You've got an angle at play, and it involves me agreeing to something."

The pale-skinned man pulled back a bench and sat astride it with cool elegance, gesturing for me to do the same. I could have circled the room and sat across from him, but that would have been playing his game and I'd done quite enough of that tonight. I kicked back the Governor's padded seat and plopped myself onto it with the closest thing to nonchalance I could muster with my heart beating in my ears like it currently was. I was all too aware I was playing with fire at the moment, but what else could I do? Some part of me felt backed into a corner, and I'd ever only reacted one way to that: come out swinging, sometimes yelling as loud as I could.

"You're right, to an extent," Black acknowledged, shooting me an amused look at my choice of seat. "But also wrong. What you so quaintly call my "pitch" started the moment I came across you in that alley."

I frowned. Now that I thought of it, what were the odds that he'd run into me *just* when I was stuck in a losing fight? The guards hadn't seemed like they'd been sent there on purpose, but how hard could it be to –

"I did not, in fact, arrange your little scuffle," he interrupted my thoughts, tone flat.

I kept my face blank. "You could be lying."

"I am a splendid liar," he agreed pleasantly. "But I don't bother when the truth serves my purposes just as well. As for happening upon you in that particular moment – well, coincidences are hardly unusual when one has a Role like mine."

"To take the mantle of a Name is to embrace the strands of Fate," I quoted quietly. It was rare for the House of Light preachers to have a sermon on the subject of Roles, but compared to their usual fare it was interesting enough that the sentence stuck out easily in my memory. Black's eyes turned cold.

"Fate is the coward's way out, Catherine," he spat out. "It is the denial of personal responsibility. Every decision I have made was my own choice, and all consequences that come from it are on my head."

"Considering the kind of things you've done," I quietly said, "I'm not sure that's a selling point."

The flash of anger I'd seen in him was gone as quickly as it had appeared, replaced by the usual indifferent facade. *Did I just see what he actually looks like under the mask, or did I just happen to find a delicate subject?* Neither option was particularly comforting.

"I don't expect you to love the Empire," he said. "You've lived your entire life under its boot, and that is not a comfortable place to be."

"You don't get fair when you lose the war," I replied, echoing my thoughts from yesterday.

He took a sip of wine, making a face at the taste. "I had an interesting conversation with Scribe, on our way to Laure. She believes that the denarii you have stashed at the orphanage are so you can leave the city and start over elsewhere."

I wish I could say I was surprised he knew about the money, but given that he'd addressed me by my name the first time we'd ever come to face I really wasn't. He must have had someone in the orphanage – it wouldn't even be hard to accomplish, the Laure House for Tragically Orphaned Girls was an Imperial institution to start with. Why, though, was a better question. Why would the Black Knight pay any attention to the goings-on in one of the city's orphanages?

"And what was your guess?" I asked instead.

"Scribe's one of the most intelligent women I've ever met," he mused, "but she's never had a home, you see. She doesn't

understand what it's like, to see a place falling to pieces and need to fix it."

I met his eyes, green to brown, and he smiled.

"You're saving up for tuition at the War College," Black spoke into the empty room, his quiet voice somehow managing to fill the emptiness. "You're nearly done, too – a few more months and you'll have enough put aside for both the semester and the trip there."

A shiver went up my spine, and this time there were no Name tricks to blame for it. Two days I'd known the man, and already he'd already pegged what I wanted perfectly. My hand fell down to the dagger at my hip, thumb rubbing the pommel almost without realizing it. The feeling of the wrapped leather against my finger grounded me, a physical sensation to chase the almost eerie atmosphere the scene had taken.

"That's the plan," I agreed, managing to keep my voice steady by the grace of the Heavens. "I was under the impression that the Legions take Callowans too, now – or was I wrong?"

"You are correct," he replied. "Though few ever take the opportunity. So why would you?"

I shrugged. "I have a talent for scrapping. Seems like I'd be a good fit."

I wasn't good enough of a liar to get away with an outright lie, but a half-truth might manage to pull through. There were other ways to get higher up in the ranks of the Empire, after all, even for Callowans. I'd chosen the Legions as my path up because, at the end of the day, fighting was my talent I was most confident in. The green-eyed man sighed.

"Catherine, I've done you the courtesy of not taking you for an imbecile," he murmured. "This conversation will go much more smoothly if you afford me the same."

Ah. So much for that, then. He seemed more irritated than angry at my attempt – I supposed lying wasn't much of a sin, by Praesi standards.

"Fine," I grunted. "You want to hear the truth? I think the way the Empire rules over Callow is fucked. At best you're brutally fair, at worst you get types like Mazus who think it's their gods-given right to do as much damage as possible. I don't give a shit whether we pay our taxes to the Tower or not, but someone has to rein in the idiots when they get vicious and the Legion is my best bet to get into that place."

The man's lips stretched into that mean little number he'd pulled out on the Governor earlier. *Well, I had a good run. I'll try to give him a scar to remember me by before my body gets dumped in the lake,* I decided, fingers tightening around the knife.

"Most people sharing your opinion would try to become a hero," he said instead of unsheathing his sword.

I snorted. "And what, try to restore the Kingdom? We're fresh out of royals and even if I managed to dig up some claimant getting him on the throne would be a bloody mess. How many thousands would die, fighting the Empire? More than it's worth. And let's not pretend you wouldn't burn everything to the ground on your way out." I offered a grim smile to the monster. "I'd just be good sense, for you lot: make us a weaker target from when you invade again, a few years down the line. Since you're not doing us the favour of crumbling by yourselves, I'd better make peace with the fact that the Empress is in charge – she's not going anywhere."

The black-haired killer set down his cup and let out a low, almost lazy laugh. I scowled at the sound: I hadn't been joking, and this wasn't exactly a laughing matter.

"I was wrong," Black said, though he didn't sound like he was admitting an error. "You never could have become a hero. You lack the mindset for it."

I bared my teeth. "And to think you gave me all that sweet talk about 'what separates people who have a Name from people who don't.' Way to break my heart."

"Allow me to make up for it, then," he replied. "I'd like to offer you a job."

Ah, and there it was. The end game he'd been driving his cart to all this time.

"I'm a little curious as to what you're actually going to offer," I admitted. "Training with the Blackguard? You're bound to have potential recruits with less baggage."

"I am," the Knight murmured, "looking for a Squire."

He didn't have to raise his voice to make the capitalized letter clear. A Name. Shit. He was offering me a Name? Could he even *do* that?

"I thought people with Names picked themselves," I croaked out, mouth suddenly gone dry.

"They do, to an extent," he agreed amiably. "But you have the potential, and given the... intertwined natures of that Role and mine, I have a degree of influence over the nomination."

I didn't think he was lying, not that I really believed I would have been able to tell if he was. *Well, at least it looks like I'm not getting my throat slit. Not immediately, anyway. The evening's already looking up.*

"And what do you want in exchange?" I asked, trying to keep the suspicion out of my voice.

The green-eyed man sighed. "I'm not a trader hawking over merchandise, Catherine," he replied. "As Squire you would be my apprentice, in a way. My responsibility. I wouldn't have made the offer if I didn't believe you would be an asset."

My mind spun and I closed my eyes, overwhelmed by the possibilities he'd just opened. If I had a Name... I'd bypass the Imperial hierarchy entirely, just by saying yes. Squire wasn't exactly the most powerful of the Names out there but it would lead to something else and until then I'd be at the side of the second most powerful person in the Empire, learning all I could. All the ins and outs of the court, all the war tricks and connections that I wouldn't get from books or even the instructors at the War College. *I might be in a place to do some good in a decade instead of three. Less, if I somehow distinguish myself.*

"You want the answer now," I said, the tone half-question and half-statement.

"One way or another, I'll need your decision before you leave this room," he acknowledged.

Heavens forgive me, but I wanted this. Wanted it so very badly. That was the part that was making me balk, though: I wasn't this lucky, never had been. There must have been something in it for him I couldn't see yet, some clause or trap I'd only grasp when it was too late.

"And if I say no?"

One girl found floating by the docks, missing a throat. Wouldn't be the first time someone dumped a body in the Silver Lake, wouldn't be the last.

He shrugged. "You return to the orphanage. I'll see to it that you're put on the rolls at the College, with the first season's tuition paid. I'll look forward to your service in the Legions."

"And that's it? After all this, I'd still get to walk away clean?"

The Knight peered at his cup, swirling the dark wine inside with a negligent flick of the wrist.

"Some of my predecessors would have thrown a threat in there to motivate you," he admitted easily. "Something along the lines of 'should you refuse me, I will burn alive everyone in the orphanage and make you watch'." He smiled ruefully. "Most of them were killed by their Squire, as it happens. I will not repeat their mistake: I will not deceive you, Catherine, or force your hand. What would be the point? I already have followers and equals – as well as a superior, if only the one. What I want is an apprentice, and an unwilling one would be nothing more than a burden."

There'd been a sermon in the House of Light, once, about devils. The sister preaching had told us that the real ones, the dangerous ones, didn't bluster about stealing innocent souls and breaking their word. They gave you exactly what you wanted and let you find your own way to the Hells with it.

"You realize," I rasped out, "that it wouldn't change anything. Even with a Name I'll still want to change things."

I hated the way it sounded like I wanted to accept his offer, true as it was.

"Mine is not the side that concerns itself with how people that gain power use it," Black replied. "By all means, reform the Empire as much as you want – as much as you're able to, anyway. If you have the ability to accomplish something, it is your right to do so."

Damn me, damn him, damn this whole night and the one that came before it. It all sounded so *reasonable* to me, but that was how they always got you wasn't it? Was it arrogance, to think that if I didn't step up to fix Callow no one else would do it? Maybe I was just a self-deluded little girl, playing a game whose rule I didn't yet understand and pretending I knew what it was doing. *But it doesn't matter, does it?* The only question was whether I wanted this badly enough to make a deal with the monster sipping at his wine, and I'd known the answer to that before I ever set foot in the palace. *This is how it starts, isn't it? How villains are born. When you decide that something is worth more than being Good.* My fingers clenched and unclenched. I took a deep breath and let it out.

"So how does this work? Do I sign a contract in blood and summon a demon?"

Black did not smile, and I was almost grateful about that – if he'd been smug about this, treated it like he'd beaten me, I didn't know what I would have done.

"Normally," he said, "a conscious decision is enough to begin the process. By wanting to be the Squire, you reach for the Role and make yourself closer to it."

"Normally?" I repeated.

"There's a shortcut, for those so inclined," he told me.

I met his eyes for the second time that night, unflinching. Even if this was a mistake, I would own it. I owed myself that much.

"What do I need to do?"

He smiled. "Try not to die."

In the blink of an eye he was on his feet, moving quickly – much too quickly for someone wearing plate – with his sword was in hand. I felt the tip of it punch through my lung before I could so much as scream, and the last thing I saw before the darkness took me was those eerie green eyes looking down on me.

I opened my eyes under water.

My hands scrabbled for something solid to hang on to and sank into thick mud, still managing to push up my torso enough that I wasn't swallowing what looked murky swamp water. I spat out something green and vaguely leafy, retching at the taste of scum water in my mouth. Before I could try to get on my feet I was compelled to notice that there was *still a sword jutting out of my chest*.

"He stabbed me," I wheezed out in disbelief, my breath coming out panicked. "He just fucking stabbed me, out of nowhere. *Who even does that?*"

"Well," a woman's voice drawled lazily. "You know. Villains."

My eyes spun towards the source of the noise, skimming over a darkened panorama of tall thin trees and greenery-covered waters – it was hard to tell, in the gloom, but I was fairly sure that the girl looking down on me from jutting stump was... well, me. Older, maybe, bearing a long pink scar across the nose and wearing legionary armour but there was no mistaking the face.

"Ugh," I groaned. "This is going to be some kind of symbolic soul-searching quest, isn't?"

"That implies your soul is a swamp," the girl pointed out mildly. "Maybe you should get out more. You know, make some friends. Laugh once every few moons."

I scowled. "I'm not taking advice about my social life from a dubious Name vision."

I tried to push myself up to a sitting position – my fingers were sinking deeper into the mud, and the rest of my body slowly following – but the sharp pain I immediately felt served as a reminder that there was *still a sword jutting out of my chest*.

“Oh, right,” the smug brat mused. “Let me get that for you.”

She jumped down from the stump, wading into ankle-high water to get to me. I was about to ask her to pull it out gently when I saw her look me over and pensively raise a foot.

“Don’t you dare,” I warned her. “Don’t you godsdamned-”

She put down her boot on my breasts and closed her fingers around the hilt of the sword, giving a brutal push with her knee that dunked my head back into the scum water. I pushed myself out into a sitting position a heartbeat later, retching out more of the disgusting green stuff and really wishing I hadn’t been opening my mouth to cuss her out when she’d pushed me under.

“This is a pretty good sword,” she observed. “Goblin steel, better than the standard issue stuff.”

“And that makes getting stabbed with it better *why?*” I heaved.

“If it were rusty you could have gotten lockjaw,” the doppelganger commented.

Not even a bell into joining up with the Empire and I was sitting half-drowned in a metaphorical swamp, getting sassed by some sort of – probably evil – magical double. *I’ll note Black didn’t mention this part in the recruitment speech*, I thought, trying to force my soaked hair into some semblance of order.

“Might be wise to get onto the stump,” the other me said. “I’m pretty sure there’s snakes in the water.”

“That just burning figures,” I cursed, hastily getting on my feet and slogging my way out of the danger – the doppelganger offered a hand to help me up, and I warily took it. I couldn’t see a weapon on her, but I didn’t know what the rules of this place were yet. *If there are any*. Closing my eyes, I tried to think hard about a sunny meadow and waited a moment.

“What are you doing, exactly?” my voice interrupted me.

“Are we still in a swamp?” I asked, keeping my eyes closed.

“Nah, it’s some sort forest now.”

Hope welled up in my chest and I opened my eyes to the smirking rictus of the doppelganger. Did I really look like that when I smirked? Huh. No wonder people in the Pit went for my face so often.

"You lied," I acknowledged wearily, glaring at the smelly wetlands still surrounding me.

"Shocker," the double replied dryly.

"Did I draw the short straw when they were assigning spirit guides?" I muttered.

The doppelganger looked kind of offended.

"I'm a great spirit guide," she contested. "Ask me a question."

I wiped my face with the back of my hand. "What can I do to end this quickly?"

Her perfectly plucked eyebrows rose. "Ask better questions."

I snatched the sword back out of her hands with a glower – I didn't have a scabbard to put it in, so I just rested the point on the stump and awkwardly leaned on it.

"Right, not a guide then," I grunted. "Are we going to have to fight? Because I'm not really feeling in the mood for anything but a bath right now."

"I'm just here to point you to the next part, really," the doppelganger said. "See that hill in the distance?"

I took a look where she was pointing, vaguely making out an upwards slope on what seemed to be solid ground. There was some sort of structure I could glimpse, and I squinted to see it better. That was when she socked me in the jaw. Back into the water I went, landing with a splash and an aching mouth.

"Lied again," the double told me cheerfully when I resurfaced. "We're gonna fight."

"I don't know what part of me you're supposed to represent," I spat out, bringing up the sword I'd somehow managed to remain clutching, "but I'm going to drown you."

"That's the spirit," she grinned, rolling her shoulders. "See what I did there? Spirit. It's funny because I'm a-"

I took a swipe at her ankles, hoping she'd give me the satisfaction of being a bleeder, but she leapt onto another stump.

"In the interest of full disclosure," the double continued, "I was also lying about the snakes. I know, I have a problem. You have one too, though, right behind you."

My first instinct was to snarl that I wasn't going to fall for that twice, but after a heartbeat instead I stabbed blindly

behind me – the blade hacked into flesh and I spun to push more weight into it, eyes widening in surprise. The decomposing corpse that had been about to lay a hand on my shoulder fell into the water still twitching, leathery skin pulled taut around rotting teeth.

"I have a zombie in my soul," I forced myself to acknowledge, voice sounding faint to my own ears. "Gods, maybe I *do* need to make some friends."

"So," the doppelganger called out from the tall branch she'd managed to hoist herself onto while I wasn't looking. "Three guesses as to whether that's the last one and the first two don't count."

I glared at her. "The only upside to this is that if you rise from the dead after I'm done with you I'll get to off you twice," I replied through gritted teeth.

"Meh," she shrugged. "You're all talk. If you weren't, you would have stabbed Mazus in his wretched throat – we both know the Knight wouldn't have stopped you."

"Well," I mused as I cast a wary eye out for anything else coming out of the waters, "at least now I'm sure you're not the Good twin."

"Nah, prissy bitch doesn't come down here," the girl replied. "Says she doesn't like the smell."

Gods Above, there really were two of them. *This just keeps on getting better.* Nothing else seemed to be crawling out from under the surface, so I moved back towards the stump to get better footing. I didn't like the idea of staying in the mulch either: it seemed right up her alley to have been lying about having lied about the snakes. Hopefully I wouldn't have to follow her into the branches – I wasn't sure what path up she'd taken, and I'd never been great at climbing. Not like there were a lot of trees in Laure.

"So that's your trouble with me?" I prompted. "Not enough murdering people at the dinner table?"

She crouched on the branch, grinning down with pearly white teeth.

"My issue is that you're a bleeding heart, Cathy," she drawled. "You've got all those pretty notions about how things should be, but when the hard choices are gonna come you'll *flinch*. You have a chance to get some real change going but you're going to end up choking on that self-righteousness." She waved her hand theatrically. "That's gonna end up with us *actually* bleeding from the heart, and I just can't have that."

"So I should just go around stabbing everyone who does things I don't agree with?" I replied. "That sounds like a winning plan."

"If you *had* a winning plan, I wouldn't mind," the doppelganger smiled mirthlessly. "But you're not trying to win. You're trying to be right."

In a single, smooth movement she leapt from the branch and barrelled right into me. I was taken by surprised enough that I couldn't bring up the sword in time. *Shit*. We both splashed into the water – which had happened since the beginning of this little jaunt too often for my tastes already – while clawing at each other, trying to make sure we ended up on top. She managed to edge me out, but she left her face open so I knocked her teeth it with the sword's pommel – she pushed me away, crawling up to her feet as I did the same.

"Now that's more like it," she laughed, spitting out a fat gob of blood from the corner of her lip. "Swing that thing like you mean it."

"You're insane," I growled. "There's no point to this."

"There's no point to any of it," she smiled. She flicked her wrist elegantly, producing a knife from somewhere in her sleeve. *I know that knife*. I'd owned it for less than two days, and already I would have recognized it anywhere: the first time I'd used it wasn't something I'd ever forget.

"There's only one choice in life, Squire," my doppelganger said with a flash of teeth. "You can be someone who makes things happen, or someone things happen to. Let's find out which you are, shall we?"

She came at me swinging. There was nothing practiced or elegant about – she was just a girl with a sharp edge trying to claw out my throat. I stepped around her, letting her momentum carry her through as I swiped at her leg with the side of the blade. Too awkwardly placed: it bounced off the steel greaves. I'd never been taught how to use a sword, and it showed.

"Put your back into it, would you?" the double chided me. "Otherwise we'll be at this all night."

I ground my teeth, keeping a lid on my temper. I'd taunted people into making stupid mistakes often enough to recognize when someone was trying to do the same to me. The doppelganger leaned it with a quick half-step, blade headed straight from my throat, but the strike was too wild. Too much strength into it, not enough control: she was wasting movements. My fist impacted with her chin and she rocked back, but she slapped away the side of my sword when I tried to bring it to bear. The sharp edge bit into the leather gloves she wore, drawing a thin trickle of blood as

she stepped back and started circling around me. "First blood to me," I spoke quietly.

She laughed. "Last blood's the only one that matters," she replied, and rushed forward again.

I was ready for her, this time: I caught her wrist as it came down for my neck, fingers digging painfully into the cold wet mail as I struggled to hold it back. She tried to headbutt me but I lowered my face in time and she rammed her forehead into the top of my head instead. The double was the one who recoiled in pain, and that was the opening I needed – awkwardly, using the sword more like an oversized needle than a weapon, I rammed the point into her jugular. Blood sprayed out and she fell to her knees, gasping. I looked down into her eyes coldly.

"My turn with the speeches," I ground out. "You lack focus. You lack discipline. You're just lashing out at everything: all you can do is break things until you end up broken too."

She gurgled out a laugh, a bloody smile stretching out her lips.

"What are you laughing at?" I asked.

"You didn't flinch," she rasped.

She dropped all the way into the water, face-first, and I had to flip her over to wrench out the blade. Threads of red were already appearing in the murk but I took a moment to catch my breath, clutching the sword. My free hand came up to wipe the sweat off my brow, though there was no salvaging the shirt and trousers that had been through the muck thrice. I was not looking forward to the walk to the hill, but at least I wouldn't be hounded all the way there. The sound of parted waters was heard from up ahead as a silhouette emerged from the water, shambling upright. Then another. Then another.

"Come on," I complained. "I didn't even say it out loud!"

josh

Great job with the chapter. Keep it up

z3ta311

I know it has been almost 7 years since release but I just started reading and that headbutt part rustles my jimmies so

hard. FOREHEAD IS THE TOUGH PART, TOP OF THE SKULL IS THE FRAGILE PART, DAG NABBIT!

firespier

this is probably one of the best webstories i read to date

Unmaker

Possible typos:

the the subject of Roles
the subject of Roles

Neither options were
Neither option was

going ons
goings on

favour
favor

Would't
Wouldn't

Cetharine
Catharine

it?The
it? The

armour
armor

there's snakes in the water
there're snakes in the water
(character dialog, might be written as intended)

barrelled
barreled

(see my comment under Chapter 1 on colon usage – there are far fewer of them here, but some seem like they would be better as semicolons or possibly hyphens)

I met his eyes, green to brown, and he smiled.
(if the order of eyes matches the order in the sentence, should be brown to green)

(When the scene changes to the swamp, it sounds like she is face down, which is quite the trick if there is a sword sticking out of her chest – unless it was all the way in, she shouldn't be

able to be face down, and even then, the crossguard, hilt, and pommel would make that position difficult.)

long pink scar across the noise
long pink scar across the nose

If it was rusty
If it were rusty
(character dialog, might be written as intended)

I didn't like the idea of sting in the much either
I didn't like the idea of staying in the much either

Reactions:

Spoiler problem: the previous chapter (3) has 'squire' in the URL, but the readers don't hear about that until this chapter.

canary

Favour or favor
Armor or Armour
Both are the correct spellings

jeray2000

I was really enjoying this at first, but Black's and Foundling's interactions started to really annoy me. They were both constantly making assertions with barely any evidence behind them, and then turning out to be correct.

stevenneiman

Everything Catherine has said was backed by enough evidence that it seemed obvious to me, and everything Black said was backed by whatever mysterious intelligence network or magical source of knowledge he uses. I don't get where anyone was making assertions without evidence.

[moridain](#)

Yeah, at least let her say 'Well, that was easy' or 'Well, its finally over.' before you prove her hilariously wrong.

Hakurei06

It's inside her soul. it doesn't have to be out loud to count.

stevenneiman

"the girl looking down on me from {a/the} jutting stump"
I absolutely loved that last line. And the bit about Catherine's turn to give speeches.

Violet

The first time i read this it wasn't so clear and i brushed through the most important things to get to what i thought was the meat of the story and now that im reading it again im amazed at the foreshadowing

Aran

I know the characters are practically opposites, but I can't *not* read Catherine's snark in the voice of Buffy Summers.

arancaytar

(Actually, now that I've read all the rest, this effect has only grown. I'm disappointed that even if this were ever adapted to film, Sarah Michelle Gellar would probably be at least a decade or so beyond pulling off the bad-ass teenager.)

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Oh I'm sure there's a plethora of hot teenage girls at any given time who could pull it off. The problem is finding someone willing to sort through them all to find the perfect one 😊

[Mental Mouse](#)

She is also very much the wrong race.

linnilalartyr

I begin reading this like mad~~~~

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Huh. Just who was that, exactly?

I have some ideas but they might contain spoilers so I'll rot13 it:

Guvf gvzr nebhaq vg jbexrq ernnyl, ernnyl jryy ernqvat Rivy Png
nf vs fur jrер yvхr n ybj yriry Tbq sebz Orybj npgvat nf n xvaq
bs ivyynva genvare, jbexvat gb znxr fher Png'f fhvgrq gb gur
Ebyr, nyy gur juvyр znffntvat ure rkcrpgngvbaf n ovq, znxvat fher
fur'f cercnerq sbe jung'f pbzvat. Fur'f rknpгyl jung Png arrrq
gb or rnfrq vagb gur Anzr nf zhpu nf cbffvoyr.

V qrsvavgryl srry yvхr gur qbccrytnatre jnf n pbzcyrgryl frcnengr
ragvgl abg bs Pngurevar'f zvaq be fbhy.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

N ivyynva thvqnabr pbhafrybe, gung'f jung V jnagrq gb fnl! 😊
Naq na rnfvyf fhezbhagnoyr punyyratr jurer gur cbvag jnf'a'g gb
jva, gur cbvag jnf gb abg urfvgngr, juvpu vf jul fur fzvyrq.

V jbaqre vs trggvat obgu gur tbbq naq onq "gjvaf" vf fbzrguvat
vaurerag gb gur Anzr Fdhver, fvapr gur Anzr pbhyq orybat gb n
ureb be ivyynva, naq gurl qba'g arrq nal Anzrq gb or
inpvyyngvat bire gurve Ebyrf

lucas morandini

Ahhhhhh come on !!! She already killed the evil doppelganger ? I
was enjoying their interaction so much.

Vadelent

He might by definition be "evil" but the way I see it he's simply
a bad man who does bad things so good people don't have to.

sswanlake

Some edits:

so I knocked her teeth it with the sword's pommel -> so I knocked
her teeth *in* with the sword's pommel

The doppelganger leaned it with a quick half-step -> The
doppelganger leaned *in* with a quick half-step

WealthyAardvark

A few typos

I'd just be good sense
-> It'd

playing a game whose rule I didn't
-> rules

some sort forest now."
-> sort of

green

"I might be in a place to do some good in a decade instead of
three. Less, if I somehow distinguish myself."

coming back to re-read this from where the story is at now...
aahaaaahahahahhhh, oh Catherine, you have *no idea*, and it's
going to be *glorious*. 😊

Ebert the Alamans, scholar errant

Soul quests, spirit visions, and astral endeavors of all kinds are common in our world. Whether magical, alchemical, or just from eating the wrong berries, these self reflective (and at times self indulgent) activities often lead to great personal change.

This writer himself once took part in a shamanistic vision quest hosted by a greenskin outcast plying this service in the city of Mercantis. Glorious insights to the nature of reality were had, though the method of achieving the state (fervent strangulation by the aforementioned greenskin) leaves one's memory regrettably impaired following return to consciousness.

For more information, see my publication, "Tripping on Reality: Common Methods of Perceiving Beyond and into the Self"

[Isaac Linn](#)

"I'd just be good sense, for you lot:"

Replace "I'd" with "It'd"

midas0

Always another fight

Rraune

"and I'd ever only reacted one way to that:"

only ever

"and already he'd already pegged what I wanted perfectly."

and he'd already pegged what

"I'd just be good sense, for you lot: make us a weaker target from when you invade again, a few years down the line. "

It'd just be ... target for when

"much too quickly for someone wearing plate – with his sword was in hand."

with his sword in hand

"but she left her face open so I knocked her teeth it with the sword's pommel "

teeth in

"blade headed straight from my throat, "

straight for my

Chapter 5: Role

"Where have all the good men gone? Graveyards, mostly."

– Dread Emperor Malevolent III, the Pithy

Running struck me as the better part of valour in this one.

The first undead I'd put down had been a bit of a pushover, sure, but there were more coming out of the water every moment and fighting in the muck was going to get exhausting. I wasn't sure what would actually happen if I died here, but Black's last words were probably as much a real warning as sarcasm. One of the shamblers got close enough to reach for my arm but it was ridiculously slow – small favours – so I hacked away at the head with a two-handed swing. The flesh and bone split like an overripe fig and the thing went back down to wherever the Hells is had crawled out of, sinking into the water. I flicked a glance at my back, grimacing when I saw that even those few moments had been enough for the rest of the bastards to gain on me. *There's gotta be fifty, at least?* And the swamp seemed intent on continuing to hemorrhage undead every time I blinked, so I definitely couldn't afford to get bogged down. My mouth still tasted like scum water so I spat to the side as I pulled my way up onto the stump, looking for a way out of this mess – somehow I had a feeling that climbing up a tree and closing my eyes wasn't going to cut it.

The structure in the distance still stood in the same place as earlier. It was shaped like a tower, I thought, though I couldn't see how high up it went. What I *could* see was that the hill it stood on was outside the swamp and currently lacking my zombie friends. It was probably a trap, I reflected, but still better than getting pulled apart by a horde of moaning imbeciles. There was a flicker at the edge of my sight and I almost flinched: something was trying to catch my foot. The edge of my sword caught the wrist halfway there, though, and I blinked in surprise at the undead recoiled with a shriek. I... shouldn't have been able to do that. I was quick, but I knew exactly how quick I was – I'd learned it anew with every fresh set of bruises in the Pit. I was familiar with the hateful little moment when you saw a hit coming but knew you wouldn't be fast enough to block it, and this was one of those. But instead my body had reacted immediately, with no heartbeat between the realization of the need to move and the movement itself.

"Name," I whispered, a little awed.

I wasn't even the Squire yet, wouldn't be for a while if I'd understood the gist of what Black had said, and already I could do things like this? No wonder heroes were said to take on entire fortresses filled with soldiers without a second thought. *No wonder villains take on entire groups of heroes.* Silhouettes were

already rising up ahead, littering the way to the hill in an attempt to keep me surrounded, so I jumped back down into the swamp and got moving. The zombie who'd almost caught me had been entirely silent: it had emerged from the waters without a sound and given no warning before striking. Adding to that the fact that it had tried to slow me down instead of kill me? It meant that they were getting smarter about this. The longer I stayed here, the harder it would get. *It also means my soul is being kind of a bitch about this*, I grunted to myself.

I pushed through the muck as fast as I could. Even here was only ankle-deep, so I was a little quicker than my pursuers – though not by wide enough a margin to get comfortable. Another one rose from the mud to my right so I ducked around a tree to make a little space. I would have looked rather ridiculous, I imagined, if anybody had been around to see me. Even pushing myself I was barely as quick as someone taking a walk on solid ground and the slow-witted undead were only a threat because of their number. Not exactly the kind of struggle you wrote epic poems about. I managed for what seemed like an eternity to avoid any of them before realizing that I was playing into their hands: I was going through more effort going around them than I would actually getting into a fight, as the rivulets of sweat running down my neck were already proving. Spitting out one of the grittier curses I'd overheard down at the Docks, I squared my shoulders and rammed myself straight into the knot of shamblers barring the way ahead.

I rammed the tip of the short sword into the throat of the closest one and it came free as I wrenched the blade out, but the other two were already on me. What looked like it might have been a woman at some point sank her teeth into my arm and I hissed in pain – I knocked her loose by hitting her temple with the pommel of the sword, struggling to keep the last one away with my free hand. The zombie gave, though several of her teeth remained stuck into my flesh. Could you get an infection from a Name vision? Gods, I hoped not. Cutting away the reaching arm of the last undead was the work of a pair of measured swings as I ducked around the woman trying to bite me a second time, and then the way was clear enough for me to push through. There was a fallen tree a little up a head that allowed me to put more distance between us when I climbed up on it, though the wood was wet and the footing tricky.

A glance at the hill up ahead told me I was maybe halfway there, so I gritted my teeth and got back to work without taking a moment to catch my breath.

The bite wound on my arm throbbed, and that clinched my decision of not getting into any more fights with knots of them. I wasn't used to fighting with multiple opponents, and I couldn't afford to take a wound every time I ran into a pack. I stuck to hacking

down lone undead as I ducked and weaved through the trees, always keeping an eye on the hill: the last thing I needed was to get lost in this godsdamned swamp. I took a scrape on the face when one of them jumped out from behind a tree, fingernails clawing as I rammed the sword into its chest. It was light, but I'd been very lucky it hadn't been higher up: I'd fought with blood in my eyes before, and that was always a messy business. The closer I got to the hill the thinner in the ground the undead became. Less and less knots, and then they stopped rising entirely. By the time the water had turned into mossy wet earth, there were none in sight. Dropping to my knees, I leaned up against a tree and took the chance of closing my eyes for a moment.

Gods, I was exhausted.

The Pits hadn't been like that at all. I'd only ever done one fight a day, and they'd never gone on this long. The opponents had been more dangerous, but they'd never ground me down by sheer force of numbers. If I'd slipped up even once, down in the waters, it would have been over.

"Fuck me," I whispered. "Weeping Heavens, I hope the Good twin isn't going to make this a fight."

I pushed myself up and waited another few moments to catch my breath. I was close enough to get a good look at the hill now, and the tower on it. White stone, though not a kind I recognized, and it kept going up higher than I could see through the top of the trees. Hopefully my soul wasn't enough of a jackass to make it so I had to walk up sets of stairs covering that height, though considering the kind of shit it had been putting me through so far I wasn't exactly counting on it. The way out of the outskirts of the swamp was quicker now that the ground was mostly solid: I took the long way around a handful of ponds just in case there was anything lurking in there, but to be honest I was too happy I wasn't being dogged by the burning undead horde to really complain about the tediousness of getting out of the bog.

My first surprise came when I finally got out of the trees: the tower kept going up. All the way into the sky, and then it connected to some sort of sprawling city that covered the gloom for miles. The whole thing was upside down, with the tallest stone spires looking to me like they should be falling down any moment now. Just looking at the thing was putting back the itch under my feet that I'd associated with my old fear of heights. Even as I continued closing the distance I could barely see where the stones making the tower started and the next one began: it would have appeared to be made of a single block of rock to anyone not taking too close a look. There was a yawning doorway squat in the middle and a pair of armoured knights stood by it, perfectly still. The suits of armour were empty, I saw as I got

closer, made of what looked like silver. I raised a brow at that. Silver? That was the stupidest thing I could think of to forge armour with, except maybe gold – it was soft metal, any halfway decent blade would cut through. The halberds they were holding were steel, though, and that was another story entirely. Warily, sword still in hand, I kept an eye on their weapons and hazarded a step between them. Immediately the halberds came down, barring my way in.

"Well," I mused, "so much for the easy way. There'd better not be an endless flood of you fellows inside, because I'd like to believe my godsdamned *soul* is a little more original than that."

"You don't need to fight them," a voice interrupted me. "You just need to leave that... *thing* outside."

There was a woman standing just past the doorway, and for the second time I got to have a look at an older version of myself. No scar on her this time, and she wore pristine white robes instead of armour. Her hair was cut short in a way that had never suited me but looked fitting on her: her face was more mature, the cheeks thinner and her nose not as prominent. She was also currently glaring at my sword like it had been used in the murder of her extended family.

"Yeah," I informed her flatly. "I'm not handing that over. Not when you've got your little friends there with the halberds."

My new doppelganger frowned. "I have no weapons, and they'll stay outside," she replied.

"And I'm supposed to take your word on that?"

"If you want to enter the tower," she told me, and I recognized the tone she was using.

I'd used it quite a few times myself, when I was letting a potential threat know I wasn't going to budge on something. Was it worth the risk? I didn't know how hard to put down the knights would be, and I wasn't exactly at my best right now – the throbbing on my arm where I'd gotten bitten was a constant reminder of that, never mind the weariness in my bones. The bog-bitch had called this one the "Good" twin, though, so maybe taking a chance was the way to go. Still... Moving quicker than I'd ever thought I could, I impaled the closest knight through the breast plate, pinning it to the surprisingly soft stone behind it. I stepped away, hands raised in peace, as the other one raised its halberd.

"Weaponless, see?" I told the other woman with a smile.

The older double frowned but conceded the point with a nod, stepping aside as I entered. The inside of the tower was empty

except for a single seat in the middle of the room: old gnarled wood, light brown and well-polished. Not that it felt that way: the walls were covered in colourful mosaics. They depicted daily scenes from what I recognized to be my life – lessons at the orphanage, evenings at the Nest, even fights in the Pit. The tower walls went all the way into the distance, ending in a breath-taking view of the city I'd glimpsed earlier from above. The itch came back, but I pushed it down with the ease of practice: that particular fear was one I'd already mastered, and I had no intention of allowing it to crawl back into my life. Past a certain point the walls were still blank, I assumed to make room for the rest of my life. I squinted as I tried to make up one of the scenes higher up I couldn't recognize, but the lighting inside wasn't good enough. I did have a guide, though.

"That one," I asked pointing at the object of my curiosity. "What does it show?"

The other girl shot me an unimpressed look.

"That time you peeked at Duncan Brech through the cracks while he was changing," she said.

I chuckled. "And that warrants an entire scene? He's not *that* good-looking."

Good Twin didn't seem to share in my amusement: she ignored me and headed for the chair, claiming the seat gingerly and leaving me to stand around like a suppliant. I sighed. And here'd I gone, foolishly hoping that she wouldn't be as much of a pain as the other one.

"So," I grunted, "out with it. Before I stabbed the other one she took issue with how 'soft-hearted' I was. What's the axe you've got to grind?"

"The axe we have to grind," the double corrected calmly. "All that you see here, all that you've been through so far – it comes from you. We're voicing your doubts, nothing more."

"That makes me responsible for the bloody zombies, then?" I muttered. "That's a whole new level of self-loathing."

The white-robed girl smiled mirthlessly. "You have this belief that nothing worth having can be had easily. Your adventure in the swamp is a reflection of that."

Interesting, but not what I'd come here for. If I'd wanted to be lectured, I'd have taken a seat in the Matron's office and told her I'd been fighting in the Pit.

"Fascinating insight," I told her flatly. "Changes everything. I don't suppose that's enough to knock off this part of the dream?"

A flash of anger went through her eyes, and I was almost satisfied I'd gotten anything but condescension out of her.

"One would hope you'd take the fate of your *soul* a little more seriously, Catherine Foundling," she thundered, her voice echoing in the empty tower.

"I would take this seriously if I thought what I learned here meant anything," I replied, taking delight in remaining calm in the face of her anger. "But it doesn't. It's just a chore I have to get done before I return to consciousness and move on with my life."

"Yes," she spoke, forcing herself back into a semblance of serenity. "Your life. As a villain in service to the Dread Empire of Praes."

I frowned. "That was always the plan," I reminded her. "Now I just get to skip a few steps by having a Name instead of slowly climbing the ranks in the Legions."

"If you don't understand how taking up a Role changes everything," she said, "then you are a fool. You are binding yourself to Evil. To uphold its laws, champion its cause."

"Not to put too fine a point on it," I grunted, "but the Empire's laws are the *only* laws, at the moment. And let's not pretend I'm going to champion anything I don't want to champion, because if you're really part of my soul you should know better than that."

The doppelganger leaned forward, a fervent light in her eyes. "There is another law. The one you were taught at the House of Light. Do good. Uphold right. Protect the innocent, fight for a righteous cause."

"You want me to be a hero," I realized. "That's... I don't think I even have the words to tell you how *stupid* of an idea that is. Let's forget for a moment that my body's in near proximity to at least two of the Calamities, though that should be enough in and of itself. Heroes try to "liberate" Callow all the time, Idiot Twin. *It doesn't work.*"

I took a step forward.

"They try, maybe stir up a town in the south, and then they *die*. Assassin gets them, or the Legions, or Hells I've even heard Black put down a few himself. *Some don't even make it into Callow itself before they get caught.*"

"You're already here," she replied. "You know Laure, know your people. All they need is someone to raise the standard, and they will rally."

"They'll riot," I corrected. "And they'll be dispersed. Then I imagine my head will look mighty righteous, spiked alongside theirs over the city gates."

"That's your answer?" she growled. "It'd be too *hard*? Too hard, not to become another tool of the Empire instead of doing the right thing?"

"I'm all for doing the right thing," I replied flatly. "As long as it's not also the dumb thing. This isn't a story, you twit. We're living this. If we fuck up, real people are going to die and we'll die with them having accomplished *nothing*."

"Better to accomplish nothing than to accomplish bad things," she told me.

And that was where we split apart, I realized. The other one down in the swamp had thought that just killing everyone who deserved killing was going to be enough, but that was a child's way of thinking. There were always going to be more people like Mazus, more petty tyrants drunk on power and greed. Just removing them wasn't enough: you had to change the system behind them, the machinery that let them rise so high in the first place. This one, she thought that just being Good was enough. That because you were doing the right thing you'd win, in the end, and the villains would be sent packing and everyone would rejoice. That wasn't what happened, in real life. Sometimes you couldn't beat Evil, and the only way to change things was to be patient and clever.

"Doing nothing is worse than being Evil," I told her, striding forward. "Getting people killed because you won't compromise is worse than being Evil. I'm going to change things – maybe not all of them, but enough. And if that means getting my hands dirty, I can live with that. I don't have to be a good person to make a better world."

She opened her mouth but I was already upon her and my fingers closed around her throat.

"No," I growled. "You've said enough, and *we are done here*."

—

For the second time in two days, I woke up in a room I was unfamiliar with.

Hopefully the passing out wasn't going to be a staple of my tenure with the Empire, because it was already starting to get old. The bed I was in was more fit for a family of four than my own meagre frame, and by the feel of it I'd been tucked in under actual silk sheets. *Well now. Long way from the orphanage aren't we, Catherine Foundling?* I sighed and allowed myself to luxuriate

in the feeling of them for a moment, laying back my head on the pillows and refusing to open my eyes. I felt... surprisingly good, actually, except for the dull throbbing where I'd gotten bit during the dream. My senses felt sharper, like I'd just gotten a really good night's sleep instead of gone through a Name vision of dubious symbolism. After a few breaths the novelty of it faded away and I pushed myself up, startling the servant tidying up by the window where the sun was filtering in. A young man, Callowan if the skin tone was any indication and wearing the palace livery.

"Lady Foundling," he bowed, looking like he'd gotten caught with his hand in a jar full of honey. "A thousand apologies, I did not mean to wake you."

"Lady Foundling," I repeated, somewhat bemused. "Fancy that. If I'd known all I needed to become a noble was stab someone in a dream, I'd have done it a while back."

The servant looked rather alarmed at that, though he took pains not to let it show too obviously. "Lord Black left orders that he be informed as soon as you woke, my lady," the man said, keeping his eyes fixed to the floor. "I beg your leave to do so. Clothes have been laid out for you by the bath."

A bath? Didn't expect to sink into the lap of luxury this soon after going bad, but I'm not complaining.

"You," I gestured vaguely, "go and do that, I guess."

The servant excused himself again and left the room after a bow, closing the door behind him.

"Lady Foundling," I repeated, chuckling to myself.

The title seemed more like a bad joke than anything else. Foundling wasn't a real name: it was what they slapped next to an orphan's name on the ledger when they got dropped off. *Like putting a coat on a pig.* The siren call that was the mention of a bath got me on my feet, sliding off the bed with another small sigh of pleasure. I really needed to look into getting sheets like those, if I ended up settling down anywhere while I was the Squire. I padded to the window on bare feet, shedding the now sweat-soaked shirt I'd been put to bed wearing and dropping it on the floor. I'd never taken to wearing breast bindings: wasn't curvy enough to need them, since whichever of my parents had been Deorai the had cursed me with their typically slender frame. *My parents, huh.* It'd been a while since I'd thought about them. I had no idea who they'd been – were, for all I knew – since the House for Tragically Orphaned Girls didn't keep records for me to break into. I'd been dropped off a little after the Conquest, though, so probably not a dead soldier's child.

The view out of the window was lovely, looking down straight on a well-tended garden of sculpted hedges and exotic flowers. There were a few gardeners already at work, but I didn't really care if one of them got a look through the window: there'd been little enough privacy in the dormitories that I'd gotten over that sort of shyness long ago. I ran pensive fingers against the window panes, enjoying the way the coloured glass turned my fingers green and red. *Imported, has to be.* The Glassblower's Guild didn't do work like this, so it was likely from the Principate. The servant had mentioned my freshly acquired teacher's instructions that he be told when I woke, so after a moment I moved towards the doorway facing the bed. I'd never had a chance to use a real bathtub before, so I wanted to make the most of it. The other room was all panelled wood and white marble, with a large pool in the middle that appeared to be a Miesan bath. *Huh. Didn't think those got popular here before the Praesi came.* I dipped a toe in the water and found it just short of boiling. I raised an eyebrow: hopefully there was a spell involved in keeping it at that temperature, because otherwise it would have been an outrageous waste of wood.

I slipped out of the trousers and threw them out the doorway. There were marble benches under the water so I slid in on one and rested my back against the edge of the bath – it must have been built for people taller than me, because it came up to my neck. The warm water felt like the best thing in the world, after the last few days, and I dunked myself in just to feel it wrapping up around all of me. I emerged a little ways off and came to face with a handful of small glass vials.

They were clear so I could see they were full of salts and oils: I grabbed the closest one and took off the cap, bringing it up close for a whiff. Something herbal. Lavender, maybe? I'd never really taken an interest in herbalism. I shrugged and poured a little over my back, rubbing it in and spilling some in the water for good measure. A few moments later I was positively reeking of the stuff, so I'd likely been a little heavy-handed. I dunked myself back under the water to rinse it off before deciding that was quite enough indulgence for the day: the promised clothes were on the other side of the bath, neatly folded, so I paddled in that direction. I hoisted myself out and grabbed the cleaning linen laid out next to them, eyeing what I'd been provided curiously. Thick leather breeches, made from the skin of an animal I wasn't familiar with, and a white woollen shirt. The new addition was the thick padded jacket that looked like it would reach to my knees: I'd seen Sergeant Ebele come in wearing one, a few times. She'd called it an aketon – legionaries wore them under chain mail to prevent chafing. *Looks like I'm going to be getting armour soon.*

It was surprisingly easy to put on, designed so I could tighten the laces in the front without anyone's help. I supposed it would

have been a little absurd for the Squire to require a squire of her own, I reflected with a snort. When I came back to the bedroom it was to find there was another occupant: Black was lounging on an ornate chair by a Proceran *bureau* I hadn't even noticed, idly flipping through a book. He raised an eyebrow when he saw me.

"It suits you," he commented.

"It's summer," I grunted back. "I'm going to cook alive." A moment later the memory I had of him resurfaced and I pointed an accusatory finger. "You – you jackass. You stabbed me."

He seemed to ponder that for a moment before shrugging.

"Only a little bit," he replied.

I'd never wanted to deck someone in the face more than I did that man in that moment. "That's what you're going with?" I growled. "*Only a little bit?*"

"If the fact that you're not screaming and bleeding out of your eyes is any indication," he mentioned, "then it was a complete success."

"That was an option?" I asked faintly. "You could have mentioned that before."

"Yes," he admitted frankly. "I could have."

Fucking villains. Even if I was technically one now, *fucking villains*.

"Just to make sure – the swamp and horde of undead, that's normal right?" I asked, seating myself at the edge of the bed.

His eyebrow rose even higher. "Swamp? Unusual. I went through a labyrinth myself, though I'm told the experience tailors itself to the person going through it."

Gods, it was kind of depressing that the best my soul could come up with was scum water and zombies when it came to Name visions.

"I'd consider it a good thing that your experience was rather martial in nature," he told me. "Your Name's abilities are likely to be related."

"Well, that's something at least," I grunted. "I'm not feeling all that different, so I'm guessing that means I'm not the Squire yet?"

"About halfway there, as much as these things can be measured," the green-eyed man said. "There's other contenders, but none of them should be quite so far along."

"Other contenders?" I repeated.

"Close your eyes," the Knight instructed. "Focus. You should feel something in the back of your mind, like someone watching you."

I obeyed. For the first few moments there was nothing, but after a while there was... a sensation. It wasn't like he'd said, more like an itch that wasn't quite on my skin but still belonged to me. I frowned and tried to push the feeling, and suddenly it unfolded on me.

"Three others," I said, opening my eyes. "And some fourth thing that's not quite the same."

He hummed in agreement. "Try to keep your finger on the pulse of that feeling as much as possible, from now on."

I frowned. "Why?"

He smiled. "Because as of this moment, they all want to kill you."

Baboz

Wow I love the story so far! I'm looking forward to more. The brief mentions of the Warlock have already made him one of my favorite characters haha.

amc

re-reading this again. and wow. Black and the captain actually make sense in hindsight. and zombies as a trial? isn't that a bit on the nose?

Unmaker

Possible typos:

valour

valor

(I will assume American English until corrected.)

favours

favors

armoured / armour (several)

armored / armor

colourful / coloured
colorful / colored

meagre
meager

panelled
paneled

woollen
woolen

There's other contenders
There're other contenders
(character speech, may be written as intended)

Reactions:

It is odd to me that, after being stabbed, she doesn't even check the wound when getting up.

"And some fourth thing that's not quite the same."
A Good Squire perhaps?

[erraticerrata](#)

I suppose now would be the time to mention I used British English, being Canadian and using spellchecks program that run on it. 🤪

"It is odd to me that, after being stabbed, she doesn't even check the wound when getting up."

Something I hadn't considered. Might be worth revisiting that part when I next edit.

"A Good Squire perhaps?"

Ah, that would be telling. That said, nearly half of that statement is right.

stevenneiman

I kind of assumed that the vision or possibly the new power came with free health care. It seemed obvious enough to me that Black wouldn't stab his Squire if that would cause problems later, and Catherine seems smart enough to have figured out the same.

I'm confused about the need to kill the competition. That sounds like something that would fit for the more ambitious Roles, but not for someone like the Squire and certainly not for anyone good, unless it works somehow differently on the other side.

Dan

Why the hell are you assuming American English? The author has clearly and consistently been using British English, and you go

and take all of those words and “correct” them as if there was a possibility the author wanted to use American English but did it wrong. What a jackass.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

What an overreaction?

stevenneiman

“and I blinked in surprise at the undead recoiled {and} with a shriek.” at first I thought it was the zombie that was screaming. “There was a fallen tree a [little up a head->up ahead a little]” “I grabbed the closest one and took [of->off] the cap” “it was surprisingly easy to put on, designed [to->so] I could tighten the laces” “Even if I [was technically->technically was] one now, fucking villains.” Not a strict error, but I think it would read better. Also, such a wonderful line.

[James](#)

She missed a trick. Could have asked the good twin how not believing that it had to be hard would have helped her around the zombies.

[James](#)

She missed a trick. Could have asked the Good twin how not believing everything had to be hard would have helped her through the zombies.

Aran

“Just short of boiling” seems kind of, well, lethal. Certainly not the kind of bath you’d get comfortable in.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Likewise.

[Liliet](#)

I’m guessing Catherine hasn’t had enough experience with hot baths to really tell what temperature this one was.

kelioez

I was thinking the same actually

stevenneiman

“But also wrong. What you so quaintly call my [“pitch”->’pitch’] started the moment I came across you in that alley.” Use single

quote marks for quotes inside quotes, to distinguish from ending one quote and beginning another.

"I blinked in surprise at the undead recoiled with a shriek." I'm honestly not exactly sure what this was supposed to say. Is the zombie shrieking or is Catherine?

"I could barely see where [the stones making->one of the stones making up] the tower started and the next one began"

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Getting serious Taylor Hebert vibes this chapter!

maresther23

I have this image in my head of Captain and Black bickering over a slightly stabbed Cat.

Byzantine

I'm guessing the 4th one is the Hero version. The same, yet different enough they aren't actually in competition.

linnilalartyr

I like your idea you put into this good and bad twin. Both represent some type of main character found in main stream story. This is interesting!

Aotrs Commander

Someone randomly started a thread on this on my local forum, asking if anyone else was reading this. I had not heard of it, and thought, being a bit of the Lawful Evil bend myself, it was worth a quick look at least.

I have been laughing in delight the whole way through thus far. I LIKE these people! They are right after my own lack of heart! Ye gods, I don't think I can express how nice it is to see a group of characters I can actually identify with for once! The antagonists... Actually getting what they deserve for once, in a way that satisfies even my vicious streak. Delightful, it really is!

I am disappointed that I will have to leave off for the night now, but now I have something to read that, if it holds like it has so far, is going to be something that will really brighten my day.

Excellent work! Thank you!

burguulkodar

Funny, I found them a bit too lacking for evil characters. They seem way too good and caring. It's not about politeness, that

you can be evil and elegant is a given, even though many chaotic evil characters prefer not to. I align myself as more neutral evil than lawful, with slight chaotic tendencies, if only so much because I find any kind of authority over myself as deeply distasteful.

Two webnovels I am reading which REALLY depicts an evil character more to my liking are "Reverend Insanity" and "Death Scripture" (also known as Death Sutra). The first is rather chaotic-evil (a demonic powerful figure that has traveled back 500 years in time to his teen years and does things very differently than you would expect for a cultivator – also, he doesn't enjoy or trusts company or any kind of authority at all, being a loner and a poet at heart) and the second, neutral evil (as befitting an assassin and revenge).

I will keep reading this, though. Who knows, it might get better later. I do like Warlock, he seems more neutral evil or perhaps evil chaotic evil aligned than the characters shown so far.

Aotrs Commander

I have to admit, from that, neither of those sounds particularly appealing to me, especially the first one – I fairly intensely dislike the whole "anti-authoritarian loner" thing period, whether they are good, evil, neutral or otherwise.

(When I said "a bit of" I was being self-deprecating; I fundamentally am Lawful as far as that goes; while in reality generally trying to actually ascribe the whole breadth of variance of personalities and people into D&D's nine pigeon-holes is an exercise in futility, I do, ironically, fit as well anything in that category.)

Black, does too, I think, and I absolutely identify with his mind of whirling gears and I can count on the fingers of one hand the number of characters or people in the entire breadth of fiction or reality I can say that about.

Abrakadabra

Maybe this world is instead of being split along the lines of good and evil is really about the struggle of Chaos and Order, I guess.?

Gary

I'm rather disappointed in this chapter. I thought this was supposed to be some sort of internal struggle – but we get no struggle, no conflict. She was in this dream for what, one day, and had two heart-to-heart chats with poorly-written

doppelgangers, and suddenly she's the furthest along in the process of getting a name? I thought getting a name was supposed to be hard!

[Liliet](#)

I mean, she already cut two people's throats on Black's encouragement, and got his blessing to be his Squire.

Sometimes things are easy because someone else is helping.

[Burguulkodar](#)

Why is every Role except Hero automatically "Evil"? Squire, unlike Warlock or Blacknight, doesn't seem inherently evil. Perhaps there are many named roles on the "Good" side too? But why should Captain, Squire, Ranger, be automatically "Evil"?

ShortyGo

The role of Squire is not evil, Cat has chosen to be on the side of evil, she could have been good and still a squire.

[greatwyrmgold](#)

I wonder how heroic Names are distributed. A Klingon promotion seems ill-fitting...

Ebert the Alamans, scholar errant

Surprising to say, the concept of "bathing" in search of cleanliness is not a universal feature of the continent of Calernia. One whom is well-traveled will have no doubt noticed the high degree of variation between hygiene practices of different peoples, if only due to the odor.

The Callowan people keep no public baths and can rarely provide such luxuries as private citizens, and instead turn to using communal ewers or basins to wash when seeking to appear presentable. Other locals have disparate means of ablution including sand bathing (Taghreb), smoke yurts (some clans of the steppes), and hound cleansing (a popular method in Foramen as related by a goblin of this writer's acquaintance).

For more information, please see my publication, "A Big Stink: How Calernia Gets Clean"

Jon

only a little bit fjdkdhdhkdbcmsbxx

midas0

Why must life be so difficult

Rraune

"designed to I could tighten the laces in the front without anyone's help."

designed so

Chapter 6: Aspect

Funny, isn't it? No matter what language they speak, everyone sounds the same when you pull out their fingernails."

– Dread Emperor Foul III, "the Linguist"

The pile of books slammed on the table.

"The Most Illustrious Histories of the Inimitable Dread Empire of Praes", volume I to III, made up up the top layer and I lost interest after checking that ones right under were a study of the Licerian Wars. Gods, those bred like lice. I'd had to read seven treatises about the fall of the Miezan Empire already – every two-bit scholar seemed to think that their own take on why the Baalites had won was unique and unprecedented, all while shamelessly stealing from each other's work.

"I'm assuming you want me those read those and not, say, bludgeon someone to death with the pile?" I asked dryly.

"Very perceptive of you," Black noted. "We'll be leaving for Summerholm this afternoon, but before we do we'll go over the shape of your days for the foreseeable future."

"And apparently that shape involves..." I peered a little closer at one of the books close to the bottom, "A close look at Praesi agricultural practices? Are you sure I can't get you to reconsider the bludgeoning thing?"

The Knight frowned. "Dry reading, I will concede, but a necessary one."

Considering I'd never even seen a farm in my life and I doubted he'd ever done more than ride past one, that was one statement I wasn't willing to swallow without a fight. I raised an eyebrow.

"Are we going to be doing a lot of farming in the next months, then? Have you ever *been* on a farm?"

He shot me an amused look. "I was raised on one, as a matter of fact. My father was a freeholder on the Green Stretch."

It took me a moment to place the name, digging back to the handful of geography lessons I'd breezed through. It was what they called the crescent of fertile land in the Wasteland, right next to the Blessed Isle. I'd heard that it was the only part of Praes where people intermarried with Callowans, which made sense given my teacher's distinctly pale skin tone. Still, the idea of the leader of the Calamities plowing a field was all sorts of hilarious for many reasons. *I'm sure those fields were oppressed like no field before them*, I chuckled to myself.

"Freeholder?" I repeated after a moment, mangling the unknown word. "That's different from a regular sort of farmer, then?"

Black claimed a space on the bench across from the table. The banquet hall was just as deserted as it had been two nights ago – I'd apparently slept through a whole day, and managed to miss Mazus' hanging for my trouble – though the polished wood had long been cleared of food and plates. I'd already set aside the hearty breakfast the palace kitchens had provided me after wolfing down two servings and half a pot of tea: Name visions apparently worked up quite an appetite. I took the high road and decided not to comment on the fact that the green-eyed man already had a cup of wine in hand before noon bell had even rung.

"Land in Praes is usually owned by the nobility," he explained, "Namely, the High Lords or their lower counterparts. People who work the land rent it from them, and have no real say over what happens to it. The Green Stretch has no noble domains on it."

I raised an eyebrow. "That seems unusually enlightened, for the Empire," I commented.

He snorted. "The Stretch is the breadbasket of Praes – the north of the Wasteland barely produces enough grain to feed itself, much less sell a surplus, and the south is a literal desert. Any noble with significant holdings in the Stretch would be able to starve the Empire at will."

Ah. That made a little more sense, in a depressing sort of way. "I'm guessing freeholders rent their land directly from the Empress?"

He nodded. "In a sense. There's a single fee when taking possession that lasts for the lifetime of the freeholder. It has to be paid again if the land is inherited, but the Tower is typically hands-off with the entire region."

I'd always thought of Praes a single unified entity, but the more I learned of it the more it became apparent it was anything but. How many of the blunders in the way Callow was being run came not from stupidity but the need to appease High Lords, I wondered? And how could a woman with Empress Malicia's reputation tolerate her hand being forced by idiots?

"Why are there even High Lords anymore?" I finally asked. "I mean, they're the obvious contenders for the throne – so why hasn't the Empress killed them all and turned the entire Empire into freeholds? I mean, if the way your conversation with Mazus went is any indication you'd be all for riding that horse."

Black's fingers drummed against the table thoughtfully. "After we won the civil war, I advised Malicia as much. If I'd had my way, we'd have nailed the lot of them alive to the gates of their little kingdoms and broken the aristocracy so thoroughly there wouldn't be a noble in Praes for another thousand years."

"And yet here they are," I pointed out quietly.

"She disagreed," he told me. "Argued that the ensuing chaos would destabilize the Empire for decades. And that since there would always be opposition to her reign, it was better to know who her enemies were – and that she could beat them, if she needed to."

The way he spoke the words was strange. He wasn't espousing the position himself, merely parroting someone else's opinion. The lack of conviction showed.

"You still think it should have been done," I half-guessed, half-stated.

"Yes," he agreed. "But she's always seen more clearly through the politics than I have, so I'm trusting her judgement. I do have a certain tendency to try to... simplify problems."

Meaning nail said problems alive to the gates of their "little kingdoms". Weeping Heavens, the very image... He'd mentioned a superior, during his recruitment speech, and the conversation was making it very clear who that person was. Not that there'd ever been any doubt. Legionaries at the Nest spoke of the Black Knight with admiration, but they spoke of the Empress with awe.

"There will be other times to discuss the inner workings of the Empire," Black said, changing the subject. "Preferably after your readings have acquainted you with the basics of its cultures. Your priority will be these three books."

He gently tapped the spine of three particularly beat-up looking manuscripts in the middle of the pile. One of them bore script I didn't recognize – they looked more like those magical glyphs mages sometimes used than letters – but the other two were in something I could read. Two words: the first one read *Taghrebi*, the other one *Mthethwa*. Languages, the both of them.

"I thought people in the Empire spoke Lower Miezani?" I asked.

It was the tongue we were using for this conversation, and the only one I spoke. It was the only one I'd ever needed, frankly:

I'd had some lessons on Old Miezán, but that was a purely written language now. The Deoraithe in the north still spoke the same tongue they'd spoken since before the birth of the Kingdom and some of the lands in southern Callow still spoke tribal dialects, but everyone understood Lower Miezán. Even people from the Principate, who'd never even traded with the Miezans, usually understood it. Though that was most likely because the tongue they spoke was so hellishly complicated no one else wanted to learn it.

"They do," Black agreed. "It became the most commonly spoken tongue when we were still a province. But if you are to ever command Praesi soldiers, you'll have to understand the languages they were raised to – if only so you know what they're saying when they're not using Lower Miezán."

I grunted in irritation. He had a point, not that it made the prospect of learning two entirely new languages any more inviting. It didn't help that I had a feeling I'd be learning both at the same time.

"What's the third one?" I asked instead of continuing to bask in my disgruntlement. "Are those glyphs?"

"They're written Kharsum, though I'd have been surprised if you could recognize them."

"Kharsum," I repeated in disbelief. "You want me to learn *orcish*?"

"*Kharsum*," he corrected me sharply. "Remember the proper name. And it is not the only orc tongue, only the most common dialect."

"Am I learning goblin too, while I'm at it?" I complained.

Black smiled mirthlessly. "I've worked with goblins for over fifty years now, and I still don't know enough of it to hold a conversation. They don't teach it to outsiders."

Curiosity pushed aside my indignation for a moment, though it was a close thing.

"So they all what, speak other people's tongues?"

"Even goblins from the most backwards tribes are bilingual by the time they can walk," the Knight informed me. "On average, they speak four languages – most Matrons speak seven, including a few who can speak Proceran."

"That's insane," I grunted. "The amount of time that must take..."

"Is less than you'd think, if you start young enough," he cut in. "Besides, you have an advantage none of them have."

Huh. That was new. "If you say "a talented teacher" I won't be held responsible for my actions," I warned him.

He chuckled. "No, though that *is* an advantage. Unless I'm mistaken, at least one of your three aspects will make this easier on you."

I raised an eyebrow.

"You mean that whole "Three Sins" thing is actually true?" I asked.

He blinked in surprise.

"Three Sins?" he repeated, sounding somewhere between puzzled and curious.

"And on all those who take up the banner of Evil, the Heavens will bestow three sins, planting the seed of their downfall in the name of Justice," I quoted from memory.

Sermons at the House of Light were usually on the boring side, but that one had caught my attention: it was always more fun to hear about what the villains were up to than getting edified on the importance of the seventeen cardinal virtues.

"Your priests always did have a way with words," he noted amusedly. "Though I notice they don't mention heroic Roles have their own aspects."

"So aspects instead of sins," I mused. "I can buy that. What are they for?"

"They define your Role," he told me, tone serious now. "They'll change from one incarnation to the next, to some extent, but some aspects are as good as set in stone. *Conquer* is a staple of the Role of Black Knight, for example."

"That means what, exactly?" I replied with a healthy dose of scepticism. "That you're good at conquering things?"

"The more closely attuned you are to your aspects, the larger the portion of your Role's power you can access," he smiled. "So when "conquering things", as you so aptly put, I become... *more* of what I am."

"So why aren't you always conquering something, then?" I asked. "Wouldn't you be pretty much invincible?"

"That particular brand of logic has been popular with some of my predecessors," he agreed. "But in the end there's only so much power to access, and staying too close to your aspects tends to lead to tunnel vision. Not to mention the other side of the equation."

"Heroes," I murmured. "Why do I have a feeling that for every Evil role with *Conquer* in it, there's a Good one with *Protect*?"

"Because I rarely suffer the company of imbeciles?" he suggested. I gave him a flat look.

"Please, sir, there's no need to gush – I'll get embarrassed," I deadpanned.

He didn't manage to take a sip quite quickly enough to hide his smile.

"So what are my aspects, then?" I asked.

He shrugged.

"Only you can answer that. It will come to you in due time. *Learn* is a typical one, which is why I believe that throwing off the proverbial cliff when learning languages will yield the best results," he said.

So he wasn't being entirely unreasonable about this. Still, *orcish*. "I didn't even know orcs had a written language," I admitted, eyeing the not-glyphs inscribed on the book's spine.

"It actually predates all other written tongues on this continent," he commented. "The arrival of the Miezans set them back centuries, in that regard."

That had always been the problem with the Miezans, as far as I could tell. They'd built amazing structures and done wonders with magic that no one had managed since, but they'd had this nasty tendency to stomp down on subdued cultures to make sure they didn't rebel. Orc slaves had been a prized commodity of the later Empire, with the way they could handle larger amounts of hard labour – and clans that didn't like their children being taken away had the screws turned on them, sometimes all the way to extinction. It was a lucky thing the First Licerian War had sparked before they could venture into the maze of petty kingdoms that later became Callow, because otherwise I wasn't sure what my homeland would look like today.

"At least tell me I'm going to be learning something that's actually *interesting*," I pleaded.

He snorted. "Readings will be done on your own time," he informed me. "As of tomorrow, you'll be waking up at dawn for sword lessons with either myself or Captain."

I grinned. Now *that* was a little more up my alley. "Much softer sell, this one."

He shot me an amused look. "I expected as much. After your midday meal you'll have until the afternoon bell to yourself. Between

that and evening bell I'll be handling the aspects of your education that can't be learned from books."

That was also sounding promising. "And that means?"

He hummed. "We'll be travelling this afternoon, so I suppose now would be the best time to have today's lesson. Grab your knife, we'll see about getting you a proper mount."

Walking around in an aketon was an unusual experience.

The heat I'd gotten used to quick enough – though the accompanying sweat I could have done without – but the sensation of having a thick layer of additional protection covering me from my neck to my knees was a little surreal. Some part of me wanted to throw myself at a wall just to see if I'd bounce, though rationally I knew I wouldn't. It was my second time making my way through the halls of power of my native city, so I made a point of taking in the scenery as I followed Black through the maze-like corridors. Tapestries of hunts and battles dotted the scenery wherever paintings did not, and I noted with quiet amusement that no one had seen fit to take down the ones depicting victories of Callowan royals over the Empire. There was even one particularly glorious one that depicted Dread Emperor Nefarious getting his ass whipped by the Wizard of the West during his failed invasion, on the very Fields of Streges where Black had inflicted a crushing defeat twenty years later. I somehow doubted Nefarious had actually dropped his crown while fleeing the battle, but the sight of the woven scene warmed my heart anyway. There were warmly-coloured wood panels covering most of the walls, elaborately carved around the edges, though they came less and less often as the Knight led me towards the western wing of the palace.

"So we're headed to the stables?" I asked.

He didn't seem particularly inclined towards conversation at the moment, but when had that ever stopped me with anyone?

"We are," he replied absently. "The Royal Stables no longer provide for the king's personal retinue of knights so they're not as well stocked as they used to be, but we should find what we need regardless."

"I feel like I should point out I've never ridden a horse," I provided helpfully. "I don't think I've even gotten closer than a stone's throw to one."

He glanced at me sideways as we passed a threshold through what seemed to be an annex to the kitchens – though a ridiculously spacious one.

"That's a suspiciously specific unit of measurement," he said after a moment.

"Wanted it to kick a guard," I admitted shamelessly. "Poor sap."

He raised an eyebrow. "The guard?"

"The horse, of course," I grunted back. "The guard was asking for it."

A shadow of a smile flitted across his face as we entered a paved courtyard – the sudden transition into sunlight blinded me for a moment. *But not, I noted, as long as it would have a week ago.* Two heartbeats hadn't even passed before I'd gotten used to the change of scenery, and the oddity of it sent a shiver up my spine that had nothing to do with sweat. *And I'm not even the Squire yet.*

"You'll also see better in the dark," Black murmured from my side. "Though nowhere as well as goblins do."

"My quota of creepy realizations for the day is reaching full load," I informed him.

He hummed. "Perhaps you won't enjoy the lesson very much, then."

"Well that's not ominous at all," I deadpanned. "Are you going to leave this unaddressed like the funny line about everyone wanting to kill me? Because I'm still waiting for an explanation on that one."

"All things in due time," he replied with a serene smile I really wanted to take a hammer to.

I smelled the Royal Stables before I saw them: manure and animals had a distinct stench to them, especially in large concentrations. *You'd think that by now a mage would have figured out a spell to get rid of the smell of shit.* The stables themselves were made of the same grey granite as the rest of the palace, a long row of stalls where upwards of fifty horses were barred in. There was a groom feeding a stallion some hay in the distance, but he took a single look in our direction and made himself scarce as quickly as humanly possible.

"So, a gelding?" I prompted as we got close enough for me to have a look at the mounts. "I hear they're easier to ride for beginners."

The horses I saw in the stalls had little to do with the ones I'd seen in the streets pulling carts: they were bigger and taller, warhorses instead of workhorses. Some of them had distinct enough appearances I was pretty sure they were specific breeds, though for the life of me I couldn't name one. The Procerans had some

kind of mount called destriers, maybe? I knew Callow's cavalry had been famous, once upon a time, but given how the knights had largely gotten wiped out during the Conquest they weren't something you saw much anymore.

"The horse's temperament shouldn't be much of an issue," Black replied. "I was informed that one of the Bedlam chargers had taken sick, but – ah, there he is."

The horse had a dark chestnut coat, though it was matted with sweat. I guessed it must have stood over five feet tall when standing up: it was hard to tell with it lying down. Its eyes were closed and it was breathing unevenly.

"I'm not going to have to nurse it back to health, am I?" I asked warily. It was a beautiful animal, but I knew nothing about horses and I'd rather not end up killing my first mount through a stupid mistake that someone better acquainted with the species wouldn't have made.

"The stablemaster gives him one chance in three to last the month," he told me. "It has a bad case of pigeon fever – abscesses under the skin. Painful way to die."

I grimaced. Now that I was taking a closer look, I could see it was getting a little thin: I could glimpse the rib bones through its coat, and if I wasn't mistaken its chest was swelling.

"You want me to heal it?"

I knew some Roles could do that. Bring back people on the brink of death, or even a little beyond the line, but I'd been under the impression that those were the heroic ones like Healer or Priestess. Black shook his head.

"We're going to kill it."

I blinked in surprise as the words took a moment to sink in.

"We're going to *what*?"

"You did not mishear me," the green-eyed man said calmly.

"Look, if this is some kind of test... I already offed two people this week and seriously considered a third, so I really don't see the point in-"

"We will then raise it from the dead," Black continued evenly, as if I hadn't interrupted.

I was too taken aback to muster a proper glare. "This is seriously fucked," I finally managed to grit out. "Necromancy? That's capital E..." I trailed off.

"Evil," he finished quietly. "Yes, Catherine. That is the side you're standing on, now. That is the choice you've made."

I tried to muster up a response to that, but my thoughts were too scattered. I wasn't sure why killing a horse I'd never seen before somehow struck me as more morally dubious than slitting the throat of two actual human beings, but it did. They'd been horrible people, sure, but they'd still been *people*. The House of Light's official stance was that animals didn't have a soul in any meaningful way so killing one wasn't exactly a sin either, but...

"Fuck. You could have given me a softer learning curve than jumping straight into *raising the dead*," I spoke through gritted teeth, hesitant and hating that I was feeling that way. "You know, let me dip my toes in with cackling and monologues before taking the metaphorical leap."

"Monologues are for amateurs," Black informed me. "If you have the time to make a speech, you have the time to kill the hero. That said, this *is* a soft learning curve. You're not meddling with the horse's soul, merely animating its body with necromantic energy. Morally speaking, it's no different from felling a tree to make a cart – you're making a means of transportation out of something that used to be alive."

"You're skipping the part where I'm killing it first," I grunted.

The dark-haired man shrugged indifferently. "It would die anyhow. If anything you're saving it from weeks of unnecessary pain by putting it out of its misery now."

"So why didn't you just have the Blackguards bring in some dead horse, if any corpse will do?" I asked.

I wasn't sure whether that would be better or worse, actually. It'd be easier to distance myself from the whole thing if I'd never seen the animal alive, but I'd also feel like an actual necromancer. You know, some sorcerer creep in a run-down tower having his minions bring him bodies to make unholy abominations out of.

"You wouldn't be able to raise it," Black said. "You're too fresh into your Role to manage something of the sort – you'll need a connection to the corpse. Besides, better quality of corpse will make a better undead."

I closed my eyes and took a deep breath, my fingers closing around the handle of the knife at my hip. I'd always known I'd need to cross some lines, to get ahead in the Empire. Gods, I'd as good as renounced any chance of getting into the Heavens after I died just by claiming a Name on the wrong side of the fence so

this was positively trifling in comparison. *Like felling a tree to make a cart*, I told myself, the words coming as cold comfort.

"Will it be painful?" I asked, opening my eyes. "For the horse, I mean."

"It won't even wake," Black replied.

I knew people who hadn't died half that peacefully. "So what do I need to do?" I grunted, letting go of the knife.

"Lay your hand on its coat," the Knight instructed quietly. "I'll do most of the work, you just have to get a feel for what's happening."

I knelt in front of the horse, awkwardly reaching for the side of its neck. It didn't even stir. Black crouched next to me and laid a single finger on its forehead, narrowing his eyes almost imperceptibly. There was no crackling of energy or flash of light – this wasn't magic, I thought, not the way mages used it anyway – but suddenly there was a *weight* pushing down on my shoulders. The horse went cold, the sensation of it against my fingers giving me goosebumps. The way it felt was... hard to describe. I'd gone swimming in the Silver Lake, last summer, from one of the shallower beaches. The sun had been pounding down all afternoon so the waters close to the surface had been pleasantly warm, but the depths my feet reached to had still been cool. It felt a little like that, if the warm waters were the rest of Creation and all of my body was in the depths. The power didn't feel twisted or unnatural, the way I would have expected Evil at work to. It was just *other*, in some fundamental way.

The horse took a last breath, then stilled.

Black's brows furrowed. "And now for the tricky part."

The power inside the horse tightened like a rope in response to the Knight's will and the corpse twitched: my fingers dug into the corpse's flank as I focused all my attention on what was happening, willing myself to miss not a single moment. There was a sharp pricking sensation on my palm, like I'd been jabbed by a needle, and my awareness of the corpse unfolded like a sixth sense. I could feel the chords that animated the horse and they were *mine* as much as any of my fingers: I willed it and the charger rose to its feet. I didn't know how horses were supposed to move, how their limbs were supposed to work, but the corpse did and I drew on what it had been while still alive.

"Well done," the dark-haired man murmured as he rose to his feet.

I realized with a start I was already up – when had that happened?

"It will need a name," Black prompted me.

I pondered that for a moment. I could name it something heroic or inspiring but that would have been something of lie of sorts, a denial of what I'd just done. *Call a spade a spade.*

"His name," I announced, "is Zombie."

x

The more closely attuned you are to your aspects
you are
also missing a quote at the start

none one had managed
no

warmed my heart anyway. There
missing space after '.'

they're not as well stocked as they used to be but we should find
missing comma

though for the life of me I couldn't name one
me

Brink back people on the brink of death
Bring

WealthyAardvark

Typo

that throwing off
-> throwing you off

Colbertopus

Excellent naming sense.

NerfContessa

Indeed.

Zombie the first.

Ah, good. Old times.

[Waltzoid](#)

She probably took notes from Asgore.

daymon34

Hello and good story.

I get the feeling that even if she did do the cackling that she would be bored with it before too long. And being a person of few words that the monologue wouldn't be very long before thrusting the knife into someone's chest.

Isa Lumitus

How did I not find this story sooner?

daniel73

This is one of the best web serials I have ever read, really disappointed that I caught up as. means less of a backlog to read, I will definitely read this

Thank you for writing it

[Shell](#)

I really liked the layout of the chapters and how you've written very clearly. My hope is that one of her powers is "zombies/necromancy", so that she can perhaps control minions on either a permanent basis. Though, if "necromancy" in this world is one of the first things to learn as a villain, then never mind.

I have a small question, how many chapters do you see yourself writing for this "serial/book"?

P.s. I did read this yesterday, but I didn't have time to post until today.

[erraticerrata](#)

Necromancy's going to be part of her skill set, yes, though she'll never be as good at it as an actual necromancer.

I'd originally planned – and did the layout for – twenty chapters, but it looks like it'll end up closer to twenty-five. Those would make up the first book of the series, of which I'm planning to make four.

Christian Oaks

Insert meme here so that was a lie. (But this is a good thing. Thank you EE for your plethora writing!)

Unmaker

I found this series from Top Web Fiction, when it rose enough to pique my curiosity. I actually found it before this chapter was published. This is a combination of rather interesting ideas – I have heard the idea of Names (roles, mantles, by whatever name) before, and I have heard the idea of effective evil, i.e. evil that will do some of the same things as good because those ideas are effective, before, but I haven't seen them together. These chapters are a good start and I will continue to read with interest.

Now, is there a Name of Traitor, and can you take it up with another Name and thereby double your power (at considerable risk, of course)?

erraticerrata

There's quite a few Names that involve betrayal as an aspect, but none that's outright called Traitor. Well, not on the continent the story is set anyway.

Boobah

That would presumably be why the Black Knight (and his Empress) don't want a Chancellor.

Unmaker

The quotes at the beginnings of each chapter are different sizes on my system (Firefox 37.0.2) – the ones for chapters 3 and 4 are larger than the others.

Unmaker

Possible typos:

made up up
made up

I lost interest after checking that ones right under
(sort of hard to follow, perhaps:)

I lost interest after noting that ones right under

judgement
judgment

(The line break after "puzzled and curious." is not a full paragraph break.)

(The line break after "he suggested." is not a full paragraph break and the next sentence is in larger text.)

scepticism
skepticism

labour

labor

(I will assume American English until corrected; 'labour' is British.)

coloured

colored

It's eyes were closed

Its eyes were closed

(assuming "it's" is "it is" and "its" is "property of it")

x

I reread the chapter and noticed one more typo and another issue:

"I raised an eyebrow.

extra quote at the start (note that the sentence occurs 3 times in the chapter, the extra quote is in the last one)

"She disagreed," he told me. "Argued that ..."

The way he spoke the words was strange. He wasn't espousing the position himself: he was quoting someone else, I was fairly sure. Perhaps even the Empress herself.

The parts here seem to conflict. The first sentence already pretty directly says that he's describing the views of the Empress. After that, "he was quoting someone else, I was fairly sure" seems weird. And "Perhaps even the Empress herself." doesn't fit at all – since those are already described as the Empress's views, certainly Black is not giving his view of some third party's view of the Empress's views?

Todd

Excellent read

Ethan Smith

I liked it...

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

My guess is that one of her Aspects is Bluntness. Others would be... hmm. Learning might be a temporary one, associated with her Role as a Squire, or she might grow into it over time.

Squire isn't an Obviously Evil role in our world, but I presume it's associated exclusively with Black Knights in this one, on this continent? I suppose the Black Knight is more likely to imply a Sixth Ranger in modern stories, too. Not sure if that's relevant.

I find it interesting that other continents may have different Roles. Do other continents have different Gods, or are the Roles

connected to languages and cultures, or are Roles specific to specific areas, or is it something else? I suppose it could be some combination of those. Very interesting.

Boobah

I'd guess that the Name Catherine is vying for is more completely (if awkwardly) translated as "The Black Knight's Squire." Similarly, I'd not be surprised to discover that "Black Knight" is one word in Lower Miezan; right now it's unique among the Names we know because it's two words instead of one.

Then again, one of the potential Squires felt different to Catherine; the Squire's alignment may vary depending on whether they're Squire to the Black Knight or the (presumable) Paladin.

Cpt. Obvious

The answers to most of your questions is a very slightly spoilery; Yes!

But you'll have to read the story to find out what that means...

And yes I do feel a touch of Evil on my soul for teasing like this. The power of a re-read compelled me!

stevenneiman

"made up [up] the top layer and I lost interest after checking that ones right under were a study of the Licerian Wars."

"I'd heard that it was the only part of Praes where [people->Praesi] intermarried with Callowans" there are some characters who might not consider the Callowans people, but I'm pretty sure Cat isn't among them.

"Three Sins?" he repeated, sounding somewhere between puzzled and curious.

"And on all those who take up the banner of Evil, the Heavens will bestow three sins, planting the seed of their downfall in the name of Justice," There should be a paragraph break when you switch from quoting one person to another.

"So when ["conquering things"->'conquering things'], as you so aptly put {it}, I become... more of what I am."

"I could feel the [chords->cords] that animated the horse" chords are a musical unit, cords are ropes or bindings.

I just realized something about the whole "Three Sins" thing. Assuming that the House of Light has some actual understanding of how Villainous Names and Roles work, they consider Learning to be a sin. That really says all that needs to be said about Good right there.

Are there any formal terms for the two recent battles on the Field of Streges? I've finally gotten to work on actually expanding and building out that wiki I made a while ago, and I wanted to know what to name the pages for those two battles since they're so important to the backstory.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

(I realize this might be pointless, since there are at least 50 more chapters published now and you've doubtlessly grown as a writer since this, but here goes anyway)

The way you parse paragraphs and spoken lines makes it very hard to know who's talking. Multiple times I had to start over after realizing I was imagining the wrong speaker—in a two person conversation. For example, here's a particularly bad stretch:

““Because I rarely suffer the company of imbeciles?” he suggested.

I gave him a flat look.

“Please, sir, there's no need to gush – I'll get embarrassed,” I deadpanned.

He didn't manage to take a sip quite quickly enough to hide his smile.

“So what are my aspects, then?” I asked.

“Only you can answer that.... “

One possible correction might read:

““Because I rarely suffer the company of imbeciles?” he suggested.

I gave him a flat look. “Please, sir, there's no need to gush – I'll get embarrassed,” I deadpanned.

He didn't manage to take a sip quite quickly enough to hide his smile.

He shrugged. “Only you can answer that...”

You could also bring the next line up to continue the paragraph for another sentence after 'deadpaned.' Really hope this gets better going forward, this is too good a story to be marred by stuff like this jarring you right out of it all the time.

Kaged

animating its body with necromantic energy. Morally speaking, it's no different from felling a tree to make a cart – you're

making a means of transportation out of something that used to be alive

So technology is necromancy...

Letouriste

Hahaha you made my day, pal;)

Yeah in a way, felling a tree and making a chair with that is necromancy...

linnilalartyr

LoL! Zombie? That so ironic!!

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

No. It isn't. If it were the only *living* horse in an army of undead, naming it 'Zombie' would be ironic. Naming *this* horse 'Lively' would be ironic. Naming this horse 'Zombie' is actually a case of Exactly What It Says On The Tin.

linnilalartyr

I guess. My english isn't good and I said wrong thing to have wrong meaning then. I want say the meaning as you describe though. 😊

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Irony is a fairly simple concept, being essentially the same thing as sarcasm but without the need for intent. Unfortunately, misusing it seems to have been something of a fad a while back, much like misusing 'literally' is these days, and a non-native speaker shouldn't be blamed for getting it wrong. Did that answer your question?

caimthehero

It makes me think that her next mount will be called Horse and the one after that Travel Source

Zoe

Loving this story!

Saying that the horse would be "five feet tall while standing up" sounds a lot like a typo – five feet would make it a hilariously tiny pony.

IIcarus

Okay, I really enjoy this story so far but there's one huge thing that is bothering me so much; the use of 'grunt'. Like oh my god, it's being abused so badly that it's giving me a headache. The only time you see someone grunt is if they're in a fight, lifting something, or just took a hit. I really hope the author improves or I really don't think I can get through it, honestly.

snakesblood

Just now I began reading this chapter and had to stop... because I just couldn't help my self by laughing out loud uncontrollably
Because of this

– Funny, isn't it? No matter what language they speak, everyone sounds the same when you pull out their fingernails. –

Started laughing and than more because I found it funny to laugh at somthing like that xD

cartesiandaemon

Oh gosh, necromancy!

Just started reading this from the beginning. I love the characters so much.

Reading about the nobles, I wonder what their power **is**. If the empress controls the army and the agriculture directly, presumably the nobles have a hold on something else or they'd mostly be ceremonial by now.

burguulkodar

At this point, I just feel she talks too damn much. But I guess Black isn't as bothered as I would be if she were nagging me nonstop.

Observer

I'd talk a lot too if I wanted to avoid Black replying to what I was thinking inside my own head instead of saying out loud. Honestly, someone having that creepy level of near or actual mind reading would have me spewing out whatever I thought he was going to respond to anyway to prevent him from confirming the creepy head shrink thing with every sentence. Being in close proximity to someone I am not comfortable with, a self avowed Evil stranger no less, doing that would inspire some truly odd conversations and ookiness! * shivers *

[elyandarin](#)

I gave him a flat look. <- the first example of this has the wrong font size, for some reason.

TabbyCat

Idk if ya still get messages for this early on in the story, but there's a quick mistype, if ya want to fix it:

"I'm assuming you want me those read those and not, say, bludgeon someone to death with the pile?" I asked dryly.

"I'm assuming you want me to read those and not, say, bludgeon someone to death with the pile?" I asked dryly.

Cheers!

Observer

Nothin' wrong with the story (well other than typos but who wudn't make a ton of hose? I certainly wood!) and I'm working on getting into it but...

"Her name is Catherine Foundling, and she has a plan."

Is a line that can attract a certain expectation and right now the feeling I'm getting is "Her name is Catherine Foundling, and Black has a plan for her."

The way he appears to know everything about her and arranges everything with the closest thing to a surprise for him being wondering if she might have hero potential still (I assume the reason he originally investigated the heck out of her) and that not really. The near mind reading thing in combination is a major turn off. (its gonna be a long slog till this Black guy goes away isn't it? * sigh *) Its a nice story anyway and I'll enjoy it well enough but I have to admit the opening moments of a character that really DOES have a plan the rest of the world didn't see coming (or some other gimmick for that matter) is a pleasure of mine that the summary used to draw me in. And so far I've been disappointed on that front.

Probably would have read it eventually anyway cause eventually I read most non-fetish things of any quality but it would have been a bit longer if I hadn't fallen for the line in the summary. Good job on that I guess. * shrugs *

Just a little nitpick that isn't about the story as much as the advertising. LOL (I repeat. Story is fine. * holds up holy symbol towards slobbering fanatics *)

En

"His name is Zombie"

"Looks like one of your aspects is Heavy Metal"

Ebert the Alamans, scholar errant

The House of Light, despite what the name suggests, is less a monolithic entity than a series of religious fiefdoms. This

arrangement allows a fair degree of flexibility in interpreting duties and scripture. The position of the House on ensoulment of animals and indeed some intelligent peoples is thus subject to the vagaries of cultural and political opinion in a given area.

While few theologians acknowledge the existence of "souls" in animals, practitioners of the darker sorts of sorcery contend to be able to manipulate energy of a sort in most living creatures that a layperson would likely identify as "a soul." For the House of Light to acknowledge this, however, would open the door for argument of serious change in treatment of animals, not to mention production and consumption of meat. These teachings would likely alienate the majority of their followers, who rely on animals for labor and sustenance. Thus, the general stance of the house is that animals are not endowed as people with the divine breath.

Practitioners of dark sorceries are in general uncaring as to the question, given that most would happily slay their own grandparents for the kernal of power it might bring them.

For more information on this topic, please purchase my publication, "The House of Light: Social and Political Influences"

midas0

"If you have the time to make a speech, you have the time to kill the hero..."

-Black I love this quote. Also, I can already tell the MC's naming sense will be godly

Rraune

"made up up the top layer "
made up the

"I'm assuming you want me those read those and not,"
me to read those

"I'd always thought of Praes a single unified entity,"
Praes as a single

"I believe that throwing off the proverbial cliff when learning languages will yield the best results,"
throwing you off

Kasey Argabrite

I see that you do not have an audiobook, would you be willing to take auditions to have an audiobook put up on Amazon?

Chapter 7: Sword

"A single strike parts a champion from a corpse."

– Praesi proverb

Dawn had come much, much too early.

I put on my aketon and fastened my bootstraps regardless. I'd been told the ache in my everywhere would die down when I settled into my "riding legs", whatever the Hells that was supposed to be, and apparently Zombie was making it much easier on me than an actual horse would. Not that it felt like it. I dragged my ass down to the common room of the inn we'd ended up in and picked at my porridge half-heartedly, forcing myself to swallow mouthfuls of the increasingly lukewarm slop. I wasn't that hungry at the moment, but I knew that if I didn't fill my stomach now I'd feel ravenous in a matter of hours. Captain was the only other person sitting at the table, methodically tearing through her second bowl without a word. Even while eating her eyes were never restful, always moving and scanning the corners of the inn's dining room – the habits of a lifetime spent serving as my teacher's bodyguard. With a grimace I put down my spoon and admitted that this was about as much food as I could force myself to swallow at the moment. Besides, I had questions to ask and this was as good a time as any: Black was nowhere in sight but I was due to begin my first sword lesson soon.

"So," I spoke up, "the Sixth Legion."

Captain eyed me curiously but didn't reply. I hadn't expected her to, really: even after only two days of travelling with the gargantuan warrior I'd gotten a decent read on her personality. She wasn't the type to talk unless asked a direct question, not unless she was with an old friend.

"I know their cognomen is *Ironsides*," I continued, "but besides a mention of how they held the left flank at Streges, the books don't say more about how they got it."

A cognomen was what we mere Callowans would call a nickname, thought the books had given me the impression that there was a little more to it than that. I'd taken the time to look up the legions that served as Summerholm's garrison, after being told it was where we headed. The Sixth and the Ninth – *Ironsides* and *Regicides*. The second was fairly straightforward, but the first not so much. Captain put down her wooden spoon, resting it against the rim of the bowl.

"They broke a charge of the knights of Callow," she gravelled out, her tone making it clear she expected this to be a tell-all explanation.

"That's, uh," I said, "good on them I guess? You're saying like that's a really impressive thing."

The tall woman mulled over this a moment before speaking.

"You were born after the Conquest," she finally said, "so you don't understand the way wars used to go. You only heard of the Legions after we started winning."

"I know the Empire tried to invade a few times before," I defended myself. "I was taught about how Emperor Nefarious got his ass handed to him by King Robert before Black and the Empress got put in charge."

"Don't take it as a criticism," Captain grunted. "The Legions went through reforms decades before you were born. Things were different back then. It used to be that the Empire didn't fight Callowan armies on an open field unless we had them four to one."

I couldn't help but let out a whistle at that.

"That seems a little excessive," I told her.

"We still lost about half of the time," she gravelled. "Before the Fields, the only way a legion ever held against a charge by Callowan knights was by packing the ranks so tight they got bogged down."

I winced. You didn't need to be a master tactician to understand that that particular tactic was going to involve a lot of dead legionaries.

"So the Sixth are badasses who spit in the face of enemy charges," I said. "The name's already starting to make more sense."

"There's more to it than that," Captain gravelled. "Istrid – the Sixth's general – is an orc. So is most of her legion."

"And that changes things because?" I asked.

"Greenskins weren't allowed to be legionaries until the reforms," the large warrior grunted. "Just auxiliaries that the Black Knights used as meatshields to take the heat off Praesi soldiers. And when the knights charged *them*..."

"They broke, and they broke hard," I finished quietly.

It was easy enough to imagine the greenskin legionaries I remembered patrolling the streets in Laure, only without the

armour and the large shields. I'd seen enough frescoes of Callow knights in the House of Light to know they were large men and women in full plate riding war horses decked in the same: it would have been like running a sharp knife through butter.

"And so there was Istrid and her legion of orcs, after a thousand years of her people being run down like animals," Captain spoke quietly. "Standing down those knights from behind a line of shields, and this time *they were not the ones to break.*"

"Ironsides," I murmured, trying out the word with a new kind of wonder.

I'd probably met cripples in the streets of Laure who'd been part of that ill-fated charge, I told myself. It was a sobering thought, but it didn't quite manage to take away the mystique of the tale Captain had just spun with her curt sentences. That was the thing I hated – loved – the most of these villains I was travelling with: when you listened to them talk, they didn't seem so much like the villains anymore. There was a twisted sort of justice to the Sixth Legion managing to be on the other side of slaughter, for once. *We're raised on stories of Praesi monsters, but I wonder what kind of stories they heard while growing up?*

"Don't focus too much on Istrid," Captain spoke quietly. "Sacker's the more dangerous one between the two."

"Ninth Legion – cognomen *Regicides*," I recited from memory. "One of their companies killed the Shining Prince, right?"

"They all wear red war paint on their throat to show how the idiot got his throat slit," she chuckled. "It's what she's remembered for, but it's not why she's dangerous. She's slated to take Ranker's place when she retires, and you need more brains than brawn to make it to Marshall."

"So she's smart?" I guessed.

"Cleverer than a snake and twice as mean," Captain grunted. "She's a patient one, too – balances the way Istrid can get a little too eager for blood. It's why they've been paired together."

I grimaced. Coming from a woman who was on first name basis with the Dread Empress and the Black Knight, 'twice as mean' was a statement to take seriously. *So let's add General Sacker to the list of people I'll need be very, very careful around.*

"Speaking of Summerholm," I segued in the most casual tone I could muster. "D'you have any idea why we're headed there?"

Captain shot me an unimpressed look, so apparently not as casual as I'd hoped.

"Some kind of Name thing for you," she gravelled. "Squires are so bleeding dramatic. Getting Amadeus settled into his Role was a pain too, though, no reason you'd be different."

I raised an eyebrow. "Your Name was easier?"

"I was born into mine, back when I was the Cursed," she grunted. "By the time I became the Captain, no one was dumb enough to challenge me for it."

I eyed the gargantuan warrior frankly – she was already wearing her armour, and even without her hammer peeking over her shoulder she looked like a one-woman battering ram. "I find that pretty easy to believe," I admitted.

She snorted and returned to her gruel, making it pretty clear she considered the conversation over. I tried to do the same, but nearly spat out the stuff when I realized how cold it had gotten during our little chat. Shoving the spoon back in, I pushed myself up and nodded my goodbye to Captain before heading for the door. The inn we were at – the Soldier's Rest – wasn't big or rich enough to have a real stable, so the horses had been tied to a row of posts right outside. Zombie stood perfectly still next to Black's mount, his chestnut coat lacking the subtle rise and fall that the horses of the Blackguard showed every time they breathed. Just by coming close to it the eerie awareness I'd come to have of the necromantic construct unfolded in the back of my mind again: it felt like he was a puppet whose every individual string I could pull on at any time. That wasn't the eerie part, though: I *knew*, somehow, how all those strings interacted. How pulling on the part that animated the left forward leg would affect the rest of the body, what parts I needed to tug on to set him to a trot or a full run.

It wasn't like I'd ever studied horse anatomy, either. I had no real explanation for how I knew any of that except that my Name itself knew – and wasn't that just enough to send a shiver up my spine?

"You'll get used to it," the voice came from behind me.

I tamped down the urge to jump out of my skin. Black's idea of a sense of humour apparently involved sneaking behind me at every occasion. How the man managed that in a full suit of armour was beyond me. *Probably involves some kind of Name bullshit.*

"To raising things from the dead?" I replied, turning to look at him. "Gods, I hope not. That strikes me as a bad habit to form."

The dark-haired man stood alone. No sign of any of his bodyguards, or even Scribe. *Not that she'd say much of anything even if she was around.* The plain-faced scrivener made Captain look positively chatty in comparison.

"I'm referring to the things you don't know how you know," he replied. "Names provide what you could call a... second set of instincts. Part of growing into yours is learning which parts to use and which parts to ignore."

My eyes fell to the scabbarded sword he held in his hands. A short sword, much like the one strapped at his hip. Not quite Legion-issue – the pommel was inlaid with silver, though from this far I couldn't see what it depicted – but close enough for training purposes. Without any warning, he tossed it at me. My hand came up before I'd even processed the sight, snatching it out of the air like we'd choreographed the whole thing.

"The reflexes are useful, so I think I'll be keeping those," I acknowledged. "I take it that's going to be mine?"

He nodded. "Goblin steel, straight from the Imperial forges of Foramen. You won't find anything of better make on the continent."

I raised an eyebrow. "Not even dwarven stuff?"

The Knight snorted. "As if they'd ever sell anything but the mass-produced stuff to surfacers. Dwarven weapons are common because they're cheap, Catherine, not because they're quality material."

I raised a hand in a gesture of appeasement. "Alright, alright. No need to go all Praesi pride on me."

The silver inlays made up a grinning goblin's head, as it happened. The smaller greenskins might not have the kind of fangs you could see in an orc's mouth, but the leering goblin was showing an impressive set of canines. I shoved the scabbard into the leather straps made for it on my belt, wriggling it a little to make sure it fit properly.

"No shield?" I asked.

There was one hanging off his back, fastened by a clever metal contraption I'd taken a look at the other day. A large rectangular piece of plain steel, unadorned by any heraldry: it was similar to what legionaries used, the kind Sergeant Ebele had called a *scutum*.

"It's waiting for you where we'll practice," he replied. "You'll go without armour for today, but as soon as the armour Scribe requisitioned arrives you'll be doing this in full plate."

Joy. The aketon already made me feel like I'd gained twenty pounds, actual armour was going to turn me into Creation's clumsiest upright turtle. I followed Black when he led the way around the inn – didn't see what was so different between the

ground in front and in the back, but it was too early to ask questions. Besides, the whole place was identical in every direction as far as I could tell. The two hundred miles between Laure and Summerholm were flat farmland with no city to speak of in between. The main road was good paved stone, at least: it'd been built by the Praesi after the Conquest, in case they ever needed to move troops quickly between the cities. People called it the Imperial highway, since from Summerholm it connected through Streges and its infamous fields to the Blessed Isle – and from there, across the Wasaliti River to the Wasteland itself. There was a field of beaten earth behind the inn's wooden walls, and there was my shield: an actual legionary's scutum, painted dark red, though I noticed it lacked a legion number. I picked it up and tested the weight: twenty pounds, maybe a little more? It'd get tiring to hold up until I built up my arm strength. The horizontal grip was good cedar wood and I tied up the leather straps hanging off of it to my wrist – put there to make sure it wasn't easy to knock out of my fingers, I figured. Black was standing at ease on the field when I finally turned to face him, shield held up to cover his side and sword already in hand.

"So," I said. "Teach me swordsmanship."

He smiled. "I'm not going to teach you anything of the sort."

"That seems a little counterproductive," I commented.

"Swordsmanship," he continued, "is the tame sport they teach noble children. It's a matter of forms and rules, as useful on the battlefield as a blunted blade."

The tip of his sword rose to face me.

"I'm going to teach you to *kill*, Catherine," he said. "Kill well and quickly, while giving as few openings as possible."

"Hurray," I replied flatly. "Long live the Dread Empire, other assorted patriotic slogans. Can we start now?"

Still, even as I gave him the flippancy that little bout of melodrama had deserved, I straightened my spine and brought up my shield in a rough approximation of the way he held it. This was the sort of lessons I'd actually been looking forward to – even more now that I'd started learning the blinding headache that was spoken Kharsum. Only one night in and I was already much more amenable to the Miezan point of view of stomping that whole "other cultures" business into the ground. He actually looked a little offended I'd been largely unaffected by his impromptu spot of theatre, though he got over it quickly enough.

"The two most important parts of any kind of fighting," he said, "are distance and footwork. Your fighting in the Pit should

already have taught you the basics of distance, though you'll need to adjust to the range of your sword."

I frowned but nodded. Girls my height who got into fights either learned to deal with the fact that most opponents would have more reach and upper body strength than them, or they learned to enjoy the taste of blood in the mouth. The short sword wasn't much of an upgrade, in that regard. Most people I'd end up fighting would have a sword too – and outside Praes, longswords and two-handers were the most popular weapons. *Except for the Free Cities, I guess.* That whole lot had a fixation with pikes and spears, though to give praise where it was due their phalanxes were supposed to be fearsome on the field.

"Shield up," Black barked, and my arm rose immediately – mostly out of surprise.

I'd never heard him raise his voice before. The suddenness of it had my blood rushing through my veins while he advanced towards me, eyeing my stance critically.

"You're right-handed," he said, "so your left hip and leg should be braced against the back of the shield. Otherwise, *you're open.*"

His sword whipped out faster than my eye could follow, swatting aside my hastily-placed scutum. The tip of his blade came to rest on my throat for the blink of an eye before he took a step back. I swallowed. That wasn't a practice blade he was using: if he'd pushed it an inch further in, I'd be dying on the ground. Squaring my shoulders, I put the godsdamned shield up the way it was supposed to go. The upper edge came all the way up to my chin and the sides covered my entire body – it was reassuring, to have that length of steel between me and his blade. The position felt awkward, to be honest. The foot in front pointed towards Black but the one in the back had to be horizontal if I wanted to have any stability: swinging my sword would be tricky.

"Better," the green-eyed man conceded grudgingly. "Now for the sword. Grasp the grip and press forward as you lift it out."

It ran against my instincts to do it that way, but I could see the sense in it: it kept everything but my upper arm under the cover of the shield. I rotated my elbow down and brought the sword up, letting it rest to the side of the scutum. *Ah*, I understood suddenly. Of course swinging would be difficult: the sword wasn't supposed to be swung. It was meant to stab forward in short thrusts.

"Legionaries fight on three lines," Black said. "Low line goes like this."

He crouched behind his shield, letting it cover him all the way up to right under his eyes. The tip of his sword was knee-height.

"Mid line goes like this," he continued, rising up and bringing the sword up to his hip.

He took a short step forward and I eyed him warily. My newly-acquired Name reflexes had been of no help whatsoever last time he'd attacked.

"And high line like this," he finished calmly.

His arm went back and the tip of the sword came to breast-height like a serpent poised to strike. I nodded sharply.

"Good," he smiled. "First we'll spend some time having you go through those motions."

He stepped back.

"*Low line*," he barked out.

I flinched at the sudden sound but crouched. I *would* learn this, and learn it well.

Several eternities later – or, more realistically, about two hours – I found myself pulling the cork out of a waterksin and gulping down the contents greedily. We'd acquired an audience somewhere between the stabbing drills and the footwork ones. If I had to hear *steady timing, maintain the distance* one more time, someone was going to get stabbed. And I had a sword now, so I meant business. Captain, who'd been the one to hand me the skin in the first place, patted me comfortingly on the shoulder. *Gods, even her hands are huge. She must have ogre blood or something, humans don't usually get that big.*

"The first few weeks are always the hardest," she told me. "You're not doing bad at all."

I took her word for it, though I couldn't find it in me to agree out loud. I'd been in enough fights to know that I was good in a scrap – very good, even, for my age – and it had been a while since I'd felt as clumsy and slow as I had today. I was aware that comparing my own movements to the effortless way Black moved even in plate wasn't a reasonable comparison, but it wasn't stopping that nagging voice in the back of my head from making it anyway. *And I'll be worse when I get my own armour.* I felt my fist clench and took another swallow to hide my grimace. I was definitely doing another set of drills tonight, preferably somewhere no one would be able to see me making a bumbling fool of myself. When I passed the skin back to Captain I found her scrutinizing me with those too-perceptive eyes of hers, and without saying a word she patted me on the back a last time

before heading towards Black. The Knight was talking in low voices with Scribe, reading a folded parchment she'd handed him after he'd announced we were taking a break.

"Black," she called out as she strode across the field. "Anything urgent come up?"

Green eyes flicked towards me before he replied. "Nothing new."

Captain grinned, tossing the waterskin towards the wall and rolling her shoulders.

"Let's have a bout, then. You've been putting the girl through the mangle, so at least show her what she's headed to." The gargantuan woman pulled the war hammer hanging off of her back, twirling it one-handed like she was holding a twig instead of a massive wrought steel bar. "Been a while since we had one, anyway."

Well now. That sounded like it had potential. Seeing the Knight getting smashed by that hammer a few times would do wonders for my mood. The green-eyed man snorted.

"Fair enough. Terms?"

"Let's keep Names out of it," Captain replied. "Would defeat the point to go all-out."

"Would also wreck most of the countryside," someone muttered from my side.

I glanced and saw one of the Blackguards had come up to me. There were a handful of them milling about the place, though together they didn't make up more than a dozen people. Where the rest had gone to, I had no idea. The man who'd spoken pushed up his visor to show his face: couldn't have been older than thirty, with brown wide-set eyes and the dark skin tone typical of northern Praesi. *Soninke*, I corrected myself. *They call themselves the Soninke.*

"They get messy, I take it?" I prompted him.

It was the first time one of the Blackguards had struck up a conversation with me, so I fully intended to keep it going. Hells, it was the first time I'd seen one of their faces: they kept to themselves to the extent I'd started to wonder if they were avoiding me.

"The last time they had a spar without holding back, Captain knocked down a tower and Lord Black threw a whole statue at her," he informed me cheerfully. "Hilarious at the time, of course, but the local baron was less than pleased."

I chuckled. "I don't think we've been introduced," I said. "I'm-"

"Catherine Foundling."

I scowled. "I really wish people would stop doing that."

He grinned, showing off pearly white teeth. "I'm Lieutenant Abase," he introduced himself, offering his hand. I went to shake it but he made some sort of strange clicking sound with his tongue and moved my hand up to his forearm.

"You're not a civilian," Abase told me. "Use the warrior's salute."

I raised an eyebrow but clasped his arm like he'd showed me. *Praesi and their rituals. I'm surprised they can use a chamber pot without doing a special dance first.*

"So," I mused. "Any particular reason this is the first time I actually speak with one of you?"

"We're quiet types," the lieutenant replied drily. "And wary of strangers. Lord Black has several men's worth of enemies."

Wary of me, huh. Not sure whether I was offended or flattered. Still, I must have done something right, to finally rank words today. I was about to ask exactly what that was when movement at the edge of my field of vision interrupted me: Captain and Black were putting distance between them, striding to the edges of the dirt field. Scribe stood in the middle, looking superbly bored with the whole affair.

"Try not to blink," Lieutenant Abase said. "You'll miss it."

Miss what? I wanted to ask, but Scribe was already speaking.

"On my mark," she announced. A heartbeat passed, then she brought down her hand.

I blinked – probably because the lieutenant had brought it up in the first place – and in the fragment of a moment where my eyes closed, Captain crossed half the field. She left behind foot tracks and a spray of dirt where'd she been standing an instant before, barreling through the distance almost faster than I could see. Black had not yet moved, standing still with his shield up and his sword in mid-line, but the moment Captain got close enough to bring her hammer down he calmly sidestepped around the strike and pivoted so he'd be facing her back. The armoured woman's weight and momentum carried her forward even after she landed on the ground, carrying her a few feet further down the field as she turned to face the Knight.

"Shit," I whispered. "Did she really just jump thirty feet forward in heavy plate?"

"Quick on the offensive, today," Abase noted, unruffled by what we'd just witnessed. "She must have been getting bored."

"Weren't they supposed to not use their Names?" I asked him.

"What she just did is, like, physically impossible for a normal person. Just seeing it would give my numbers teacher a headache."

"They're not using them *actively*," the lieutenant clarified.

"Lord Black's shadow isn't moving and Captain is, well, still using her hammer."

He didn't elaborate further on either of those interesting tidbits, and I decided not to press him any further – not because I wasn't curious, but because what the people in question were getting up to had claimed my full attention. Captain was attacking relentlessly, swinging the two-handed war hammer like she couldn't feel the weight of it at all. And yet, she wasn't the one controlling the flow of the fight. Black moved little and carefully, rarely more than a step at a time: he stepped barely out of the arc of her strikes and then swung around so he was facing her back. He'd yet to attack, but just the threat of him doing so was forcing Captain to keep moving. The sight of them was almost comical, from where I stood: the two of them were dressed in similar-looking plate, sure, but the olive-skinned woman stood at least three feet taller than him and had broader shoulders to boot. Neither of them wore helmets, so I could see that while a faint smile tugged at Captain's lips my teacher's face was expressionless. His pale skin made it creepy: he looked like he was wearing a mask made of marble. After another miss, Captain took a step back and raised her hammer high.

"That should do for the warm up," she grunted before striking the ground.

There was a dull boom and the ground shook like it had been hit by a catapult stone: dirt sprayed everywhere, clouding my sight of the battlefield for a moment. When they came into sight again, Black was ducking under a vicious-looking swing. He ventured a kick to her knee but Captain danced back, the hammer coming back to swat him on the backswing. His shield came up to take the hit but the metal crumpled under the force and the impact was enough to throw him back a few feet.

"You're getting slow in your old age," she told him.

The dark-haired man shrugged and discarded the now-useless scutum. "You're getting mouthy in yours," he noted amusedly.

And then he went on the attack.

I'd seen him move like that once back in Laure, when he'd decided that stabbing me in the chest was an acceptable way to end a conversation, but seeing it from a distance was an entirely

different matter. When Captain was at her quickest I could still make out a blur, but with him it was like he just... appeared in another place. Stepping inside the warrior woman's guard almost absent-mindedly, he swept his blade across the space where her throat had been a moment earlier: if she hadn't taken a step back at the last moment, her blood would have been spilling in the dirt. She brought down her hammer's handle on his shoulder, but he spun around and smashed the pommel of his sword into her elbow. She grunted and the impact loosened her grip, but Black was already moving again. He spun again and stomped down on the back of her knee, forcing it down as his blade went for the side of her neck. Captain managed to bring up the hammer's handle at the last moment and block it, but hers was not a weapon made for defence and it showed. Not that it mattered, given their difference in strength – the instant she got her footing back, Captain pushed him off without any visible effort.

It was what he'd been waiting for, unfortunately for her.

He drew away as she pushed, letting her pass through and steadying his arm in the high-line guard he'd spent half an hour showing me earlier: he thrust straight into the back of her neck. It was a killing blow, or it would have been if he'd pushed it all the way through. Instead he stopped after pricking the skin, stepping back and sheathing his sword with a flourish as Captain cursed in Taghrebi. I recognized the plural of goats somewhere in there, and to be honest I was kind of glad I had no idea what the rest of it meant.

"And that's a kill," Black spoke, the lack of smugness in his tone so flamboyant it looped around back to smug.

Captain grunted and let her hammer rest against the ground, fingers coming up to touch the minute wound on her neck. "That makes what, two hundred for you?"

"And still one twenty-one for you," he agreed. "The gap is widening, it seems. Are you sure *I'm* the one getting slower?"

"You'll need to beat Ranger at least once before you get to gloat," she growled back.

I let out the breath I hadn't known I'd been holding as the two of them continued to bicker amiably. So that was what it looked like, when legends fought. And not even a serious fight, I reminded myself.

"Triple drills," I muttered to myself. "Triple drills, even if my limbs fall off."

Todd

Cheers for the chapter

daymon34

Well now she has a bar to set for herself to see if she is good enough. Of course she isn't a Name yet, only just half way there so could be why she isn't getting a boost to combat quite just yet.

Unmaker

Typos:

armour (several) / armoured
armor / armored
(assuming American English)

I tried to to the same
I tried to do the same

humour
humor

Wasaliti river
Wasaliti River
(similar to the convention of capitalizing Street / Avenue / Way, etc. when part of the designation, e.g. Main Street)

waterksin
usually water skin, but still misspelled if a single word:
waterskin

You're not doing bad at all.
You're not doing badly at all.
(character speech, may be written as intended)

There was a handful of them
There were a handful of them

told me
(a phrase completely outside of other sentences)

barrelling
barreling

back .
back.

defence
defense

x

making it much easier on me than actual horse would
than +an

even after two days of travelling with the gargantuan warrior
I'd gotten a decent read on her personality
"even" sounds weird here

And that changes thing because?
things

like running sharp knife through butter
a sharp knife

after a thousand year of her people being
years

but as soon the armour Scribe requisitioned arrives
as soon +as

People called the Imperial highway,
called +it

Still, even as I gave him the flippancy that little bout of
melodrama had deserved I straightened
deserved, I

had been of no help whatsoever, last time he'd attacked.
any reason for comma here?

couldn't have been older thirty,
older +than

just the threat him doing so
threat +of

[erraticerrata](#)

Thanks!

[erraticerrata](#)

Thanks!

Unmaker

Solid chapter, little plot advancement, but a good amount of
exposition. It was a smooth read.

erraticerrata, are you using British or American English?

If it is British, I will stop noting the '-our' words (armour,
colour, etc.) as typos.

Shell

Really good chapter a few grammatical errors. The only one that pops out is the following:

but a I knew
but I knew

I read this last night, so I don't remember the other errors.

Can't wait until next week.

daniel73

Well she has an idea what the top looks like and knows how to get there so this will be good encouragement. Gonna go vote on top web fiction as this story is the second best I'm reading and I hope more people See it

Bart

This is really a good story, I've enjoyed reading it. I haven't paid attention to update dates or timestamp for the first comment of each post – how often is this updated, how often should I look for a new post?

erraticerrata

Thank you! There's a new chapter every Wednesday, usually up around 3 PM.

General_Rincewind

You're using Roman Fighting Styles here, so I'm obliged to point that roman fighting styles are meant for large legions, all working together , NOT a singular person. Its harder to pin or bind the other's sword or and mobility of sword is reduced by the rectangular shape of the shield. It isn't advantageous (more disadvantageous) for one on one or one on many fights. Thus Black as a astute person primarily fighting one on one or one on many fights should rather be using the German or Italian shortsword and round shield, as it is advantageous for one on one fights but not large groups. But that is a minor quibble in a well written and interesting web serial. Please continue with this excellent story.

Horatio Von Becker

Presumably, he normally fights in formation with the Blackguards whenever he isn't forgoing a shield entirely.

Mavelsworld

That doesn't make much sense, given how much more speed and power he has than a normal person, they'd just get in his way. The advantages of formation fighting would not apply to let him. You wouldn't have you cavalry fight in formation with your footmen.

Further using a scrutum at all makes no sense as he's fully plated and super quick. The strength of Roman legionaries was in their discipline and teamwork, not their individual fighting ability.

Cpt. Obvious

He is currently drilling Cat in the legions way of fighting. It's a basis she'll need to understand the strength and limitations of the legionairs. It also builds muscles and stamina, things she will need no matter what kind of fighting styles she'll be using in the future. Remember that the Legions of Terror hasn't been winning because they all are exceptional warriors but because the are disciplined soldiers.

stevenneiman

The line about the pural of goat gave me quite a laugh.

linnilalartyr

Isn't captain is loli in the prologue, but now she is huge wowman now?

She can grow big within 20 years. Is that because of a name too I wonder?

kelioez

Bruh, go reread

Imrix

Hn. As a student of history I am compelled to point out that the Roman style you're leaning on here is very much a piece of inaccurate pop history. For one thing, the gladius was predominantly a cutting sword, not a thrusting implement.

caimthehero

So he's second in the empire but not second in power. From the sound of it Ranger, Assassin, and Warlock might all be above BKs power.

En

"A single strike parts a champion from a corpse."

Oooh, that's a nice bit of double speak. It could either mean the champion is getting killed or they're killing you. Maybe unintentional, but I liked it.

Cpt. Obvious

It's important to keep in mind that champion (lower case 'c') isn't the same as a Hero (upper case 'h').

So all that sentence says is that one attack decides who comes out of a fight alive as the champion and who ends up as a corpse.

It's a little simplistic but has a kernel of truth to it. Sometimes you may have let your opponent get that strike in that might kill you, just so you get a good opening to do the same and hopefully do it better.

It'll make sense eventually...

Ebert the Alamans, scholar errant

Cognomen are common in Praesi fighting groups. Though often based on great deeds or oaths sworn, sometimes the names come about in less grandiose fashion.

For instance, one force under Emperor Nefarious made a requisition error that resulted in thousands of pounds of cleansing agents being redirected from civilian use in the city of Okoro and delivered to the garrison unit. Rather than deal with the administrative hassle of redirecting the supplies, the Chancellor of the time declared that all civilian clothing and sheets would be handled by the offending force until the supplies ran out.

To this day, the garrison force of Okoro is referred to as the "Laundrymen".

For more information on this topic, please purchase my publication, "101 Silly Stories: Military Edition"

Olasode

Decided to Reread the book from the beginning after dropping it for a while for chapters to build up, and i can't help but appreciate the forethought that went into especially in these earlier chapters.

And the Nigerian names are always nice to see.

Chapter 8: Introduction

"Note: orc buoyancy is limited. Avoid fighting the damnable rebels near shoddily-built dams in the future."

– Extract from the journal of Dread Emperor Malignant II

They called Summerholm the Gate of the East.

Should the Legions manage to bypass the Blessed Isle – as they had a handful of times in the past – it was the only walled city between the Empire and the heartlands of Callow. It was the one city the Praesi *had* to take, since it commanded the only bridge across the Hwaerte River. As far as I knew, the Wastelanders had only managed to conquer it twice: once during the Conquest and once over seven hundred years ago, under Dread Empress Triumphant. While my teacher had managed to reduce its walls through clever use of goblin engineering, Triumphant had simply made them obsolete by sailing her flying fortress right over them. I could see why she would have gone to such an extreme, now that I was in sight of those very fortifications. The side of the city we were facing was the least fortified, but even here the walls ran two concentric circles of stark granite over fifty feet tall. Crenelated bastions ran the length of them, most showing the silhouette of a siege engine, and even as close to sundown as we were there were soldiers manning them. *Legionaries instead of the Royal Guard, though. Not that they're any less well-trained – the opposite, if anything.*

"They look like they're expecting an army any moment," I commented as I guided Zombie towards Black with a tug of the reins.

His own horse was also a necromantic construct, I was sure of it – there was a certain... smell to that kind of power that I was beginning to pick up on – but it was hard to tell what it actually looked like under all the steel it was covered in. With all the weight that meant I was pretty sure his mount could double as a battering ram in a pinch, though that would do to the horse under it did not bear imagining.

"Summerholm has always been the keystone to warding off invasions," he replied. "It continues to serve that purpose, if under a different banner."

I snorted. "And who'd be doing the invading, exactly?"

For better or worse, the Empire's hold on Callow was unchallenged. There'd been no major uprising since the Conquest, and with Procer embroiled in that particularly nasty civil war of theirs they'd had other things on their mind. That left the Free Cities to the south, who'd only ever managed to stop attacking each other when they were being invaded, and the fanatically isolationist elves to the north hiding in their forest.

"There's always someone plotting nefarious designs around here," Black replied drily. "It's something of an occupational hazard." I rolled my eyes. I had a feeling there was more to it than that but my teacher declined to elaborate any further on the subject

though, so I elected to let the matter go. I'd bring it up again when I'd acquired a better education on all things Praesi, of course, but until then there was no real point to it. Besides, we'd gotten close enough to the city that I could see the Legion camps sprawled all around it. The official roster of soldiers for a legion was four thousand fighting men, I dredged up from my most recent readings, though the *Praecepta Militaria* had stated there were usually about as many camp followers, merchants and servants trailing in their wake. It would have been impossible for a city the size of Summerholm to lodge two legions comfortably, so a pair of semi-permanent camps had been established outside the walls.

"Weeping Heavens," I muttered, "It's like a second city."

However many civilians the Sixth and Ninth legions had started out followed by, the number had swelled out of control since. The central areas where legionaries slept were cleanly outlined according to regulations, overlooked by earthen walls and watchtowers, but around them small towns had sprouted into existence. Dingy huts made of wood and baked clay from the river banks made up some of it, but there were twice as many pitched tents of all colours. Some avenues large enough for troops to go through had been established, but the rest of it was a messy labyrinth of small lanes. We were maybe an hour away from sundown but the place was teeming with activity, from the small courts where merchants were selling their wares in improvised market stands to the clumps of families making their evening meals in massive iron cooking pots. There was even a man trying to guide a herd of goats into a pen, though one of the does kept getting away to bleat plaintively at a very amused legionary.

"Summerholm is where Praesi and Callowans mingle the most," Black spoke as our party started down the slope towards the camps. "All trade goes through it, so it's fast becoming one of the richest cities in the Empire."

"And there haven't been any tensions?" I asked. "I heard the siege got pretty rough, towards the end."

Summerholm hadn't been sacked, not exactly – Legion regulations stated that rapists were hanged and looters lost a hand if caught with stolen property – but the final assault on the walls had been costly enough that no one on the Empire's side had been particularly inclined to mercy when the surrender had been given.

"Rebuilding the city accrued some good will," Black murmured.

"And leaving eight thousand men and women in the prime of their life as garrison means that mixed race marriages were an inevitability."

He paused for a moment.

"You're not wrong, however. Summerholm is the pulse of Callowan sentiment towards the occupation: any rebellion with a chance of success will have its seeds planted here. Our agents have been keeping a close eye on things."

Our agents. I'd avoided questioning Black on where he was learning all these things he wasn't supposed to know so far, but since he was bringing up the subject...

"The Eyes of the Empire," I said. "That's what your spies are called, aren't they?"

They were famous among Callowans, a shadowy threat to match the very visible one posed by the Legions. Everybody had a story about how one of their cousins or a friend of a friend had been snatched in the dark of night by the ruthless men and women who bore the lidless eye tattoo. I was pretty sure I'd seen one in the Nest, once. Well, either that or a man with a deplorable fondness for hooded cloaks. Black's lips stretched into a sardonic smile.

"Ah, the Eyes," he mused. "One of Scribe's better ideas, that." I frowned. "What's that supposed to mean?"

"I have a great deal of spies in Callow, true," he acknowledged. "So do Malicia and quite a few of the High Lords. But I assure you none of them go around hiding their face or bearing an incriminating mark."

"But there *are* people like that going around," I pointed out. "If they're not yours, whose are they?"

"Oh, they're mine," Black replied. "But they're not meant to actually gather information."

I closed my eyes and rubbed the bridge of my nose. The way the man thought gave me headaches, but there was a twisted sort of sense in what he was saying.

"So while everyone is paying attention to the shady people looming in the corners..."

"No one thinks twice about the waitress serving drinks just close enough to eavesdrop," he finished amusedly. "Every resistance movement in Callow worth the name checks prospective members for the eye before letting them in. Letting them catch a few 'attempted infiltrators' every year lets us slip in agents when we really need them."

My teacher was kind of a bastard, I reflected, but I couldn't deny that he was a *clever* bastard.

"And nobody's ever seen through that?" I asked.

"Once you give people what they expect to see," he shrugged, "they rarely bother to dig any deeper."

I grunted, chewing over that particular tidbit in silence. He'd offered it almost off-handedly, but it seemed to be the way he approached a lot of things – playing on the assumptions of his enemies, making them think they had it right while preparing the knife in the back. Everything surrounding Names had a pattern to it, almost formulaic steps that every child learned from the cradle through stories of heroes and villains: people who adhered to those steps, whether consciously or not, became predictable in a way. It was something I could use to my own advantage, if I paid attention closely enough. Putting the thoughts aside, I returned to more immediate matters.

"So your agents in Summerholm," I probed, "have they mentioned anything interesting?"

I already knew I'd have a welcoming committee waiting for me in the city: the three bundles of pressure in the back of my mind felt too close to be anywhere else. The fourth bundle, the weird

one, was still a little ways off. It got stronger every day, though, which I took to mean it was headed in our direction. Black had avoided telling me too much about what awaited me in Summerholm, so far, but I had no idea whether that was because he was a cryptic jackass by nature or because there would be... consequences if he did. Still, stumbling blind into the situation blind was a decent way to head for an early grave: I'd be much more comfortable going in with an edge, any edge. The dark-haired man graced me with a steady look.

"There are two major resistance movements in the city, at the moment," he finally said. "The Sons of Streges – disaffected veterans, mostly – and a splinter group of the former Thieves' Guild. My agents in both of them have stopped reporting."

The tone was flat, a stark contrast to the way he usually seemed to take everything half-seriously.

"You think they got caught," I said.

"They are either dead or held captive," he stated. "There are ways through which they would have contacted the network, otherwise."

I frowned. If a single agent had been caught it could have been a simple blunder on the person's part, but every single one of them?

"Magic?" I questioned. "Truth spells are rare, but they're not exactly unheard of."

He shook his head. "There is no such thing as a reliable truth spell," he informed me. "At best they can increase the odds of catching someone in a lie – and given how esoteric that branch of magic is, very few mages ever bother to study them. There are, as far as I am aware, none who have in Callow."

It went unsaid that his awareness was as far and wide as it was feasible for someone with the resources he had at his disposal to manage.

"I'm having a hard time believing every single one of your spies screwed up at the same time," I told him.

"So am I," he said quietly. "Which means we may have a hero on our hands."

Well, *fuck*. "That's bad, right?" I asked. "Because it sounds bad. I thought you caught these types before they ever got in a position to do stuff like this?"

"Once in a while, one slips the net," Black admitted. "Normally they out themselves shortly after by taking a stand for justice in some backwater village, but this one has made no ripples at all." He frowned. "Or, more likely, made them somewhere they went unnoticed."

I grimaced. "Careful or lucky?"

"I've found the more dangerous heroes are a little of both," the Knight replied. "The infestation is still limited to a single Role, I believe – if they'd assembled a whole party it would have been noticed – so we're dealing with a very specific type of hero."

"That already sounds more manageable," I said. I didn't know if I had it in me to stab a Bard, honestly. They were always charmingly

ineffective in the stories, it would have been like kicking a puppy. "So, some lone wolf kind of deal?"

"A gritty avenging type, I'd wager," Black replied. "They crop up with unfortunate regularity."

So, three strangers who wanted my head on a pike, Role shenanigans and a hero on the loose. Evidently, my first visit of Summerholm was shaping up to be a memorable one. I let silence fall down and our party headed for the camps, riding off the main road into the countryside.

People came to greet us before we got into the camp proper.

A dozen legionaries in heavy plate were escorting a orc woman going without a helmet. On foot, all of them – the Legions didn't really have cavalry to speak of, except for the Thirteenth.

Captain pulled up at my side and I shot her a quizzical glance.

"Istrid," she simply gravelled as the legionaries got closer.

Black dismounted and I followed suit after a heartbeat, standing a back as my teacher strode towards General Istrid. The general's skin was almost more brown than green, I noticed: she looked like she'd been carved out of rough old leather, though that was common enough in the older orcs. There was a wide scar on her cheek that pulled at her eye, fixing her face in a mocking rictus that looked impressively firece on someone in full legion gear. She was one of taller greenskins I'd seen, though not quite as broad-shouldered as most orcs her size would be: still, she towered at least two feet above me. *And above Black too*, I noted with amusement.

"Warlord," she growled in Kharsum, offering up her arm the same way Lieutenant Abase had shown me a few days back. The word she'd used wasn't the one I'd read in the books I'd been given, but the pronunciations was fairly similar – I suppose it might have changed since the manuscript had been written, or she could have been using a slightly different dialect. Black clasped her arm without hesitation.

"Istrid," he greeted her in the same language, tone fond.

"Couldn't wait for us to make it to your tent?"

"I got bored," she replied unashamedly. "You took your sweet time coming."

"There was a situation Laure that needed seeing to," the Knight spoke mildly.

The orc officer barked out a harsh laugh. "Heard about that. Finally hanged the fucker, huh? Been a long time coming."

Ha! I was already feeling rather better disposed towards General Istrid – anyone who wanted to see Mazus swinging from a noose couldn't be all bad.

"Good things come to those who wait," Black told her.

"Now you're sounding like Sacker," Istrid growled. "You two will be the death of me. Never mind that – Captain, that you hanging around in the back?"

The woman in question patted my shoulder and moved to join them, leaving me to stand with the ever-silent Blackguards and Scribe. Black's band of bodyguards was no longer as silent as it had once been around me, but they'd reverted to silent statues as soon as

we'd come in sight of Summerholm. I glance towards Scribe who had, I saw, also dismounted. She was standing closest to me, and since it didn't seem like my presence would be noticed any time soon I ambled in her direction.

"They seem pretty friendly," I said.

She wasn't a very talkative woman, Scribe. The most I'd ever heard her say was that handful of sentences the first time we'd met, and since then she'd always seemed so busy I'd hesitated to try and strike up a conversation. No parchments in her hands now, though, and it wasn't like I had anything better to do.

"They've known each other for a long time," she replied, to my surprise. "Istrid's clan was the second to side with Black, when he was still the Squire."

Huh. That certainly explained why they were still catching up like old friends sharing drinks instead of heading to the general's tent.

"Known her for long too, then?" I asked.

I knew precious little about Scribe, except that she'd been around Black since before the Conquest. None of the stories I'd heard mentioned her except in passing, and it wasn't like she'd surrendered any information about herself since we'd met. I knew disappeared for a few hours everyday and came back with fresh new correspondence, but where and how she got the letters remained a mystery. The plain-faced woman shook her head. "I came later."

Like squeezing blood out of a stone, I thought. I shuffled awkwardly on my feet and tried to think of something to say, but was saved at the last moment by an outside interruption.

"Catherine," Black called out. "Introductions are in order."

I shot Scribe a mildly relieved look and headed for the cluster of old friends. General Istrid sized me up as I walked without even the pretence of subtlety and I straightened my spine out of habit. She wouldn't take a stick to my fingers every time I slouched to make sure I had proper posture the way the House matron had, but then again I had a feeling that making a bad impression on the commander of the Sixth Legion would have more dire consequences than throbbing knuckles.

"Istrid," the Knight said, "Meet Catherine Foundling."

The tall orc frowned, then turned to look at him. "She looks like Wallerspaw," she said in Kharsum.

I scowled, partly at her blatant dismissal and partly at the word she'd used – Waller was a term orcs used to mean Deoraithe but it wasn't exactly a polite one. "Half," I replied in the same tongue, painfully aware that my pronunciation was tetchy. "That a problem?"

That certainly got her attention. "Well," she drawled, showing a row of sharp teeth, "at least you're not shy. You sound Callowan, girl – where'd he dig you up?"

"Laure," I replied. "You end up meeting all sorts of interesting types, when stabbing people."

The general barked a laugh. "Ain't that the truth. Well met, Catherine Foundling."

She offered her arm to clasp and I reciprocated, somehow managing

to keep my nerves off of my face. The general seemed a lot taller now that I stood in front of her and that rictus on her face hadn't gone anywhere: she made for a rather intimidating sight, and the story of her staring down a charge of Callowan knights was still fresh in mind. *Possibly she scowled at them and they decided they had better things to do somewhere on the other side of the Tyrian sea. Gods know I kind of wish I did.*

"Let's not make Sacker wait too long," Captain spoke up as I stepped back. "Odds are she already has eyes on us."

"Sucker's bet," Istrid grunted before turning to address her legionaries. "Stable the horses and find somewhere for the Warlord's retinue to stash their gear."

A chorus of salutes was her only reply and I handed off Zombie's reins to an olive-skinned woman with sergeant's stripes when prompted. General Istrid led the way to one of the avenues I'd glimpsed earlier, followed by Black and Captain – I glanced back to see if Scribe was following us, but she'd disappeared into thin air when I wasn't looking. *Wait, wouldn't have had to pass next to us to get into the camp?* A large hand settled on my shoulder, gently steering me forward. "She does that," Captain gravelled. "It's part of her Role to stay in the background. She'll pop up again when she's needed."

How much of my not noticing Scribe had come from her being quiet and how much had come from the effects of her Role, I wondered? I muttered something that could pass as agreement and let the matter drop. Sundown was almost on us, and as a result activity in the wider camp had died down: the improvised markets were closing and people were trailing out of the camp and heading towards the gates of Summerholm.

I suppose it makes sense that not all of them stay here after nightfall. For another group getting through the crowds quickly might have been an issue, but everyone was giving us a wide berth. Nobody was quite so bold as to point fingers in our direction, but quite a few people seemed to recognize Black and Captain – whispers bloomed in our wake wherever we went. The weight of the attention made me uncomfortable: the feeling of the three other potential Squires hadn't gotten any closer, but I had more than them to worry about now. There might very well be a hero somewhere in the masses, and if they were looking for a target I was painfully aware that I was the easiest one available. I was not, after all, so deluded as to think that half a Name and a week's worth of training with a sword and board would make me a match for a veteran of the Conquest like General Istrid. The grip on the short sword at her hip was well-worn, and she walked like someone who thought of their weapon like an extension of their limbs.

We encountered two patrols as we delved deeper into the impromptu town, both of them stopping to salute as we passed by. More and more legionaries stood watch as we got closer to the actual Legion camp – well, one of them anyway. The standards spread out everywhere all bore the Sixth Legion's number in Miezan numerals, so it was pretty obvious this was theirs and not the Ninth's. By

the time we made it to the large pavilion that apparently served as General Istrid's council room, night had fallen. Torches were already burning, though they were hardly needed considering how many cooking fires there were out there: the trail of smoke in the sky must have been visible for miles. The inside of the pavilion was empty except for a large table of polished wood surrounded by comfortable-looking chairs. There was only one person inside: a small goblin woman, under five feet tall and so heavily wrinkled her face looked like a mask. General Sacker, I assumed. She looked almost half-sleep, her yellow eyes were half-lidded even as she gave me an once-over before turning towards my teacher.

"Lord Black," she murmured from her seat, bowing her head ever so slightly.

She was so quiet I almost missed the words, but the green-eyed man nodded back without missing a beat.

"General Sacker," he replied, "It's been too long."

She inclined her head again.

"Gods Below," General Istrid interrupted with disgust, "the both of you sound like you're attending a feast at the Tower. I'm going to need a drink, if we're doing the fucking Praesi rituals."

"Finally," I muttered, "someone's willing to say it out loud."

Istrid shot me an amused look as she poured herself a cup some sort of amber liquor from one of the carafes on the table. When I returned my attention to the others, I found that General Sacker was looking at me – and there was no longer anything half-asleep about her demeanour as she studied me. I'd always heard calculating eyes referred to as cold and cool, but if anything the yellow gaze pinning me seemed to burn with focused intensity. *Clever as a snake and twice as mean*, Captain had told me.

"You're from Laure," General Sacker spoke in the same whisper-thin voice. "Interesting. Orphan?"

I wasn't sure who the question was addressed to so I glanced at Black, but he'd already claimed a seat and was pouring himself a drink from the same carafe as Istrid, paying no attention to the conversation. *Worst mentor ever*.

"I am," I confirmed warily.

Sacker nodded to herself. "Calloused hands, mhm. Fighting rings? Illegal in Callow, I do believe."

Her tone didn't make it clear whether she approved or disapproved.

"So I've heard," I simply replied.

I had no idea what her game was, but it felt like she was toying with me and I very much disliked the feeling of it. My first instinct was to bite back, but I pushed it down. There was the fact that Captain had specifically warned me about her, of course, but there was more to it than that. General Sacker was *old*. By far the oldest goblin I'd ever met and that made her very, very dangerous – most of their kind never made it past thirty five, and looking at the general I guessed she was pushing forty. Older goblins were notoriously frail and sick but Sacker

was still not only in command of a legion, but of a legion holding one of the most important fortresses in the Empire. She was, in short, *not someone I wanted to fuck with*.

"You can mess with her head later, you vicious old bat," Istrid broke in cheerfully, apparently not caring about any of that in the slightest. "We've got fresher corpses to eat, like our little hero problem."

General Sacker pursed her lips.

"There's not definitive proof that we have a-"

That was when the pavilion exploded.

Colbertopus

Nice. Especially the ending.

AvidFan

Ye shall burn in the fiery depths for the treasonous crime of complimenting a cliff hanger! No one likes cliff hangers! They make us thirst for more when there's nothing left to quench our thirst until the next post!

x_x

[*gumtreeblossom*](#)

Almost six years in the future, here... and there's plenty of things left ahead of me. However, I'll maintain this cliffhanger and get some sleep. Traditions, you know...

x

Typos:

though that would do to the horse under it did not bear imagining
though +what

tot he city
to the

semi-permanents camps
semi-permanent

made up up
-up

the small courts were merchants were selling their wares
where

stumbling blind into the situation blind
-blind

The were always
They

a orc woman
an

standing a back as my teacher strode
-a

firece
fierce

not quite as broad-shouldered as most orcs her size would be:
still, she towered
There are no semicolons in the chapter, only colons; this place
in particular is one where I think it really should be a
semicolon

the pronunciations was
pronunciation

There was a situation Laure
+in Laure

I glance towards Scribe who had
glanced
Also, should probably be "Scribe, who"

I knew disappeared for a few hours everyday
+she disappeared

the story of her staring down a charge of Callowan knights was
still fresh in mind
+my mind

Wait, wouldn't have had to pass
+she have

an once-over
a

the green-eyed nodded back
green-eyed +man?

a cup some sort of amber liquor
cup +of

There's not definitive proof
no

Unmaker

Typos:

close enough tot he
close enough to the

made up up some
made up some

colours
colors

The were always
They were always

a orc woman
an orc woman

impressively firece
impressively fierce

I knew disappeared for a few hours everyday
I knew she disappeared for a few hours every day
(everyday is an adjective)
(note two changes)

gravelled (several)
graveled

demeanour
demeanor

There was a situation Laure that needed seeing to
There was a situation in Laure that needed seeing to

Wait, wouldn't have had to pass next to us to get into the camp?
Wait, wouldn't she have had to pass next to us to get into the
camp?

Reactions:

Another chapter heavy on exposition and light on action, but it
flowed well and I like the world-building. Now I look forward to
some action.

Nice to see the old narrative conventions followed:
"There's not definitive proof that we have a-"
Is the equivalent of:
"This situation can't possibly get worse."
Which means, of course, that it does.

Unmaker

Oops, I missed seeing x's typo thread. There are some overlaps.

[benthelynx](#)

"Wait, wouldn't have had to pass next to us to get into the camp?"

She

[Shell](#)

I think this serial so far is one of the best "ideological" stories I've ever read. I am actually liking General Sacker. Hopefully she and Catherine become best buds.

[erraticerrata](#)

Thanks! Sacker has a grand total of one friend, unfortunately, and she doesn't even like Istrid half of the time. Catherine's chances aren't looking too great.

daymon34

Never good when you say that 'the problem has not been confirmed'. They have way of making you notice them, like exploding pavilions.

Well got a hero and they are the grouchy kind, means lots of shadow stalking and quick kills most likely.

FirstDragon

Great writing for a web serial...what a delight to read. Thanks so much!

Only Some Stardust

I find myself wondering how exactly he convinced people to wear a mark specifically so they'd get caught. Doesn't sound like a very appealing job.

Michael

I'm sure /they/ think they're the elite spies as well.

stevenneiman

Well I don't think most groups would be able to kill someone on a whim, and its entirely possible that a poor person might be willing to risk death on a promise that their family will be fed if they die.

SpiraMirabilis

I bet he has some way to put a mark on someone without them knowing, then he finds genuine disaffected rebels to put the

mark on them right before they try to join the resistance. The resistance finds them and interrogates them, learning nothing: "These imperial spies are so well trained I could almost believe this man was innocent, if not for the mark! Kill him!"

stevenneiman

And now for the regularly scheduled whining about minor typos and grammatical mistakes.

"though {what} that would do to the horse under it did not bear imagining."

"we'd gotten close enough [tot he->to the] city"

"from the small courts [were->where] merchants were selling their wares"

"There was a situation {in} Laure that needed seeing to"

"I knew {she} disappeared for a few hours everyday"

"Wait, wouldn't [she] have had to pass next to us to get into the camp?"

"She looked almost [half-sleep->half-asleep]"

I keep on thinking that the goblin is called General Slacker. Also, does fate command that things always happen at ironically appropriate times like when you say that they won't happen?

[Thanatos](#)

Bah, fate is an excuse for the weak,

[Thanatos](#)

That said, yes indeed fate does command that

CrazyPenguin

No fate doesn't do that. But Murphy does

Graham

Typo alert: "Besides, we'd gotten close enough tot he city"

stevenneiman

"his mount could double as a battering ram in a pinch, though {what} that would do to the horse under it did not bear imagining"

"Besides, we'd gotten close enough [tot he->to the] city"

"from the small courts [were->where] merchants were selling their wares"

"I knew {she} disappeared for a few hours everyday"

"Wait, wouldn't {she} have had to pass next to us to get into the camp?" Also, the g isn't italicized for some reason

"Torches were already burning, though they were hardly needed considering how many cooking fires there were out there[:->] the trail of smoke in the sky must have been visible for miles." the

colon comes before an explanation or a list, while a semicolon comes before a complete but related sentence. The semicolon is like a period except with more of a sense that the next sentence is related to the previous.

"You end up meeting all sorts of interesting types, when stabbing people." It's a good line, but technically hasn't she only ever slashed and punched? And magically killed and animated a horse, but that's still not stabbing.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

She implied Black was doing thr stabbing i thought

danh3107

This is super late and probably no one cares, but female goats are called Nannies, not does.

[Nerazim Praetor](#)

I thought this was a typo and just read it as "goat", since does is also plural (singular doe)

sswanlake

Some edits:

we'd gotten close enough tot he city -> we'd gotten close enough
to the city

clay from the river banks made up up some of it -> clay from the
river banks made ~~up~~ up some of it

I knew disappeared for a few hours everyday -> I knew *she*
disappeared for a few hours everyday

Wait, wouldn't have had to pass next to us to get into the camp?
-> Wait, wouldn't *she* have had to pass next to us to get into
the camp?

caoimhinh

"I didn't know if I had it in me to stab a Bard, honestly. They were always charmingly ineffective in the stories, it would have been like kicking a puppy."

Hahahahahahahahaha

dadycool

My exact reaction. See, THIS is the kind of hindsight that is why I'm rereading the story now.

Aapjuh

Still waiting for the story to get as 'good' as people claim on here, so far its a notepad filled with people names, city names, house names, town names, city names, road names, wall names.

i find myself opening a chapter bookmark and immediately having my mind wander to other things to do rather than read.

Onos

Ah yes, the chronic sins of worldbuilding and foreshadowing – almost as bad as developing characters and advancing the plot! I can only assume you're skipping all the important stuff, because "notepad filled with names" is the absolute last thing you should be taking away from this. You could try actually parsing the text and considering why things are being given the screen time they are? But then, that would require maintaining a train of thought for more than thirty seconds. The Hungry Caterpillar is still a best-seller, I'm sure that would keep your attention for a while.

Cpt. Obvious

This shows you haven't read a lot of the more mature literature out there.

I promise you that this is light reading. There's actually not that many names and places mentioned so far. You don't even have to go to the Russian classics that's infamous for being demanding of the reader to find a lot of books that are far more demanding than The Guide to Practical Evil.

However if you wish to challenge your self in a controlled manner I'd suggest you have a look at 'The Master and Margarita' by Mikhail Bulgakov. Yes it's one of those Russian books filled with complicated strange names you can't remember from one page to the next. But this isn't War and Peace sized tragedy but a black comedy featuring supernatural beings, and its a novella, so a manageable read.

[elyandarin](#)

Wait, wouldn't have had to pass <- wouldn't she

[greatwyrmgold](#)

I would have thought a goblin who survived so long around Villains would realize it was a bad idea to tempt fate. (And I'll stick by that statement even if the explosion isn't Hero-related.)

Boobah

Given Sacker's rep and what we've seen of her, I'd assume tempting fate was the goal. If there is no hero, nothing happens. If there is, the Hero has a shot at both generals, plus two Named... right when and where Sacker's expecting them.

Pizza

5 years later and typo's aren't fixed still. So far the story is about one alpha male and a lot of female warriors. When this fem dream becomes interesting?

Anon

Chapter 8: "Besides, we'd gotten close enough to the city that I could see the Legion camps sprawled all around it." -> to the

Midas0

Speak of the devil and he shall appear

Rraune

"though that would do to the horse under it did not bear imagining."

though what that would

"Dingy huts made of wood and baked clay from the river banks made up some of it,"

made up some

"from the small courts where merchants were selling their wares in improvised market stands"

courts where merchants were

"Still, stumbling blind into the situation blind was a decent way to head for an early grave:"

stumbling into the situation blindly

"They were always charmingly ineffective in the stories, "

They were always

"A dozen legionaries in heavy plate were escorting a orc woman going without a helmet."

an orc

"She was one of taller greenskins I'd seen"

one of the taller

"There was a situation Laure that needed seeing to," "

situation in Laure

"I knew disappeared for a few hours everyday and came back with fresh new correspondence,"
I knew she disappeared

"Wait, wouldn't have had to pass next to us to get into the camp?"
wouldn't she have had

"her yellow eyes were half-lidded even as she gave me an once-over before turning towards my teacher."
me a once-over

Chapter 9: Claimant

"Gaining power's a lot like scaling a tower, Chancellor. The longer you do, the more likely you are to fall."
– Dread Empress Regalia the First, before ordering her Chancellor thrown out the window

I was swatted down by the hand of an angry god, fire licking at my face.

The world went silent and dark until I realized I'd closed my eyes: when I opened them I still saw spots of colour but the fear of having gone blind that had taken me for an instant left my frame. Everything around me was smoking or on fire: the top of the pavilion had been outright blown away and the rest of the cloth was twenty feet away, cheerfully burning. I pushed myself up, noticing with a grimace that the elbow joint of my armour had been partly melted by the heat. The damned ringing in my ears made it hard to focus on anything, but when I passed my hand over my face I felt with dismay that part of my eyebrows was missing. My fingers came away covered in soot but I pushed concern over my appearance way down the priority list: whoever had just attempted to kill every one of us might still be around, and the second shot might be a little more accurate.

Black was already up and about, helping up a prone and shaky-legged Istrid as Captain hovered around him protectively. I reached for my sword, checking wearily whether the heat had damaged the scabbard – no, it still came out just fine. *Good. Now, time to disembowel whoever was responsible for that. My eyebrows are like, my one good feature.* Someone kicked my ankle and I felt it through the aketon, only now noticing that my left greaves had somehow been blown away during the impact. I snarled and look down only to find General Sacker staring back up at me

peevishly. I gaped at the sight of her: half of her face was gone, a wasteland of blackened flesh with hints of meat peeking through. One of her eyes had popped out of its socket, not that she seemed to care in the slightest. She snapped her fingers in front of my face several times and –

“-can't hear me at all, can you? Typical Callowan, all bark and no-”

“Now let's not make this a cultural thing,” I rasped out. “Do you hear me talking about how goblins always look like they're up to something shady?”

She slapped me. I snarled at her and reached for my sword before common sense could kick in. *That little-*

“Just making sure you're not in shock,” she grinned malevolently at me, baring a mere handful of broken yellow molars.

“Maybe I should make sure of the same,” I told her through gritted teeth. “You know, just in case.”

She swaggered away towards Black without replying, though how someone who'd lost half their armour – and face – in the blast could manage a swagger was beyond me. *Don't kick the Praesi general, Catherine. It'll be very gratifying, but there'll be Hells to pay afterwards.* I followed Sacker, making a point of getting ahead of her through use of my Heaven-gifted longer legs.

“– put the camp under lockdown. I don't want anyone getting out,” Black instructed Captain.

“They'll be long gone,” the gargantuan woman replied. “But there might be a-”

“I'll survive without you dogging my shadow for an hour,” he spoke, tone flat and emotionless. “Go.”

She went without further protest, stopping to look me over as she passed me by before moving on with a silent nod.

“Fuck,” I heard Istrid gasp as she leaned on Black's arm. “Been a while since I've been on the receiving end of one of those.”

I looked around and found that, strangely enough, a single chair had been left untouched by the carnage except for being knocked over. I strolled away to pick it up and place it next to General Istrid, acknowledging her grateful glance with an inclination of the head.

“So, out of curiosity,” I rasped out. “Did someone just drop a godsdamned comet on us? Because that's a bold opening move, not gonna lie.”

"No. Goblin munitions," Black replied.

"Sharpers," Istrid specified in a growl. "They always mess with my hearing."

"A bad batch," General Sacker murmured. "Otherwise I wouldn't be standing right now."

The tall orc seemed to notice that half of her colleague's face had been kissed by fire just then, a flicker of surprise and dismay going through her eyes.

"Well," she gravelled after a moment. "How many eyes do you really need, anyway? You can get an eyepatch that matches Grem's."

Sacker palmed what remained of her face, looking pained for the first time that night. I ignored the byplay, mind already spinning. Goblin munitions, huh. I knew a few things about those, though not as much as I'd like. *Sharpers blow, if you're too slow. Smokers choke, and then you croak. Brightsticks blind, and none too kind.* Children in the Laure had a whole game made up around the rhyme, a sort of morbid take on what Imperial sappers had done to the enemy during the Conquest.

"Sharpers wouldn't kill a Name without a good spot of luck, would they?" I suddenly asked, looking at Black.

A heartbeat passed as the cogs between those unsettling green eyes turned and arrived at the same conclusion I had.

"We weren't the target," the Knight stated. He glanced at the two generals thoughtfully.

"If I wanted to create a right mess in Summerholm," I spoke up, "first I'd off the people commanding the garrison and then—"

He grimaced. "The Governess."

Legionaries had finally arrived on the scene and immediately my teacher pulled one of them aside, sending him to check on Governess Kansoleh with a few curt sentences. Only after that did he return the full weight of his attention to me.

"There will be no lesson tonight," he said. "I trust you'll manage an evening by yourself?"

"I'll find a way to keep myself busy," I replied neutrally.

It suited me just fine, as it happened: lately I'd been going with the current a little too much for my tastes. While I didn't doubt that at some point I'd be introduced to the three bundles of murder in the back of my head in a formal capacity, I had no intention of waiting that long to get a closer look at people who

were supposedly out for my blood. Surrendering the initiative was starting the fight on the defensive, and I'd always been an attack-minded kind of girl. The Knight paused to meet my eyes, a long moment passing before he snorted.

"Talk with Scribe," he said. "She'll see to it you have what you need."

I really need to find a book on Names, I decided. If he can't read minds, I think that would actually make it creepier.

Displaying his usual level of helpfulness, my teacher had not deemed it necessary to tell me *where* Scribe was.

Thankfully, I lucked out when I asked a legionary to direct me to wherever the Blackguards had been settled. None of them were actually in the temporary barracks – if I'd had to guess, I would have said they would have started running towards Black as fast as they could the moment they heard the explosion – but the woman in question was kneeling on the ground in front of a low table already covered in parchments. I tried to get a glimpse, but none of it made sense to me: it was gibberish in a mix of Kharsum and Mthethwa, as far as I could tell. *Cyphered, most likely.* The flat indifference she was displaying in her own quiet way was at odds with how close to Black I'd thought she was – wasn't she worried even a little bit? A sharper wouldn't kill a bloody Calamity, but it could have wounded him pretty badly.

"No one died," I told her. "Black's not even wounded – General Sacker got the worst of it."

"I know," Scribe replied, adroitly dipping her quill in the inkwell.

I might as well have tried to empathize with a statue. A particularly unconcerned statue, even. Pushing down a sigh, I knelt across the table from her.

"I'm going to be heading out into Summerholm," I said. "I need a few things before I do."

I wanted a quiet look, not a melee in the streets of a city that had just gone into high alert, and that meant no armour and no Praesi clothes. I was keeping the sword, inconspicuous as it would be, because screw going unarmed in a city with a hero loose in it – especially a hero that considered blowing up people a valid tactic. Scribe pointed to my left and I followed the finger to a bundle of clothes resting on a shelf.

"Bullshit," I replied flatly. "How could you possibly have known I would need those before I even did?"

Scribe glanced up. "I've had those set aside since we left Laure," she simply said.

I was starting to hate that I was playing a game where everybody seemed to know the next ten moves except for me, I thought with a scowl. It came in useful more often than not, sure, but it also left me with the sensation that I was being herded towards a finish they'd already planned out for me. What was I going to do, though, complain my needs were being seen to *too well*? *Yeah, I'm overdue something reckless. Been walking down roads they paved for me a little too much.* Without a word I shed my armour and the still-singed aketon underneath, slipping on the woollen trousers and short-sleeved blouse that came with it. Good make, both of them, but not so expensive as to warrant a second look.

My old boots had been preserved and it was a glorious feeling to wiggle my toes inside the used leather instead of the steel-capped stuff I'd been given before we moved out of Laure. I already felt a little more like me and a little less like a doll dressed up in Evil clothes. With the goblin-steel sword and my knife on either sides of my hips I was fully equipped for murder if it came down to it, which if Black's line about the intention of the other Squire claimants was accurate it very well might. There was also a leather purse with some coins in it, which might come in useful: about twenty silver coins, with the Marchford crest on them. They wouldn't be as widely accepted as Praesi denarii – Countess Marchford was well-known to short the precious metals in her currency – but they'd certainly attract less attention than a Deoraithe girl running around with a purse full of Imperial silver.

"I'm heading out," I told Scribe. "Have fun doing... whatever it is you're doing?"

The plain-faced woman hummed in response, which seemed to be the sum of the attention she was willing to grant me. I walked out of the barracks, already focusing on the other claimants as I did: one of them had gotten a little closer, as it turned out.

I smiled grimly: time to check out the competition.

Outside of the Sixth's military camp, the tent city was a lot like a hornet's nest that had just received a good kick. Legionaries had pulled back to their fortifications and now refused to allow anyone through – at least coming in, I had no problem getting out except for a few suspicious looks – which had not gone unnoticed by the civilians. The explosion itself had not been a cause for panic, since any halfway decent mage could manage something just as loud, but the way the legions had reacted in the aftermath made people nervous. Yet not, I saw, nervous enough to shut down all activity for the night. The sea of torches and camp fires shed light in a way that made the labyrinth of tents look like actual streets instead of empty

spaces, and while people went about their business quietly they were still very much out and about. I kept to the shadows as I tried to narrow down where the closest claimant actually was, something made increasingly difficult by the way he or she kept moving away when I got closer. It occurred to me for the first time that the... sensation might go both ways – if I could tell when they were close, could they do the same?

That could make this whole spying business unfortunately difficult, if it were true.

I might as well assume it was, given how my luck tended to run. Which meant his was no longer about sneaking around: it was about cornering a quarry. I found myself wishing I'd paid closer attention to the layout of the camp, but what little I remembered from earlier would have to do: I was somewhere to the left of the legion fortifications, I knew that much, so now I just needed to drive the stranger into a place where there was no crowd to hide behind. Ignoring the huddled families casting curious looks in my direction, I closed my eyes and tried to sink deeper into my Name like I had when I'd helped Black raise Zombie. It was harder without his own power to act as an anchor for mine, but this was also less... complex to accomplish. It was like my Name *wanted* me to know, and it required focus more than direction. The other claimant was a little north of me, moving towards the larger avenues, and I would have none of that: the less people around for this, the easier it would be to pick out my quarry. I moved in between and the presence backed off.

Yeah, they can definitely feel me too.

I ducked around a tent, moving as fast as I could without outright running, and the sensation kept giving ground. Twice it tried to circle around me, but I was quicker: as soon as I got in the way the presence back-pedalled, staying out of my sight if not out of my mind. How long we played this game of cat and mouse I wasn't sure: night had fallen a while back, and the smoke from the fires made it hard to get a good look at the moon. It was a tedious business, but I grit my teeth and did it anyways – it was a long, methodical grind to force the claimant somewhere I'd be able to look at them, but as long as I remained calm and methodical it was just a matter of time. Eventually, we ended up close to the edge of the camp. There were fewer fires out here but Black's earlier prediction had come true: I saw better in the dark than any human should. I felt the presence pause as it neared the open ground and a feral smile stretched my lips. *Where are you going to run now, my pretty?* I put a spring to my step and moved towards the now-still claimant, slipping between tents as quick as I could to make sure they wouldn't have time to try and circle around again.

The presence in my mind was suddenly snuffed out.

The surprise nearly made me stumble, but I caught myself at the last moment. My hand drifted to my sword, and with a sinking feeling I struck me that I hadn't been the only one playing a game tonight. Here I was, far away from any witnesses and alone in the dark with only my sword for company. *I wasn't running the bastard down*, I realized, *I was being baited*. And I'd fallen for it like a farmer buying magic beans, which added insult to the very real risk of injury.

"Well," I muttered to myself, "no need to be coy about this."

I drew my sword and wished I'd taken my shield with me, even if it would have made me stick out like a sore thumb. The tents surrounding me had seemed like nothing more than irritants getting in my way, earlier, but now every one of them could be cover for someone wanting to slit my throat. My nice little moonlit walk was taking a sinister turn, but I forced myself to take a deep breath. *Fear is sloppiness. Fear is the fault line in solid stone. Fear is the enemy's mind, drawing blood before his sword*. The words stilled my heartbeat and I let anger flood my veins instead. I might have fallen for my enemy's trick, but I was not without fangs of my own.

"So," I called out into the silence. "Are you going to make me wait all night?"

There was no warning except for a flicker of movement at the edge of my sight – the shape moved fast, faster than I'd seen anyone without a Name ever move, but I'd been waiting for it. In a flutter of robes my enemy struck, scimitar coming low for my leg. I managed to bring up my sword down in time, the angle awkward but good enough to stop the blade from scything into my flesh. I only got a quick look at whoever was attacking me before they leapt back before a tent, ducking out of sight: long dark robes that hid the body shape and some sort of clay mask over the face. Taller than me, but not real way to tell if it was a man or a woman. The claimant did not attack again, silence falling in their wake. I tightened my grip around the handle of my short sword taking a careful step back as I considered my options. Did I want to turn this into a death match?

I was reluctant at the prospect of killing three strangers, even if it got me a Name, but this particular stranger did not seem to be overly burdened by the same moral objections. Taking out one of the contenders early appealed to the fighter in me – one less person to worry about – but I'd been given to understand that I was already ahead of the curve when it came to claiming my Name. Killing one of the claimants on my first night in Summerholm might drive the remaining two to work together against me. *And I don't know if I could handle that. If this bastard's disappearing trick is any indication, they have a few cards up their sleeves I didn't even know were in the deck*. They came from behind, this

time. Thank the Heavens for those robes, otherwise I wouldn't have heard it coming: I turned around and struck blindly, hitting nothing but air but forcing the claimant to move around my swing. The clay mask and its creepy leering rictus looked back at me silently as my opponent tried to slice up my wrist. I got the pommel in the way but the masked claimant's scimitar slid down and bit into my fingers – I drew back with a curse, trying to kick them in the crotch as they melted back into the dark.

"Fuck," I swore again, taking a look at my hand.

It stung like a bitch but the cut wasn't deep: I wasn't at any risk of losing the finger. It was bleeding a lot, though, and that was dangerous if left unattended – worse, it was making my grip slippery. *And that's why we wear gauntlets, Catherine.*

"First blood to you, you creepily silent masked ambusher," I conceded out loud. "Still, to quote–"

I felt someone moving behind me again and bared my teeth. This time the blade came for my throat and I ducked under it, burrowing my fist in my opponent's abdomen with great relish. The pained groan I heard even through the mask was sweeter than any hymn and before they could step back I slammed the pommel of my sword right in their mask. A chip fell off of the cheek and they rocked back – after a moment of hesitation the stranger ducked out again before I could press my advantage, dodging the point of my blade by less than an inch.

"–to quote a really unpleasant acquaintance of mine, last blood is the only one that matters," I finished, falling back into a low guard.

I'd wondered why someone who was so intent on surprise would have first struck after I'd invited a hit. It was after they attacked the second time I'd understood why: the robes made noise when they moved too fast, so they'd taken advantage of the sound of my voice to cover it. It had made the third strike easy to predict, though I doubted it would work again. I checked my hand again, grimacing when I saw the blood was soaking my grip and dripping to the ground. I couldn't let this go on for too long, the more it dragged out the larger my opponent's advantage got. *All right, the time for subtle is done. It's never been my specialty anyway.* If my enemy was using the environment we were in to their advantage, then there was an obvious solution: break the godsdamned environment. I kicked the stakes keeping together the tent closest to me, ignoring the angry yells that came from inside as it fell and I cut through the rope holding up the one next to it.

To my opponent's credit, they were on me before I could bring down a third. I slapped aside the scimitar coming for my kidney with the flat of my sword, moving in close. The masked claimant

tried to push me back, but to my delight I discovered I was stronger than them: when I shoved back they stumbled, immediately giving ground as I pursued. From the corner of my eye I saw people coming out of the tents, faces turning from angry to fearful the moment they saw people with swords in hand. An older man grabbed his daughter by the hand and legged it, which brought a hard smile to my face. They were getting legionaries, most likely, and chances were good those would side with me over my opponent. The stranger must have thought the same, because they stopped backing away and returned on the offensive.

I knew how to handle them now, though. *I own close range, you quiet bastard. We're dancing to my song now.* I kept pushing forward, watching for the blade and driving my opponents into tents as they tried to put a little distance between us. The masked ambusher was in the tricky position of having to keep an eye on me as they stepped back, though, and after a moment they stumbled over a stake. That was the opening I'd been waiting for – the point of my blade missed the throat but slid into their shoulder. I was forced to step back by a wild swing of the scimitar, but I laughed: now the both of us were bleeding, and that wound was a lot worse than mine.

"Cow," the stranger hissed through the mask in Taghrebi, the voice distinctly male.

He hadn't said cow, exactly – the actual word he'd used meant *bull's daughter*, though the meaning was the same. Very roundabout language, Taghrebi.

"Goat-husband," I replied cheerfully in the same tongue, drawing on the extensive repertoire of insults Captain and Lieutenant Abase had been teaching me when Black wasn't paying attention. His fingers touched the wound and came back red: I raised an eyebrow when he used the blood to trace a line across the clay mask.

"Would it be culturally insensitive to ask what in the Hells you just did?" I mused out loud.

"This isn't over," the boy hissed again, and Weeping Heavens why did villains always say shit like that before trying to run away? He might as well have sent me a written warning he was about to flee. He turned to make his escape but *screw* that: my schedule was tricky enough without having to watch over my shoulder for a vengeful masked jackass waiting to pounce at any moment. Our very dramatic confrontation turned to a very ridiculous foot race in the dark. Now and then he tried to duck around a tent and do the melting-in-shadows trick he'd pulled on me during the fight, but it seemed to fail if I had an eye on him while he was doing it.

He was trying to get back towards the crowd where he could hide among the crowd, but that kind of thing was harder to manage when

I knew exactly what he was trying to do. He must not have known the layout of the tent city much better than I did, because our little race took an unexpected turn when he took a left into an alley that ended into a stone wall – a legion supply house, by the looks of it. He slowed when he realized he'd run into a dead end, turning to face me. I could see him pant through his robes, the red stain on his shoulder soaking the dark fabric further every moment. I was in slightly better shape, though not by much: fight in the Pit tended to be on the short side, and they rarely required much running.

"Well," I gasped out, catching my breath. "I was aiming for a talk, but I suppose shanking you in a dark alley will have to do. In all fairness, you started it."

I brought up my sword into the middle line and slowly strode forward. People were at their most dangerous when cornered, I knew, and so I stepped lightly. Barely three feet in front of me, a small clay cylinder landed in the dirt – there was a fuse on tip of it, nearly done burning. The children's rhyme drifted to the surface of my thoughts almost mockingly: *brightsicks blind, and none too kind*. "Shit," I cursed feelingly, closing my eyes just before it blew.

Looking straight into the flash was a good way never to see anything again, and even through my closed pupils the explosion light was horribly painful. Colours swam in my eyes and all I could think of was that I hadn't seen the masked bastard throwing anything but I knew of at least one person with access to goblin munitions with a vested interest in seeing the both of us dead – I turned so that I'd have a tent at my back, refusing to give my ambusher a clear shot at me even as I half-faced the new threat. I heard two sets of steps coming down the alley, and when my vision cleared there were two people looking back at me. One was a goblin, the strangest-looking I'd ever seen: there was not a speck of green on her skin, all of the flesh bared by her chain mail a shade or red nearly orange. Next to her a tall Soninke girl with a white veil over her face was eyeing me curiously, a long spear propped up against her shoulder. It looked like a bridal veil to me, but she was no Callowan: to the Soninke, white was the colour of death. I felt the masked jackass move behind me and my eyes flicked back to him, my sword rising back to middle-line immediately.

"Now that we have your attention," the goblin jeered. "Why don't we all have a nice little talk?"

I didn't need to reach for my name to know who those two were. Well, I thought to myself. *I did want to check out the competition.*

x

Typos:

wether the heat had damaged the scabbard
whether

I snarled and look down
looked

That little-
The 'T' is not italic like the other letters

Pushing down a sight
sigh

I was keeping the sword, inconspicuous as it would be
conspicuous

With the goblin-steel sword and my knife on either sides of my
hips

"either sides" sounds wrong to me at least – if the reason for
"either" is to emphasize that they're not on the same side,
"opposite sides"?

"– put the camp under lockdown. I don't want anyone getting out,"
this seems to conflict with the later part:
Legionaries had pulled back to their fortifications and now
refused to allow anyone through – at least coming in, I had no
problem getting out

bring up my sword down
the up/down seems wrong, not sure what this should be

they leapt back before a tent, ducking out of sight
behind?

not real way to tell
no

I tightened my grip around the handle of my short sword taking
sword,

I kicked the stakes keeping together the tent closest to me,
ignoring the angry yells that came from inside as it fell and I
cut
fell, and cut

driving my opponents into tents
opponent

The masked ambushed
ambusher

fight in the Pit tended to be on the short side
fights

there was a fuse on tip of it
top

brightsicks
brightsticks

through my closed pupils
eyelids

shade or red
of

Unmaker

colour (several)
color (assuming US English)

armour (several)
armor

much.Without
much. Without

woollen
woolen

back-pedalled
back-pedaled

lips.Where
lips. Where

butscREW
but screw

kind.“Shit
kind. “Shit

lemonpastels

horribly late but the writer is canadian, so they use british
english

[Shell](#)

Interesting chapter, but what does she mean by competition? You mean to say that all three of her “enemies” were this close together?

daymon34

Those three are the others that are almost "Squire's", so they are working towards the same Name at the moment.

daymon34

Well found the others alright, getting kicked in the face hard by the bomb is no fun.

Unmaker

Well, things to think about.

First, the kind of damage that Catherine describes for her armor should have harmed her more than it did. I suspect Role interference.

Second, the grenade that started the chapter could have been aimed at Catherine – she is also one of the people in that group that might have been harmed by it. Since the goblin proto-Squire is using munitions, she is a suspect. On the other hand, pissing off two Names and two generals sounds like a losing move, and the goblin proto-Squire could have killed Catherine and the other claimant with a grenade instead of disabling, so there are probably (at least) two different bombers.

Third, the four Squire-claimants are very, very different from each other on initial viewing, both in appearance and in apparent abilities. Accidents are possible, but I suspect Role/Name interference, almost as if the Role is forcing a competition between different aspects of its power to determine which is stronger.

Fourth, the fact that the goblin claimant could have killed two of the others but didn't and is apparently working with the Soninke claimant (at least temporarily) indicates that Black was wrong when he said the other claimants would want to kill Catherine. Was this a setup for her to kill rather than negotiate, thereby pushing her towards Evil? Logically, the contest *could* end up with three living non-Names and one living Name instead of one Name and three corpses. So a no-kill agreement would make some degree of sense.

And lastly, as I asked before, who says the Squire Role is always evil? Is there a "good" squire in the mix here?

[erraticerrata](#)

You caught on to quite a few things 😊

1) Yeah, melted metal should have done all sorts of horrible things to what's underneath, regardless of her wearing an aketon. Fortunately for her, a higher level of durability is

one of the abilities that comes with nearly every Name package. It's why heroes can survive being dropped off a cliff, which in the Guideverse happens more often than you'd think.

2) You're correct that there's an element of competition to the way the claimants were "chosen" – Evil Names thrive on conflict, by their very nature. The different power sets are tied in to something Black mentioned earlier: aspects, which as he said can vary wildly even if the Name is the same.

3) Black's not a character that often resorts to lying. That said, he's certainly not above using Ben Kenobi truths to nudge Catherine in certain directions.

4) The Squire Role isn't always Evil, no. It largely depends on who they'll be squiring for, though anyone squiring for Black is going to be Evil. Catherine taking the shortcut he offered made that a done deal: since he effectively used his own Name to kickstart hers, there's going to be bleed over in several ways. As for the possibility of a "good" Squire, for that kind of a Name to appear there'd need to be an equivalent to the Black Knight out and about. Could there be more than one hero hiding in Summerholm? Who knows.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

So what are the requirements that a Name imposes? Can a traditionally Good role primarily do Evil, or vice versa?

Ezario Gerion

It's backwards I think. Doing Evil things will give you Villanous Name. And once you have one, you are more or less confined to its ways, or the Name will weaken, which is dangerous in any sorts of ways.

Thorbjorn42gbf

The sentence: "He was trying to get back towards the crowd where he could hide among the crowd" Feels a bit awkward. Maybe say "He was trying to get back towards the crowd where he could hide in it" or "He was trying to get back towards the crowd where he could hide among the people" using the same word two times in a row rarely sounds well.

stevenneiman

"I reached for my sword, checking wearily [wether->whether] the heat had damaged the scabbard"

"my teacher had not [deigned->deemed] it necessary to tell me where Scribe was."

"Which meant [his->this] was no longer about sneaking around"

"with a sinking feeling [I->it] struck me that I hadn't been the only one playing a game tonight"

"Taller than me, but [not->no] real way to tell if it was a man or a woman."

Wonder if any of the other three are going to off each other here. I kind of doubt that ErraticErrata plans on introducing a replacement protagonist any time soon.

Thanatos

As a multilingual guy with a knack for languages, Catherine's proficiency at picking up languages she hadn't even heard of a few weeks prior is frankly terrifying.

stevenneiman

One of her Aspects is Learn. But yeah, there's a reason that that's in the same category as being unstoppable whenever you try to conquer something.

Cpt. Obvious

I went to school with a guy who had moved here less than a year earlier. In that year he'd learned the local language and spoke it with just barely a hint of an accent.

Some people just have a knack for languages that the rest of us can't come near.

stevenneiman

"checking wearily [wether->whether] the heat had damaged the scabbard"

"my left [greaves->greave]"

"Sharpsers wouldn't kill a [Name->Named] without a good spot of luck, would they" I don't think there's anything we know about yet that can directly kill a Name

"Pushing down a [sight->sigh], I knelt across the table from her."

"Which meant [his->this] was no longer about sneaking around"

"My hand drifted to my sword, and with a sinking feeling [I->it] struck me that I hadn't been the only one playing a game tonight."

"I kept pushing forward, watching for the blade and driving my [opponents->opponent] into tents as they tried to put a little distance between us." at that point, she was just fighting the one

"The masked [ambushed->ambusher] was in the tricky position of having to keep an eye on me as they stepped back"

"all of the flesh bared by her chain mail a shade [or->of] red nearly orange"

.

Funny that Catherine is complaining about people herding her and "paving" a road out for her when they just predict what she is going to do in the future. So its less of people manipulating and

forcing her and more of suiting her own actions and how she wants to do it.

The Ellimist

"I was starting to hate that I was playing a game where everybody seemed to know the next ten moves except for me, I thought with a scowl."

This doesn't make sense, because if she's thinking it now it won't be in present tense. I think it should be:

"I scowled. I was starting to hate that I was playing a game where everybody seemed to know the next ten moves except for me."

" It came in useful more often than not, "
useful -> handy

sswanlake

Some edits:

Which meant his was no longer about sneaking around -> Which meant **this** was no longer about sneaking around

The masked ambushed was in the tricky position of -> The masked **ambusher** was in the tricky position of

all of the flesh bared by her chain mail a shade or red nearly orange. -> all of the flesh bared by her chain mail a shade **of** red nearly orange.

somnulous

Sharpers!

Nice malazan reference.

burguulkodar

"Fear is sloppiness. Fear is the fault line in solid stone. Fear is the enemy's mind, drawing blood before his sword"

Obvious Dune reference, but I think it was done sloppily.
Frankly, it kinda sucks, the Dune one is much better by miles...

Remember. Fear is the mind-killer!

Chapter 10: Menace

"Threats are useless unless you have previously committed the level of violence you are threatening to use. Make examples of the enemies you cannot control so those that you can will be cowed. This is the foundation of ruling."

– Extract from the personal memoirs of Dread Emperor Terribilis II

"Do not get between me and my prey, fools," the masked man growled.

"Are you trying to talk trash after running away from me for, like, half an hour?" I gaped. "I only hit your head the once, your brains can't possibly be that scrambled."

The tall girl with the spear smirked. "Now now, it's not his fault – desert vagrants are born with only half a mind," she contributed.

I tried not to look too obviously amused. Apparently the Miezani occupation hadn't done as much to curb the age-old distaste between Soninke and Taghreb as some of my books had implied.

"Humans," the red goblin sneered. It was an impressive sneer, even compared to the unmourned Governor Mazus'. I bet she'd practiced it in front of a mirror. "You can't get back to your games after we're done talking."

"Let's not be hasty, Chider," the Soninke replied. "It's not really murder if she's doing it to a sand rat."

Well, that had gone downhill fast. I could sympathize with wanting to mock some of your fellow countrymen – I *did* know an uncanny amount of jokes about southern Callowans – but she seemed to genuinely believe what she'd just said. *Right, Praesi. Not the most morality-oriented people, generally speaking.* With a sigh I sheathed my sword, keeping a wary eye on the masked wonder.

"Considering you just threw a brightstick at us – which was pretty rude, for the record – it might be a good idea to move before legionaries come have a look," I suggested.

Someone using goblin munitions after the same had been used in an attempt to off two generals would lead to all kinds of unpleasant questions, and I was beginning to get curious about what it was the two fresh additions to this little party wanted.

"Assuming jackass over there is willing to talk at all," I added as an afterthought, noting my ambusher still had his scimitar in hand.

"We claimed a fire pit not far from here," the goblin – Chider, apparently – mentioned, turning red-rimmed eyes to my now-silent opponent. "I offer you the shelter of my fire, stranger."

The last words she'd spoken in Taghreb instead of Lower Miezani, using a phrasing I wasn't familiar with. My Mthethwa was a lot better, mostly because I'd practiced it more. My ambusher's mask dipped by a fraction and he slipped his scimitar back in its scabbard.

"Speak the words," the still-nameless Soninke said sharply.

"Guest right goes both ways."

The man hissed at her, though he went still when the spear left her shoulder to point in his direction. I would have taken a step back to get out of the way even further if I could – I was definitely up for a spot of masked bastard stabbing, but the goblin was still a wild card. She had a haversack slung over her shoulder, and I'd bet piglets to diamonds that there was nastier stuff than brightsticks waiting under the leather.

"Fine," he spat. "I take shelter in your fire, hearth-keeper."

"That's better," the veiled girl smiled, her teeth barely visible through the sheer fabric.

"Is Praesi cultural fun times over yet?" I asked politely.

"Because we really need to get the Hells out of here, if we don't want to spend the rest of the night in Legion custody."

"A Callowan that speaks sense," Chider commented. "Now I've seen everything."

What was it with goblins and insulting me? Did I smell in a way that pissed them off?

"Wow," I retorted with a hard smile, "a mouthy goblin. Never seen one of *those* before."

The Soninke unconvincingly tried to turn her snicker into a cough. Chider shot her a disgusted look and strode away. Not friends, then, just allies of circumstance. Good, it would have been tricky to deal with them if they were intent on sticking together. I had, after all, already stabbed my only other prospective ally. I made to follow the goblin, carefully keeping my distance from the man in question. The tall girl waited for me, offering her arm to clasp when I got close enough.

"Tamika," she introduced herself as I grasped it.

"Catherine," I replied. "So what's all this about, anyway? I thought this whole thing involved a lot more fights to the death and a lot less talking."

Tamika shrugged. "The goblin wants to have a meeting before we dance the dance, and I see no reason to refuse her."

She was pretty cordial, for someone who'd just casually mentioned she wanted to kill me. Chider's fire was easy enough to find, not far around the corner. She was already sitting on a stone besides it, prodding the burning wood with a long branch – our arrival was welcomed by a fresh new rendition of her earlier sneer, though this time she'd didn't bother to insult me. This was, I guessed, as close to friendly as she was going to get. I claimed a log for myself, taking a moment to have a look at my hand while everybody was settling down. The bleeding had stopped, though I had a feeling that flexing my hand would tear the cut right back open. I'd need to have it looked at, if I didn't want it to go bad. *Unless Names mean you can't take sick anymore*, I mused. *I've certainly never heard of a hero laid low by fever, not unless the wound was cursed.*

"So I hear you're the one who arranged a get-together," I addressed Chider when the silence got too heavy. "Why?"

The red-skinned goblin prodded the fire one last time before

throwing the branch in.

"There's a hero in Summerholm," she said, to the surprise of no one around the pit. "That means we have another way of solving our dispute than killing each other."

Tamika made the same weird clicking sound with her tongue that Lieutenant Abase sometimes did.

"Hunting a hero is not something undertaken lightly, goblin," she said. "Besides, there are people in the city with better claim to that life than us."

"If you mean Black," I grunted, "then I'm pretty sure he'd approve of us taking care of the problem."

There was a moment of perfect silence as all three of them turned to stare at me.

"Then it is true," the masked man said. "You came here with the Carrion Lord."

Another title? Weeping Heavens, like he doesn't have enough already. I straightened my back, meeting them stare for stare.

"Rumours move fast around here," I replied, declining to actually confirm the assumption.

From the way Chider's eyes narrowed at the words, that particular fact had not escaped her notice.

"Spilling each other's blood will only weaken the Empire," the goblin said. "This is a better way."

"Spilling the blood of the weak can only strengthen the Tower," the masked man retorted immediately, tone contemptuous.

"That's a funny thing to say, considering you're the one who's bled the most," I smiled at him.

His hand drifted towards his scimitar, but before he could reach it Tamika cleared her throat.

"Take that out and you won't live to see morning, Taghreb," she told him in a very friendly tone.

The man scoffed, but after a moment he backed down. Proud, then, but not completely stupid. Just mostly.

"What's your name, anyway?" I asked. "The things I want to call you won't cut it in polite company."

"Rashid," he told us, as grudgingly as if I'd asked for his firstborn. "Remember it, for when the devils ask you who sent you to the Other Place."

"I'm Catherine, in case you hadn't overheard," I told Chider, ignoring the man. "So you want us to make a pact, then. A truce until one of us manages to get the hero?"

"Precisely," the goblin replied. "I do not ask for your cooperation, merely that you stay out of my way."

"I could agree to that," I mused. "Seems pointless to have a go at each other when there's someone out there who wants all of us dead. Tamika?"

The Soninke rolled her spear between the palms of her hands, face expressionless.

"It would be a worthy test of my skills, to measure myself against a hero rather than one of you," she finally said. "This truce would extend no further than the death of our common enemy, yes?"

I wasn't exactly happy that the dark-skinned girl was looking for an escape clause before she'd even agreed to the terms, but it was still better than nothing. It wasn't like I hadn't been intending to keep a close watch on my back the whole time, anyway.

"Is that a yes, human?" Chider probed her.

Tamika shrugged. "I accept those terms. May the Gods devour whoever breaks them."

Everyone's eyes turned to Rashid. It was irritating that the mask prevented me from reading his expression, but I supposed that was rather the point of wearing it in the first place.

"This was a waste of my time," the man replied with undisguised scorn. "I will hunt this hero, but you are all my enemy."

He rose to his feet, robes stained red.

"We have unfinished business, Callow girl," he said in a tone that he probably thought passed for sinister. "We will see each other again, I promise you that."

I sighed as I watched him stalk away into the night. My fingers clenched around the hilt of my sword as I considered whether or not I should follow him: we were more or less done here and the idea of just letting the bastard go didn't sit right with me. I'd already killed people for lesser reasons than the one he'd given me, after all, and his wound had to have weakened him. *I might not get an occasion like this again.* I was about to politely take my leave when I saw the two others were staring me down.

"I know what you're thinking about," Tamika smiled pleasantly.

"Don't."

"You're not the one he wants to stab in the back," I replied.

"You don't get a voice in this."

"He's still protected by guest-right until dawn comes," Chider murmured. "Let's not make this any messier than it has to be."

The implied consequence of breaking said guest-right was clear, though if they thought whispered threats would be enough to cow me they had another thing coming. What did I care about whatever Praesi thought was honourable? I'd work with the Empire, with every monster and murderer who'd slaughtered their way to power, but that sure as Hells didn't mean I'd do it following their every custom. What was the point of playing a game by the rules, when it was rigged for you to lose? *That said, is getting another shot at the bastard worth alienating these two?* I weighed my options carefully. Chider I thought I could handle, if I managed to get up close fast enough. She'd think twice about using munitions if the both of us were in their range. The Soninke was the one who gave me pause – spears weren't a weapon that saw much use outside of the Free Cities, but the comfortable way Tamika carried hers suggested a degree of familiarity with the weapon that was very, very dangerous. In contrast, I had barely a week of sword lessons under my belt. *Pick your fights, Catherine.* Letting Rashid go was a pain, but getting into it with the other claimants on ground I hadn't picked while still wounded was a good way to get myself killed – especially if they worked together, which they very well might.

"Until dawn, then," I conceded, making a mental note of looking into Taghreb guest-right and all it entailed.

I couldn't afford to get trapped into situations like this often, and I had a feeling it would only get worse when we got to the Wasteland. With a somber nod I took my leave of the other claimants and begun the long walk back to the Sixth Legion's camp. I might as well grab some sleep before I got back to work.

By the time I got to the now-closed gates I'd realized I hadn't thought this whole thing all the way through. Getting out had been easy enough, which not that I took the time to think about it was rather surprising: he'd ordered a lockdown of the camp. Then again, he would have had the time to send a messenger to make sure I'd go through unmolested while I spoke with Scribe. It seemed ungrateful to complain that my teacher had anticipated my needs, but there was something about the whole set up that rankled me. Every move I'd made so far, the Black Knight had anticipated – approved of, even. *And that's the part that bothers me.* I didn't trust the green-eyed man, when it came down to it. I was beginning to like him, much as that thought would have horrified me a month ago, but not enough to forget who and what he was. I was still unclear on what he wanted from me, and the more time passed the more I was beginning to understand how much of a liability that was. *There's no place for a man like him in the kind of Callow I want to make, and he's too smart not to be aware of that.* Which begged the question of why he'd taken me as an apprentice, and why he was still backing me when I'd as good as admitted I wanted to take an axe to Imperial authority in Callow.

There was an angle at play I wasn't seeing, and until I caught it I had to assume that every action I took he approved of furthered his plans as well as mine. Building a power base of my own would have to be my first step. I'd always known how I would go about that, fortunately: I needed a command in the Legions of Terror, the larger the better. Ideally I'd need to be assigned to one of those garrisoning Callow, where I'd be able to use my soldiers to quietly remove the more troublesome elements of Imperial occupation in my sphere of influence. That plan was why I'd been so interested in claiming a Role in the first place: Names tended to make age issues irrelevant when it came to accumulating authority. History was full of young Named leading armies and ruling cities. Instead of spending two decades steadily climbing through the ranks while accumulating experience, I might be able to get a real command in just a few years. There were two bumps in the road, though.

First, I couldn't do any of this with Black looking over my shoulder the whole time. The idea that the man who'd masterminded the Conquest would allow me to quietly turn Callow into a semi-independent vassal state was absurd. I'd effectively be undoing half of what he'd accomplished by annexing the Kingdom in the first place. *Which means that at some point I'll either have to kill him or become trusted enough to be given an independent*

command. I was more inclined to the second, as it happened: the Black Knight was the most famous monster of our age, but he was also a thoroughly rational creature. There was no guarantee that whoever replaced him would be as... even-minded. Besides, managing to kill him in the first place would be tricky. I certainly had a better shot at managing the deed now that I was headed towards a Name of my own, but the heroes he hunted down with alarming regularity had Names too. How did one get the trust of a man like Black, though? I needed to figure that out, and quickly.

My second problem was that the Empire was at peace. Officers still got promoted when their predecessors retired or died of mundane causes, but my best chance at a position of real power was being granted soldiers to deal with a problem. None seemed in the cards right now, which meant that even if I inherited a legion it was unlikely to be loyal to me personally – my authority would flow from Black or the Empress, and if I ever went against them the legionaries would balk. *What I need is for Praesi to raise a new legion, one that will look to me for orders instead of anyone else.* A legion made up mostly of Callowans would be ideal, but the odds of that actually happening were so low as to be insignificant. I needed to learn Praesi ways then, enough that the soldiers would see me as one of their own. *And that's exactly what Black is having me do, which is worrisome in its own right.* Was that his angle? Making me swallow Imperial customs one mouthful at a time until I was nothing more than a Praesi with Deoraithe colouring? *What better tool to keep Callow in the fold than one of their own, with the power of a Name backing her.* It sent a shiver up my spine, the idea that the man could have thought that far ahead.

I put aside the train of thought when the legionaries keeping watch at the gates hailed me. It was clear they'd been told to expect me just from the way they recognized me when they got close enough for their torches to shed light on my features. I was allowed in without any trouble and the sergeant in charge informed me that I had a bed waiting for me in a pavilion next to the barracks where the Blackguards had been settled. It was a quick walk, and now that I wasn't stuck in a tense stand-off with people who might or might not want to kill me I was beginning to feel tired from the night's events. Not exhausted – my body moved just as surely as it had when the sun was up – but I could feel my focus wane. The pavilion the sergeant had mentioned stood out from the surrounding tents by sheer size – no cloth for this one, though, only heavy flaps made of leather. There was a light lit inside, and I was about to enter when I felt something pulse in the back of my head. The fourth feeling, the strange one. How had I not noticed earlier? I must have been more tired than I'd thought.

"Thank you for seeing me at this hour, Lord Black," I heard a girl's voice say.

"Your request garnered enough curiosity to earn you an audience, Heiress," I heard my teacher reply.

I peeked through an opening in the leather. Black was leaning

back in a chair, the usual glass of wine in hand as he sat across a Soninke girl. She was, I noticed, strikingly beautiful. She couldn't have been more than a year or two older than me, but her skin was smooth and flawless. I couldn't see her eyes from where I stood, but I could make out high aristocratic cheekbones and elegantly style eyebrows. The riding leathers she wore were dyed in red and gold, perfectly tailored to fit an hourglass figure I could only envy. With those long legs and eye-catching curves, she was a serious contender for the most stunning girl I'd ever seen. It took a moment for what the green-eyed man had called her to sink in. *Heiress*. I could feel the capitalized letter on the tip of my tongue, bearing that strange weight spoken Names always did. There was simply no way I was going to interrupt this, not if they hadn't noticed me. I was in no way above eavesdropping on a potential enemy, which I was pretty sure this Heiress was. The girl in question lounged in her seat with all the elegant laziness of a large predatory cat, her sipping at her own goblet doing little to hide the way she was studying Black.

"I've looked into her, this... student of yours," Heiress said. "She does have potential, true, but you cannot deny I have more." Black was smiling, the same always did when at his most dangerous. From the sudden wariness in the Soninke's body language, she seemed to be just as aware of that as I was.

"Can't I?" he murmured, tone sardonic.

"I have looked into her, Lord. She's a nobody. A Laure orphan with a reputation as a brawler and nothing else to her name. There are thousands like her all over Callow," she replied, a hint a frustration creeping into her voice.

Rude. I was under no delusion that I was unique, but there was a little more to me than a *reputation as a brawler*.

"I am, inarguably, smarter than her," Heiress continued. "I know how the Empire works, and I have real combat experience. I led the troops that suppressed -"

"That group of bandits at the edge of your mother's lands, I'm well aware," Black interrupted her. "You show promise as a commander, though I note you never attended the College."

"Neither did you," Heiress retorted flatly.

She met his eyes squarely and I had to give her points for guts, if nothing else. *Now would be a good time to tell her that she's not actually smarter than me*, I silently urged him on, not bothering to repress my scowl. *Any moment now*.

"Catherine shows promise in other ways," he said instead, and I made a mental note to take some kind of petty vengeance on him at some point.

Seriously, he could have put a little more enthusiasm in that. I didn't think it likely he'd give me the boot and take the Heiress under his wing instead – he'd already invested too much in me, whatever his reasons – but this was turning out to be a remarkably one-sided debate.

"Enough to justify passing over all the things I can bring to the table that she cannot?" Heiress challenged.

Black's smile widened ever so slightly as he leaned forward, the

atmosphere in the room shifting instantly.

"They *have* trained you well," he murmured, voice smooth as silk. "Just enough insolence to pique my interest, self-confident without stretching into the arrogance I so dislike in you nobles."

Heiress' eyes widened for a heartbeat and then her face went perfectly blank.

"Lord, I-"

"Am not nearly as good at this game as you seem to think you are," Black broke in sharply, and the words rang of steel. "Did you think it was the first time the Truebloods tried this? That they had never before sent one of theirs with a little talent my way?"

The dark-skinned girl went still and my teacher's smile turned ugly. I let out a shaky breath, feeling the weight of his Role suffocating the tent even from where I stood. *Heavens Ascendant. I am never going to get used to that.*

"No one rules forever, Lord Black," Heiress managed through gritted teeth, the white of her eyes showing as she pushed through the terror permeating the room. "And you may have beaten the Heir back when you were the Squire, but she is not you. *And I am not him.*"

He laughed.

"Go home, girl," he said. "Weave your plots, marshal your soldiers. And when you do, remind your mother of the last time we crossed paths – that pike over the gates of Ater is still missing a head, and I am ever a patient man."

She stood, back ramrod straight, and strode away with barely veiled fury. I hurried away from the flaps as quietly as I could, stepping into the shadows a moment before she crossed. Heiress paused just outside the tent, casting a cold look around her. Her gaze passed over the spot where I'd hid without pausing, though, which I took to mean it was too dark for her to see me. A heartbeat later she was on the move again and I let out a breath I hadn't known I was holding. I waited for her to be entirely out of sight before entering. Black was still in his chair, looking irritatingly unsurprised to see me enter.

"Let's skip the part where you reveal you knew I was eavesdropping the whole time," I grunted. "I'm not in the mood for smugness."

"As you wish," he mused. "Clever of you to listen in – very talented girl, Heiress. You'll need all the advantages you can get."

"So if you really think she's all that, why did you pick me to be your Squire?" I asked, claiming the same seat she'd been in.

He poured himself another cup of wine, raising an eyebrow to silently ask if I wanted the same. I shrugged in agreement – the taste was growing on me, though I doubted I'd ever drink it by the barrel the way so many Praesi did. *If anyone had told me a month ago I'd have the Black Knight pouring me wine, though, I would have directed them to a healer. After stepping away slowly.*

"You're taking this as a criticism of your abilities," he noted.

"You shouldn't. Heiress has been tutored in everything from politics to war from the time she could first speak. That she is more competent than you is a reflection of her privilege, not of your own faculties."

I took a sip from the cup he handed me, wondering whether or not I should press the subject. *What the Hells, why not? What do I have to lose?*

"It would be easier for you to train someone who's already been taught those things, though," I pointed out. "I'll be playing catch up for a while yet."

"That she has already been taught is not a point in her favor," Black replied.

That seemed like a good thing until I put another moment's thought into it.

"So you're sticking with me because I'm what – more malleable?" I scowled. "Easier to manipulate?"

He sighed.

"I will address this once, because I doubt you would have brought it up if you had not already been thinking it," he said. "I will not lie to you, Catherine, or deceive you."

I was about to butt in but he raised his hand and I paused, frowning at the fact that I had actually paused.

"Not out of a sense of honor or altruism," he continued, "but simply because it would be foolish in the long term. It's the way these things go, you see – if I deceived to you, you would inevitably find out I did at the worst possible moment and then avenge yourself in a way that would lead to my downfall. The amount of my predecessors that died because they failed to learn that simple, easy lesson is staggering."

If he'd tried to sell me that he would never steep so low or that the teacher-student bond was something sacred I wouldn't have trusted a word of it, but this sort of... enlightened self-interest? Yeah, I could buy that. The more I spoke to Black the more I was beginning to understand that everything he did he thought of in terms of costs and benefits – like a bookkeeper, if bookkeepers invaded neighbouring kingdoms and put people's heads on pikes. And wore plate. And rode undead horses. *Gods, I really hope there aren't any bookkeepers like that out there. Creation is a scary enough place as it is.*

"I'm glad you recognize I'm smart enough for *that*, at least," I muttered peevishly, still not willing to let that particular gripe go anytime soon.

He drummed his fingers on the table in response to that, and from the look on his face it looked like I'd actually managed to irritate him. Huh, I'd never managed that before. In a twisted way, it almost felt like a victory.

"Petulance is bad habit," he said. "She's *had* to be smarter than you to survive. The Imperial Court is the most lethal environment on the continent short of an actual battlefield. Last year the High Lordship of Okoro changed hands eight times in the span of three days, all of them through assassination. Her mother is a brilliant woman in her own right, one who managed to survive

Malicia's ascension to power without loss of influence *while openly supporting the opposing faction*. Her every move, her every word is measured – underestimate her even for a moment and she will have your throat slit without batting an eyelash."

I would have liked to dispute that, but I couldn't help but remember the cold look in Heiress' eyes when she'd left the tent. I'd won enough fights by being underestimated that it wouldn't do to forget how costly a mistake that could be. *Alright, then.*

Tread carefully around her. People don't get Names by picking out flower arrangements and hers does have an ominous ring to it. I responded to Black's sharp gaze by a nod and he seemed satisfied I'd been properly cautioned.

"You still haven't told me why you picked me," I finally said. The dark-haired man gazed at his cup, swirling the wine in it with a slow flick of the wrist.

"I'm told you never made friends with anyone at the orphanage," he replied. "Why is that?"

"I, uh- what?" I blurted out.

Well, he wasn't wrong, but to hear it put like that was a little mortifying. It wasn't like everyone at the orphanage had hated me or anything, though I guess a few of them had, but I'd never made a close friend the way some of the other girls did. I'd always figured I was just a loner, and while that made me a little odd there were others like that in the orphanage so it wasn't *that* odd.

"I guess I never really had anything in common with them," I admitted. "I don't think they were wrong to want the things they wanted, but I just... didn't. It was frustrating, the way they didn't understand why I was like I am, so after a while I stopped trying."

"And that angered you, didn't it?" he murmured, "That they *just wouldn't get it*, no matter how many times you tried to explain."

I shrugged with affected nonchalance, trying not to show how close to home he'd hit. And he was right, Gods help me. It still stung, the way they'd looked at me like I was insane when I'd said I wanted to change things. That I wanted to become someone who could make sure no one like Mazus ever got as powerful as the Governor had been. I used to think that I just wasn't articulate enough, that if I'd found the right words maybe I could have bridged the gap I could feel I had created between us, but as I got older I stopped believing it. Even I knew there were some walls out there I couldn't ram my way through.

"They never understand," he murmured. "Even if they love you, they never quite understand."

He looked almost sad, and for the first time since I'd met him I could believe he was as old as he was supposed to be.

"I chose you," he mused, "because I remember what it's like, that feeling in your stomach when you look at the world around you and you know you could do *better*. That if you had the authority and the power, you wouldn't make the mistakes you see the people who have it make."

He took a long drink of wine.

"Is it madness, to get frustrated when they don't see the things that seem so obvious to you? I truly don't know. Gods know I've been called mad often enough, and I'm sure in time you will be called the same."

He met my eyes with a sardonic smile.

"The things Heiress knows, you can learn. You will learn. But that indignation you've got boiling under your skin? That's not something that can be taught. And it's exactly why you'll beat her, when the time comes."

He set down his cup.

"Go to sleep, Catherine," he said, rising to his feet. "Tomorrow promises to be eventful."

AvidFan

This story is so... Practical. I love it.

Unmaker

Typos:

your are threatening
you are threatening

You cant
You can't
(but from context, should be)
You can

she seemed to genuinely believed
she seemed to genuinely believe

Rumours
Rumors
(assuming American English)

There's a hero in Summerholm
Hunting a hero
get the hero
I will hunt this hero
(several others)
Hero
(maybe)

you are all my enemy
you are all my enemies

honourable
honorable

colouring
coloring

the same always did when at his most dangerous
the same as he always did when at his most dangerous

thoughtI
though I

neighbouring
neighboring

which not that I took the time to think about it
which now...

mine.Building
mine. Building

elegantly style eyebrows
elegantly styled eyebrows

if I deceived to you
if I deceived you

The amount of my predecessors
The number of my predecessors

never steep so low
never stoop so low

(I think WordPress messed up your paragraph formatting – almost all the breaks are carriage returns instead of full paragraphs.)

Reactions:

Another great chapter.

Did the Black Knight just admit to wanting to do better than the Empress? That moment had a *hell* of an impact on me and I wasn't the direct target – Catherine was.

And holy hell, rational evil, who *uses* aspects of the Roles and Names like a chessmaster. If I had to go against him I would invent atomic weapons just to be sure.

So, the Squire killed the last Heir, leading eventually to his promotion to Black Knight. Is that the connection that Catherine and the Heiress have, are they now on a collision course due to the odd workings of fate/story in this world? Could Catherine gain full promotion to Squire by killing the Heiress, even without the possibility of a Hero? Of course, the Heiress's

mother would then torture Catherine to death, but hey, win some lose some.

Wait a damn minute, what would Black training the Heiress do? She already has a Name. Would that possibly help promote the Heiress to Empress? And why is that mutually exclusive to Black promoting a Squire?

x

More typos:

you won't live see morning
+to see

if they thought whispered would be enough to cow me
whispered +threats?

I seemed ungrateful to complain
It

the whole set up
setup

and while he was still backing me when I'd as good as admitted
and why

just as surely at it had when
as it

dyed in red in gold
red and gold (i guess?)

with the all the elegant laziness
-the

the way she studying Black
she +was

I was under not delusion
no

I made a mental tone
note

Black's smiled widened
smile

"Am not nearly as good at this game as you seem to think you are,"
"Are

That she more competent than you
she +is

an bookkeeper
a

The Imperial Court is most lethal environment
+the most

without a batting an eyelash
-a

the gap I could feel I had raised us
looks like some editing error – “between us”, but “raise” and
“gap” still seem like a mismatch

Chapter 9 had typo fixes from Unmaker applied, but not those
from my earlier post – was that due to missing the post (rather
than not having time or bothering with typo fixes in general)?
In case it was, chapter 8 also has unapplied fixes (in at least
2 posts).

Comments to Unmaker’s reactions:

Black didn’t necessarily say he wants to do better than the
CURRENT empress. He was part of the rebellion (or whatever it
was called) that raised her to the throne.

Perhaps Black training the Heiress wouldn’t do anything in
particular as far as Names are concerned (and she’s the Heiress
of someone else). Apparently the roles “someone’s Heir/Heiress”
and “someone’s Squire” are “the same role” in some sense and
can’t exist at the same time, like multiple Squires can’t. The
Heiress could just be asking Black to give up on his Squire, so
that a better person like her can claim a Name instead.

I think erraticerrata said in the comments of some earlier
chapter that it’s supposed to be British English.

Unmaker

Impressive catches on the typos, I thought I read carefully.

And yes, erraticerrata did say Canadian = British, but I
didn’t see the post until just now, where I went back and
checked for replies. British from here on out, then.

[erraticerrata](#)

While the Names of Squire and Heiress can – and will – exist
at the same time, they’re both what could be called
“successor” Names. They’re in direct competition for the same
inheritance, and when it comes to Names that kind of conflict
can get very ugly.

Unmaker

Had a follow-up thought: what is Black's end game?

First possibility: a Squire who can become the Black Knight that he can respect, sort of carrying on his tradition of intelligent practicality. That seems to be a trait he highly values, or at least he despises the opposite type. Whether Catherine is an insurance policy or a chosen successor is not clear.

Second possibility: a replacement for another Role, but again, someone with his disposition. Empress, perhaps?

[moridain](#)

I am guessing his own replacement.

I think he has realised that he is starting to outlive his usefulness to his goals.

I suspect he will set himself up to be a giant martyr, eating the hatred of the world for his actions for its own good.

stevenneiman

I would guess that he plans to move up to emperor eventually, and he wants her as either a decoy, an ally or a successor. Not sure which, and I have no clue if my guess is even remotely on the mark.

linnilalartyr

Empress!! Wow!! Such a good idea to have a name like that! That would spice the story up too~~

Petya

Did anyone fix typos? It's too years in and I noticed the very same ones pointed out in comments.

J F

I've been following this story since update 7. Very solid updates thus far, please keep it up! Wouldn't mind more author notes etc, always good to get a feel for the human behind the story.

[erraticerrata](#)

I don't usually do author's notes – mostly because I'm not sure what to put in them. I do enjoy replying to comments, though, so feel free to ask any questions you like in that section.

DonRamon

"People don't get Names by picking out flower arrangements and hers does have an ominous ring to it."

Catherine shouldn't start badmouthing Flower Picker so soon. He's the most powerful Name in the Free Cities. He'll f*** her up.

stevenneiman

Hell, depending on what the limits of magic are it might seriously be possible to have a terrifying gardener who can destroy enemies by the hundreds.

Maybe creating poisonous plants and so on.

NerfContessa

Sadly, no.

Although hierarchy comes close to another insa Ely unexpected way to use power.

Also, this is the moment where it shows what cat and black are at their heart.

Uplifters.

FirstDragon

If you're aiming for consistency, the MC ought to get healed. Given all the concern she expressed earlier over her wounds, common sense would dictate that the MC would seek out healing, especially since she doesn't know when she might get ambushed again...the need to maintain peak condition and all that.

Otherwise, I like how you aren't just silver-plattering everything to the MC. Thumbs up for an MC who isn't willing to accept the destined road without grumbling or to sit around nodding her head while her betters get all squirrely and mysterious without actually coughing up genuine answers. Having characters warp and weave in obeisance to the narrative is such a low-brow hulk smash style. Glad you do your best to not sink down into that muck.

stevenneiman

Of course, she has yet to even find a lead on actually breaking out of the preset patterns. I'm sure that she will eventually.

stevenneiman

"You [cant->can?] get back to your games after we're done talking."

"Getting out had been easy enough, which [not->now] that I took the time to think about it was rather surprising"

"high aristocratic cheekbones and elegantly [style->styled]"

eyebrows"

"[thoughtI->though I]"

"The [amount-number] of my predecessors that died" amount is used to refer to something like water that you can have any amount of.

"he would never [steep->stoop] so low"

The Heiress seems to be smart but still overconfident. The classic problem of one who has a great understanding of applied psychology is that they forget that it applies to them too.

Horatio Von Becker

I wasn't fully aware of that weakness, but it really does make a lot of sense.

stevenneiman

"You [cant->can] get back to your games after we're done talking."

"So I hear you're the one who arranged [a->this/our?] get-together" while it's technically true as-is, it reads weirdly and isn't as specific as it could be

"Black was leaning back in a chair, the usual glass of wine in hand as he sat across {from} a Soninke girl."

"high aristocratic cheekbones and elegantly [style->styled] eyebrows."

"the taste was growing on me, [thoughtI->though I] doubted"

"Petulance is {a} bad habit"

"I'd already killed people for lesser reasons than the one he'd given me, after all, and his wound had to have weakened him." The only reason she'd killed by that point was rape. Rashid hardly did more than that, especially considering that Cat herself was trying to do the same.

"like a bookkeeper, if bookkeepers invaded neighbouring kingdoms and put people's heads on pikes. And wore plate. And rode undead horses. Gods, I really hope there aren't any bookkeepers like that out there. Creation is a scary enough place as it is." I don't think there are, but there is one who is even scarier for the fact that she doesn't need to.

arancaytar

Scribe seems to be *exactly* that kind of bookkeeper.

.

Catherine trying to get on Black Knights' angle, being wary and awed by it somehow reminds me of characters in overlord always trying to get Ainz's angle and overthinking things.

Also, in typical stories it is always funny that people's conversations always start from the beginning just right after

someone arrived on time to eavesdrops to hear everything from start.

pato

I love this

[Dakota X Willingham](#)

Fantastic. This sort of feels like HPMOR's Harry and Quirrelmort. Feels like Black was once the same as Catherine, wanting to change the world for the better, but either his angle was different from the start, or it changed later on.

Paul

What bothers me the most is the weapons. Spears we're super common, cause they are pointy sticks, and it's fairly simple to train people to use them. Basically, stick em with the pointy end.

Petar

It is indeed easy to train people to use a spear with a shield, or a long spear in formation.

To become a master with a spear that you use in single combat, or even worse, fighting alone against many is a completely different matter. It requires more training than learning how to use a staff.

And let's not forget that as soon as a culture develops the technology for it, solo spear users switch to halberds, and the terminology takes a while to catch up. Halberds, bardiches, naginata... they all were all referred to as 'spears' for generations. When I think of Tamika, I see her with a sort of light-bladed halberd. And with her name being a Japanese one, that halberd is a naginata.

[Euodiachloris](#)

I'm thinking it's a case of an ixwa style of assagai (I'm Eastern Cape... Google the isiZulu – iklwa). You know, the one Shaka further adapted from Dingiswayo's innovations and made popular: it's still useful as a traditional throw-and-forget assagai (barely), but is best suited for one-on-one... kind of like a naginata (but, not really).

David

I'm 10 chapters into this so far and I just want to say I'm loving it. I especially love the characterization of both the Black Knight and Catherine. I also love all the little details

that paint each country as having their own culture with its own history.

I can't (and don't have to, lucky me) wait to keep reading to see how Catherine steers her path.

[HappyNap](#)

Premonition at its gods damned finest

sswanlake

Some edits:

You cant get back to your games after we're done talking. -> You
can get back to your games after we're done talking.

the taste was growing on me, thoughtI doubted I'd ever drink it -
> the taste was growing on me, *though I* doubted I'd ever drink
it

Euclaid_Galieane

He may want an apprentice but, what he wants more is a successor.
Someone who will surpass him. If I'm reading this right.

corrado alamanni

He is like her and she does not want someone like him in her's
Callow !

The sweet irony of evil

Rraune

"and I'd bet piglets to diamonds that there was nastier stuff
than brightsticks"

diamonds to piglets ?

"Getting out had been easy enough, which not that I took the time
to think about it was rather surprising:"

which now that

"but there was something about the whole set up that rankled me."

setup

"Black was smiling, the same always did when at his most
dangerous."

same he always

"thoughtI doubted I'd ever drink it by the barrel"

though I

Chapter 11: Sucker Punch

"Ha! And I bet you didn't even see it coming!"

– Dread Emperor Traitorous the First

I took a sip from my tankard, forcing myself not to grimace at the taste.

The ale here was worse than the Nest's, which I wouldn't have believed possible until actually drinking this stuff. Finding an inn that was low-brow enough for someone of my means but still saw enough traffic to be worth my time had taken most of yesterday's afternoon, but I believed the effort to have been worth it: the Lost Crown was a breeding ground for discontent if I'd ever seen one. The evening bell hadn't rung yet but the common room was more than half full – and not a single man or woman in it had come without a weapon. Every single one was Callowan, most of them were over forty and quite a few had scars. Not the kind you got in the back alley fights I was familiar with, but the kind you got when someone had done their level best to kill you and barely come up short. *I'd bet apples to rubies that nine of ten were Royal Guard during the Conquest.* It was a good thing that the purse Scribe had provided me had been full of Marchford silver, because if I'd used denarii here I would have gotten my throat slit before the night was out.

I drew mistrustful glares, of course, though not as many as I would have expected. My sword's grip had been covered in a weathered leather wrap that hid the damning silver goblin's head, but the sight of a girl my age with a weapon of that quality had been enough to warrant cautious looks. My one advantage, the thing I'd been banking on, was that I was of Deoraithe colouring. *And when have any of the People made truce with the Enemy?* Callowan children were raised on stories about the unflinching brown-cloaked wardens and the way they hunted orcs all the way back to the steppes when they dared to come in sight of the Wall. That the Duchess of Daoine had bent the knee in the wake of the Conquest had not been enough to ruin that reputation: people remembered that the northern duchy was the only part of Callow where no Imperial Governors ruled. Daoine was as good as a kingdom of its own, these days, and though it paid tribute to the Tower even the Legions tread lightly that far up north. The last of free Callow, whispers called it.

"You want me to top that off?" the innkeeper suddenly spoke up, jarring me out of my thoughts.

Toothless Thom was a balding, gregarious man. His name was a bit of an exaggeration: he still had most of his molars, though

admittedly some of them were chipped. He'd taken an ogre's war hammer to the face at the Fields, as he'd been eager to tell me. *Lucky I had my shield up*, he'd confided. *Otherwise I'd be called Headless Thomas and my idiot brother would have gotten the inn.* The place had been called the Guard's Rest, once, but Thom had changed the name when he'd come from the war. That a man who'd been at the battle where Callow's royal line had been ended had called his inn the Lost Crown made it perfectly clear where his sympathies still lay.

"No," I told him. "Want to keep my head clear. I have a question for you, though."

The older man raised an eyebrow. "That so," he said, tone neutral.

"I'm looking for work," I said. "Purse is getting a bit empty."

He shrugged. "I ain't hiring, though some of the taverns by the fortress are."

"Not that kind of work. I'm looking for a ring."

He shot me a considering look. "There's one under the Lucky Pilgrim. It ain't that hard to find."

"I've already been," I admitted.

I'd gone for a look earlier in the day. Bigger place than the Pit had ever managed to become, with a court under the tavern itself where people went at each other with fists and weapons. It wasn't, however, the kind of place I needed.

"Lots of greenskins in the crowd," I murmured after a moment.

Now *that* got his attention. I drank a mouthful of ale to hide how nervous I felt – I'd never been the best of liars, so I'd decided to stick to the truth as much as possible. If I got caught, though... There were a lot of former soldiers in the crowd around me, and if they decided I was a Praesi spy then my odds of getting out with all my innards on the inside weren't looking too good.

"What'd you do in Laure, Cat?" Thom asked.

"Served drinks when I could," I replied. "Fought in a ring when I couldn't."

"You're a little young for that," he noted.

"I was ranked third in the Pit," I retorted, and I didn't have to fake my pride in that. "Would have been first by now, if I'd stuck around."

"Your parents must have been proud," the balding man snorted.

"Orphan."

"Raised in an Imperial orphanage, then," he spoke, tone turning sharp.

"Didn't stop the fucking Governor from taxing us," I replied just as sharply.

I met his glare with one of my own, refusing to back down, and after a moment his gaze softened.

"No offence meant, kid," he said.

"None taken," I grunted back.

"So why'd you leave, if you were doing so well?" Thom probed, changing tracks.

"Mazus' cut kept getting bigger and mine kept shrinking," I groused. "Heard things were better here."

"Lot more greenskins here than in the capital," the innkeeper pointed out.

"Lot more veterans too," I answered the unspoken question.

The balding man chewed on that for some time, eyeing me all the while.

"I might know of a place," he admitted. "Ain't exactly a ring, but close enough."

I raised an eyebrow. "It pays?"

The innkeep offered me a toothless smile. "In more ways than one. You'll need to strip first, though. With my daughter in the room."

I kept my face straight but inside I was grinning like a fool. It had been a gamble to try to get my foot in the door on the second day, but it looked like it had paid off. And a good thing too – I couldn't have kept this game up for more than another day before moving on. I could still feel the other claimants in the city, and the longer I waited the further ahead they got in their own hunts. More than that, I had a liability to worry about that neither Chider nor Tamika did. The masked imbecile hadn't made a repeat appearance yet, but how long could that possibly last? Getting into a fight with someone so obviously Praesi would shut down this avenue of investigation, and at the moment I was coming up empty on other ways. Thom called over his daughter, a slender blonde girl in a conservative blouse who split her time between the kitchen and serving drinks. She had rather striking grey

eyes, I noticed. Rare, for a Callowan: blue and brown were much more common.

"Elise," the innkeeper spoke, leaning in close. "Keep an eye on our little friend while she changes, eh? She's going to be joining our cousins for drinks."

The girl nodded, steering me towards one of the rooms in the back.

"Lucky you," Elise said, closing the door behind me. "This is the first meeting since the Governess died."

I made a noncommittal noise, hiding my excitement. *Meeting. That sounds promising.* I took off my woollen shirt before opening my belt and slipped out of my trousers, dropping them next to me on the ground. I was about to take off my socks when she raised a hand.

"That's enough," she said, taking a step to look at my bare back.

Those pretty eyes of hers, I noted, lingered on my arse longer than was strictly necessary. Or proper. I wouldn't have minded the attention in other circumstances – she was a comely one, if not exactly my type – but this wasn't really the time or the place. I dressed again as soon as she gave me a nod of approval, shifting my scabbard so it rested comfortably against my hip.

"Nice sword," Elise mused. "Where'd you get it?"

"It was a gift," I replied.

She wiggled her eyebrows. "Generous lover?"

I choked. "Oh, *Gods no*. A teacher, I suppose."

"He must have liked you. I've been meaning to learn how to use one – maybe you should show me how good you're at handling yours, one of these days," she said, smiling wickedly.

Ah, Callowan girls. So much more straightforward about our interests than coy Proceran ladies or haughty Free Cities maids. I doubted Elise would be as eager to get me into a dark corner if she knew I intended to ram a sword into the local hero's belly, but there was no need to draw suspicion by turning her down. Besides, it *had* been a while for me. Between the Pit and my evenings at the Nest, I hadn't had much time to pursue the softer things in life – and I doubted that would change anytime soon, given how Black loved to pile ever more work on my shoulders.

"I'm sure that would be quite the evening," I replied, a smile tugging at my lips.

"Only one way to find out," Elise smirked, opening the door and striding away into the common room.

I closed the door behind me, pretending not to notice the amused look Thom shot me. There was a man sitting on the stool I'd occupied, studying me without even pretending not to. Late forties, I'd guess, and his thick salt and pepper beard didn't quite manage to cover the handful of scars adorning his face. His hair was thinning, though there was enough left that it lent him a dignified look.

"You're Cat, I take it," he ground out when I walked up to them.

"That's me," I agreed. "And you are?"

"Remaining nameless, even if you don't have the fecking eye," the man growled. "This is shite, Thom. Nobody can vouch for her."

"We need new blood," the innkeeper spoke in a low voice. "You know they Imps have been keeping an eye on veterans since the Governess got offed. Besides, the boy can have a look at her."

The boy, I repeated silently. *Now, isn't that interesting?* Even if I learned nothing else of worth tonight, that particular tidbit had made my gambit worth it.

"I asked for work," I told both of them. "Not the keys to your secret clubhouse."

The grizzled man spat in his empty mug. "On your head, Toothless," he finally said. "Come on, girl, we're going for a walk."

I smiled at him pleasantly. "Well, since you ask so charmingly."

We left through the back, after the still-nameless grump slapped a younger woman on the shoulder and she joined us. She didn't introduce herself either, cautiously eyeing me through her bangs as she kept a hand on the hilt of the bastard sword at her hip. The sky was beginning to darken, so we kept a steady pace: since the assassination of Governess Lindiwe the city had been put under martial law and curfew was strictly enforced. Anyone out after sundown without authorization papers would be arrested, and anyone resisting arrest would be put to the sword without hesitation. The city guard was no longer the only force policing the streets, either: the Sixth Legion sent regular patrols and the Ninth had occupied all gates.

"So where are we headed?" I asked when the silence became more tedious than tense.

"The Royal Foundry," the woman informed me, rolling her eyes when the man glared at her.

"I thought the Empire owned that now," I frowned.

"They occupied the main one, the one that provided for the Royal Guard," the swordswoman explained. "The Legions never bothered with the ones that provided for the local troops, since they make their own weapons."

Ah, that made a certain amount of sense. The Legions of Terror were armed with equipment forged in the south of the Wasteland, in Foramen. Exceptions could be made in time of war when there was a pressing need for resupply, but usually they preferred waiting for the armaments and armour coming straight from the Imperial Forges. There'd have been no real point in taking the smaller foundries, after the war: the main one would serve just fine for the maintenance work required by the occupying legions.

"Enough with the history lesson," the jackass growled. "Quiet until we get there."

The younger woman offered me an apologetic shrug, but she complied. The outer city of Summerholm was different from Laure. Unlike Callow's old capital, which had grown over the years as the wealth and people flowed in from the rest of the Kingdom, Summerholm had clearly been designed. The streets were of the same width everywhere, wide enough that bowmen on the walls circling the inner city could have a clear shot at anybody down here. Watchtowers, now occupied by legionaries, loomed over every choke point. More than once we passed by dead-end streets full of arrow slits, killing fields in the making for anyone taking a wrong turn. The Gate of the East had not been made with commerce or industry in mind: it was more castle than city, built so that it could be turned into a death trap for invading Praesi armies. The knowledge that even after twenty years of occupation the people born in the city likely knew the ins and outs of it better than the Legions did nothing for my peace of mind.

"We're here," the grizzled veteran announced abruptly. "Get in before we're seen."

The Royal Foundry was nothing spectacular to look at, which I supposed was rather the point. The building was solid old wood, with a metal spike above the door where a sign must have hung at some point – there was none now, though. The door was unlocked and the swordswoman pushed it open without knocking while our cheerful companion cast mistrustful looks around the empty street. I followed her in, squinting as my eyesight got used to the poor lighting inside. The large cast iron furnace that took up the better part of the left wall was lit, glowing even though the forge on the other side of the room was dead and cold. *Expensive way to light the place.* I followed the more pleasant of my guides as she headed for a room in the back, already hearing the low murmur of conversation from where I stood.

The area we entered must have served as a stockroom, back when this place was still active: there were empty weapon racks for weapons and armour all over the place, some tipped down to serve as impromptu seats for the two dozen people occupying the room. I drew a few curious looks when I came in, but nothing like the degree of cautious hostility I'd been expecting. *They only bring people they trust here, then*, I mused. *But if that's the case, why bring me?* I didn't think this was a trap, but I was definitely missing *something*. Like back in the Lost Crown, everybody but me was far past thirty: there was an even enough spread between men and women, and though none of them wore armour they all had a blade of some kind. *And they look like they know how to use them*. If I wasn't mistaken, I'd just been brought to a meeting of the Sons of Streges – Black had mentioned they were largely made up of disaffected veterans. The Sons were always the only resistance group I had a real chance of getting in touch with: the other one was made up of former members of the Thieves' Guild, and I had a feeling they'd be both much more secretive and much harder to find. The bearded man came in, scowling at me as he stopped by the door.

"Take a seat, girl," he grunted. "We'll start when the Swordsman gets here."

"It's true, then," I murmured, trying to sound surprised. "There's a hero in Summerholm."

"You'll get to meet him soon enough," the veteran replied. "He's a perceptive lad, the Lone Swordsman. Caught five spies already. If he says you ain't one, you ain't."

I nodded, keeping my face unconcerned *Shit. Shitshitshit*. Lone Swordsman didn't sound like the kind of Name that would lend itself to truth-telling, but if he'd already outed agents placed by Black then he must have a trick of some kind. I took a deep breath, sitting down on a sideways rack. If the trick was just that he could tell when someone was lying, then I might be able to talk my way out of this mess. I hadn't been sent by Black or any Imperial authority, technically. I wasn't loyal to the Empire either, so it might be possible to work with that. *But if he asks me whether I intend to kill him I'm fucked*. I closed my eyes and slowly got a grip on my panic, taking steady breaths. I wasn't out of options yet.

My first instinct was to position myself close to the door so that I could turn this into a running battle if blades came out, but I discarded the option. I was being watched, and making that sort of move would be as good as outing myself. Would I be able to take the hero in a fight? Maybe. His Name seemed centred around swordsmanship, though, which did not bode well for me considering I had a grand total of eight days of sword lessons

under my belt. *And I definitely can't take both him and the Sons at the same time.*

Stupid of me to expect that if they had a trick to find out spies they wouldn't use it on every possible occasion instead of only when they thought they had a leak. On the bright side, that meant the process was unlikely to be painful or particularly powerful: it wouldn't be used as often if it were. Could heroes tell when they were in the presence of a villain? I couldn't find this Lone Swordsman the way I could my rival claimants, but I wasn't the Squire yet. There was no real way to tell what kind of abilities his Role would allow him to access, even now that I knew his Name. My private debate was cut short when the man in question entered the room through a back door, not that it had been going anywhere productive.

Even if the room hadn't gone respectfully silent the moment he'd entered, I would have known I was looking at a hero. He couldn't have been much older than seventeen, darkly handsome with messy black hair and vivid green eyes. His face was one made for brooding, all angles and windswept locks, and his long brown leather coat did nothing to detract from that impression. *A leather coat. Gods. Why wasn't he clapped in chains the moment he passed through the city gates? If he was any more obviously a hero he'd have his Name tattooed on his forehead.* The longsword at his hip did not glint in the light, the metal pommel swallowing the ambient light whole and giving nothing back. *Enchanted? That could be trouble.* He moved with the certainty of an older man, and all the other people in the room straightened their spines unconsciously when they saw him.

"No need to get up on my account," the Swordsman said, raising a warding hand at the few people who'd gotten to their feet. "We're all equals here, my friends."

"Some more equal than some," a woman in the back called out, but it was said fondly.

"We all have our burdens to bear," the hero replied easily. "But we've shared in one victory already, and I promise you that more are to come. The Black Knight himself is in the city, and that is an occasion we won't be getting again anytime soon."

I let myself fade into the background as the Lone Swordsman strode into the middle of the room, commanding everyone's attention with a kind of effortlessness I could only envy. Was it natural charisma on his part, or a side-effect of his Name? Whatever it was, veterans twice his age were hanging on to his every word.

"We still have half of the munitions from the raid on the Sixth Legion's armoury," he said. "And with those backed by a little

cleverness, I propose to put down the monster who brought ruin to the Kingdom."

Murmurs of approval went through the room at the declaration.

"It'll take more than goblin alchemies to kill that man," a voice cut through the noise, cold as ice.

Leaning against the wall on the far side of the room, an older man built like an ox was frowning. His head was shaved but auburn whiskers covered the side of his face, leading into a thick beard of the same colouring.

"I was there when he killed the White Wizard with Warlock's help," the man spoke flatly. "Half a bridge he dropped on those two, and they walked out of the wreckage like it was light drizzle."

"We already know munitions can kill Named," the Swordsman replied. "The Empire proved as much during the Conquest."

"They can kill run-of-the-mill Named, maybe," the man grunted. "You're dealing with the bleedin' Calamities, boy."

"I am not a run-of-the-mill hero, my friend," the green-eyed boy said very softly. "I swore I would see the Kingdom restored, and I will see that oath through to the bitter end."

Oh, gag me. Did he think that making some kind of dramatic promise over someone's grave would actually help him kill the likes of Black? I stopped and thought about it for a moment. *Hells, it actually might. Roles take to that kind of theatre like a duck to water.* Whether the doubter was actually convinced or just cowed by the uncomfortably emotional display on the Swordsman's part was up in the air, but regardless he objected no further. The crowd was against him, anyway: they were eager for blood, and their success with the Governess had only whet the appetite.

"Before we get to the planning," another man spoke up, and with a start I recognized my earlier guide's voice, "we have new blood for you to look over."

Everybody's eyes turned to me and I fought down the urge to shrink on myself. It was time for my moment of truth, though hopefully not a literal one – that could get messy.

"So," I said as I pushed myself up, wiping dust off of my trousers. "How's this going to work? Do I need to strike a pose? Word of warning – if poetry is involved, I'm definitely not your girl."

The Lone Swordsman smiled, which made him look like someone was pulling up his lips forcefully. Not a great smiler, this one.

"Just come a little closer," he said. "What's your name?"

"I'm going by Cat," I told him, watching his face to see if it registered as a lie.

If it did, this was going to go downhill very quickly. The hero frowned.

"What colour is the sky, Cat?" he asked.

"Depends on the time of the day," I pointed out.

Someone snorted, though they hastily turned it into a coughing fit. The Swordsman sighed and patiently waited for me to give an actual answer.

"Blue," I said.

The hero's frown deepened.

"That's strange," he said.

"People usually wait to know me a few days before making that comment," I replied.

"I can't read you at all," the Lone Swordsman murmured. "That's never happened before."

"If I had a silver for every time I heard that line-"

I didn't see the strike coming, but I felt it. There was a blur of movement and my body reacted on its own, my sword swinging out of its scabbard and ringing against his own before it could come any closer to my head. There was a moment of painful realization where it struck me that I had moved much, much too quickly for mundane human.

"Well," I mused, pushing back his blade. "This is awkward."

"Traitor," someone hissed.

"Technically," I corrected the voice, "I'm the only person in this room *not* committing treason."

Two dozen blades coming out of scabbards were my only response. Tough crowd.

"Now," I spoke, voice calm and steady as I backed away. "I know what all of you are asking yourselves right now. Is that girl a spy?"

Two of the rebels were blocking the door, I saw from the corner of my eye.

"The answer to that question may surprise you," I continued.

There was a heartbeat of silence.

"Is it yes?" someone called out from the back. "Is the answer to the question yes?"

It was not, I reminded myself, appropriate to start cracking up before your desperate final stand.

"Shut up, Beric," someone growled. "Obviously the answer is yes."

"You guys never let me win anything," Beric complained.

Beric, I decided, was going to die last. He'd earned it. The Lone Swordsman brought up his sword and fell into a stance I didn't recognize.

"You're surrounded, villain," the hero said. "There's no one around to hear you if you call for help. Surrender and you might yet live."

I felt safe in assuming that diplomacy was not one of his aspects.

"Ah, but you have it the other way around," I replied haughtily, trying to stand as tall as my diminutive stature allowed for. Why was everyone always so tall? "It is, in fact, all of you who have fallen in my trap. Surrender now and will spare you most of the torture, unless one of you gives me lip."

The Swordsman scowled. "You're full of shit," he growled.

Given that there were two Named in the room, it seemed fair that that was the precise moment where the back of the room exploded. Most of the Sons of Streges were thrown to the ground by the impact and I had to take a knee. Smoke and dust had been blown everywhere, I might as well have been standing in the middle of a sandstorm as far as visibility was concerned. I could make out a silhouette in the smoke, too tall to be a goblin and not broad enough to be an orc.

"Rashid," I called out. "If that's you, then for the first time in your life I think you actually need to be commended on your entrance."

Tamika came out of the smoke instead, black-veiled and grim-eyed. Her spear was nowhere in sight but she held a crossbow in her arms, pointed at the Lone Swordsman.

"I'm guessing Chider's somewhere in this mess?" overhearing the sound of fighting out of sight as I asked the Soninke girl.

The hero sneered and half-turned so he'd be facing both of us.

"She's coming," Tamika agreed calmly, speaking in Mthethwa. "I feel like I should apologize, Catherine."

That was the part where I was supposed to ask *what for*, I assumed. Instead I threw myself to the side and the bolt sunk into the wall. The Lone Swordsman eyed the both of us warily.

"What in the Burning Heavens is going on?" he asked.

"My plan is working," I lied.

Unmaker

Full commentary later, but let me just say that the wordplay and situations here in the second half had me chuckling continuously.

[Shell](#)

"My plan is working"... I was in my bed, reading and I started to laugh like a maniac. This chapter is funny as hell. Really good job with the story so far.

James, Mostly Harmless

I had a RPG character who was known for that line ...

daniel73

That was such a fun chapter to read. Annoyed she got caught as that probably means she no longer has a chance with the inkeepers daughter .

[Shell](#)

To be quite frank, I want to read some *cough*romance scenes*cough* I mean... what...No. No. I didn't say that. I didn't say that at all.

[erraticerrata](#)

That will be addressed in the next chapter, actually. The chances thing, not the romance scenes. I'm keeping this in the range of a YA novel, so no smut on screen.

EDIT: I was wrong, it'll be in chapter 13. It broke the flow too much to put it at the end of chapter 12.

Isa Lumitus

I actually like the no-smut-on-screen rule. Not so much because I care about the rating or whether it's NSFW or not, but because I usually find xxx scenes boring.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

What's in 13? The smut? Can't wait! 😊

Isa Lumitus

I, too, was a bit disappointed that she got caught so fast. Oh well, I guess that just means that you'll get to the next part of the story sooner, right?

I gotta say that I'm liking just how genre-savvy Black and Catherine are. Although, given the setting, at least a little bit of genre-savvy is probably taught in school. The class is probably called "History of the Named" or some such.

[erraticerrata](#)

While it's not exactly a class, being raised in a world where things run on story logic leaves people with a certain awareness of the patterns, yeah. That said, both Black and Catherine are a little ahead of the curve in that regard – not that it's always an advantage.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

When would it *not* be an advantage, I wonder?

Boobah

There's also the problem of Wrong Genre Savvy, although in this case it's more likely either a misunderstanding of which story they've found themselves in, where they are in the story (You Can't Thwart Stage One) or their own part of the story.

stevenneiman

It can be a disadvantage when the story is that the conniving villain loses no matter what they figure out clever ways to manipulate. Also if someone more clever shows up who can manipulate them based on what they think is the genre-savvy thing to do.

Unmaker

Typos:

where his sympathies still laid.
...lay.

since the Governess got offed.
(Not a typo, but, while it was mentioned as a possibility previously, it was never confirmed. It was a bit jarring to hear it here.)

Thieve's Guild
(this one's odd: the guild of each individual is "Thieve's Guild", as stated, the guild of the group as a whole is "Thieves' Guild"; up to the author, but many use the group plural)

grand total of a eight days
grand total of eight days

longsword
long sword (usually)

Was is natural charisma
Was it natural charisma

Two dozen blade
Two dozen blades

to have been worth it
(not wrong, I don't think, but better as)
had been worth it

studying without even pretending not to
(better as)
studying me without even pretending not to

born in city
(clearer as)
born in the city

even if I now that I knew his Name
(muddled, clearer as)
even if I now knew his Name

My private debate was cut short when the man in question entered the room through a back door, not that it had been going anywhere productive.
(unclear referent, the door was not going anywhere)
My private debate was cut short when the man in question entered the room through a back door, not that my thinking had been going anywhere productive.

I felt same in assuming that diplomacy was not one of his aspects.

I felt sure in assuming that diplomacy was not one of his aspects.

Reactions:

So, the Lone Swordsman can smell lies and was the one who outed the spies. Also, he has taken credit for the bombings. So, probably the only heroic Name in town, unless the other(s) have kept really quiet.

I am slightly confused: I understand the Lone Swordsman is a little 'h' hero, but isn't there a big 'H' Hero Role also? I swear it has been mentioned before with the capital.

Catherine has exhibited a knack for wisecracking under pressure before, but this is far more than we have previously seen.

OK, I am guessing that Tamika and Chider are attacking Catherine because, if she actually kills the Lone Swordsman, it puts her too far ahead in claiming the Squire Name. So they off her, and then take the Lone Swordsman. Now, how do they plan on settling their own competition?

I wonder if Roles and Names confer looks on someone, or if they only go for people who match the image?

x

More typos:

Daoine was as good as kingdom of its own
+a kingdom

well?"Thom probed,
missing space after quote

The streets were out the same width everywhere,
-out

was made up of former member of the Thieve's Guild
members (in addition to the "Thieve's" issue Unmaker already
mentioned)

need to be commended on your entrance.
missing end quote

"I'm guessing Chider's somewhere in this mess?" overhearing the
sound of fighting out of sight as I asked the Soninke girl.
Not a typo, but this ' "Quote" overhearing a sound. ' sentence
structure looks weird and quite possibly unintentional.

[erraticerrata](#)

If there was a capitalized hero somewhere, it was a typo on my part. There's no Role that's outright called Hero, much like there is none called Villain.

Tamika and Chider do have their reasons for what they're doing, which will be addressed in the next chapter. They are not, however, what you guessed 😊

Roles do change the appearance of the person they belong to. Usually the changes are minor, and they always reflect what the person expects someone with that Role should look like. We've already seen that Black is a lot older than what he looks like (partially because Names hinder aging, partially because he has the same mindset as he did when he had that appearance) and Captain is actually a little older.

Unmaker

Your usage is fine, my memory is flawed – the only time “hero” is capitalized is at the beginning of a sentence.

Thanks for the additional explanation.

It is also quite clear from the story that the Heiress is a backstabbing, manipulative psychopath (by necessity, her original nature is unknown), so it would be just her style to set the proto-Squires on each other. I look forward to learning a bit more next episode, whatever the reason.

Just thinking out loud here... If Catherine does earn the Name Squire then a good chunk of the dramatic tension of combat scenes goes away – normals won't be able to hurt her substantially except for overwhelming odds. Which means she will likely then be dealing with combat with Named.

stevenneiman

I'm pretty sure that someone who sets the stage cleverly, cheats with both hands and avoids playing to the Role's strengths can take down a Named.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

I am sure I want to see that person fighting. And I wonder if they'd end up creating the Role of Nameless.

stevenneiman

“show me how good [you're->you are] at handling yours” I'm not actually sure if this is strictly proper grammar, but it reads awkwardly.

“there were empty [weapon] racks for weapons and armour” the redundant word throws things off.

I love the last line. You really are quite good at coming up with those.

Sup

Referring to the “jackass” is a bit confusing. I thought that meant Rashid at first.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Huh. I thought it was perfectly clear. Pretty sure she’s recycled pet names previously

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

I found the thing with the tavern girl a bit odd, actually, considering Catherine’s regard for the last two tavernworkers we’ve seen getting together: “Bad call. He wasn’t in it for marriage, whatever his father wanted.”

Is Callowan culture really that different in regard to sexual relations that can produce children than it is to those that cannot? It’s plausible, I suppose, but a bit... odd.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

I figured the bard was in it for that, and didn’t/wouldn’t recognize that he wasn’t. Cat though seems very much aware (“if I had a silver for every time I heard THAT line”). Not a naive virgin, then 😊

[Thanatos](#)

The whole “penchant for the melodramatic” and “appearances change according to expectations” reminds me of a slightly-more-rigid magic system than the one in wildbow’s Pact, different though the stories may be. Given that Pact had my favorite setting (if not writing) of all of wildbow’s stories I absolutely love that.

Barthumphries

Typos:

“He must have liked you. I’ve been meaning to learn how to use one – maybe you should show me how good you’re at handling yours, one of these days,” she said, smiling wickedly.

Change “you’re” to “you are” – I know you’re means you are, but it just feels wrong.

Surrender now and will spare you most of the torture, unless one of you gives me lip.”

Add “I” before “will”.

arancaytar

"The answer to that question may surprise you," I continued.

There was a heartbeat of silence.

Hah, I forgot how funny this part was.

[greatwyrmgold](#)

Weirdly reminiscent of Dragon Ball Z Abridged.

The one who is mildly impressed

Is it wrong to call over laughing before your desperate final stand? 0:-)

sswanlake

Some edits:

former members of the Thieves" Guild -> former members of the *Thieves'* Guild

cartesiandaemon

Oh god, I love the Beric bit!

Chapter 12: Squire

"Now kneel, fools, and witness my ascension to GODHOOD!"

– Last words of Dread Empress Sinistra IV, the Erroneous

There was a heartbeat of silence before Tamika cocked her head to the side.

"Your plan?" she asked.

"Don't encourage her," the Lone Swordsman cursed.

I smiled condescendingly, casting an eye around me to find a more defensible position. If a monologue was going to buy the time I needed, then I was more than willing to chew the scenery for a while.

"I'm glad you asked, Tamika," I announced. "You see, while it may appear that this is sheer bloody chaos, the whole situation was in fact-"

The scimitar came within an inch of my throat and I back-pedalled in panic, swinging my sword at the now-visible silhouette of Rashid. *Right. There's a reason long-lived villains don't make speeches.* The bastard was still wearing his mask and without a word he stepped back into the smoke, disappearing in the blink of an eye. Ah, wasn't that going to be fun? With this kind of visibility, he had no practical limit on how many times he could pull his stealth trick. While I'd been busy trying not to get my throat cut, the veiled Soninke and the hero had apparently had a breakdown in negotiations: Tamika's crossbow was on the ground, abandoned as she tried to fend off the black-haired man with her long dagger. She was, I noted with a degree of satisfaction, failing pretty badly. The strange sword scored a long gash across her face, ripping away the black veil. It sung when it drew blood, letting out a loud keen as the edge of the metal flashed red. I flinched at the sound, at how *wrong* it sounded. That thing was definitely enchanted, and not in a nice way. The crossbow wielder wasn't going to fight her way out of this one, I assessed. The long-haired Soninke girl wasn't half bad with her dagger – no doubt better with it than I'd be – but the Lone Swordsman was in another league entirely. He moved more like a machine than a man, calmly and methodically powering through Tamika's defence to inflict increasingly dire wounds.

I considered joining the dance, but that seemed like a recipe for death by Rashid. Bringing up my sword, I wiped the sweat off my brow and moved towards the foundry in the front. For all that I'd been villaining my way through this encounter with blatant lies and poor misdirection, I had no intention of letting this devolve into some sort of climactic melee involving all my enemies. I would, for one, probably lose. I was pretty sure I was already tapping in the Learning aspect of my Name – the fact that I'd never needed to read a page twice to remember it flawlessly indicated as much – but it hadn't helped me much when it came to my swordsmanship. All I had to see me through a fight was those unusually quick reflexes and a history of knowing the taste of blood in my mouth. Not, I decided, the stuff victories were made of. There was another way to deal with this mess, though: I stood less than thirty feet away from a lit furnace and most of my enemies had helpfully bunched up inside a flammable building. *So let's set the place on fire and hide by the exit to stab anyone coming out in the back.* Not the most honourable of plans, but honour was for people powerful enough to afford that kind of luxury.

I somehow managed to leave the room without a masked interruption, losing sight of Tamika and her heroic opponent – I had to step over the corpse of my female guide from earlier in the process. Her neck had been hacked halfway through, I saw with mild horror. *Rashid's work, no doubt.* That was when my cunning plan hit an obstacle: standing by the furnace, Chider was looking back at me with an unreadable expression on her face.

"So," I spoke up, moving so that a table occupied my back, "I don't suppose you'll be willing to hold to the truce?"

Chider shrugged, her leathery face pulling taut.

"It's nothing personal, Callow-girl," she replied in Lower Miezan. "The money was just too good to pass on."

Money? Who would have-

"Heiress," I realized. "Heiress bribed you three to take me out."

"I don't know if she got to Rashid," Chider noted, "Though I don't think she would need to. But she found Tamika and me, yes. Not sure what you did to tick her off, but she's willing to sink a small fortune into seeing you dead."

I scowled. I'd yet to meet the girl face to face and I was already starting to hate her guts.

"You understand she's playing all of you, right?" I said. "She's going to be rivals with whoever ends up being the Squire, so she's trying to meddle in the claiming."

"She probably thinks she is," Chider agreed, "For some reason she seems to think you're the most dangerous of the four of us and who knows? She might even be right. But I don't mind her getting what she wants, as long as I also get what I want."

"And that's my corpse?" I grunted, already preparing to duck for cover when the munitions started flying.

"I want to be the Squire," Chider corrected sharply. "I don't really care how I get there. There's never been a goblin Squire, Callow-girl. Or a Black Knight, or an Empress. The tribes have done more for Praes than all of the High Lords put together, but even now all we can aspire to is being *followers*. If I have to kill a few humans to remedy that situation, so be it."

I could sympathize with that, I really could. I knew what it was like, being part of a system where the best you could ever manage was being slightly above the bottom of the barrel. But her way apparently involved my being a corpse, and that wasn't really a point I could compromise on.

"We don't have to fight, you know," I told her. "I'm still willing to make truce until the Lone Swordsman is dead."

Chider grinned, all teeth and malice. "Silly girl, I'm not going to *fight* you."

She reached inside the satchel at her hip and brought out a clay ball the size of her fist. I ducked behind an anvil, but the expected sharper never came. I blinked and the glimpse I'd had of

the munition drifted to the surface of my mind, clear as spring water. Creepy, that – my memory had never been that good, and there was no way I should have been able to see as many details as I had. Sharpers were clay balls, yes, but usually they had a stick protruding out. This one hadn't had anything of the sort. It wasn't a brightstick either. A smoker? I'd never seen a diagram of those, so I wasn't sure what they looked like. My answer came in the form of a roaring furnace: there was a deafening blast and a burst of green light. I snuck out a look from behind the anvil and saw the whole front of the foundry was burning. Eerie green flames were spreading further with every passing moment, and of Chider there was no sign. The furnace was on fire, I noticed. The *metal furnace* was on fire. *Green flames, burning metal? Oh fuck me.*

"Goblinfire," I gasped into the empty room, backing away with haste.

That clay ball hadn't been a smoker, it had been godsdamned goblinfire. The most heavily restricted substance in Imperial territory – just possessing some was enough to earn you a hanging – and Chider had just casually tossed a ball of it into an open flame. Nobody except the goblins knew exactly what goblinfire was, but the Conquest had taught Callowans to fear the sight of the green flames: it burned *everything*, including water and even magic. Seven days and seven nights it would keep burning, impossible to put out until it stopped on its own. There were still parts of Laure where the ground was nothing more than blackened glass, where the substance had been used when the Legions took the city. If any of it touched me, the best I could expect was to be turned into a blackened husk for the rest of my miserable existence. *Well, I guess I'm not leaving by the front door*, I grimaced. Which meant going back into the very melee I'd tried avoiding. New plan, then: get the Hells out of here before the Royal Foundry got turned into the closest thing to the actual Hells that could be managed on Creation. Possibly stab someone if I got an opening, but no need to take stupid risks. Appearing reckless was useful – *being* reckless was a death sentence for a girl in my position. Naturally, the moment I'd settled on a fresh course of action was when Rashid chose to make his appearance. Stepping out of the doorway, the masked boy's robes fluttered as he strode forwards me. His scimitar was coated in blood and chunks of bone, though it looked no less sharp for it.

"I told you we had unfinished business, Callowan," he hissed in Taghrebi. "I've been looking forward to this."

"Really, Rashid?" I complained. "We're going to have a duel to the death in the middle of a foundry full of *goblinfire*? Couldn't we at least move to the other room?"

"And risk one of the veiled wretches stealing my kill?" he chuckled. "I think not."

Apparently that was enough banter for him, because he struck without warning. No tricks this time, no attempt to take me by surprise: the curved sword came for my neck, though I slapped it away with my own blade before it could come anywhere close to drawing blood. He'd apparently found a healer in the last two days, because the wound I'd inflicted on the night we first met didn't seem to be slowing him down.

"Fine," I ground out through gritted teeth as I pushed back his scimitar. "The hard way it is."

I made to sweep his leg but he spun around me fluidly, blade flashing out to swipe across my unprotected back. I hissed at the pain and swung my sword to force him away, already feeling the blood welling up in the wound. *Shit. I really hope that wasn't poisoned.* He darted away, carefully choosing his distance and stalking around me like a crow circling a corpse. From the corner of my eye I could see the green flames continue to spread, swallowing everything in their way. I brought up my sword in middle-line, flattening my profile so he'd find me harder to hit. All of this would have been much easier with a shield, and I once more cursed that it would have been a dead giveaway to the Sons if I'd come bearing one. His footing shifted minutely, but I had no intention of letting him go on the offensive again: I struck first, point aimed at his sternum.

Not fast enough, though. Half a step back brought him just out of my range, and when my blade retracted he followed it in a single fluid movement. The scimitar flashed again, coming for my sword-arm much faster than I'd believed him to be capable of. Angling my pommel up took the better part of the hit, but the edge still ripped through a chunk of my forearm before he darted away. I swallowed a sob of pain, tightening my lips. What was happening? He hadn't been anywhere this good last time we fought, and as far as I could tell his technique hadn't gotten any better. He was just *better. Something about this fight is empowering one of his aspects.* That wasn't something I could match, damn me. The only one of mine I'd figured out was Learn, and it appeared my Name didn't consider duels to the death to be learning opportunities.

"There's the look I was waiting for," Rashid purred. "The moment where you finally understand your place in the world."

For once my life, I was in too much pain to think of a proper response. I struck instead, aiming for the same shoulder I'd wounded last time, but he slapped my point away with contemptuous ease. My hand was shaking, and after being struck twice I'd hesitated too much to properly commit to the strike.

"Maybe I should just leave you in here," the boy mused through his mask. "Bar the door and let you burn alive. I'm told the green flames are even more excruciatingly painful than regular ones."

I tried to take a deep breath but ended up inhaling some of the smoke that was growing to permeate the room and started coughing instead. Rashid didn't even deign to take that opening, preferring to just stand there radiating amusement. I was losing. I was losing, and I was going to die.

The truth of that sunk in and it was like the all the colours in the world where whisked out.

I didn't have any tricks up my sleeves, and this wasn't the kind of opponent I could talk my way out of fighting. Rashid had come here tonight to spill my life's blood on the ground, and would not leave until he'd gotten what he wanted. He was faster than me, more experienced in this kind of fight, and every one of my heartbeats spilled more out my blood on the floor while he remained unwounded. The gap between us could only widen one way, now. *I am going to die here*, I realized. This was as far as I'd managed to go, for all my grand ambitions – killed in an abandoned foundry by some idiot wearing a mask who just happened to be better with a blade. *What a stupid, stupid death*. Gods, I was tired. Barely two weeks since I'd left Laure, and it seemed like it had been years. The heat of the spreading flames licked my skin and a part of me wondered if I should just let him run me through. It would be quicker death than letting him take me apart wound by wound as he so clearly wanted.

"I had all these plans, you know," I spoke into the silence. "To make a different world, a better world."

"The delusions of a weakling," Rashid replied with naked contempt. "Cockroaches are for stepping on, that's all there is to it."

The sheer scorn in those words felt like a slap in the face.

"You don't get to say that, you little shit," I said in a low voice. "Even if you beat me here, you don't get to say that."

Something in my belly stirred like old embers, a heat under the surface that needed only the right fuel to burn. It didn't care if he killed me – more than anything, right now, I wanted that dismissive prick to be wrong. It didn't matter if I was outclassed, it didn't matter if he had every advantage and I had less than none. I was going to make him choke on those words, choke until his face turned blue and his eyes popped out.

Even if I bled.

Even if I burned.

Even if the flesh was flayed off my bones.

I would *Struggle*.

Power flowed through my veins, the beat of it drowning out even the roar of the flames. I raised my sword and stepped forward.

"Oh?" Rashid chuckled. "Are we-"

I rammed my fist into his mask, shattering the clay like the cheap affectation it was. The scimitar came up but I grabbed him by throat and threw him against a table. My Name pulsed under my skin like a living thing, feeding on the fight. The Taghreb snarled and got back on his feet as I continued striding forward, striking almost too fast for the eye to follow. Slow. So slow. How could I ever have thought of him as fast? My sword came down on his wrist and blood sprayed out. His hand fell, fingers still clutching the handle of the blade. I could see his face now, see the fear appearing in those dark eyes.

"I-" he snarled, but I shut him up by punching the tip of my blade through his throat.

Fear turned to disbelief and with a flick of the wrist I tore out my sword. He dropped to the ground.

"Got stepped on," I finished in a whisper. "*Cockroach*."

I watched the life bleed out of the boy, standing above him with my bloodied blade in hand as the flames cast their hellish green light. The moment he took his last gasping breath I felt something click inside of me, like another piece of a puzzle I couldn't see had snapped into place. The power inside my veins dimmed, then disappeared. The pain I'd stopped noticing slammed back into my senses and I grit my teeth as I swayed on my feet. Tapping into the Name's power had worn me down, and not just because it'd taken away my tiredness for a moment. *And I don't think that little burst is going to happen again. Not tonight, anyway.* With a last look at the boy I'd just murdered, I stepped into the smoke.

My eyes wanted to close and my body wanted to curl up into a ball and sleep until all of this mess had gone away and become someone else's problem. I allowed myself the luxury of thinking about how much more pleasant my life would be, were I the kind of person who was willing to do that. Then I took a deep breath and walked towards the sound of fighting, sword raised. *No rest for the wicked.*

The Lone Swordsman had two opponents, but Chider was not one of them. Tamika, blood dripping down her chin where the enchanted

sword had sliced her earlier, was reloading her crossbow while she fought the hero with her spear. She was also white-veiled again, and unwounded. I blinked, making sure that my little Name episode earlier hadn't knocked something loose in my head: there were, in fact, two Tamikas. The one who'd shot at me earlier still bore the wounds I'd seen the Swordsman inflict her, but the other one was still untouched. Rashid had mentioned *wretches*, earlier, I recalled. I'd thought it was a mistake, at the time, but apparently not.

Whatever Name trickery this involved, they were actually managing to drive the hero back: whenever the dark-haired man managed to get the drop on the one fighting him with the spear, the other one loosed a crossbow bolt at him. Whenever he tried to take out the one with the crossbow, the spear-wielder started pressing him furiously. The tactics they used weren't particularly sophisticated and the Lone Swordsman didn't seem to bear any wounds besides a rip in his leather coat revealing the chain mail that covered his forearms, but... Neither was he making progress. Their synchronization was too good, each attack flowing into the next with neither ever missing a single beat. None of the three had noticed me yet. Quietly, I stepped behind the one I was now naming Crossbow Tamika. She wore hardened leather but no helmet – her neck was bare, and I was done playing around with my fellow claimants. I got within three feet of her before Spear Tamika saw me. Her eyes widened, but it was too late: I was already striking and... and now I was ducking when the other one swivelled to face me and shot her bolt into the space where I'd been a heartbeat earlier.

There was no way she could have known, much less taken aim so quickly. Were they sharing each other's field of vision? Gods, that would be a ridiculously useful trick. Spear Tamika stepped away from the hero before I could close the distance separating me from the other one, coming just close enough to be able to come to her rescue if I tried to intervene as she reloaded her crossbow. Well, that was a problem.

"Lone Swordsman," I called out. "I have a question for you."

"No," he replied instantly.

"You don't even know what I'm asking," I complained. "I could have been offering my surrender."

He squinted at me. "Are you?"

"We can get to that later," I dismissed. "Evidently you're the gritty type, but how far up the antihero scale are you?"

"As far as I need to be," he responded gravely.

I pushed down my urge to make something out of that. Crossbow Tamika had already finished reloading, and the pair of them seemed to be considering their next target. I *really* wasn't liking the way Spear Tamika was beginning to angle towards me.

"Are you the kind of gritty that works with enemies?" I probed. "You know, for the greater good and such."

I'd been paying too much attention to the spear-wielder: meanwhile Crossbow Tamika had calmly lined up her shot and pulled the trigger. I'd been lucky with the bolts so far, but with the last remnants of my Name's power fading away I didn't have the kind of speed that let me dodge those at will anymore: she missed my chest but the projectile punched into the flesh of my shoulder with a wet thunk. I let out a cry of pain, nearly dropping my sword in shock.

"Fuck," I cursed.

I hacked away the shaft of the missile with a trembling hand, but actually taking it out would have to wait: I was pretty sure that kind of bleeding would kill me, after how much of Rashid had already gotten out of me. The Lone Swordsman's face was inscrutable, but if he didn't reply in the next few moments I would have to-

"You're Callowan, aren't you?" he asked.

"Laure born and raised," I confirmed.

"... only until they're dead," he spoke, distaste clear in his voice. "Not a moment longer."

"You're such a charmer," I gasped, resisting the strange urge I was getting to roll my wounded shoulder.

The bolt was painful enough without wriggling it around in my flesh.

"She came here to kill you," Crossbow Tamika said suddenly, her voice sounding strangely distant as she addressed the hero.

"He's your enemy," the other one told me in the same tone.

"So are you," I grunted, pushing myself into action.

The spear-wielder was the closest to me, so it was towards her I moved. Without a word she burst into motion, the tip of her spear thrusting forward in the blink of an eye. I sidestepped the strike, though it was a close thing: both my exhaustion and blood loss were beginning to take their toll, Name or not. I forced a spring to my tired limbs and passed the tip of her spear but without missing a beat Tamika whipped the shaft straight into my wounded shoulder. I dropped down on one knee, trying to turn my

scream into a curse and only half-succeeding. I grit my teeth and pushed myself up, but the shaft struck me across the face and threw me down sideways. I felt my sword fall out of my grip, handle slick with blood, and as I scrambled desperately to reach it Tamika's boot came down on my fingers. I felt the phalanges break with a sickening crack. I whimpered and watched as the spear rose, tip headed for my throat, when it suddenly stopped. Without so much as a word of warning, my opponent threw her weapon in the direction of the other duel.

I was weaponless, shit, and – and I *wasn't*.

My left hand reached for the knife I'd won by slitting two throats, the sheath hidden in the small of my back. Tamika raised her hand and dark smoke coalesced in it, forming into a spear again, but it wasn't quite done. With a heaving cry I rose again, feeling the burn of skin getting ripped as I pulled out my hand from under her boot. She stumbled at the sudden pushback and my hand arced, the small knife a silvery blur as I drove it right under her chin. Tamika blinked wordlessly, blood gurgling as she tried to breathe. I twisted the knife and tore it out, blood spraying all over my upper body from the severed artery. The Soninke took a hesitant step back, then another, and her hand came to touch the wound as the now-materialized spear clattered against the ground. From the other side of the room a horrible scream came until it was suddenly snuffed out. I glanced and saw the other Tamika's head rolling on the floor, the cut so perfect it took a few heartbeats before blood started coming out. I'd fallen back on my knees at some point, I realized, but my sword was within reach. I tried to pick it up with my hand but the broken fingers refused to move.

No pain, though. Was I already beyond that? I dropped the knife and took the sword with my left hand as the Lone Swordsman calmly walked towards me. Behind me I could feel the goblinfire beginning to spread into this room, and with a wet laugh I saw green light beginning to filter out of the other exit. *Chider set fire to both ends. Of course she did.* The hero seemed unconcerned as he came to stand before me – I stabbed the tip of my sword into the ground to push myself back to my feet. So much for avoiding the climactic melee. The Lone Swordsman frowned, his face still irritatingly handsome despite it. "Not a moment longer," he reminded me.

The sword blurred and let out that horrifying keen as it spilled my blood on the floor. I could feel a trail of fire across my chest and something hard hit me in the stomach. I stumbled to the ground. My limbs felt cold. Someone was walking away and I knew who, but I couldn't quite remember the name. Smoke was snaking its way across the ceiling in whimsical patterns and I lay there.

Dying.

I'm not sure how long I lay there. I could still hear things, but events came disjointed. A flash of blinding light and the sound of wood breaking. Three claps of thunder – or was it five? Beyond the cold that was spreading through me I could feel the most maddening itch, but I didn't do anything about. It was like a painting almost done, but not quite. Like all it would need was a last brushstroke, and finally everything would *fit*. I lay there, listening to the green flames devouring the world, and itched.

And then it clicked.

Awareness flooded back into me. I was Catherine Foundling, daughter of no one and nothing. I'd fought people for gold once, but earned only silver. I'd taken lives, and justice had come for me with a sword that cried like a grieving man. I was apprenticed to a monster but dreamed of making a world without them. A traitor to all causes but my own, and my path had brought me to this moment: bleeding out on the floor, surrounded by fire.

The other claimants were all dead, and I was the Squire.

My mind was getting clearer with every breath. It brought no comfort. The Name was roiling under my skin, finally mine, but it brought no healing with it. *Evil never does*. I wanted to get up, needed to if I didn't want to celebrate my victory by merrily burning alive, but my body refused to cooperate. I was more than half a corpse, and the endurance I'd always prided myself on was finally failing me. More than half a corpse, huh. The idea took shape in my mind, absurd in all the best ways.

"I've seen a corpse raised before," I cackled to myself, hacking out a horrible laugh.

I reached for the depths of my Name, sinking as deep as I could without a second thought. It was still there, that cool feeling I remembered from the sunny afternoon where I'd made my mount. *Like water so deep it's never seen the sun*. I grasped the power, spun it into threads. Slowly, carefully, I tied knots around my limbs. It occurred to me that I was making a puppet of myself and I let out another cackle. *Well, better me than someone else*. Opening my eyes, I looked at the ceiling and pulled. My left leg yanked itself up – the muscles pulled taut but held, and the right leg came to join it. Mustering the full weight of my concentration, I tugged at the largest string: my abdomen was harshly brought up, and I stood on my feet again.

"And now," I announced to the empty room, "for my next trick..."

One, two, three, four, five. One after another, my broken fingers snapped back into place. I didn't feel so much as a twinge of pain from the act, which wasn't very likely to be a good sign. I balled up my hand and formed a fist before letting the strings go loose: the fingers loosened, still unresponsive to my attempts to

get them moving. It would have to do. Like Creation's most demented puppeteer, I tugged and pulled until I managed to get my sword back at my side and my knife back in its sheath. There was a hole in the wall, I noted. Apparently the Lone Swordsman had solved the dilemma of both ways out being on fire by making his own. Whatever he'd used to break through reeked of magic, but it didn't seem harmful to me: I walked out into the alley with an indifferent shrug. The street was deserted, though close to the mouth of it I found black goblin's blood splashed on the pavement stones. Chider's satchel laid there unattended, spilled open by a sword strike. There were still munitions in it, I saw. Absent-mindedly I picked up a sharper, but the longer I looked at it the more my mind began to wander: I looked ahead instead, leaving the street and heading into a larger avenue.

I was near a stairway leading up to the outer walls, and up there on the ramparts I caught sight of a coat fluttering dramatically.

The Lone Swordsman stood there, brooding away into the night as the wind tousled his dark locks teasingly. I was halfway up before I realized what I was doing, and by then it was too late. Manipulating your own near-corpse apparently didn't lend itself to stealth very well, because he turned towards me long before I was within stabbing distance. Shame, it would have been kind of a treat to just ram my sword in his back and push him off the wall.

"You," he scowled before turning pale as he took a closer look. "*What have you done to yourself?*"

I tried to reply but all that came out was an insolent gurgle. Right, still dying. That was unfortunate. I wasn't in much of a bantering state, so I chucked the sharper at him instead. I missed and hit behind him, but the blast still knocked him off his feet. Small favours, I supposed. It took me two tries to get my sword out of its sheath – the angle was hard to visualize – but by the time he recovered from the shockwave I was on him. I tugged the strings and my arm came down, blade slamming down into his awkwardly angled parry. *Too rough*, I noted as I felt the arm's muscles tear like cheap cloth. The strength behind the strike was monstrous, though I noted with mild surprise that the edge of his blade actually cut into mine. Ultimately that came in useful: when I drew back my arm with another tug, his sword was ripped out of his hand and came away with mine. I shook it off by tugging my arm back and forth, kicking it down into the street when it clanged against the floor. I tried to speak up again but ended up spitting out a fat gob of blood as he looked upon me with horror, backing away. Still, it had the benefit of clearing my throat.

"Told you my plan was working," I rasped.

"You *planned* to become a necromantic abomination?" he said, aghast and still stepping away warily.

Not really, but it wasn't like he could prove that. I circled around him with my sword brought up, forcing him to stand against the edge of the wall. The Hwaerte River's dark waters ran down below, yet another defence in the arsenal of the Gate of the East.

"You're Callowan," he said when the silence got awkward. "We should be fighting side by side, not against each other. Why do you work for them? How can you possibly justify working for these tyrants?"

He hadn't seemed as eager to make common cause when he'd been the one with the sword, I noted.

"Who else is there to work for?" I managed to get out, my voice so rough I could barely recognize it as my own.

He waved his arm passionately.

"Callow!" he replied. "For the Kingdom and all the people who live in it."

"There is no Callow," I rasped. "The Kingdom died twenty years ago. Before either of us were born."

"If even one person fights under the banner, the Kingdom still lives," he said, sounding like he'd just imparted some kind of great truth on me. *Heroes*.

"A kingdom of one," I spoke into a hacking cough. "All hail King Swordsman, lord of stupid causes."

Those green eyes turned to steel and I tugged the strings to shift my footing, half-sure he was about to attack.

"There's nothing stupid about *freedom*," he hissed.

"Going to free us, are you?" I laughed. "How? By killing Imperial Governors? Nobody here's any more free than when you started."

"So I should kneel and lick the Enemy's boot, like you do?" he snarled. "Never. I'd rather die."

I could kill him. Right now, right here, I knew deep in my bones that I could kill him. I might not be able to the next time we met, but this once the story's flow was in my favour. It was tempting, but at the edge of my mind I could make out a path. It was a dark one, strewn with ruin and the death of innocents, but hadn't I stopped pretending to be on the side of the Heavens the moment I'd taken the knife?

"Prove it," I rasped. "If you want your way to beat mine, then come at me again. Properly. Earn your Name, hero. Run and hide and muster your armies in the dark. Make deals you'll regret

until you have nothing left to bargain with. I'll be waiting for you, on the other side of that battlefield."

The Swordsman's face went blank as I let my sword come down.

"But remember this," I said. "Tonight? *I won.*"

Faster than the eye could follow, I pushed him off the wall. He yelled something I couldn't make out and as he fell into the dark waters and I took a step back from the brink. I let what I'd just done sink in, closing my eyes. With a life spared, I'd just killed thousands. I'd just promised cities to fire and ruin, sown the seeds of a rebellion that would rip the land of my birth – the very same land I wanted to save – apart. But I'd also bought the war I needed. Damn me, but I'd bought the war I needed. One after another, the strings holding me up gave. I flopped bonelessly to the ground, at the edge of unconsciousness. It was nice out. Cool and soothing, after all that time in the fire. I heard steps against the stone, calm and unhurried.

"Busy night?" someone murmured.

I opened my eyes and came face to face with eerie green ones.

"I got stabbed," I mumbled. "A lot."

"Happens to the best of us, Squire," the dark-haired man murmured, and I felt his hand on my shoulder before darkness took me.

Isa Lumitus

I think I speak for everyone when I say that animating her own half-dead body was pure awesome.

stevenneiman

Indeed. I still rank it below Black's comment about getting stabbed happening to the best of us.

Random helpful anon

Just below here is a Spoiler, take care!

NerfContessa

This chapter sets the tone for cats. Way to treating herself and dealing with her many changes.

Look back at this from reading her stealing a dukes power, or second lisses, and you'll see what I mean.

Crash

Nice spoilers you got there bud. Let new readers have their fun, please.

[MrPicklesAndTea](#)

I don't remember the spoilers, I've never been so happy to have a headache before in my life. Actually, first time I ever was happy about that.

Tarial

You're a bit of an arse, aren't you? Spoiling people like this.

A new reader that you just spoiled.

letouriste

it's fine i guess. what he is talking about doesn't make sense for you right now and you will have forgotten about that by the time it does

[LifeDeathAndTangerines](#)

Dick move buddy. Dick move.

Cookiehunter

i would say blacks comment is coming back to bite her: I have been called crazy at times and no doubt in time you will be called the same.

daniel73

Well she is the squire now which is great and the war she needs to get promoted will happen but that was a lot of deaths she just trade for a chance at promotion. It's not a compromise of her principles exactly but it was a step towards evil.

[Mental Mouse](#)

No, not a compromise of her principles at all. And as for Evil, this won't be the last time she'll be all "Wait, I can do that? Oh yeah, I'm a Villain, this is how we roll!"

[Shell](#)

This was an intense chapter. I think Black knows what Catherine did. I think also, he favors this because it will bring out those

who are against his empire in the open. But dammit....I hope her body get's healed.

Unmaker

I think he favors it because she is being true to the principles that he holds dear – fearful practicality in pursuit of a goal. I suspect those principles might even be stronger than the hold of the Evil Name, but right now they are supporting the Name and there's simply no easy way to test the two drives against each other.

x

Typos:

he had not practical limit
no practical limit (IIRC this no->not mixup has occurred a few times before)

parts of Laure were the ground
where

I had not intention
no

For once my life,
once +in

all the colours in the world where whisked out
were

spilled more out my blood
of

It would be quicker death
+a quicker

How could I ever have though of him
thought

The pain I'd stopped noticing slammed back into my sense
senses (probably)

I forced a spring to my tired limbs and passed the tip of her
spear but without missing a beat
spear,

So much avoiding the climactic duels.
So much +for

I could still hear things, but events came disjointed.
should that be "became"?

He yelled something I couldn't make out and as he fell into the dark waters and I took a step back from the brink.
make out -and

Not specific to this chapter, but the prologue said the conflict between Good and Evil arose of a disagreement about whether people should be guided to greater things or ruled over. Is the nature of this disagreement visible in the story somehow, or are the current events just a "proxy war" where the nature of the original disagreement is not directly relevant? At least I don't remember there being any indications so far that the Evil side would be under control of the gods, or be trying to bring people under the direct control of the gods. If anything, the Evil side seems to have more of a "do whatever the fuck you want" attitude, whereas the Good side is expected to behave according to moral guidelines decided by others.

[erraticerrata](#)

The influence of the gods is usually on the subtle side. You're right that Evil Roles usually let people do whatever they feel like doing – that's because they're, in that sense, championing the philosophy of their gods. Every victory for Evil is a proof that that philosophy is the right path for Creation to take. Nearly all Names on the bad side of the fence have a component that involves forcing their will or perspective on others (the most blatant examples of this being Black and Empress Malicia, who outright have aspects relating to rule in their Names). There's a reason that Black didn't so much as bat an eyelid when Catherine admitted to wanting to change how Callow is run. From his point of view, that kind of ambition is entirely natural. Good Roles have strict moral guidelines because those Names are, in fact, being guided: those rules are instructions from above on how to behave to make a better world. Any victory for Good that follows from that is then a proof of concept for the Heavens being correct in their side of the argument.

Abrakadabra

Sounds like to me, that the real divide is between order and chaos?

AvidFan

Sigh. Foolish girl. There was nothing practical about letting him live... Whether or not it's a part of her greater plan is irrelevant, the outcome of her current actions is the same as what would have happened with a plain old idiotic and dramatic villain. Hero cornered, hero escapes by falling into a river, hero comes back later, makes some quip about winning this time, defeats the evil, etc etc etc.
There is nothing worse for a villains health than a hero who

escapes death in a duel against said villain...

That said, I won't be surprised if Black predicted this event and already has people ready to kill the Hero when he washes up unconscious, about to be saved by a fair maiden who would have become a Healer or some such Name. In fact, I'm pretty sure that's one of the prerequisites to become one of the hero Names.

One last thing: If a corpse rises in the foundry, does it make a sound?

Isa Lumitus

If this was like what I normally read, I'd agree that Cat was being foolishly reckless. If this was a Hollywood movie, I'd agree that she just signed her own death certificate, and wonder why I was watching. But this story crosses the line twice as far as heroic cliches go. Let's look at the situation:

Young, female, anti-villain from Callow. She meets her first Named hero as part of the scene where she claims her own Name. Then there's the young, male, anti-hero from Callow. He meets his first Named villain moments before his defeat. They are obviously supposed to mirror each other.

Given how Roles work, I don't think either of them *could* die in this scene. Somehow, the Plot would pull a Deus ex Machina to get them both out alive. In this case, that may have been by handing Cat the Villain Ball.

Most likely, as far as the Squire and Lone Swordsman go, each can only die at the other's hand. And it will probably be the climax of an arc. Whichever one wins will get a new Name from the deal. Also, in between then and now, they'll have another confrontation where LS takes his sword back from Squire.

[erraticerrata](#)

Catherine ignored a cue from her Name in that scene and there will consequences. That's as much as I'm willing to say for the moment. 😊

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

She didn't roll her shoulder. Damn it.

Also, holy shit this chapter was badass!

Sean Coker

Just finished my binge.

Damn, this story is fucking awesome. Best web serial I've read since Worm.

I like the way genre awareness and/or lack thereof plays such a huge role in the actions of the characters, especially Black. In a way that's not obnoxiously comedic too. I've seen stories enough where characters have genre awareness in spades, but they've only been comedies, never anything serious.

That said Black might be a little too genre aware. I'm a bit worried for our new Squire.

[erraticerrata](#)

First, thank you 😊 Worm is a high bar to set.
And yes, Black's one of the most talented players at this game.
That said, it helps he's had the last twenty years to set up the board in his favour.

AvidFan

Correction: That said, it helps that he's had the last twenty years to rig the board in his favour.

Letouriste

Well, i'm pretty sure (now that book II ended) you have surpassed worm at some point in book II, the only reason you're less known is...a lack of publicity?^^

i'm French so spreading your novel around is kinda complicated here^^ none of my friends read novels in English except for school...and most of time they just read a translation^^

I think this chapter is the first one to have attracted me, the chapter until there were good and a little funny but your story interest really starts here:

- cat awakening in a villain mindset
- her introspection next chapter
- introduction of her rivals in the main plot for a bit
- the first cool battle scene;
- the consequences of her actions on a lot of level=>maturing

Unmaker

Typos:

(note: I did not cross-check with user x's list, so there may be duplicates)

The opening quote symbol on the quote at the top of the page is huge, but the closing one isn't.

But she found Tamika and I, yes.
But she found Tamika and me, yes.

an deafening blast
a deafening blast

I had not intention
I had no intention

though of him
thought of him

Hwaerte river
Hwaerte River

not practical limit
no practical limit

she tried to fend off the black-haired man with a long dagger
(unclear referent – the man doesn't have the dagger; many
possible changes exist, one listed below)
she tried to fend off the black-haired man's sword with her long
dagger

standing by the furnace, Chider was looking back at me with an
unreadable expression on her face.
(sort of odd construction, maybe...)
Chider was standing by the furnace, looking back at me with an
unreadable expression on her face.

table occupied my back
(odd but not wrong, maybe...)
table covered my back

The money was just too good to pass on.
(odd phrasing, suggests the money will be give away, maybe...)
The money was just too good to pass up.
OR
The money was just too good to pass up on.

For some reason she seems to think you're the most dangerous of
the four of us and who knows? She might even be right.
(break in the flow of ideas, maybe...)
For some reason she seems to think you're the most dangerous of
the four of us and who knows, she might even be right.

and of Chider there was no sign
(a bit stilted, might be used in a more formal setting, but
maybe...)
and there was no sign of Chider

being reckless was a death sentence, for a girl in my position
(no reason for the pause indicated by the comma)
being reckless was a death sentence for a girl in my position

He was faster than me
("I was" not "me was")
He was faster than I

slammed back into my sense
slammed back into my senses

(There are a lot of colons being used as separators for parts of sentences. Some of them look wrong, but I didn't make a list. You might want to look into using hyphens more often.)

I hacked away the shaft of the missile with a trembling hand
(didn't hack with a hand, maybe...)
I hacked away the shaft of the missile with the sword in my
trembling hand

So much avoiding the climactic duels.
So much for avoiding climactic duels.

Reactions:

Overall, very nice, a powerful episode. I can see both AvidFan's and Isa Lumitus's arguments about how the story should/can/will go.

letting him take me apart wound by wound as he so clearly wanted
Someone wasn't taught effective villainy. And then the stupid Lone Swordsman does the same damn thing, walking away from an injured opponent. Is there some Name coercion or are they just not aware of the problem sufficiently?

My Name pulsed under my skin like a living thing, feeding on the fight.

I wonder what aspect of the fight is empowering this and what is it empowering. The interesting thing is that Black seemed to expect something like this, as if having outraged principles in some way empowers an aspect of Squire. Black was Squire once, and given his tendencies, he very likely explored the limits of its abilities, so it would be interesting to know if he actually understands the mechanism.

*Rashid had mentioned **wretches**, earlier, I recalled. I'd thought it was a mistake, at the time, but apparently not.*

This is unexplained – is she twins who can somehow carry a Name between them or is this an odd Name power? She is using other obvious sorcery, so perhaps this is just a separate power.

*but it brought no healing with it. **Evil never does.***

Then how do the Calamities get healed? For that matter, how did Rashid get healed? The amount of damage that Catherine has taken should cause lifelong problems, and I can't see Black or Captain simply never getting hurt. So how do the Evil Names ever actually

get healed of wounds that should mark them for death when they meet the next healthy Named opponent?

Isa Lumitus

To try to answer your last two segments, there are more types of magic here than just Name-granted powers. Near the beginning of the story, Cat gets healed by a sorcerer. I don't remember his name, but he was just a drunk, not a Named hero or villain. Given that, there might be people that know how to heal, that happen to have villainous Names, as well.

Actually, the idea that Evil brings no healing with it might just be ignorance on Cat's part. Imagine a Name like Torturer. Obviously evil, but healing his victims would let them suffer longer, so I find it believable that his Name could grant him that power. Or just imagine characters inspired by Bonesaw from Worm, or Josef Mengele from real life.

[erraticerrata](#)

You're correct. Healing on the Evil side of the scale is done strictly by sorcery. Some kinds work better than others, and for the most powerful stuff there's always a price to pay. Cat is actually right, at least as far as the continent she lives on is concerned. On Calernia (the continent where the Guide is set) there are no Evil Names that give healing abilities. That said, there are plenty of Names that empower magic – and magic can heal. Deals with otherworldly entities (demons and devils are the most common for Praes) can also serve in that regard, though you risk getting screwed over by a creature that's been around since the dawn of Creation.

Unmaker

I had somehow completely forgotten about the sorcerous healing. Thanks for the reminder, and thanks to erraticerrata for the reminder and clarification.

[erraticerrata](#)

Someone wasn't taught effective villainy.

Rashid was part of a Praesi faction that believes in old school villainy. While there are certainly advantages to going the old way – it usually feeds into Roles – there are also drawbacks. Usually lethal ones.

... is she twins who can somehow carry a Name between them or is this an odd Name power?

Since it's never going to be explained in the story, I might as well say it here. They were twins who shared the claim between them. All of the claimants had a particular trick – Rashid could disappear, Chider's bag always gave her the right

munitions at the right moment – and theirs was being able to share their minds and bodies. The drawback was that sensations like pain were also shared, hence why when the spear-user was stabbed the one fighting the Lone Swordsman froze up.

Phantom Renegade

What was Catherine's thing? Good tutors?

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

About half a Name, including the aspects of Learning and Struggle.

FirstDragon

A good and intense chapter. Given all the action and the participants, I'm honestly surprised you didn't take advantage of the opportunity to spread out the story into two or more chapters. Well...I suppose that's one frequent difference between web serials and novels...they tend to move faster and stay more plot focused.

[rmcd94](#)

Completely removes all tension from fighting when she gets not one but two ex machina.

Also she isn't even the squire, both heiress and the real squire still exist and there's been no indication at all that names can be shared and to be honest pretty dire exposition for how any of this works. Why is she the squire because the other three died? Who were the other three really? Why did the real squire never comment on a replacement? I assumed the real squire would have to be killed since there was no explanation or even questioning by our main character

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

'Real' Squire? There were three Claimants for the Role besides Catherine, plus a Rival Name called the Heiress. Any of the Claimants could, in theory, have become the full Squire if they did one of the following:

1: If they were the last Squire Claimant standing, they automatically got the Role. Hence why Catherine got the Name when Lone Swordsman killed Chider. (It's uncertain if the others have to be dead for this to work, since I imagine abandoning the contest would be dangerous but theoretically survivable, but a completely limbless contestant would also be... unlikely to continue, unless they were a magical savant.)

2: If a Squire Claimant killed a hero, or possibly any Named, they would automatically become the full Squire. This was tried repeatedly, but the Lone Swordsman outclassed them.

Also, I didn't see either of her powerups as Deus Ex Machinae. The first one, her Aspect powerup, was foreshadowed well enough, and more than that, it was only necessary in the first place because her opponent had an Aspect powerup. The second one, where she turns her mostly dead body into a 'necromantic abomination', was a clever trick that used only stuff we'd already seen. Namely, her access to Necromancy and the curiously drawn out nature of fights with the Lone Swordsman. Which happened to play into her Aspects of Struggle and Learning quite well.

stevenneiman

"I would Struggle." I'm pretty sure Struggle should be in bold, to be consistent with the way Aspects are usually written. "I was pretty sure that kind of bleeding would kill me, after how much [of->of it/ nothing] Rashid had already gotten out of me."

linnilalartyr

Wow! such a nice trick for those name out there. 🤔 And letting the hero live for the later war and chance is so typical of true villain! Yay! Nice one! Cat!

David

That was an amazing fight scene. And the trick of animating her own body was inspired.

sswanlake

Some edits:

For once my life, I was in too much pain -> For once **in** my life, I was in too much pain

sswanlake

Some edits:

all of the lines that start with speaking are missing beginning quotation marks, it's a little confusing

Squire have ground fluidly, trying to find an angle -> Squire **gave** ground fluidly, trying to find an angle

And so were party to the assassination -> ****And *some** were party to the assassination

set aside for the company the monsters killing them -> set aside for the company **of** the monsters killing them

Poetically Psychotic

Struggle as an aspect is an interesting one. I've got a character with a similar ability, and it makes for a unique combination of dangerous and weak. On the one hand, in any situation where they're in actual danger, they get considerably stronger, making taking them down **harder** the closer you are to accomplishing it. On the other hand, they don't have that power unless they're already in dire straits, making them weaker and more vulnerable the rest of the time. (Probably worse for my character than for Squire, as his surge of power was only triggered by the outrage of actually being killed, so by definition he had to be already **dying** to make full use of the power).

As with many characters and powers, teamwork is the key to shoring up its weaknesses. If you have healers on standby, it's less crippling that you need to be in really bad shape to benefit, because you can recover quickly and do it again.

[eimis381](#)

It just became a lot harder to sympathise with Cat. She goes on how she wants make things better for Callow and next thing she practically sign death warrant for thousands of Callowans. She understands that resistance will be formed but it will fail. All this will only give her a chance at a promotion, by killing the people she wants to help ? Maybe this chapter just shows how truly her character is twisted, she thinks she does greater good but only if that good comes form her and any other good is dismissed if it conflicts with her belief.

Baron

ARE YOU KIDDING ME, ERRATA? YOU MADE A CALLBACK TO THIS CHAPTER LITERALLY FIVE YEARS LATER.

DO YOU KEEP A CORKBOARD AND COLOURED STRINGS ON YOUR WALL OR SOMETHING?

lupuscarnem

What callback are you referencing?

Midas0

Awesome chapter. Seems like I have to avoid spoilers now too, that must men things are getting good.

Chapter 13: Order

"Mercy might be the mark of a great man, but then so's a tombstone."

– Extract from the personal memoirs of Dread Emperor Terribilis II

It was dark inside the Commander's quarters, the only light coming from the candle on the woman's desk. He stepped behind her quietly, his Name's power silencing the sounds of his armour as he raised his blade. The dark-haired woman stilled for the barest fraction of a moment, and Squire knew then that his chances of taking care of her quickly had evaporated into thin air.

"Quiet or not," the Commander spoke with a voice that bore the soft accent of the Deoraithe, "you reek of blood."

Squire's blade came down but the woman spun, hand grasping for the longknife on her desk and batting the killing blow aside at the last moment. The green-eyed man sighed and shifted his footing as she rose to her feet.

"I do hope that was a figure of speech," he said mildly. "I bathe every few days."

The Commander bared her teeth in mockery.

"Some things don't wash off with water, Praesi," she replied.

His blade flicked forward, tasting the edge of her defence and finding it unfortunately steady. No less than he'd expected, of course – the woman's Name was one that could only be earned through years of hard fighting, and not even Ranger's tutelage was enough to overcome the disparity between their levels of experience. Even nurtured, talent could only bring you so far.

"So tell me, assassin," Commander jeered, "what was it that finally pushed the Chancellor to send a killer after me?"

The longknife was a blur of sharpened steel in her hand and she stepped forward, turning a thrust into a vicious flick of the wrist when he stepped around it, dancing away before he could strike back and leaving behind a shallow cut on his cheek.

"Was it the punitive expedition on the Red Boars?" she asked.

Squire have ground fluidly, trying to find an angle where his sword's longer reach would be able to come into play. It was unfortunate that his way into the quarters had meant travelling light, because fighting an opponent this dangerous without his shield was quickly becoming more than he'd bargained for.

"No," Commander mused, "it's not like we've never done that before. Which means someone opened their damned mouth about my plan for the Lesser Steppes."

Squire smiled.

"I might have heard a thing or two," he agreed. "But you seem to operate under a misconception, Commander."

"Illuminate me, then, assassin," she replied coldly.

"Not Assassin," he corrected her. "Squire."

That was when the bells started ringing. Three rings, a pause and then three rings again: the signal for a fire in the fortress.

Apprentice had already started his work, then, which meant it was time to wrap this up: Grem's clansmen would be in position soon. His opponent spat a few words in the Old Tongue. From the intonation, he would venture a guess they were nothing particularly polite.

"So you're one of the pups who wants to be the next Black Knight," she growled. "You made an error in coming here tonight, boy – it'll be my pleasure to nip you in the bud before you become a real problem."

Which was, he was forced to concede, a very real possibility. When she moved forward again, it was with the weight of cold anger behind her attacks – again and again he was forced to give ground, pushed out of her quarters until he was at the head of the stairs. Commander slipped under his guard when he overextended, ignoring the deep cut he carved right above her ear to close the distance and slam her palm into his chest. Had anyone but a Named done that on full plate they would have broken their wrist for their trouble, but instead her blow sent him tumbling down the stairs. About halfway down he managed to roll back to his feet, but before he could bring up his sword she nearly sliced through his jugular, forcing him to scramble back desperately. In a matter of moments she'd driven him all the way out to the inner courtyard, and now they both knew the game was up.

"If you kneel," she said flatly, "I'll make it quick."

"If this were a story," Squire told her, "this would be the moment where I revealed I was left-handed all along."

"Are you?" the dark-haired woman asked gruffly.

"No," he replied, sheathing his sword. "I'm a practical man at heart, you see."

The first arrow took Commander in the side of the throat, punching straight through and coming out the other side. Ranger's work. The short bow volley from Grem's clansmen followed a heartbeat later, filling her with so many arrows he could no longer make out her face.

That's the thing with practical sorts, Commander," Squire told her gently. "We cheat."

I woke up in a room I didn't recognize.

I could still feel the cold of the northern night on my skin, cheek still stinging where the Commander's longknife had drawn blood. That particular sensation paled in comparison to the rest of my pains: my entire body was a raw wound, the worst of it centred around the long gash that snaked across my entire torso. I pushed myself up against the cushions, wincing as a flash of agony went through me. Tossing the blanket covering me aside, I took a closer look at the bandage-covered cut the Lone Swordsman had gifted me with: it was an angry red and would scar rather gruesomely, but at least it wasn't bleeding. The rest of my body bore no marks, which sent a shiver of unease down my spine: I'd been healed by Zacharias enough to know that magic couldn't heal this well without dipping a toe in unsavoury waters. I was alone

in the room, I saw as I took a look around: sparsely furnished in the Callowan style, no windows and I couldn't hear so much as a hint of noise from the outside. Everything in here smelled of blood, I noticed with a jolt of surprise. I hadn't noticed because I'd smelled the same thing in the dream, and wasn't that a creepy thought?

I forced myself into a sitting position at the edge of the bed, pushing down a pained groan. The identity of the Squire in my dream wasn't exactly hard to deduce: Black still looked more or less the same, if a little older, and there was no way I could confuse those eerie green eyes with anyone else's. There'd been too many details to the vision for it to be just a fantasy cooked up by my mind while I slept, though: even now, closing my eyes, I could still hear the low voice of the Commander and the shriek of those arrows as they fell from above. *A Name dream, then.* My mind still felt too fuzzy to puzzle out exactly what was going on here, but I knew that there was bound to be a reason for it. When Black had shoved a sword through my chest, I'd ended up confronting two versions of me that could have been. *So the dream shows me the previous Squire killing a hero when I just let one go.* A little heavy-handed, as far as hints went, but I was not a subtle girl by nature: it made sense that my Name would be equally as blunt. I passed a hand through my tangled locks with a grimace. Gods, I smelled awful. I needed a bath, or at least a change a clothes.

The door creaked open and Captain came in, ducking her head under the threshold. The sight drew a smile out of me: very few things must be Captain-sized, outside of wherever the Hells ogres lived.

Good," the warrior grunted. "You're awake."

Barely," I agreed. "How long was I out?"

It's been two days since your little stunt," she said. "You came damned close to never waking up."

I'd suspected as much, but it still sent a shiver down my spine to hear it said out loud.

Should I sent a thank you note to the Legion healers, then?"

Captain snorted.

You tore your body up way past what they can handle," she informed me. "Luckily we had a blood mage from the Swiftfoot tribe in camp – still took three bleedings to get you back to something manageable."

Bleedings. Gods Above, I hoped she wasn't saying what I thought she did.

You mean they bled *me*, right?"

The olive-skinned woman graced me with a quelling look.

Don't be obtuse, girl," she grunted. "You had little enough of the stuff left in your veins. Black had them spill the lifeblood of three. Rough stuff, but it usually works."

I felt my stomach sink and let out a ragged breath. Three people dead just to heal me, and Captain didn't even seem to think of it as particularly notable.

Who were they?" I croaked out. "The people that died to save me."

She shrugged. "Death row prisoners," she told me. "Never learned their names, but Scribe would probably know. Had to file some papers to requisition them."

Requisition them, like a resource. Same as if they'd asked for a new set of armour or some sewing equipment. *Like they were things, not people.* Oh, they weren't likely to have been very nice sorts – they wouldn't have gotten a death sentence otherwise – but at the end of the day what I saw was a Praesi spending Callowan lives like currency. Three stranger's lives spent to preserve mine, without a second thought. Would I have agreed to it if I'd been awake, I wondered? It disgusted me that I was no longer as certain of my answer as I would have been a month ago. Captain's presence suddenly felt intolerable, a blight to everything I was trying to accomplish. Just another cog in the Empire's machine, grinding down the lives of the people they'd conquered.

And yet, what could I do? For all that I itched to lash out, I was all too aware that even at my best I'd never manage to do more than scratch her armour. She was a woman who'd faced entire battalions of knights and slaughtered them effortlessly. They'd been kind, Captain and Black, so easy-going and helpful I'd ended up forgetting I was dealing with monsters. *Calamities, the monsters even other monsters fear.* And the worst of it was that we were on the same side. I'd chosen, willingly, to align myself with people who saw human sacrifice as just another tool in their arsenal. The taste of bile in my mouth drowned out the smell of blood, and I suddenly felt like throwing up. It was one thing to make the decision to sacrifice lives in the abstract, but now that I was faced with the reality of it... How could I have ever thought good would come of this? *Look upon the foundations of your better world, Catherine Foundling. Another three corpses for the pile, and they will not be the last.* I retched, vomiting all over the bed. The concern on Captain's face was the most hateful sort of kindness I'd ever seen. My stomach settled after a moment and I wiped my mouth against the blanket.

I'll talk to Scribe, then," I muttered, shivering.

I'd remember the names, carve them deep enough I could never forget. Find out if they had families, people who'd depended on them: an insipid way of repaying a debt that ran so deep, but what else could I do? I still had my savings from the Pit and would not use so much as single speck of Imperial gold for this. *My debt, my penance. Gods have mercy on my soul.*

You can do that later," Captain grunted. "Put a tunic on, Black wants you outside."

I felt too drained to tell her that all of them could go fuck themselves, as far as I was concerned. There was no dresser, but someone had neatly folded some clothes on top of the chair in the corner. I forced myself to my feet, rebuffing Captain's helping hand when I swayed. I was in no mood to take help from Praesi. Changing my underclothes with someone else in the room was almost nostalgic, a reminder of the days where'd I shared a dormitory with the other orphanage girls. *Nobody set out clothes for me then, though.* It bothered me that I'd stopped noticing luxuries like that: they crept up on you, the trappings of power. One inch at a time, until you forgot you'd ever lived without them. My lips twisted in distaste when I saw the woollen tunic I was expected to wear was dyed black. It felt like a claim was being made on me, and I'd always balked at those. I buttoned up the collar anyway and smoothed my face out of emotions. I'd get clothes of my own as soon as I got the occasion.

What does he need me for?" I asked Captain as I finished slipping on my boots.

Just needs you to be seen out and about," the gargantuan Taghreb replied. "Rumours are you're dead, and people want a face to put to the fire."

I blinked. Shit, the goblinfire.

That's still burning?" I asked.

They managed to cordon it off," Captain said, "but almost half the quarter went up in flames. Istrid had her legionaries evacuate the people in time, at least."

A small relief, that I wouldn't have to add more lives to my tally so soon after the last ones. I tightened my belt and made sure my knife's sheath was properly placed. No sword, but that was to be expected after the Lone Swordsman's blade cut into it.

Let's go and get this over with," I muttered, more exhausted than even my wounds warranted.

The inn we were apparently in was deserted except for a handful of Blackguards covering the entrance. I ignored them and followed the brown-eyed warrior into the streets. I heard the crowd way

before we got to the Court of Swords. The large paved plaza had once been where the counts of Summerholm held justice, though the Imperial governess had preferred the fortress for that purpose. The name came from the way Count Harlay the Grim had taken the arms of a slaughtered Praesi army and piled them up to offer the king of the time instead of the taxes owed that year. What must have been the better part of Summerholm's population had gathered in the Court and the sound of all those thousands whispering among themselves was almost deafening. Gallows had been erected in the centre, surrounded by a square of legionaries six men deep. Black sat astride his mount in front of the structure, Scribe standing next to him still as a statue. For once, she didn't seem to be paying attention to anything but what was happening in front of her.

The people parted in front of Captain like a receding tide, falling silent at the sight of the tall Named striding across the stone. From the corner of my eye I could see people pointing at me when they thought I couldn't see. *Squire*, I heard whispered. *Traitor* came up nearly as often, and the epithet wouldn't have stung as much had there not been a grain of truth to it. I kept my eyes fixed straight ahead and matched Captain's stride as best I could. Black was in full armour, I noticed as soon as we drew close – he wore a helmet, for once, a heavy piece ornamented to look like a grinning devil.

Squire," he greeted me, still looking towards the gallows.

Black," I replied. "What the Hells is this?"

The restoration of order," he said.

The gallows were no more than thirty feet away, so I could see who was on them now. There must have been fifty people standing in two lines behind the nooses, and I recognized every single one of them. Patrons from the Lost Crown, a handful I'd glimpsed in the Royal Foundry who must have survived the night.

You can't do this," I said urgently. "Not all of them were members of the Sons. Some just had sympathies and -"

And so were party to the assassination of an Imperial governess," he interrupted me flatly. "High treason, which fetches the noose."

You already knew who the members were," I spoke pleadingly. "You could have hung them then, no need to do it now."

Green eyes stared me down through the holes in his helmet.

They were tolerable, so long as they were harmless," he stated. "They are no longer harmless."

This is butchery," I hissed. "You'll be hated for this."

I am already hated in this city," he noted. "An acceptable loss, if I am also feared."

I reached for the power of my Name but there was *nothing*. Not a drop of the power I'd used to crush my enemies, even as I reached as I deep as I could.

You bound my Name," I accused him.

Your powerlessness is of your own doing," Black replied. "You took action that ran against your Name's nature, and so damaged your access to it. Something related to your confrontation with the hero, I assume. No body was found."

So you're punishing me by killing Callowans?" I snarled.

I am hanging traitors who took up arms against the Tower," he corrected sharply. "I am not in the habit of wasting lives over petty lessons."

I'd never hated anybody more than I hated the man in that moment. Sitting there on his horse, looking down on me from above. He stood for every fucking sneering Praesi I'd come across, eyeing me like I was just cattle in their herd. Pretending the laws he upheld were anything else than rules the Wasteland used to fix the game so they'd win every time.

I will have no part in this," I spoke, voice so cold and furious I could hardly believe it was my own.

My fingers closed against the handle of my knife. His stare never wavered and I realized how absurd I must have seemed to him, the girl who couldn't even use her Name and was still threatening to pull a knife on the Black Knight. There were two Calamities standing within ten feet of me, and even through the haze of rage that fact managed to sink in. I loosened my fingers.

I will have no part in this," I repeated, more calmly.

I might not be able to stop this, but I didn't have to pretend I endorsed it in any way. I turned to leave, to go anywhere but here-

Stop."

I thought I knew fear. I'd felt it the night we first met, when the Knight's power had choked the very air of the alleyway. I was wrong. Oh so very wrong. My limbs froze and my heart spasmed. Dark things lurked just out of my sight, thirsting for my death.

Turn around."

I did. I couldn't even think about not obeying. The monster studied me without a speck of emotion in his eyes, the almost indolent amusement he always displayed sliding off his face like water off a clay mask. There was no humanity in the thing I was facing, and finally I could say I'd met the Black Knight. The real one.

Did you think this was a game, Catherine? That actions would not have consequences?" the green-eyed man murmured. "Power cuts both ways. Authority comes with responsibility. Ambitions such as your demand sacrifice, so **stand here and watch.**"

My body did. Even as I screamed inside, my body did. A hush went over the crowd as General Sacker scuttled up onto the gallows, giving her legionaries a sharp gesture to get on with it. Levers were pulled, the ground opened beneath the prisoners and twenty-five Callowans died of a broken neck. Thousands stood in the Court, and you could have heard a pin drop. Legionaries untied the corpses as soon as the last one stopped twitching, letting them fall down the hatches as they pushed the second row of prisoners forward. I read their faces one after another, too dazed to be properly horrified. In the middle of the line stood a slender blond girl with grey eyes. *Elise.* Our eyes met and recognition flickered across her face, followed by pleading. *Gods, forgive me. I didn't know. You have to believe me, I didn't know.* A heartbeat passed and the beautiful face turned to disgust. She spat on the ground as the noose was settled around her neck.

General Sacker gestured again and she died.

The crowd let out a long breath, and just like that it was over. Tens of thousands stood in the Court of Swords, surrounding less than two hundred legionaries, but as the last corpse dropped under the gallows they started to disperse. Cowed, just like me.

We leave with the noon bell," Black spoke calmly. "Get back to the barracks by then."

Without another word he rode away, his steel-clad horse obeying the unspoken commands of his Name. I staggered away numbly, my legs taking me away from the Court. It didn't matter where, as long as it wasn't here. *Anywhere but here.* How long I wandered I couldn't say, but I ended up at the bottom of a dead-end alley. No one else was in sight. I leaned against a wall, forehead coming to rest against the roughly hewn stone. Slowly I fell to my knees, welcoming the burn of my wound as my body stretched. I was so very, very tired. Over two hundred miles stood between me and home, and suddenly I was aware of how alone I really was. Surrounded by people who hated me, people I'd willingly set aside for the company the monsters killing them. And now here I was, without even the protection of the Name I'd bartered my soul away for.

A dry sob wracked my throat and I rocked myself slowly, closing my eyes. I'd done this to myself, feeling clever and in control every step of the way. It had felt like a dream, really. One colourful absurdity after another, Names and visions and claims. The stuff legends were made of. Maybe that was why it had come so easily to me – I couldn't quite believe it was real, so I treated it like a story. I'd bantered with villains who'd soaked the pages of history books in blood like I was an equal instead of an ant they could step on without a second thought. Just the memory of the way I'd mouthed off on the first night was enough to chill my blood now, now that I knew I'd been speaking to the green-eyed creature I'd met in the Court instead of the lackadaisical villain I'd thought I was facing. There was no believing this was dream now. *Not when I can still hear the sound of Callowan necks snapping under the rope.* Tear fell down my cheeks and I let them.

If this wasn't worth crying about, what was?

Todd

Thanks for the chapter. things are looking so very bleak for Catherine right now

[Shell](#)

I dislike characters that have a fight with themselves regarding moral choices. Hopefully the upcoming chapters will be a little more uplifting.

[Dakota X Willingham](#)

You dislike characters that are conflicted with their choice? What? Do you also enjoy boredom?

[Illunis](#)

Type of guy who stares at a blank wall to pass the time

pieter999

Really not necessary to get insulting. Some of us just enjoy seeing her rise to power and the exploration of this world and her Name more than an entire chapter of 'woe is me, I made my bed but don't want to lie in it' melodrama.

nasiba

There is nothing in Catherine's nature that shows her to be some evil, ambitious witch motivated by personal gain

so why on earth wouldn't she be conflicted? Her whole excuse for this is to "make things better" for the very people her decision has lead to death. Have you been reading this book at all? If you want a story about a pure villain without any humanity, go read some comics. I'm surprised it took this long.

Calligo

The story as a whole is more than awesome enough to keep reading – which doesn't mean it has to be flawless and have zero boring chapters.

I'm not complaining about Cat having morals – I just happen not to particularly enjoy the more introspective parts of her story.

righteyeflounder

@pieter999 Hahaha that is the funniest way I've read someone rag on angsty character moments. I personally really like introspective moments and conflicted characters (definitely like Cat). But the whole schtick of "If YoU lIkE eScAPiSt PoWeR FaNTaSy so YoU ArE a lOSer" undermines the 'more well read than thou' attitude of portraying conflicted characters as inherently better literature. And the insults thrown your way frankly gross. On the other hand, from my reading up until this point 'Do ends justify means?' appears to be the main concern of this book(?). So I expect a lot more angst and introspection from it.

NerfContessa

The interesting thing is, this very moment COULD have been cats turning point to hero if.... Well if she had asked for it.

But she kept to her own counsel. Above everything else, cat is her own worst enemy.

nipi

How did the crowd know to call her a traitor? She was literally half dead at the end of the fight. Barely able to pull her sword out of the scabbard. Who could say that she could do anything other than what she did in the state she was in. Falling off a wall might not be better than a crooked swing of a sword. And I doubt she was loud enough to have her conversation with the hero be overheard. I cant imagine there to be anything but speculation and rumors to come to such a conclusion.

Did Black let loose the rumors? To punish her? To steer and mold her? He was the first on the scene. Probably watched it all from

a distance. And Id imagine he felt her getting the name and then loosing it.

Did she really lose the name? She let a hero live sure but with a bloody ulterior motive. Maybe it has something to do with the fact that the name is "Squire".

BTW love this story.

x

Knowing that she was Callowan and on the Empire side (which was obvious there) was probably enough for the crowd to call her a traitor, whether they knew anything about her prior actions or not.

nipi

Slipped my mind completely that most of the population in the city hated the empire. Heheh!

That leads me to another question tough. Why are the those loyal to the empire (Legionaries and the merchants that follow them around) camped around the city. Meanwhile those that resent the empire are living behind the thick walls? Doesnt that make it more likely to loose the city in case of an uprising?

The discomfort of the conquered can be damned if it is a threat to the new rule.

[erraticerrata](#)

There's a heavy Imperial garrison in the city itself, but logistically speaking it'd be impossible to lodge two entire Legions inside the city without evicting most of the inhabitants. Summerholm is a fortress-town, not a proper city. The higher-ups in the Legions of Terror made the decision that manning all the important choke points would be enough in peace time, in part because you need actual civilians around for trade.

x

Typos:

Squire have ground fluidly,
gave?

That's the thing with practical sorts, Commander," Squire told her gently.

missing opening quote

fell from above
from

it made sense that my Name would be equally as blunt
-as

smoothed my face out of emotions
phrasing seems weird to me

Pretending the laws he upheld were anything else than rules the
Wasteland used to fix the game
I'd expect "other than" instead of "else than"; not sure if
that's right/wrong or depends on dialect

Ambitions such as your demand sacrifice,
yours

Elise.Our
missing space

for the company the monsters killing them
company +of

Comments on the chapter:

I didn't really get Catherine's reactions in this chapter. In the beginning of the story, she was willing to personally cut the throat of two criminals. Why's she suddenly so upset about prisoners already on death row being killed to heal her? She had already accepted that people would have to die for her goals, and here she doesn't even have to watch anything unpleasant while conscious, just gets told about it later in the abstract. Having that seemingly upset her so badly that she even thinks of "penance" and compensating the families of the prisoners (who presumably didn't lose much extra due to anything related to her, given the prisoners were already on death row) seems unjustified.

Her reaction to the hangings also felt like an exaggerated shock to me. Given her earlier talk about how resisting the empire is stupid, did she really expect no reprisals after the killing of a governor? Overall, I felt the sudden attitude change to "they really are MONSTERS!" was not justified by the events of the chapter.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

I don't know. I think the blood sacrifices thing worked because it wasn't in reference to attempted criminals going free, but using condemned criminals as resources.
I hadn't expected the Black Knight to use mind control on her, though. That was just *stupid*.

bowekin

A lot of opening quotes were missing.

Boobah

The blood sacrifices hit her, in part, because the justification for why she shouldn't care was because *Praesi* justice put them on death row. Then there's the religious angle; somehow the Church of Light is suffered to operate in Callowan and their moral teaching has something to say about blood magic and human sacrifice in general. Even if Catherine rejects that church, taboos like that still live in your psyche.

The hanged men bother her because they were real people she'd talked with and, in some cases, started to form connections with. It's also probable that killing the Lone Swordsman would have saved them; after all, they were a threat less because of their opposition to the empire than because of their connection with the Swordsman.

Which is why Black insisted she watch the executions; Catherine's choice led to this outcome like clockwork. She needed to be aware of the consequences of the game she was playing at; most of those people could have been executed a day or two earlier, but Black needed her there to absorb the lesson.

Tata Man

I agree on the sacrifices thing but, I think she was rightfully horrified at the executions. Because not all of them were actually involved with any of the terrorist attacks. Some of them just had sympathies and others seemed to just be patrons of the tavern. Seeing guilty people she knew get killed because of her was bad enough, but seeing almost entirely innocent ones?

There's also the fact that the two soldiers from the start were a lot more personal. They were trying to rape a girl in the slums and then when she tried to do something about it, they tried to murder her. Here they just bombed a few places. Sure, one of those was a tent she was staying in but she didn't really know before that and couldn't fully attribute it to them. It sounds strange but not putting a face to that bomb for a couple days might've helped detach the rebels from involvement in her mind.

Cpt. Obvious

At the same time, or just a couple of days earlier, she cold calculated that letting the lone swordsman go free would result in an uprising that she could use to further her

career by stomping it out. And all it would cost was many thousands of lives.

Girl needs to get her ducks in a row...

daniel73

Why did she have such a strong reaction to the death rows prisoners dying? It seemed out of character for her

J F

Have you ever made decisions in the heat of the moment? The consequences of what you have wrought can be a sobering experience. Cat's resilient, I'm sure she'll be back in the swing of things soon enough.

I'm curious to see the degree of pain the name cue ignoring will have. Did the Wizard of the West suffer from something similar when his power broke?

Good update, can't wait for next week!

[erraticerrata](#)

The Wizard of the West was actually the one doing the breaking – he's largely responsible for the descent into incompetence of Dread Emperor Nefarious after the latter's failed invasion attempt. The breaking does have similarities, but it's a lot more traumatic when it's done by an exterior factor (i.e. the Wizard) than by the fallout of your own decisions (as in Catherine's case).

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Maybe I waited too long in between chapters, but I hadn't caught that Nefarious' power had been broken that way. Huh.

stevenneiman

I think the Wizard did everything a hero is expected to but just couldn't beat Amadeus.

stevenneiman

It's one thing to kill people who obviously deserve to die like Mazus and the rapists, or to kill in the abstract without seeing the consequences, or to fight to the death for self preservation. It's quite another to watch fifty people executed after the fact, when you know that most of them were likely harmless. And another thing entirely to realize that you're the only person who even finds it worth thinking about that the blood and lifeforce of three people was taken to heal you. She might have been willing to spend more lives than that to

see her reforms to the government through, but this is the first time she's been calm enough at the right moment to realize that everything is real, including the people she's condemned to death whether or not they deserved it. She is being hypocritical here, but it's kind of inevitable given the amount of harm she's willing to cause for the good of Callow. I think Black deliberately hit her with the blood sacrifices and then the executions so that she would feel the crushing guilt when she had time to deal with it, rather than, say, during a battle with the Swordsman.

Isa Lumitus

Well, that was not a very happy chapter. I'm in agreement with the other posters about Cat's reactions being off. Through the whole story she's been pretty accepting of deaths, including killing people in cold blood. The most I would expect of her is a dejected sense of "the thing about planning for innocents to die in the future, is that the future turns into the present" as she watched the executions.

It was a pity seeing Elise die. She's about the only person who's death I could see really impacting Cat's feelings. I wonder if Cat will later think that she could have saved Elise's life by taking her as a slave. Obviously, this would be a terrible idea, but I could see the thought coming at times when Cat's mind wanders to past regrets.

Also, aside from her uncharacteristic squeamishness, I'm not clear on exactly what problem Cat is having with her name. Last chapter, she deliberately chose an action that would kill thousands of people, both innocent and not. This was a betrayal of both her homeland, and the Empire. And she did this because she expected to gain more power from it. How is this not in line with her Name? How is this not Evil? I'd ask if her Name required her to be Stupid-Evil in alignment, but Black implies that this isn't the case.

On an unrelated note, the table of contents isn't working for me. This chapter's link was off the screen, leading me to think that there was no update until just now.

[erraticerrata](#)

Her unusual reaction to the executions and her troubles with her Name are related. Hints have been left in the following chapter, though it might be hard to pick up on. Slavery is actually illegal in the Empire since its founding, as it was associated with the Miezans who are still very much despised in Praes. The Kingdom of Callow never really practiced it either, and broadly speaking most Good-aligned nations have a cultural bias against it.

As for the table of contents, it's an issue I'm working on fixing at the moment.

AvidFan

You know, I'd be interested to hear Black's reasons for doing what he's doing. What's his endgame?

As for our protagonist... Innocence -9,000, Evilness +1, Character Development +1.

[erraticerrata](#)

Black's had the same end game for over thirty years. If you manage to guess it, I'll be very impressed.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Well, apparently it includes turning his own Squire against him. Why else would he bother with a public execution, instead of sending them to Human Resources? Mazus was a special case, sure, worth hanging to make a point. But nameless rebels? Cut their legs off, so they can't be rescued without a truly amazing Healer, blame their deaths on the fire, and ship them off to blood mages on the far side of the Empire.

Letouriste

You completely mise the point of these executions. Or the presence of the crowd. Back said it himself, it's to put fear in the populace heart. This has as much impact as mazus death for anyone not from Laure

Unmaker

Typos:

(not cross-checked with the other list; may be duplicates)

(the opening quote looks funny, the first line is larger than the rest)

(many of the paragraph breaks are single line feeds instead; I presume WordPress has much to answer for, since other authors have this happen too)

Deoraithe, "you
Deoraithe, "you

fell form above
fell from above

a change a clothes
a change of clothes

Should I sent
Should I send

concerned. There
concerned. There

Elise. Our
Elise. Our

Squire have ground
Squire gave ground

again and again he was forced to give ground, pushed out of her quarters until he was at the head of the stairs
(I understand the idea behind this, but with the construction “pushed” would refer to “ground”, which doesn’t make sense)

Had anyone but a Named done that on full plate they would have broken their wrist for their trouble
(not really, see all the martial arts styles that teach how to hit hard objects, <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/G%C5%8Dj%C5%AB-ry%C5%AB> as a specific example; but that sort of thing is not in this genre, I guess)

I was alone in the room, I saw as I took a look around: sparsely furnished in the Callowan style...
(this sentence is awkward, and the overuse of colons instead of other sentence constructions is back; I keep mentioning it because it keeps bothering me, not trying to be a pain)

help from Praesi
(should that be ‘a’ Praesi?)

“Stop.”
“Turn around.”
(tags are misplaced on these – opening quote is bold but the closing one isn’t)

people I’d willingly set aside for the company the monsters killing them
(I think there should be an ‘of’ between ‘company’ and ‘the’)

Reactions:

So the Lone Swordsman’s blade causes hard-to-heal wounds.
Unsurprising, I guess.

I am going with the chorus here and saying that Catherine’s reaction seems a little over the top. As “late” as the last century, experimenting on convicts was allowed (see Tuskegee syphilis experiment, although note that race was also involved in

that), so the kind of thinking she has for the death-row convicts is anachronistic. I would expect her to have more reaction to the hangings and Elise, but even “good” justice in medieval societies was heavy-handed when it came to rebellion against the crown. It would make sense if it is a result of backlash from her Name, but we only have circumstantial evidence for that.

While the traitor designation is apt, and there were plenty of witnesses, tying her to the goblinfire makes no sense. Chidder did that in an open room with plenty of people – someone would have seen it despite the combat going on.

“An acceptable loss, if I am also feared.”
Machiavelli, anyone?

[erraticerrata](#)

The goblinfire’s been linked publicly with the fight between the claimants, which she is the only survivor of – with victory comes the blame, unfortunately. The collateral damage might actually boost her reputation in some circles, though.

Anastas

“Machiavelli, anyone?”

Not quite. Machiavelli taught (if you accept *The Prince* as straightforward teaching rather than some kind of satire) that it’s best for a ruler to be both loved and feared by his subjects, but since that’s a very hard balance to match, you’ll probably need to choose one or the other, and in that case it’s generally better for the sake of effective, stable leadership to take their fear rather than their love. However, he noted (and this is something many forget or never knew), you need to make sure that they don’t fear you so much that they start to HATE you, because that mixture of hatred and fear is potent enough to start a revolt, which, in the BEST case (for you, at least), is going to destabilize and distract you, possibly for years. Meanwhile, Black’s reasoning is “They ALREADY hate me, so I might as well reinforce their fear while I have the chance”.

Black’s been at this business for a while now, so I’m sure he’s more than smart and prepared enough to know how to avert, suppress, or use the revolt Machiavelli would’ve predicted (in the unlikely event that such an uprising ever gained traction), but the fact is that with those executions he kinda did the exact OPPOSITE of the Machiavellian thing. Not that I know exactly what the Machiavellian thing would be in this case. It still probably wouldn’t be nice, but it wouldn’t be a highly public mass execution including many people who weren’t actually resistance members.

FirstDragon

Agree with the previous comments. Seems as if, in an effort to dredge up plenty of emotional turmoil and angst, you ended up pushing the MC's behavior over the easily accepted/believable realm. Perhaps if her healing / resurrection had required a several dozen prisoners...no actually...how about the sacrifice of some of the traitors who would have otherwise been hanged. Yup, that would tap into some nasty and deep feelings of guilt as well as work in terms of a delightfully ironic conclusion. Plus, if you're trying to keep blood magic to scale then saving the half-necro empowered half-dead Squire should cost a lot more than just three lives anyway.

Sure, I biatch. But that's just because I'm a grumpy critic who actually likes your story.

Only Some Stardust

I'm cool with how she was portrayed. A little hypocrisy is human nature. You just need to show better that it is indeed hypocrisy, maybe with a reflection how strange it was she cared about one life and not another.

stevenneiman

"Squire [have->gave] ground fluidly"

"{''}That's the thing with practical sorts, Commander,'" a number of other paragraph-starting lines of dialog are also missing the first quote mark.

"So you're punishing me by killing Callowans?" I snarled."
renders in a different font, but grammatically correct.

I guess this shows that Black is perfectly willing to kill good people to get what he wants. What that is remains to be seen.

Godzilla the Great

Rereading the story, and this chapter makes WAY more sense the second time around! Not to spoil anything, but there is a method to the madness, and the payoff is very much worth it!

[rmcd94](#)

Well this sudden morality makes the character not only unempathetic but seriously annoying.

She killed two people who were not on death row, who would have been in prison for only 5 years. Yet for some reason people who must do an awful fucking lot worse are not to be killed?

Her disgusting double standards are far worse than Black's utilitarian standard

[rmcd94](#)

Also stupid unimmersive stuff like her just waking up in perfect time for the execution... Were they literally waiting on her? Also I still don't get how people can think she is the squire when there clearly already is a squire on stage

jimhenry1973

Where do you get the idea that there is already a Squire around? I see no textual evidence for that.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Likewise.

stevenneiman

That's the thing with practical sorts, Commander," Squire told her gently. "We cheat." This was missing an opening quote "arrows as they fell [form->from] above."

"my Name would be [equally as] blunt." should be just one of those.

I'll talk to Scribe, then," again, missing opening quote

What does he need me for?"

That's still burning?"

The restoration of order,"

You bound my Name,"

I will have no part in this," more with no first quote mark

"So you're punishing me by killing Callowans?" I snarled." This is rendered smaller and in a different font, when I assume it was supposed to be italic

"Sitting there on his horse, looking down on me [from->from] above."

I'm guessing it might have been some kind of weird computer problem considering how many times you dropped opening quotes, especially given that I haven't noticed that problem anywhere else at all.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Still on my first read through, and I'm glad at least one other commenter wasn't bothered by Cats reactions. I thought she was weirdly not herself, but that's not unbelievable or even surprising, I didn't think she seemed healed enough to be up and walking around.

Two possible ideas for why she woke up conveniently just in time for the executions: deliberate meddling of Black's, or just story universe being story universe.

On a binge-read it is jarring to get such a hazy hangover of a chapter after the previous one's energy and intoxication, not the most awesome reading that makes me want to tell everyone about it, regardless of appropriate it apparently will be to the story. But Godzilla says it'll be worth it, and I don't see any reason to doubt him. So that's something.

LOL

Funny that the rebellion group so screwed so badly by a stranger girl out of nowhere just because they take her in so easily.

Letouriste

This blood magic is so convenient! What are the limitation apart the need of bodies? Why not using that more? Like in war, by using enemies soldiers or for the face of sacker...

shade098

Missing the " whenever you start a sentence with somebody talking, it's fine when it's the same person but not when it's two or more people.

Lumi

RIP Elise... 🥺

Inkorami

Hahahaha. What a cheap Bitch. So it's okay to doom thousands, if not tens of thousands, to death by war and all the horribleness that comes with it but it's not okay for a countries General to hang traitors who tried to assassinate the Countess of a city? What utter bullshit. Catherine has such a sense of self-cantered morality it's kind of sickening.

One minute she dooms thousands to death through War all for her own benefit, innocents and not so innocents alike, the next she pukes and acts disgusted and horrified because three death row inmates instead of simply dying instead died to keep her alive.

It's disgusting. I hope she sees and acknowledges her hypocrisy in the future. Perhaps with someone rubbing it in her face. Because she's no better in the slightest than all those she judges. Hell, with how she pretends to herself to be better than how she really is, she's in some ways even worse. If there's no place for a Black Knight in the world she wants to make... there's no damn place for her either. Because they're so very much the same deep down. He just knows it, while she pretends otherwise and hate and schemes.

Loony

Everyone is complaining about characterization, but I find the most awkward thing about this chapter is the formatting. WTF, can't the author be bothered to come back and at least add all the missing " symbols? I found the chapter almost unreadable because of it.

Ardk

Fun story so far, but very disappointing formatting.
Hard to stay immersed without a single paragraph that doesn't have some issue of sorts..

A few careless typos is expected in a serial, but this much is just total disregard for the quality of the work in my opinion.

Ubiquitous Omnipresent Entity

You seem to be missing the open quotes at the beginning of a new paragraph with someone talking, starting on the last line of the italicized portion

[Bruno Neves Oliveira \(@Nephandu\)](#)

I am surprised that in the Empire there are still people on "death row". Seems very impractical to just let people live for a time while still condemned to die. Why not hang them all already? The executions here seem very efficient, looking at how many were hanged on such a short call.

[ubiquitousomnipresententity](#)

I feel like they are likely just keeping them barely alive so that they can do a mass execution at the end of the month or something, rather than individual executions every couple of days.

WealthyAardvark

A tiny typo:

Tear fell
-> Tears

Boobah

You gotta love a guy who has, as part of his 'not left handed' statement, a disclaimer that that isn't what he's doing. It's very Amadaeus, though, because despite it being a lie it's a literal truth. Also a distraction for the telling blow.

Mickey

When you are knocked out for two days, you cannot hold your bladder. Her underwear must have been soaked as she was changing in front of Captain.

Robert Trocki

Just want to say, after reading Worm and Mother of learning, I have been Searcy for a web serial that grabbed me the same as those two did...and this one has grabbed me. I do agree that this chapter was a little weak with the somewhat out of character responses to the situation... well at least it seems that her reactions were a bit more harsh than previously shown for her character...but either way, I'm loving this! Thanks Erratic!

Robert Trocki

*searching

Midas0

This... Why haven't I read this sooner

[vuthuha912](#)

It is fine to feel sad for your countrymen but you sign up for this so you just gonna suck it up, Cat. It is not like there is anything you could do for them. Once they are discovered, they are doomed.

Besides, Black is killing people who would kill him if there were a chance – they are rebelling after all. Look on the bright side, hanging is actually a very humane way to go. In Ancient China standards, hanging is the tamest way to go. Some of our country's rebel leaders got cut into 108 pieces or their limbs got torn off by 4 horses or the traditional stoning or thrown into a river or get experimented on. There are so many nasty ways and I think hanging is the one with the least amount of cruelty.

Death is part of the deal when you are a rebel, I am sure every adult there knows what they are getting into. They know and still do it anyway so they are true patriots. When you have a chance, you can build a shrine or stuffs like that to honor your countrymen.

I think Black is doing his job and while you may find humans sacrificed distastefully, he obviously does it for your sake, to save your life so you are in a position to judge him. The three inmates are going to die anyway, just consider them organ donors.

Rraune

"dancing away before he could strike back and leaving behind a shallow cut on his cheek."

her cheek

"Squire have ground fluidly, trying to find an angle where his sword's longer reach would be able to come into play."
No idea how to fix the first part

"and the shriek of those arrows as they fell from above."
from above

"Ambitions such as your demand sacrifice, so stand here and watch.""
as yours

"There was no believing this was dream now."
was a dream

Lynn

oof, the thing with elise... that hurt. seeing them flirting back and forth was kind of heartwarming considering cat's path so far, and as she said, she hasn't really taken any time to relax since she met black. to have that torn away so viciously, with the hate in her eyes as she fell... i can only imagine what that must've felt like.

as for the formatting and oddly empathetic cat, everyone else has already dog-piled on that issue so bring it up again would be pointless. as much as hypocrisy runs in human veins it was a really sudden jump from spiraling villain to upstanding hero.

still liking the story 😊

Chapter 14: Villain

"All lessons worth learning are drenched in blood."
-Dread Empress Triumphant, First and Only of Her Name

We rode for Ater.

I forced myself awake for my sword lessons and kept up my readings, but I hadn't spoken a word to Black since Summerholm. The Fields stretched in every direction around us, farms and grasslands as far as the eye could see: empty, most of them. The farmer seemed aware an Imperial party was coming through and they avoided the sight of us. I spent my evenings in silence, staring at closed books and thinking about the city I'd just left. I'd made a mistake. There were things about the way I'd reacted on the day of the hangings that bothered me, and I had no real explanation for them. Oh, I was still more disgusted than I could

properly put into words. I'd taken lives before, but learning about the sacrifices had been a different matter. I'd killed for justice, when no one else was willing to give it. I'd killed in battle, when my enemies left me no other choice. That three prisoners, no matter how they'd ended up on death row, had been slaughtered like cattle to keep me alive still made me nauseous. They hadn't died for a greater purpose, they'd died for my sake. Used up for their blood like animals. Their deaths had been unasked for, and they were not my fault, but they were my responsibility nonetheless.

As for the hangings... I could see, now that the heat of the moment had passed, that they'd been doomed to die. The Knight wasn't wrong that they'd committed treason. Sparing them would have weakened Imperial authority and let a pack of conspirators who'd already been part of the murder of a Governor on the loose. That thought did not, however, extend to the sympathizers who'd died like the rest. How many in the Lost Crown had actually been part of the Sons of Streges? The group had been a small one, and ineffective before the Lone Swordsman had gotten involved. *There certainly weren't fifty of them, and that's how many got the noose.* Were they innocent? No, perhaps not. But they were mainly guilty of hating the Empire, and how could they be blamed for that? If Black hung every sympathizer in Summerholm, there'd be nobody left in the city but the Legions.

It wasn't enough, though. There was more to it. It hadn't helped that I'd nearly lost my life the night before and been told of death after death the moment I woke up. My hands still shook when I thought of how close I'd come to dying that night, slowly bleeding out on the floor as the hero walked away. If he'd been even a little more thorough, just a little less sure my wound would kill me... I took a deep breath and steadied my hand. The thought of going into a fight again had dread creeping up my spine, and I hated every moment of it. The whispers from the crowd had pushed me, in a way. For all that I'd pushed through as I walked, even now the memory of them stung. I'd thought I was prepared to be called a traitor by my people, I'd gone into this knowing they'd consider me one, but after actually living through it I knew I'd been anything but. Some part of me had wanted to set myself apart from what was happening, to prove I wasn't betraying the land I wanted to save.

My conversation with the Swordsman kept plaguing my thoughts. *"How can you possibly justify working for these tyrants?"* he'd asked. I'd dismissed him as yet another heroic imbecile, back then, but- I frowned. There was no but. There should be no but. Why did a single conversation with a man I held no real respect for shake me so? It wasn't like he'd made any good arguments. Just platitudes about kingdoms and banners, the kind of sentimental logic someone with no solid reasoning would use. There was something at play here I didn't understand. I still

couldn't feel my Name, and the last time I had was in the wake of letting the hero go – they were related, in some way. I'd failed some sort of test: my Role had found me wanting in some manner. It burned me that the only person I could have discussed this with was the Black Knight, and I just *couldn't*. Putting aside that I'd knowingly tried to push a hero into starting an insurrection in Callow, just the sight of the man was enough to fill me with cold anger.

Three times, his voice had turned strange as he gave orders. Three times I had obeyed, regardless of what I wanted. That he'd casually commandeered my own body wasn't something I ever intended to forget – and no one held grudges quite like Callowans.

The days passed one after another and I dug into the books. Most of them were history, as it turned out. Praes had been a mess before the Empire was even declared: there'd been no less than four Soninke kingdoms in the north, fighting each other over land, and in the Hungering Sands the desert tribes had slaughtered each other brutally over ever-scarce resources. They only people they'd hated more were each other: the Taghreb had frequently raided into the southernmost Soninke kingdoms, stealing everything they could get their hands on and burning the rest. Back then the goblin tribes in the Grey Eyries had been nothing more than a presence looming in the background, though they'd already been forging iron weaponry when everyone else was still using bronze. In a sense the Clans had been the force to be reckoned with, back in those days: humans tread lightly around them, fearful of the great greenskin hordes in the Steppes that descended like a flood of death every few decades.

It was a feeble distraction, though, and the tension rose with every passing day. It had become nearly intolerable by the time we got to the Blessed Isle. The barren rock in the middle of the Wasaliti River had been the furthest Miezani stronghold on the continent, meant to be the stepping stone for an invasion of ancient Callow before the Licerian Wars put an abrupt end to those prospects. It had changed hands hundreds of times since those days, but the massive stone bridge linking the island to the ground from both sides still stood unbroken as a testament to superior Miezani engineering. The ancient fort had become a massive castle in the wake of Dread Empress Triumphant's fall, when the Kingdom of Callow had finally claimed it as its own. Before the Conquest it had been the fortress-temple of the Order of the White Hand, the steel-clad paladins who guarded the eastern border of the kingdom. For centuries they'd been a plague on the Empire, raiding beyond even the Green Stretch. There were still songs sung about the time they'd ridden up to the Nine Gates of Ater, leaving the corpse of a Praesi general in sight of the city walls as a warning against designs to the west.

It was a ruin now, the very stone blackened and burned by the largest deployment of goblinfire in Praesi history. The Order of the White Hand had been wiped out root and stem as the opening move of the Conquest, the paladins killed to the last man and woman so that they could never rise again. It had been the moment when Callow started taking the newest Black Knight seriously, though not quite enough: two weeks later the infamous massacre on the Fields of Streges had effectively broken the better part of the Kingdom's military strength. We rode under the broken arches of the only gate in silence, the wind hurling itself at the ruins sounding eerily like a dirge. It was said that if you listened closely you could still hear the screams of the two thousand who'd burned alive.

The sun was setting and the Blackguards immediately set to making camp under one of the larger towers, putting up the tents and starting a fire. Some of them had left the party to hunt earlier and caught a handful of rabbits they were intent on turning into stew, skinning the beasts and putting them into an iron cooking pot. I left Zombie in what must have once been the outer stables, avoiding the company of Black and Captain who were sitting by the fire. I could have just retired to my tent with a book and a candle, but after a long day's ride I felt like stretching my legs: I wandered off into the ruins, not quite sure what I expected to find. The fortress had been thoroughly ruined, I found out. Even the inside of most structures was scorched, and not a single roof had survived the taking of the Isle. Here and there skeletons peeked out from under the debris, the bones themselves blackened and warped as a grim reminder of the dangers of goblinfire.

I wasn't sure why the Empire had never bothered to rebuild and garrison the Blessed Isle, truth be told. As the only way across the river it seemed like a key position to hold, but the Praesi seemed happy enough to leave it a wreck. A warning against defiance, maybe? Maybe even they were unsettled by what had happened here during the Conquest. I let my feet take me wherever they felt, eventually ending up by the southern wall. The view from there was striking. To the west fields swallowed the horizon, tinted red by the light of the setting sun, and to the east the Imperial road stretched beyond what the eye could see. It went all the way to Ater, I knew, one of the larger projects undertaken by the Empire. *Dread Emperor Tenebrous*, I dredged up. He was the one to get it done. He'd seemed like a promising ruler early in his reign, until he'd made one deal too many with the Underworld and become convinced he was a giant spider stuck in a man's body. Things had swiftly gone downhill after that.

I got bored with the sights eventually, walking down a half-ruined set of stairs to make my way back to camp. I was getting hungry, and I still had some readings to get done before I went to bed. I crossed into an open courtyard surrounded by a quartet

of smaller bastions but stopped dead in my tracks when I realized I was no longer alone. Lounging on a miraculously untouched stone bench, a strikingly beautiful Soninke girl was watching me with a pleasant smile. I reached for my sword before realizing I'd left it back in camp – I no longer wore it outside of my lessons. All I had was my knife, and even in the dying light I could see that the Heiress had a bared blade resting across her lap.

"Catherine Foundling," the dark-skinned girl spoke amiably, her sing-song Mthethwa accent caressing the words. "It was past time we met properly."

"Heiress," I replied. "Didn't think you'd be inclined to talk, after what you did in Summerholm."

The aristocrat shrugged elegantly.

"It was nothing personal, Catherine," she told me. "I thought you were a threat, back then. This is how the game is played, yes?"

I grit my teeth. She'd set the other three claimants – well, maybe two, Rashid likely had gotten there on his own – on me and it was *nothing personal*? After a heartbeat I frowned.

"Back then," I repeated carefully.

Heiress smiled, warm and friendly. "I know better, now. I wasn't sure, after you let the hero go, but after that display in the Court of Swords there can be no doubt."

My blood ran cold. There'd been nobody else on the walls, when I'd pushed the Lone Swordsman into the river. How could she- No. She might be guessing. No need to hand her leverage she might not have.

"Not sure what you're talking about," I grunted. "The Swordsman got away on his own – heroes do that, you know."

The beautiful girl laughed. "Of course he did. I withdraw any implication to the contrary. Still, there's no need for us to be enemies. I've come with a peace offering, you see."

I raised an eyebrow. "I was under the impression that your Role and mine were supposed to be at odds," I pointed out.

"We would be," she agreed. "If you were a real Squire."

My fingers closed against the handle of my knife.

"Would you care to repeat that?" I whispered. "I didn't quite catch what you said."

She waved away the threat. "Come now, Foundling – you don't actually *want* to be the Squire, do you? If you did, that deplorable scene in Summerholm wouldn't have happened."

"I've killed for this Name," I replied coldly. "Careful, Heiress."

"I've killed for good theatre seats, my dear," the Soninke chuckled. "That's the way of things, in the Wasteland. That's why you're so disgusted with us, isn't it?"

"If you're looking for an impassioned defence of the Praesi moral fibre," I said through gritted teeth, "I'm afraid you're barking up the wrong tree."

"Oh, I quite agree with you," Heiress told me feelingly. "You're different, Catherine. Trying to be one of us can only hurt you. It's why I'm offering you a way out."

What?

"You're feeling trapped, right now," the other girl told me, "but you don't have to be. I have a ship waiting, and I can get you back to Laure safely. Or anywhere else you want to go, for that matter. You can start over without all this mess hanging over your head. Tonight. Just say the word."

My heartbeat stilled. She was saying the truth. I knew it in my guts, she was saying the truth. If I accepted, I'd set out on a ship tonight and leave before anyone could catch me. I couldn't go back to Laure, obviously, but I could sail down the Wasaliti until Mercantis and make my way into the Free Cities. I'd be beyond the Empire's reach, there. Safe.

"And if I refuse?" I asked quietly.

"Are you?" Heiress murmured, pleasant smile unwavering. "Refusing?"

It was such a pretty smile she had. Shame about the way it didn't reach her eyes.

"I think I am," I said.

She sighed, crossing her legs.

"I'd hoped we could do this without resorting to unpleasantness," she spoke. "Are you quite sure we can't come to terms?"

"More sure by the moment," I replied flatly.

"Well, then," Heiress said, all pretence of pleasantness melting away. "As we speak, I have men surrounding your orphanage in Laure. If I give the word everyone inside will be dead by

morning. The matron, the girls you shared a dormitory with, even the children. Put to the sword, every last one of them, unless you abandon your Name tonight."

For the second time, my blood ran cold. She'd spoken her threat the way other people talked of the weather – like it was nothing particularly noteworthy, just a way to make conversation. Was she bluffing? Maybe. But she had the resources to arrange this, and she didn't seem like the kind of person afraid to use every tool at her disposal.

"I'm not asking for your life," Heiress told me patiently. "Merely that you get out of my way."

"If you give the word," I repeated. "That assumes you're alive to do so."

She laughed. "I have come in the fullness of my Name, Catherine. You're powerless and as good as unarmed. And if that's not enough for you..."

She snapped her fingers and in near-silence four silhouettes stepped out of the spreading shadows. Thick cloaks hid their features, but there was no hiding the crossbows they were pointing at me. They were spread out in the courtyard, their lines of fire overlapping only on me.

"Be reasonable, Catherine," the Soninke said. "Surrender is the only rational course left to you."

I closed my eyes. How many girls were there, in the orphanage? At least forty, and a third of them no older than ten. She'd kill them and not lose a wink of sleep over it, if she thought she had to. Gods, I was so sick of this. Not even a month and I was so very tired. I opened my eyes and exhaled, looking up into the sky. The moon was out. I laughed.

"Thank you," I said.

Heiress frowned.

"I should thank Black too, I suppose," I continued quietly. "This was a lesson I needed to learn."

"I don't follow," my rival admitted.

"I've been thinking about this all wrong, you see. I was raised in Callow, and we see things differently. The shepherd boy picks up the fated sword, slays the dragon and is revealed to have been a prince all along." I smiled at her. "This was never going to be that kind of story."

Gods, I'd wanted it to. Deep down, I'd thought that just doing good things under an Evil Role would see me through this. That I

could walk that line without every really dirtying my hands in a way I'd regret for the rest of my life.

"Do it," I said. "Kill them. If I give in once, you'll just use it against me over and over again."

I couldn't beat the monsters by being better than them. I'd never had that in me. Too much impatience, too much recklessness. That was all right, though. There was another way: *be the bigger monster*.

"Do you think I'm bluffing?" Heiress asked, voice low and dangerous.

"I know you're not," I admitted. "Which is why I'm going to say this: if a single one of them dies, *I will make a monument to ruin of you*. All that has ever given you joy, I will turn to ashes. Everyone you've ever loved, I will break so thoroughly they die cursing your name. I will undo everything you've ever accomplished, wipe the slate of your existence so clean there won't be a person alive that remembers you were ever born. I will take no pleasure in it, but I will do it."

Eyes cold as ice, I bared my teeth.

"I will do it, so that the next time some smug Praesi prick tells me to surrender I can point to the wasteland that was once your home and watch them flinch."

"You don't have it in you," she replied, face blank.

"Try me," I hissed.

There was fear lurking under the beautiful mask and I relished it. It was about time those fuckers started taking me seriously.

"I could kill you, here and now," Heiress said.

"You could try," I corrected with a breathless laugh. "Here I am, abandoned by my Name with only a knife to defend myself. You've got four big men with crossbows and a fancy sword in your lap. Look into my eyes, Heiress – do I look afraid to you? You've stacked the odds, but have you stacked them *enough*?"

She hesitated. I'd never felt more alive than I did in that moment, when that clever little wretch took a look at me standing alone in her trap and faltered. I had nothing to me but my anger, but that was more than enough. I'd fought without a Name, long before I ever met the Calamities. I could do it again.

"Kill her," Heiress ordered, but I was already moving knife in hand.

Three strings twanged and I felt a bolt come within a hair's breadth of my throat. *Too slow.* I was on the first man before he could even drop his crossbow: I slid behind him, letting the last shot bury itself in his stomach. Laying a hand on his shoulder, I slid my knife across his throat and let him drop to the ground. By the time I was moving again, Heiress was nowhere in sight. *Stupid of you, my dear. If you'd stayed you might have won.* The second man had his sword out when I got to him, but after fighting real monsters every morning I could have laughed at how sloppy his stance was. He swung too wild and I slipped inside his guard, burying my blade in his eye to the hilt. I snatched his sword before it could drop to the ground, letting the third one come to me as the last henchman finished reloading. I flicked the tip of the blade in his direction and he backed off warily, though I circled to keep him between me and the man with the crossbow.

He seemed reluctant to attack and I grinned when I realized why: he was afraid of me. They both were. I'd just killed the other two like it was a stroll through the market and sent their employer running without even needing to fight her. I pushed forward, letting him catch my sword in a parry – he was too eager to keep me far away, and it cost him when I dropped the sword to catch his wrist. His eyes widened in panic but before he could say a word I punched him in the belly. No armour, only soft flesh, and I pried his fingers loose of his sword before hacking into his neck with it like I was reaping wheat. I turned my eyes to the last one, bloodied blade in hand as the tip of his crossbow shook in his unsteady hands.

"Pray you don't miss," I said. "You'll be dead before you get to reload."

Steadying his hands, the man took aim carefully. Whether I could have dodged the quarrel or not would remain a mystery: before he could do anything, a hand of shadow slithered its way up his throat and started choking him. The minion pawed at it frantically, but the shadow stayed on his skin. A minute passed before he fell to the ground, blue in the face and eyes bloodshot. I cast an eye around the courtyard and saw Black sitting on top of the wall in the back, legs dangling off the edge. He seemed amused, the mask of indolence he liked to affect once more painted over his face. The dark-haired man remained silent, breaking off a piece of bread and popping it into his mouth. I strode towards the first man I'd killed, wrenching out my knife and wiping the blade on his cloak. I felt my Name stir deep inside of me as I sheathed the knife and smiled a hard smile. *Liked that, did you? Good. We're far from done, you and I.* Slowly, I turned to face the Black Knight.

"I've missed enough lessons," I said. "Let's get to work."

How can you justify working for these tyrants? the Lone Swordsman had asked. I finally had my answer. *Justifications only matter to the just.*

Todd

Wow...

Excellent chapter, can't really think of anything else to type beside more wows :p

NerfContessa

And akua shows that without her, cat would have turned her back on her name.

Also her motto appears for the first time, if not as grammatically correct as later.

Oh, good times.

Cpt. Obvious

That skirts close to spoiler territory.

Respect the new readers!

dadycoool

It's beautiful coming back to the beginning and seeing things I only now realize the significance of. Too bad I can't gush without having to worry about Spoiler Warriors coming after me.

Sean Coker

Oh shit.

The power of the dark side is seductive, no?

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Ha, this story is everything Phantom Menace wasn't

daniel73

Well that was something. I'm glad she didn't give in to the threat because she's right about how it wouldn't end but her being willing to have 40 innocents die seems like a step down a very

bad path. I hope she stays a pragmatic morale person working for th bad guys rather than joining them fully.

Really enjoyed this chapter

Isa Lumitus

I actually found her being willing to let 40 innocents die reassuring. Considering that in chapter 12 she planned for thousands to die, I'd have been a little disgusted if she balked at forty.

Overall, I got the impression that #13 was having the costs of her actions shoved in her face. This chapter is her choosing to go ahead anyway.

nipi

Never negotiate with terrorists. Itll just encourage them to continue.

She knew she would be trading some innocent lives for many more when she decided to take up Blacks offer. Hell she knew it when she planned to go to the Academy. What kind of orders was she expecting to receive from the Empire? Besides she didnt even like anyone in the orphanage. She was an outcast there. (Dont remember if the other girls were mean to her or not. I have a "vibe" they were.)

Still dont understand why having DEATH ROW inmates die for her would be such a shock? The traven girl and some of the patrons maybe but not the prisoners.

[erraticerrata](#)

The part that disgusted her was not so much the death as the fact that the death was used as a tool for her personal benefit. There's a great deal of difference between killing for the 'greater good' and sacrificing human beings to get your wounds healed. But you're correct, that is an unusual position for her to take given what we've seen of her so far.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

These comments are interesting, I take it that readers of this type of story are apparently very sensitive to a character acting outside their, well, character. Maybe it's that in real life, people grow and change gradually, and here Cat is, making incredible leaps and bounds every other week, as if there's magic pushing her along or something!

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

"I hope she stays a pragmatic morale person working for th bad guys rather than joining them fully."

Sorry to put this so bluntly (please focus on the content instead of the tone! If that's even possible) but did you read a different chapter somehow? That she is abandoning that road & turning her back on it altogether was the entire point of the last two chapters!

...

Then she will be no different than someone just doing good things under an Evil Role would see her through things. That she could walk that line without every really dirtying she hands in a way she will regret for the rest of she life. And that is becoming something that is increasingly common in typical dark but naive fantasy stories these days

x

Typos:

The farmer seemed aware
farmers

They only people they'd hated more were each other
The

without every really dirtying my hands
ever

" Kill them.
extra space

, but I was already moving knife in hand.
moving, knife

Unmaker

Typos:

but the were
but they were

for my my sword
for my sword

" Kill
"Kill

throat and and
throat and

They only people
The only people

They only people they'd hated more were each other: the Taghreb had frequently raided into the southernmost Soninke kingdoms (this seems contradictory – would it make more sense to say the only people they hated more were the other kingdoms? because right now it is saying that they hated each other more, but raided elsewhere)

He seemed amused, the mask of indolence he liked to affect once more painted over his face.
(not wrong, but amused doesn't match indolence, since indolence is sloth/laziness)

Reactions:

"he'd made one deal too many with the Underworld and become convinced he was a giant spider stuck in a man's body"
This is interesting. Implies yet another kingdom/power in the world.

Thus entirely missing the point of Black's strength – he isn't the bigger monster, he is the smarter monster. Hopefully that comes back to her.

[erraticerrata](#)

The Underworld is another name for the Hells – past Dread Emperors weren't above bargaining with devils and demons for that little extra boost.
Catherine doesn't always learn the right lessons, yeah. But she'll get there. More than a few people are invested in seeing that happen.

stevenneiman

Well, Black is kind of a mix. He might not be earthshakingly powerful, his needing to fight smart against someone like Captain shows that clearly enough. However, he is known as being both brilliant and willing to do anything he needs to to get what what he wants. He is someone who nobody wants to mess with because if they push him far enough he will destroy cities and not lose a night of sleep over it. He might not be the stronger monster, but he can definitely be the most evil if he has to, and he's deadly smart when he is.

stevenneiman

"I took a deep breath [a->and] steadied my hand."
"I was already moving {,} knife in hand."

I don't get why the Heiress bothered with any of that. She had four crossbows pointed at a Nameless target who she didn't need anything but cessation from and who didn't at first know she was there. That kind of mercy is going to get her ruined if she tries to play in the big leagues like she does.

[destrark](#)

Hahaha. Looking back on this from a later point in the story. That is extremely naïve to think Heiress didn't know exactly what she was doing and to not go into the confrontation without setting it up so she'd win something even if she 'lost'.

...

Not that it helps her in the end 😊 Hahaha.

NomadElves

True, but she had tried that plan already, or close to it, and it had failed. She sent almost-named people after an almost-named Catherine out of nowhere, and all three had lost.

Arkeus

The last sentence, sadly, seems to mean she still isn't realizing that she is flat out a Praesi now, and not just a Traitor like she used to be.

She'll take a while to really get it, though, sadly.

Letouriste

You underestimate roots^^

She will always be callowan, she will just pick a few things from praesi.

She is not a traitor, more like a collaborator...the difference is narrow but exist.

That's the same for every single person out there learning another language/living in another country.

RMcD

"Three strings twanged and I felt a bolt come within a hair's breadth of my throat. Too slow. I was on the first man before he could even drop his crossbow: I slid behind him, letting the last shot bury itself in his stomach"

Yawn, yawn, yawn.

Why were they even within 50 feet of her? How do you miss that? What's the point in bringing 4 men, she could have brought 100

men but plot armour saves the day I guess! Just any form of tension I had felt disappeared faster than Heiress.

stevenneiman

Heiress thought she was dealing with Cat Nameless. Besides, 100 men would have been impossible to sneak in and probably less effective against a Named that 4. Remember that plot armor is a real thing here, and there's no reason to believe that Conservation of Ninjutsu doesn't apply. Also, there's nowhere they could have been that wasn't within reach of someone with super speed.

Most importantly, villains traditionally underestimate their opponents and give them a series of increasing challenges to improve with, and Heiress is nothing if not traditional in her villainy.

Novice

These kinds of comments are funny now in retrospect, knowing what Heiress really had in mind.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Bah. She's *not being smart about this*. Although I suppose she could be misinterpreting Black's motives? Black did drive a serious wedge into their relationship, and it must have been on purpose if he wasn't holding the Villain Ball. I kind of think he wants a genuinely ethical person with the firepower of an Evil Overlord, actually. But I'm not certain his actions match up.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Farmer, farmers, either one works (the former referring to everyone via the patriarch)

So, that inexplicably pristine bench Heiress found...did that spot not burn twenty years ago, knowing it would be needed for that bit of showmanship, or did reality change the moment Heiress made the decision to go there?

stevenneiman

"The [farmer->farmers] seemed aware an Imperial party was coming"

linnilalartyr

OMG!! This is so good!!

So she lost her name power isn't because of she let the hero go but because she wavering in her determination. So that it!!!

Tsukiyumi

I don't quite get her problem with the blood of three dead men being used to heal her. This way their death was useful at least.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Of course someone named Unseelie wouldn't understand why human sacrifice might bother some people

Unseelie

I try to stay true to my name.

(But I actually meant the question – the men would have died anyway and she is a fairly rational person.)

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

I don't believe it's really a spoiler to say this issue isn't finished in this chapter, it's going to come up a bunch more in future ones. Read on a bit before you get too hung up here xD

Unseelie

I have. Note that my first comment was half a year ago. But I do not remember much about this issue anymore.

Theoretically_human

cat you are so hot right now

oliverwashere

Was she still training with her damaged goblin sword? What happened to the hero's magic sword after she kicked it away from him?

[Bruno Neves Oliveira \(@Nephandu\)](#)

I do hope Heiress kills everyone in the orphanage, if only to see Catherine become more evil pursuing utter revenge on her.

agumentic

Ah, the humble beginnings. It's impressive just how far and how deep the relationship between Cat and the Heiress grew from this moment, and how they themselves changed.

Furion

Suddenly shes more proficient with weapons than an assassin despite practicing for a week? I don't buy it sorry, plot hole.

tynam

Not more proficient, more _aggressive_. If you've ever trained with swords you'll know that one of the first lessons you learn is not to think that you can automatically win a fight just because you've trained with swords.

I actually have trained with swords, twice a week for years. If someone like Cat came at me with a knife I would _run_. Skill doesn't make you immune to harm in a fight. Nothing does.

corrado alamanni

Another step towards hell , eye for an eye will make us all blind.

Good story!

Sen. Treytoro the Trustowrthy

Coming back to re read the Guide from the beginning, and with the context of future events in mind, this stuff is pure gold. All the little details that feed in to how she is perceiving the world around her, and learning and changing in response to it. Then how those details can be seen in a different light, after we learn more about the world, how it works, and what these other characters were planning and doing at this time.

Rraune

"and they were not my fault, but the were my responsibility nonetheless."

but they were

"I reached for my my sword before realizing"

for my sword

"I strode towards the first man I'd killed, wrenching out my knife and wiping the blade on his cloak."

second man

She killed the second with the knife to the eye and then took his sword.

Lynn

excellence. if i had any complaints, they're gone. i'm thrilled to keep reading.

Chapter 15: Company

"I've found that the best way to win at shatranj is usually to turn into a giant snake and tear my opponent's throat out."

– Dread Empress Vindictive III

We'd stopped for a late lunch before coming in sight of Ater. Black had pushed our usual personal lesson earlier in the day, since the evening would likely be spent introducing me at the Imperial Court, and he was spending more time talking than dipping his millet bread in the broth the Blackguards had put together.

"Early Praesi Names were divided along ethnic lines," the green-eyed man spoke as I dug into my own bowl ravenously. "The Taghreb had the likes of the Red Fox – usually a thief, always clever – and the Grey Lion, often the strongest chief of the time. Soninke Names were associated with the rulers of their kingdoms, though some Champion derivatives arose during particularly brutal wars."

"They're all gone now, though?" I asked, hastily swallowing my mouthful when he raised his eyebrow at me.

"None have been seen in over a millennia," he agreed. "Roles are usually a reflection of the people they spring from, you'll find, and it's been a long time since humans inside the Empire have ceased any designs of independence. Why settle for ruling a fraction of a realm, when you could claim the Tower itself?"

I could see his point. That was one of the most seductive parts of the Imperial philosophy, I'd found: in Old Callow, the throne had only ever passed between the various branches of the Fairfax dynasty. It would, theoretically, have been possible for one the duchies to topple them – and some had wanted to. The Dukes of Liesse, in particular, had never quite managed to forget that they'd been kings before the unification of Callow. In practice, though, the fact that more often than not the kingship came with a Name had seen them rule unchallenged. In Praes, though, anybody could claim the Tower if they were clever and ruthless enough. The High Lords got a turn in the seat more often than commoners, certainly, but the chronicles of the Empire were full of instances where a man or a woman with strong powers or a stronger vision had butchered their way to power. There was no Imperial dynasty: the longest a family had ever managed to claim the Tower was three generations, and they'd been wiped out to the last when the third Emperor was overthrown.

"I don't recall hearing about any greenskin names, not since the Declaration of Empire," I noted. "Which is weird, considering some ogres got Roles and there's a lot less of them than orcs or goblins."

Black set aside his bowl, offering me the full weight of his attention. We weren't reconciled, not exactly. I would not forget or forgive the day we'd left Summerholm anytime soon, and he'd smelled the rat in the way the Lone Swordsman had managed to get away. Still, he spoke and I listened. For better or worse, the Calamity was the teacher I'd been given and I intended to learn everything I could from him. His successes, while ghastly, had still been successes. More than that, I'd planted the seeds of a war so I had better be ready to fight it when the time came.

"When it comes to the Clans," he said, "we have the Miezans to blame for that. They systematically dismantled every aspect of orc culture. They went as far as razing the holy grounds of the Broken Antler Horde, the largest city on Callernia at the time. Roles do not come to be in a void, Catherine. There needs to be a weight behind them, a cultural imperative. Had the Clans broken away from Praes after the Declaration we might have seen a rebirth of their old Names, but the first Dread Empress managed to keep them in the fold by the skin of her teeth."

"That's kind of sad," I admitted.

"Their most common Name was the Warlord," Black murmured. "Mostly known for their propensity to put entire villages to the torch and take back their inhabitants to the Steppes as thralls."

"Not *too* sad, then," I mused.

He chuckled. "As for the Tribes, it's trickier matter. They were never outright conquered by the Miezans, as you know. They knelt after the first few defeats and so kept the majority of their holdings."

"There's not a lot about goblins, in the books you gave me," I told him. "Some stuff about their alchemies and when they started getting interested in engineering, but even the explanation about the Matrons was a little vague."

"That's because there's nearly no reliable literature on them," Black replied. "They're frustratingly secretive, not that they haven't been given reason to be. Personally, I suspect that they *do* have Names."

I raised an eyebrow. "And they just what, never stepped out of the Grey Eyries? Roles are a little flashier than that."

"They might not be," the Knight said, "if the culture that spawned them values secrecy above all else."

Huh. That made a twisted sort of sense, actually. For all we knew, the Matrons themselves might have been Named and just never told anyone. Roles like Assassin had aspects that allowed them to hide from scrutiny, so it wasn't exactly unheard of. I had

another question I wanted to ask, about the Name of Chancellor and how it had come to be forbidden – just laying claim to it apparently qualified as high treason – but before I could get anything out Scribe popped out of nowhere. More damningly, she managed to do it right next to me.

“Bloody Hells, how do you keep doing that?” I blurted out. “We’re standing in the middle of an open field, Scribe. The only footing here is *rocks*.”

She didn’t reply, though I’m pretty sure a glimmer of amusement flashed through her eyes.

“Scribe,” the green-eyed man frowned. “You don’t usually interrupt during lessons.”

Without a word, she handed him a scroll. It was, I saw, sealed with black wax and the official Imperial seal. *That looks serious*. Black broke it open and scanned the contents, face turning pale when he got halfway through.

“You’re sure?” he asked her.

“I have three different witnesses. Reliable,” the plain-faced woman replied.

“*Fuck*,” the Black Knight cursed, and my eyes widened. It was the first time I’d ever heard him curse. “We have those laws for a *reason*, Scribe. Not even Triumphant was fool enough to break the Decree and she broke nearly every other law on record.”

Weeping Heavens, he actually sounded worried.

“What happened?”

The pale-skinned man rubbed the bridge of his nose, dropping the scroll on his lap.

“The Tower just received a Red Letter,” he said, tone grim.

I burst out laughing. “Really? The gnomes are knocking at the door? You could have at least put a little effort into the punchline.”

My mirth fell flat when neither of their expressions changed. “You’re serious,” I realized. “Are you telling me they actually exist?”

“Yes,” Black confirmed flatly. “And that’s the second Red Letter the Tower received this century. If we receive a third, the consequences would be... dire.”

“The gnomes, like the people with the huge metal armours and the flying machines that scream? We’re talking about those guys?”

"Have you ever heard of Kerguel, Catherine?" Black asked.

I shrugged. "The lost city that got sunk into the ocean by the Gods. There's a great deal of bad poetry about it."

"It was a real place," the Knight told me. "One of the most powerful nations in the world at a time where the great Baalite cities were a collection of mud huts. They had an interest in natural physics and pursued it heedlessly, until one day they received a letter in a red leather sheath."

That wasn't the story as I'd been told it, so I listened in silence.

"The letter told them to cease their research or face extinction," Black spoke into the quiet of the Wasteland. "The lords of Kerguel laughed and dismissed it as an esoteric joke. They laughed again, when a more strongly-worded letter came a month later."

He paused, letting out a deep breath.

"They stopped laughing, when they lost contact with all their colonies. It was already too late by then. The Yan Tei have the only surviving records on the subject, and they say that the fleet of metal ships that came for Kerguel darkened the sky itself – it could be seen from miles away."

"You mean they..." I trailed off.

"They sunk the island into the sea," Black said. "Sorceries Kerguel had spent decades refining slid off the ships like water off a duck's back. The explosions were larger than anything that's been seen before or since. By the time the gnomes were done, there was not a living soul left on the barren rocks."

I sat there listlessly, watching my teacher's expression turn coldly furious.

"So you can understand how after that farming machine under Nefarious got us a Letter, I'm a little irritated that the Hearthmaker tribe was *foolish* enough to start playing with powders."

"What are you going to do?" I asked quietly.

"They need to be purged," he sighed. "Every last one of them, and the research destroyed. The Matrons will have a fit, but there's no other way."

"You could fight them," I said. "If they're threatening you, you must have found something they're afraid of."

Black smiled mirthlessly. "In the grander scheme of things, Catherine, I'm the petty warlord of a backwater kingdom. The only nation on our continent that can be considered something other than a regional power is the Kingdom Under. When one of the *real* world powers tells the Empire to do something, we do it. I will not face destruction in the name of pride."

Well, shit. When someone with my teacher's usual level of self-confidence told you someone was out of their league, they weren't likely to be wrong. Would the gnomes also destroy Callow, if they came? It was part of the Empire, at the moment. *Hopefully I'll never have to find out.*

"We're going to Foramen, then?"

Black frowned. "You aren't. It's still too early for you to deal with the Matrons."

I scoffed. "Can't know if we don't try, can we?"

"Spoken like someone who's never been in the same room as those cunning old bats," my teacher replied, faintly amused. "No, you'll be going to the Academy until I'm done."

Funny how these things went, wasn't it? A month ago that had been the plan, and now it looked like I'd get what I'd wanted.

"Scribe," the dark-haired man spoke. "Is there a company with a missing officer?"

The plain-faced woman replied immediately. "Rat Company. Lacking a lieutenant as of last week, still waiting on a transfer. They're beginning war games at Spite Valley tonight."

Black hummed thoughtfully. "Sink or swim. Fitting. Can you have a legionary's kit brought to her on the way?"

Scribe inclined her head by an inch. "Already sent the runner."

The Knight chuckled. "What would I do without you?"

"The same things," Scribe replied blandly. "Just not as well."

He turned his eyes to me and I shrugged in agreement. Wasn't like I had anything else planned this week.

—

The War College was the only officer's school in the Empire, meaning that every officer wanting to make a career in the Legions of Terror was expected to have graduated from those hallowed halls. There were other training camps scattered among the Empire for legionaries, of course, but anyone who wanted to enrol straight into the commissioned ranks went through the

College. The institution had existed in one form or another since the founding of the Empire, though until recently admission had been restricted to the children of Imperial aristocracy – and in even earlier times, only to the boys among those. Dread Empress Terribilia the First had put a swift end to that particular brand of stupidity by using the Headmaster as ammunition for her latest catapults, much in the same way that my own teacher defenestrated the last Headmistress when she'd refused to allow "filthy greenskins" in her classrooms.

The College itself was situated on the outskirts of Ater, a large two-story stone hall made up mostly of classrooms, but the cadet barracks and training fields took up the entire city district known as the Five Swords Lanes. Towards the end of Dread Emperor Nefarious' reign – which could more accurately be called the beginning of Dread Empress Malicia's – the reform and rapid expansion of the Empire's military had forced the Legions to set up a handful of semi-permanent camps outside Ater where the vast majority of the cadets actually slept. The old College barracks were reserved for students in their final year, nowadays, and the more practical classes were taught out in the Wasteland instead of in a classroom.

Within a week of joining, students were assigned to a company of a hundred other cadets that would serve as their mother unit for the rest of their time at the College. Given that there were around a thousand cadets in attendance, the student body was divided along the lines of ten companies. Each company had a name and a standard, typically an animal from the Wasteland, except for the company at the head of the monthly rankings: they were called only the First Company, and the competition to hold that title was nothing short of brutal. While individual cadet marks in the theoretical classes did affect company standing, the real way to rise in the rankings was to win the war games held every week in Spite Valley.

There was an old fort in the valley the Blackguards escorted me to, a leftover from the days where the Order of the White Hand had occasionally crusaded their way east to Ater itself. After the Conquest it had stopped being garrisoned and become the main site for the College's war games. The most basic scenarios were favoured: typically an attack and defence simulation between two randomly drawn companies, though the Headmaster was known to occasionally pit several companies against each other in wider games. The valley itself was half a day's march away from the capital and large enough that armies in the thousands could have gone through. The fort itself was situated on a hill guarding the way to Ater, sloping down into the deeper valley where a lone watchtower overlooked deep woods and a handful of streams. After a long walk the slope rose again, leading to a circle of hills backed by a veritable forest of rocky outcroppings: that was where Rat Company had elected to make camp, among the hills. I'd

been able to see the smoke from the campfires long before the company itself.

Hiking my way through the camp with the legionary garb I'd put on hours earlier, I blessed the fact that there'd been a primer on the Legions inside the pile of books from Black – Heavens knew how confusing all the terms would have been otherwise.

The war game was being run between a pair of companies, which meant the hundred cadets on each side answered to a single captain. Under the captain there would be five lieutenants in charge of a "line" of twenty soldiers, and under each lieutenant a sergeant. Lines were expected to be able to split into two "tenths" if the battlefield required it, in which case the sergeant would end up in command of the second tenth. I felt uncomfortable in my standard-issue chain mail after having spent so long wearing a better-fitting armour, but that gear had belonged to Squire – I was 'Lieutenant Callow' as long as I attended the College, and she wasn't supposed to have access to those kind of resources. I found my assigned line milling around a half-built campfire, digging into their rations gloomily. My sergeant was easy enough to spot, thankfully: a tall orc with the single red stripe of his rank sown into his shoulder pad, his skin closer to brown than green. He was talking with a particularly skinny goblin sporting the same insignia, I saw as I drew closer – they stopped as soon as they noticed me coming, the orc pushing himself up to snap a salute while the goblin merely afforded me a curious glance. "Sergeant Hakram?" I checked.

"That would be me," the orc said in a gravelly voice. "You're our new lieutenant, then?"

"Lieutenant Callow," I agreed, offering my arm.

Hakram let out a pleased rumble at the gesture and clasped my forearm. "The little pipsqueak next to me is Sergeant Robber, from the Fourth line."

"Pleasure to meet you, Lieutenant," the goblin greeted me. "I should get back to my men before Pickler realizes I'm gone. Luck in battle, Hakram."

"Wade in their blood, Robber," her sergeant replied in one of the most common orc forms of farewell. The goblin scuttled away around the hill after offering me an amusingly sloppy salute.

"So which company did you transfer from, Lieutenant?" Hakram asked.

"I'm new," I replied. "Never been in any before."

"Gods be kind," Hakram cursed. "The Captain's going to have a fit. We're already at the bottom of the rankings and now we get a

greenie?" The orc paused before shooting me an almost apologetic look. "No offence meant, it's just that a seasoned Lieutenant might have made a difference tomorrow," he continued. "We're up against First Company, and they get to be on defence too."<

"None taken," I replied, a little bemused. "First Company's that good?"

"They haven't lost a single game," Hakram grimaced. "Captain Juniper's called the Hellhound for a reason."

"They're pitting the best company against the worst?" I mused. "That hardly seems fair."

"Luck of the draw," the sergeant offered ruefully. "Ratface's been cursing his heart out since the moment he pulled our number."

"The Captain's name is *Ratface*?" I grinned, letting out a startled laugh. I knew that anyone who enrolled in the Legions could do it under the name of their choice, but who in the Hundred Hells would choose the name Ratface? Hakram grinned back, the sight made more than a little intimidating by his razor-sharp teeth.

"I heard the instructors assigned him to Rat Company just for the irony," the orc said. "You should probably head out to the officer's meeting, Lieutenant. I'll take care of the watch rotations for the night."

"The command tent's on the other side of the hill, right?"

"It's got a standard with rat skulls hanging off it," Hakram grinned. "Can't miss it."

I offered the orc a salute he mirrored crisply and took the dirt trail up the hill. The legionary armour felt surprisingly light on my shoulders, after a month of traipsing around in plate, even with the thick rectangular shield strapped on my back. I missed my own sword already, but I supposed to keep a low profile while at the College and carrying around anything but standard-issue stock was a sure way to draw unwanted questions. Unlike some of the legionaries I'd read about, Rat Company didn't seem equipped with the lever-action crossbows. They were probably meant to be an assault company, then.

Like my sergeant had said, the command tent was impossible to miss. It was twice as large as anyone else's, for a start, and even if I'd somehow managed to miss the standard next to it the War College's crossed silver swords were sown into the fabric on every side. There was a pair of legionaries standing guard by the entrance but after a cursory glance at the twin red stripes on my shoulder they let me through without a word. Four armoured

legionaries were crouched by a crate someone had nailed a map to, most of them looking up at the sound of my coming in. I glanced through the room, noting that only half of the lieutenants attending were human. The only attending goblin was still tracing something on the edge of the map with her crooked fingers, looking almost comically small next to the thick, muscled orc at her side. A strikingly handsome boy with grey eyes and olive skin gave me a brief once-over before letting out a displeased grunt.

"You'd be Lieutenant Callow, I expect?" he asked.

"Reporting for duty, Captain..." I trailed off, wondering if I should actually call him by the name I'd been given. It had seemed amusing when talking with Hakram, but now it was turning out more along the lines of awkward.

>"Ratface," the captain finished curtly. "You weren't in the College rolls before being assigned to Rat Company. Would I be correct in assuming you're a greenhorn?"

"I've seen combat before," I replied. "And not with blunted swords either."

"Have you now?" Ratface smiled, looking anything but friendly. "Good for you. Unfortunately that's worth shit to me, Lieutenant. I don't care if you castrated an ogre in single combat, you're still a godsdamned greenie legionary they saddled me with on the day before an exercise with the First Company."

I took a deep breath, wondering if punching my superior officer in his fat sneering face on the first day of my assignment would leave a black mark on my record. It probably would, so I forced my anger down for the moment. Let him whine all he wanted, I'd show what I was worth on the battlefield.

"More dead weight," the large greenskin lieutenant cursed softly in Kharsum. "Just what we needed."

My eyes flashed with quicksilver anger. I only had so much patience to spend. "You're awfully mouthy for an unblooded boy," I replied in the same language. "Looking for a fight?"

The orc barked out a laugh. "Hard words," he grinned dangerously. "Keep a lid on it, greenie, it'd be a shame if I had to knock those pretty little human teeth out."

The captain sighed, passing a hand through his short curls.

"Nauk, stop flirting with the rookie," he said in Mthethwa, "we've got more pressing matters on our hands. Take a seat, Lieutenant. I suppose it's not your fault you were assigned to us."

Accepting the tacit apology, I gave a nod in response and went to crouch over the map with the others. The parchment laid out the cluster of hills Rat Company was camping in with the rocky outcroppings at our back as well as the valley separating us from the old fort I'd passed by earlier.

"Juniper will have the valley between us full of scouts," Ratface announced, "but our best chance is still hitting them tonight. If we try a night assault tomorrow it's a sure bet they'll have had time to set up an ambush. Kilian, what did your men see when they got a look earlier?"

A short red-haired lieutenant cleared her throat and pointed out the watchtower in the middle of the valley. "There were at least two lines there setting up bonfires," the girl murmured. "If we manage to take them out without too many losses we might actually have a shot at taking the fort."

"My sappers have enough smokers to clog up a whole wall," the goblin lieutenant said. "The melee for the rampart will be messy after we land the ladders, but if the lieutenant holding the wall panics we have a decent shot at punching through to the standard."

"Nauk," Ratface addressed the orc. "Your men will take the first wave of the assault. Callow, you'll be right behind him."

"Understood," I replied.

"Sergeant Hakram knows his business. Frankly, I'd rather have him as lieutenant for your line but life is ever full of disappointments," the captain continued. "If he tells you you're doing something stupid, *listen* to him." After a last lingering look at the map, Ratface spat in the dirt and raised his head to look us in the eyes. "We'll get moving two hours before dawn," he informed the assembled officers. "Keep your lines on half-watch, I want our soldiers as rested as they can be for the fight. I'll see you all in a few hours." We rose and saluted, exiting the tent one by one and leaving the captain to his map.

Sean

Really excited about where this new arc is headed. Hopefully our protagonist will manage to be fairly adept in proving herself.

That said, one thing kind of threw me off a bit. A break is needed between "Wasn't like I had anything else planned this week" and "The War College was the only officer's school".

I got really confused, because for a second it read like a single scene.

[erraticerrata](#)

Yeah, fixed the break issue. Thanks for pointing it out.

stevenneiman

I'm not sure if it has anything to do with that issue, but I noticed a couple of marks on a recent re-read.

Unmaker

Typos:

(not a typo, but the drop-down chapter menu is almost off my page and I have a relatively high-res monitor; other than that I like the redesign)

(not a typo, but the opening line is in a different capitalization than the rest of the sentence. this may be a stylistic choice, but it is still slightly jarring to read. and the opening quote is still huge.)

kingdoms ,
kingdoms,

Praes, though
Praes, though

war, so
war, so

a inch
an inch

SpiteValley
Spite Valley

"it's been a long time since humans inside the Empire have ceased any designs of independence"

(the implication of the text after is that they *have* ceased designs on independence. this sentence doesn't contradict that, but its construction makes the point unclear)

"he'd smelled the rat"
(usually 'a rat')

"We're standing in the middle of an open field, Scribe. The only footing here is rocks."

(those two sentences are not coordinated; if it said 'the only cover here is rocks' then they would logically follow)

enrol

(alternate spelling 'enroll' may be more common, but this seems to be OK)

"I offered the orc a salute he mirrored crisply and took the dirt trail up the hill."

(under normal construction, the object of the verb would be the implied object of the second clause – the salute didn't take the trail, Catherine did.

"I offered the orc a salute which he mirrored crisply and then I took the dirt trail up the hill."

Reactions:

I didn't review the previous chapter yet. I will get to it. There seem to be fewer typos than normal.

The opening quote is even more hilarious if you have read the evil overlord's list. And the comment on the Name of Chancellor is yet another reference – good job.

The revelation of gnomish technology as fearsomely powerful is a notable separation from the usual trope of gnomes as bizarre but not terribly effectual tinkerers. Nice to see a little trope breaking there. The revelation that they use that technology to keep others ignorant, sometimes by extreme force, is troubling. The fact that the goblin's green fire that does such terribly nasty things isn't considered worth stopping is interesting. The dynamics here look complex and largely hidden. For example, exactly how do the gnomes get their information?

"In the grander scheme of things, Catherine, I'm the petty warlord of a backwater kingdom."

More ruthless practicality. Black continues to impress.

I like the continued world-building here.

"I offered the orc a salute he mirrored crisply and took the dirt trail up the hill."

I don't know the military, but aren't salutes 'offered', i.e. initiated, by the lower rank?

AvidFan

So, I take it gnomes are at a similar technological level as us, but they probably branched differently. How they get their information is probably the key to beating them. If they have spies or hidden cameras, then research and technological advances can be hidden fairly easily once you know what to look for, but if they have satellites or advanced magic... Then it gets more complicated... Underground bunkers, counter spells, etc, but that would probably make them suspicious. I hope we get to hear more about them later.

I agree with you comment about world building. It's also very nice at how practical Black is.

This could so be made into a manga/comic... Such an awesome story.

[erraticerrata](#)

The Guide originally sprang from me wanting to deconstruct some of the fantasy tropes seen everywhere in the genre, so you can expect to see more trope-breaking in following chapters. This is my take, more or less, on what happens when the gnomish propensity for very advanced technology isn't played for laughs. Another more subtle one is the Kingdom Under, which is the dwarves. They're not slowly decaying in this setting: they've never been more numerous or powerful, and they're growing stronger every year. As for why goblinfire doesn't seem to draw the same alarms as the unnamed powder Black mentioned? Goblinfire falls under the umbrella of alchemy. Make of that what you will.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Huh. I think the Gnomes may be trying to keep people from getting nukes. (It seemed the obvious extrapolation of "natural physics".) But Goblinfire should be able to kill their fancy airships, assuming you can get it there in the first place, unless they also have good Anti-Magic and they're trying to stay completely unmatched.

So I suppose the real question is how homogenous the Gnomes are as a nation. Punishing people for developing farming equipment is probably the most obviously Evil thing I've seen, but it could also be a result of Copy Protection Laws and overzealous law enforcement golems. In any case, I'm pretty sure they'll be the antagonists of books three and four.

Poetically Psychotic

Seems to me that while goblin fire is incredibly threatening on its own, the fact that it burns **anything** makes it useless for any application but that. You can't use it to power an engine, or to fire a gun, or even to provide heat, because it **can't** be controlled. So while it's an incredible accomplishment, it's also a technological dead end.

NerfContessa

Given the fact that dnd has a God. Dedicated to keeping non gnomes low tech, who knows how it's here?

Since the story is not going to leave the continent for real, we'll have to wait for a sequel to be sure.

Still, stepping in this early IS overdoing it.
As soon as they realize someone could build planes, OK.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

By 'how homogenous the Gnomes are as a nation', I meant that human and humanlike minds wouldn't typically support this sort of behavior, unless it was done outside of the public eye.

Also, how would a giant snake tear someone's throat out? Snake teeth aren't designed for it, and the size alone would prove a challenge. Biting a head off is more plausible, but still second to devouring whole.

[.](#)

Normally in stories, too advanced modern sci fiction and dark medieval magic fantasy don't mix, it ruin the atmosphere and the "magic" in it to the point of surreal. It made it sounds like the all powerful overlord villain can just die by the solution of a nuke and soldiers losing to gunshots. Afterall, some people choose to come over and read medieval fantasy stories than stories of our modern world for various reasons though. I hope the story doesn't suddenly include aliens too.

With readers aiming to read a certain genre suddenly have another genre mixed in can be appalling at times.

Not that it deter me to read it though and there various notable examples of mixed fantasies such as release the witch, gate jietai, etc.

Ethan Smith

They never said what the people who got the letter were researching so it could be them trying to stop something like a nuke from being developed – or other dangerous technology

Poetically Psychotic

Sounds like gunpowder/blasting powder to me. That's very much a key part of the route to threatening technologies.

AvidFan

... She's not going to listen to him, is she?

stevenneiman

"I took a deep breath [a->and] steadied my hand."
"I was already moving {,} knife in hand."
"As for the Tribes, it's {a} trickier matter."
"anyone who wanted to [enrol->enroll] straight into the
commissioned ranks"
"but I {was} supposed to keep a low profile while at the College"
of possibly "I supposed I should"

I get the sense that Catherine isn't going to do a mediocre job.
Not sure whether she'll be useless or wipe the floor with
everyone, though.

Horatio Von Becker

My impression is that Nauk will be first up the ladders, be
heavily repulsed, and then Catherine's Name powers will let her
rally her own group and the survivors to take the fortress
anyway.

stevenneiman

"the largest city on [Callernia->Calernia] at the time."
"typically an attack and defence simulation between [to->two]
randomly drawn companies"
"We're up against First Company, and they get to be on defence
too."[]"Ratface,"

linnilalartyr

Academic arc!! Yesss!!

ALKATYN

Rereading this from the beginning at the moment. SPOILERS BELOW.
YOU ARE READING THIS FOR THE FIRST TIME STOP HERE.

-

-

Interesting to see characters who become important later like
Hakram, Killian, Juniper, Robber and Ratface getting their first
introduction here. Their basic personalities are established
pretty quickly without being too showy vs telly, which is
impressive.

I don't think the gnomes are really mentioned after this point,
but its interesting as the first real hint we have that the
empire is relatively small in the context of the wider world.
Which we see later with the principat.

And makes for an interesting contrast with the Fae. Both are effectively out of context problems for the Empire, having totally alien perspectives that can't be negotiated with in a normal way. But the gnomes don't have the major weakness the fae have of being so closely tied to roles and stories.

Also, rereading this makes me even more sure that Assassin is Scribe. The fact that she appears out of nowhere immediately after the discussion of Roles that allow their wielders to hide seems pretty blatant in retrospect.

Horatio Von Becker

Oh, that's amusingly plausible. A dual-use Role? Fun.

sswanlake

Some edits:

between to randomly drawn companies -> between **two** randomly drawn companies

on defence too." on defence too."

>"Ratface," the captain finished -> "Ratface," the captain finished

favmir

[but I supposed to keep a low profile]
I think it's meant to be "I was supposed to"

[they get to be on defence too."<]
I think the angle bracket is a typo.

favmir

[>"Ratface," the captain finished curtly.]

[Erstwalts](#)

Guess I'm reading Ender's game now.

Andrew Mitchell

I highly recommend it. Just the original though, the rest of the series is not nearly as good.

[Fayhem](#)

Testing a couple formatting things since idk quite how this shit works in WordPress or if it varies from blog to blog (hence why I'm testing on Guide's site). If anyone comes through and spots this comment, please ignore it as such.

Italics

Italics

Bold

Bold

Header

[greatwyrmgold](#)

Rat Army, huh? Good thing Ratface is more driven than Rose the Nose.

aran

Wow, I forgot about the gnomes!

I wonder if we're ever going to see them again.

Boobah

On Catherine being relieved by having less weight on her shoulders because she's in chain instead of plate: No.

See, the thing is plate is strapped on all over one's body, which means the weight is distributed all over, too. Chainmail, while it IS a little lighter... all of it sits on your shoulders, barring a coif. It's hideously uncomfortable as a result.

Also, I thought this was an officer's training school, yet it seems implied that the cadet formation officers and NCOs are permanent positions. Which means most of your cadets are practicing to be soldiers, not officers, which seems counterproductive.

[origamiflame](#)

On my second read-through in a long time and... What a nostalgic treat this chapter is.

Rraune

"and it's been a long time since humans inside the Empire have ceased any designs of independence. Why settle for ruling a fraction of a realm, when you could claim the Tower itself?"
seized any designs ? They're not trying to gain independence, no ?

Chapter 16: Game

"Those who live by the sword kill those who don't."

– Dread Emperor Vile the First

I woke up to the sound of fighting.

Pushing away my covers I reached for my sword-belt, hastily buckling it on as I hopped from one foot to the next. Squinting to make out the source of the noise in the camp fire's dying light, I caught a dozen silhouettes making it down the hill towards my line. Legionaries, I saw, but the insignia on their shield wasn't Rat Company's. *A night attack on the very first night?* Reckless, but if the sounds of battle coming from the other side of the hill were any indication the enemy captain's boldness might just have paid off.

"ON YOUR FEET, YOU LAZY BASTARDS!" I heard Hakram's voice roar from further down, "WE'RE UNDER ATTACK!"

Grabbing my shield, I forced myself to focus and went to join my assembling soldiers. I'd thought that the assault before dawn would give me the time I needed to ease into legionary tactics, but it looked like I was going to be dropped straight into the deeper waters again. The thought brought a reluctant smile to my face as I pushed my way past the awakening soldiers to my sergeant. *Business as usual, then.* When had I ever gotten to learn anything the easy way?

"Sergeant Hakram," I called out as soon as I glimpsed his face, "Report."

"I have no idea what's going on," the orc rumbled. "I got woken up when the soldiers on watch went missing."

I eyed the enemy soldiers calmly walking in our direction with a grimace. I'd miscalculated: that was a full line, not just a dozen. The shouts and ring of steel against steel coming from where Lieutenant Nauk's line had been camping next to mine meant that they were in just as much trouble as we were. Was Captain Juniper trying to wipe out the company on the very first night?

"The standard, Sergeant," I breathed out in understanding.

"They're going for the standard."

Juniper didn't need to actually knock out every soldier in Rat Company, just bring back our standard to her victory zone. Hakram let out a colourful string of curses in Kharsum, which I chose to interpret as agreement.

"Third Line!" I called out, "Double ranks, NOW!"

We couldn't afford to get bogged down in a melee with the enemy line, not if First Company was going straight for the win. I'd have to get my soldiers on the other side of the hill and decide if this engagement could still be salvaged.

"Lieutenant?" Hakram prompted. "What are your orders?"

My line had formed up like a well-oiled machine while I was

thinking. The First Company's soldiers had stopped halfway down the hill and formed a wedge, patiently waiting for me to charge my line into their formation. *Screw that. I'm not hitting a force on high ground with most my soldiers half asleep.*

"Go help Lieutenant Nauk's line, Sergeant," I decided. "I'll go for the standard myself."

The orc frowned.

"Sir-" he started, but I cut him off.

"Hakram, there's no time to argue," I said. "Do it and I'll catch up with you afterwards."

The sergeant saluted, though he still looked sceptical.

"Good hunting, Lieutenant," he replied, turning to get my soldiers moving.

The enemy was standing square atop the dirt path I'd used during the day, meaning I'd have to go around the sides: I slung my shield across my back on the leather strap reserved for that very purpose and went for the shadows. I'd have to be swift and quiet if I wanted to make it without getting caught, just like when I'd used sneak out of the orphanage to go fight in the Pit. The night was on my side, at least: the moon was covered by clouds, and while it might have helped the enemy sneak up on us earlier now it meant that away from the campfires I was as good as invisible. I circled as far away from the fighting as I could, but while skirting around a handful of abandoned blankets I got a glimpse of the melee I'd just sent my line into: Nauk's silhouette stood out starkly against the flames. The lieutenant was half-naked and grappling with a pair of enemy legionaries, ignoring their blunted blades as he knocked their heads together and roared out a challenge. Hellgods, it was easy to forget how terrifying orcs could be when they cut loose. Two hundred pounds of pure muscle and bloodlust moved by the most vicious of instincts. No wonder the war parties from the Steppes had been such a thorn in Callow's side, before the Wall was built. Shaking off the thought, I finished my trip around and got a high enough vantage point that I could see what was going on.

It was... less than promising. The standard still stood, but a melee was raging barely twenty feet from it and I could see Ratface's forces were getting mauled. He'd managed to dig in his left flank with its back to the hill, but the centre was giving ground and there was no right flank to speak of: the line facing my men had probably slipped through the space to make sure Ratface wouldn't get any reinforcements, if I had to guess. *We've lost this*, I was forced to admit. Even if my own soldiers managed to get Lieutenant Nauk's moving, by the time they punched through the line waiting for them on the hill the battle would already be over. *So think*, I told myself. *How can we turn this around?*

Moments passed, but nothing came to mind. Whoever Captain Juniper was, she'd thought this through perfectly. An enemy legionary tore his way through the centre and ran for the standard, and before I knew what I was doing I started running downhill. A handful of legionaries from the centre pulled back and managed to tackle the soldier, but that was the beginning of the end for

Ratface's men: First Company's legionaries poured through the openings in the rank, breaking the whole formation apart in a matter of moments.

Forcing myself to go even faster, I ignored the melee and focused on the one part of this I could actually recoup: the standard. If First Company got their hands on it the game was as good as over, but if I could bring it back to my line and pull out under the cover of darkness we might just survive this disaster. Though what I could actually manage to do with so few soldiers was... *No*, I told myself. *One thing at a time*. Better to focus on the things I could do than those I couldn't. Snatching up the standard from the socket it was in, I shot the melee an apologetic look before running off the way I'd come. The way back was quicker, since there was no point in skirting around the fighting. The melee around Nauk had gotten even messier in the last few minutes, but I could see it was turning to Rat Company's advantage: the attacking line had tightened ranks and was slowly edging back towards the hill. A good call, if I'd actually meant to have my soldiers join the broader engagement. The company's legionaries closed rank around me as soon as they saw I held the standard, a ragged cheer coming from their formation.

"Lieutenant," Hakram greeted me cheerfully as he pulled back from the front line. "Nicely done. How's the situation on the other side?"

"Done," I replied. "First Company was flipping their line when I left – they'll be on our asses in a few moments. Where's Lieutenant Nauk?"

"Limping about," the sergeant told me with a vague gesture. "They managed to break his leg, so he's using Sergeant Nilin as a crutch. I don't suppose you brought back any healers?"

"Didn't even see one," I said. "I'm pretty sure the mage line was the first to be hit."

"Fucking Juniper," Hakram cursed. "*Basha* like this is why they call her the Hellhound."

"CALLOW!" the yell came from behind me in the voice I recognized from earlier. "Decided to join the fight, I see."

I turned with a raised eyebrow to see Nauk with his arm slung over a dark-skinned boy's shoulder. Sergeant Nilin, I assumed.

"Had to pick something up," I replied easily, hefting up the standard resting on my shoulder. The orc lieutenant eyed me cautiously.

"Ratface?" he asked.

"Probably a prisoner by now," I grimaced.

"We hitting that line on the hill, then?" Hakram rumbled.

I passed hand through my hair, only now noticing I'd been running around without a helmet this whole time.

"No," I decided. "We're pulling out. How many soldiers do we have?"

"Half my line and most of yours," Nauk grunted. "At least half a dozen wounded."

I eyed the enemy line gathering up on the hill – the ones who'd formed a wedge earlier seemed to be joining them, and there was

no way the forces just described would hold up against forty legionaries, half of which hadn't even seen fighting yet. "Let's get out of here before they have time to form up," I said. "Wounded first, I want them out of the way if this turns into a fighting retreat."

Hakram saluted and disappeared into the mass of soldiers without another word. Not for the first time tonight, I was glad I'd gotten the tall orc as my sergeant.

"They'll hunt us down if we go into the rocks," Nauk spoke up, dark eyes considering as he faced me.

"That's why we won't be heading there," I replied. "There's enough woods in the valley to hide us until we have a better idea of what's going on."

The large – and still half-naked, I only now noted – orc looked at me for a long, silent moment.

"Sergeant Nilin," he suddenly spoke, still looking into my eyes.

"I'm ceding command of our line to Lieutenant Callow for now.

Let's get the bastards moving before we have half of First Company breathing down our necks."

Letting out a breath I hadn't known I was holding, I offered the orc a gracious nod before turning my attention back to the soldiers on the hill. They were nearly done forming ranks, I saw. With an ironic salute to the enemy, I followed my troops as they made their escape.

—

We hadn't been walking for a quarter bell when Sergeant Robber popped out of the darkness. The goblin had half a dozen sword points resting on his throat in the blink of an eye but he merely grinned, supremely unconcerned.

"You guys are by far the largest group of survivors out there," he informed me as soon as I made my way to the front of my line.

"You must have pulled out early on."

"I can recognize a lost battle when I see one," I replied, tone neutral. "You're alone?"

Robber whistled softly and another three goblins came out of the dark, one of them badly bruised but all of them bearing the leather satchel I knew sappers carried their munitions in.

"We're all that's left of my line," the diminutive sergeant told me. "They even got Lieutenant Pickler. Got room for a few sappers in your little exodus?"

"Make yourself at home," I replied.

Sappers. The first pleasant surprise of the night, which I rather thought we were due after the series of disasters we'd been inflicted. The goblins might not have been of much use in a shield wall, but they served an important purpose in the Legions: engineers, demolition specialists and even scouts when there was a need for it. Whatever the goblins were carrying in those satchels of theirs was worth its weight in gold, in our current situation. The other three goblins melded into the ranks without a word, but Robber remained at my side as the column started

moving again. The goblin had assumed, correctly, that I'd have questions for him.

"You said there were other groups?" I asked.

"Small bands of five or less that fled when Ratface got taken," the goblin said. "They were fleeing without a plan, most of them headed for the rocks. Juniper's probably spreading out her soldiers to hunt them down as we speak."

Well, so much for linking up with another group. I'd half-hoped that another officer would have managed to save a tenth and make out in the night, but to be frank I wasn't all that surprised no one had managed. I probably wouldn't have either, if the lines I'd been fighting hadn't been stuck holding a vital position.

"We're looking for safe place to rest," I told Robber. "I know your Lieutenant sent some of your line scouting earlier – do you know anywhere we can use?"

The goblin nodded, though he looked less than enthused.

"I know somewhere from the last time we had a game. Would take us most of the night to get there, though," he cautioned.

"The further into the valley we go the better," I murmured.

"They're looking in the rocks, but they're bound to catch on we went the other way eventually."

"I hear you," Robber said, absent-mindedly tacking on a "sir" to the sentence after a moment. "D'you know if they saw you take the standard?"

I grimaced. I'd been wondering that herself. I would have been seen when I'd first taken it, of that there was no doubt, but would they know I was in command of the missing line? Even if First Company interrogated their prisoners, no more than a handful of people would even know what I looked like.

"I don't think so," I finally said, "But I wouldn't bet on it."

"Yeah," Robber muttered in agreement, "people who underestimate Juniper always get fucked. There's a reason her company hasn't lost since she became captain."

I passed a hand through my hair, letting out a sigh. There wouldn't be much sleeping tonight.

"Find us a camp site first, Robber," I ordered the sergeant.

"Let's take it one day at a time."

Bobbing his head, the goblin deftly jumped forward and called out for the soldiers at the head of the column to follow him into the dark.

The march into the valley proved to be one the most harrowing experiences in my life. I could understand why war was conducted mostly during the day now. It had been Hells on my troops to make their way through the slippery hill paths and even worse when we'd entered the forest, without even the moonlight to show us where they were going. Robber's goblins were already proving their worth, their peculiar eyes allowing them to pick out the best paths unerringly in the dark. Twice we'd had to huddle out of sight as the goblins picked out enemy scouts, waiting in silence until First Company moved on. Some of the legionaries had suggested lighting torches after we'd crossed into the woods, but I'd nixed that idea in the bud: if Juniper had left anyone in the

watchtower that was as good as marking our camp on the First Company's maps. By the time we finally arrived at our destination, the first stirrings of dawn could be seen in the sky.

My exhausted soldiers dropped their packs and shields to the ground as soon as they could, barely bothering to spread out across the clearing Robber had taken us to. I could see why he'd choose a place like this: there was small stream running through the clearing where the legionaries would be able to fill their canteens and a handful of berry bushes I dearly hoped were edible. I'd had Hakram ask around for how many rations had been salvaged from the camp, and the amount was dangerously low. My body was urging me to follow the legionaries' example and curl up under a tree, but I forced myself to move. There was still work to be done before I could allow myself to rest. I saw my wounded settled as comfortably as I could, cursing that we hadn't managed to get even one mage from the battle's survivors. I had a word with Sergeant Nilin to arrange for him to set up a watch and was pleasantly surprised to find Hakram had already done the same without my asking. I was beginning to see why Ratface had wanted the orc in command of my line.

"Grab some sleep, Lieutenant," my sergeant told me quietly when I insisted to be added to my line's watch roster. "Better to have your brain well-rested than another pair of eyes to watch for the enemy. You'll be the one making the plans tomorrow."

I agreed on the condition that he wake me up in no more than one full bell, pretending to believe his obvious lie when he agreed because I was too exhausted to argue. Setting down my bedroll close under an old oak tree, I lay down under the blanket and told myself I'd close my eyes for just a moment. There were just too many things left to do, I murmured to myself.

Darkness came.

—

It was midmorning when Hakram woke me up, by the looks of the sun. I considered reprimanding him for having let me sleep in, but I finally decided against it: if I hadn't woken up by myself it meant my body had probably needed the rest. I blearily tied back up my bedroll and went to wash my face in the stream. The camp was buzzing with activity, legionaries clustering in small groups to talk to each other in low voices: I got a handful of salutes on my way, which I nodded back to. The cold water finished waking me up, clearing away the last dregs of sleep. I broke a piece of the rations I'd brought with me on the flight last night and tore hungrily into them, deciding I'd go pick some berries later to finish the job. *After asking Robber if they're poisonous*, I added mentally. I had no intention of spending the rest of the game moaning on the ground after managing to survive last night. I was pleasantly surprised — once again — that Hakram had roused up the other officers and was already waiting for me. "No sign they found us" I prompted the other four as I sat on a

flat stone.

"The sentries haven't seen anything," the dark-skinned boy I vaguely remembered being called Sergeant Nilin agreed.

"We should be safe for a day or two," Robber told me. "I'm sure Juniper doesn't know about this place."

"Doesn't mean she can't find it, goblin," Nauk rumbled from the ground where he'd been propped up against the tree trunk.

The goblin sergeant sneered in response but did not bother replying. I glanced at them curiously, noticing the undercurrent of hostility to the reply. From the corner of my eye I could see someone had tied a rudimentary cast around Nauk's leg with cloth and branches, but every few moments the orc winced when he moved around too much. *One less soldier to count on*, I grimaced.

"How many legionaries in fighting shape do we have?" I asked the group.

"Twenty five I'd take into the field, and Robber's three sappers," Hakram informed me. "We've got a full tenth of wounded, but most are in good enough shape to serve as sentries."

I passed a hand through my hair, sighing. That was less than I'd hoped, frankly, but still more than I'd expected.

"We'll split the legionaries into three under strength tenths," I said. "Sergeant Robber will keep his sappers as a separate unit."

"That's all well and good," Nauk grunted, "but what are we going to be using them for? You got a plan, Callow?"

I grimaced: it was a bit of stretch to call my idea a plan, but it was the only thing I'd come up with so far.

"We need a prisoner to interrogate," I replied. "Otherwise we'll just keep on stumbling about blind."

Hakram nodded, nonplussed.

"You've got a target in mind, Lieutenant?" he asked.

"If I remember well from yesterday's map, there's a watchtower in the middle of the valley," I said. "If Captain Juniper spread out her forces to look for us, it might be undermanned."

"There's bound to be at least a sergeant there," Nilin spoke quietly.

"Robber," I asked, "how good are your sappers at scouting?"

The goblin hummed thoughtfully.

"Not as good as a real scouting line, but still better than most," he replied. "You want us to have a look?"

"Unless anyone else has a better idea?" I prompted. No one replied. "Well then, gentlemen, let's get moving."

—

"My guy counted ten," Robber croaked from my side, the both of us in cover behind a tree. "They still have no idea we're here."

I smiled. Twenty might have gotten messy, given how tired my men were from running all night, but ten? Ten we could take. We'd have to go in hard if we wanted to be gone by the time Juniper's patrols heard the ruckus, but then I hadn't expected this to be an easy fight. *That's never stopped me from winning before.*

"Hakram," I said, "take your tenth around behind the hill and

wait until they've seen us to hit them in the back."

The tall orc flashed me pearly-white fangs and saluted before turning towards his soldiers.

"Get your asses in gear, my pretties," he gravelled. "We're getting us a little payback."

There were a few hard smiles among the troops and in a matter of moments they disappeared into the foliage, the dead leaves padding their armour keeping the metal from clanking. None of my ramshackle band of survivors had taken well to last night's stomping, and I knew they were just itching for a chance to even the score. I decided to give it a while before I got my own tenth moving – rushing it was just as dangerous as lingering, at this point. Robber leaned closer, yellow eyes alight with the most malicious of mischief.

"I've got brightsticks if you want to make an impression, Callow," the goblin wheedled, grinning at the idea of setting off the mostly harmless version of the goblin alchemy in the faces of the soldiers who'd taken his lieutenant. "Nothing like a little flash and bang to start a party."

"How many?" I asked, keeping her voice down.

"'bout twelve, and half that many cussers," Robber replied.

"That's plenty enough for a scrap like this."

I closed my eyes, seriously considering it. Was it worth it to use the munitions this early in the game? I might need them later on, and the fight was already skewed in my men's favour. But they might be just what was needed to finish the fight before the patrols got onto us, and the moment Juniper's roaming lines found us the fight was as good as done. *No. I won't let fear do my thinking for me. We'll use them when we can make them count.*

Opening my eyes, I shook my head at Robber.

"Callow –" he started.

"We'll find a better use for them, Robber," I interrupted him.

"You have my word on that."

The goblin fixed me with a hard stare, but after a moment he nodded.

"Aye aye, Lieutenant. Where do you want my sappers, then?"

"There's three trails and you have three men," I replied. "If anyone comes in uninvited, I want to know about it."

The goblins in Robber's heavily mauled tenth were too lightly equipped to be of real use in a melee and I had no intention of risking my last sappers in a straight up fight: I'd need every one of them when trying for the standard. Using them as sentries would have to do, even if it wasn't the most glorious of duties. The goblin sergeant saluted in a manner so sloppy it seemed more like a mockery of the gesture before sliding his way downhill. I counted up to sixty in silence before gesturing for Sergeant Nilin to crawl up at my side.

"Lieutenant?" the dusky-skinned boy asked in a whisper.

"Get your legionaries ready, Sergeant," I replied. "Let's see how well they hold up when we're the ones doing the ambushing."

Letting him slide back down, I picked up my shield and pushed myself up. A moment later my tenth followed suit and I allowed

the rank to catch up to me as Nilin's men lined up behind us – we took a brisk pace up the hill and in an instant we were in sight of the watchtower. The sentry on top cried out in alarm but I had no intention of allowing them to form up.

"Shields up," I roared, picking up the pace.

I unsheathed my sword and the sound of the men following suit was heard from all around me. I caught sight of Hakram's tenth running up the other side of the hill without a sound and I laughed in delight a moment before the two sides of my ambush collided with the scattered soldiers from the First Company. A tall orc with a vivid scar running up his cheek stood before me but I slammed my shield against his, knocking him back and striking in the opening I'd made: the blunted blade hit the back of my opponent's knee and forced him to kneel. I kicked him in the gut to make sure he wouldn't get up, knocking him out for good with a strike to the temple. Raising my head to take a look around, I realized with a start that the skirmish was already done – most of the First Company cadets were out cold, but a handful were being held down at sword-point by my men. Hakram walked up to me grinning like a cat who'd gone through a whole birdhouse of canaries and slapped me cheerfully on the shoulder. "That felt good, sir," he rumbled. "Juniper's face when she hears about this is going to be a work of art."

I felt my own lips quirk into a savage smile.

"We're still a long way from making up for last night, but we'll get there," I promised. "Do we have any wounded?"

"One of mine sprained her ankle running up the hill," Nilin said as he walked up to us. "That's the only one on our side – we got lucky."

"Let's hope our luck continues holding up," I replied. "Grab their sergeant and let's get out of here."

"And the rest?" Hakram asked.

I sheathed my sword and shrugged.

"No point in interrogating them. Break an ankle on each and leave them for Juniper's healers to fix. That should keep them out of our hair for a few days."

Both sergeants snapped a salute and turned to bark out their orders. I grabbed a soldier by the shoulder and sent him to fetch Robber, mind already thinking on my next move. *We're not done yet, Hellhound. Not by a long shot.*

Cl3an

Loving this – seems like this could be made into a proper fantasy series if you put together enough text.

[erraticerrata](#)

That's the aim, ultimately. The Guide would be the first book of four, which I've planned out already.

Ethan Smith

Sounds like you've thought this through... I hope the rest of this book and the other three books are as good or better than it has been so far... 😊

Onos

I've been wondering, what's the deal with this? Are you planning to take the completed Guide to a publisher? Also, what was the original sketch if you don't mind me asking – has it just taken a lot longer than you thought to tell the story or have there been drastic changes as you've went?

nipi

First! (I finally get to be it)

"I passed hand through her hair, only now noticing I'd been running around without a helmet this whole time."
Shouldnt it be "a hand" and "my hair". The seargent might just bite off her hand otherwise 😊

Our "heroin" has habbits:
"Letting out a breath I hadn't known I was holding"
"I passed a hand through my hair."

Love the story so far.

x

There are a few places in this chapter where "her" appears instead of "my":

I passed hand through her hair, (also "a hand")
I was glad I'd gotten the tall orc as her sergeant.
I murmured to herself.
I closed her eyes

Also, shouldn't this be "ours" instead of "theirs":
Whatever the goblins were carrying in those satchels of theirs was worth its weight in gold, in their current situation.

Other typos/issues:

The shouts and ring of steel against steel were coming from where Lieutenant Nauk's line had been camping next to mine meant that -were

I asked
I asked

"Well then, gentlemen, let's get moving."

"My guy counted ten," Robber croaked

I found the lack of any visible scene change marker distracting here.

"Nothing like a little flash and bang to start a party.

missing end quote

stevenneiman

One that's still here in 2018:

"I'd nixed that idea in the bud"

Should be either "I'd nipped that idea in the bud" or "I'd nixed that idea". "Nip in the bud" would refer to dealing with something small before it becomes bigger, while "nix" just means to stop or cancel something. I personally feel like "I'd nixed that idea" reads better here, but either version is valid.

[Shell](#)

I really enjoyed this chapter. There were a few grammatical errors that took me out of focus, but that was fine.

Anon

I love this so far. The writing is just amazing. I think I'm bookmarking this one.

Sean

Are you, by any chance, a fan of the Malazan Book of the Fallen series?

Sappers and munitions (cussers esp.) play a very large roll in that series, and it's not exactly a common trope.

[erraticerrata](#)

I am! It's where I got the name of cussers from, as it happens. That said, both the function of the sappers and the nature of the munitions is very different from the series. Which is only natural, given that the Malazans are a strong naval power and the Dread Empire has no navy to speak of. Their war doctrines have some pretty fundamental differences.

Sean

Cool! It's always fun meeting a fellow MBotF fan in the wild.

Hmm. I look forward to seeing how you have them used in this story. Half the fun of fantasy is the recycling and re-imagination of tropes and ideas.

Only Some Stardust

I think that word might be invented by the Malazan series, and not something 'in general' for munitions.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

"This is Tolkien's sandbox, we're just playing in it."

And I've never heard the term cusser applied this way, but it's pretty clear how the term evolved,

Unmaker

Typos:

skeptical

sceptical

(for the British English that the author said to proof in, 'c' is correct; it is reversed for U.S. English)

Bashal like this they call her the Hellhound.

(this is unclear, perhaps)

Bashal like this is why they call her the Hellhound.

I asked

I asked

My exhausted soldiers dropped their packs and shields to the ground as soon as they could

(unclear on what they did with the shields, perhaps)

My exhausted soldiers dropped their packs and put their shields to the ground as soon as they could

I murmured to herself

I murmured to myself

I counted up to sixty silence

I counted up to sixty in silence

into the deeper waters again

(not wrong, but not how the phrase is usually said)

into deep water again

(the colons are back – 15+ in a chapter is far more than most writing uses)

(the two statements "turning to Rat Company's advantage" and [the situation is] "Done, First Company was flipping their line when I left" seem to be in disagreement)

under strength tenths

under-strength tenths

(there is no transition from the order to scout the tower to the scout report – there should be a sentence or clause to indicate time passing)

“Nothing like a little flash and bang to start a party.
(missing a closing quote)

Reactions:

The opening quote got a serious grin – I have seen things like that from Pratchett’s *Vetinari* and Vimes and Yudowsky’s *Quirrel*.

I get that discipline is important and that a smart lieutenant will yield command to another lieutenant who seems to know what they are doing (or perhaps that constitutes shifting the blame), but the easy acceptance of the current men to Catherine’s lead is a bit odd. I did notice the various pushbacks that were mentioned, but still. Something to do with the Name perhaps? Even if those aren’t the Role’s direct powers, it appears it influences those around Named a bit more than normal.

I do like underdog stories, but I am going to be disappointed if Catherine pulls off a win here, because it makes no real sense for such an undermanned, less-proficient force to win in these circumstances. Asymmetrical warfare is certainly possible, but it usually takes time to work properly. Of course, if her Name powers get involved, some of those bets are off.

Unmaker

Never mind on the packs and shields comment – I managed to misread that twice – it makes sense as is.

[*erraticerrata*](#)

The reason Catherine’s had minimum pushback is that according to Legion regulations she’s the one supposed to be in command at the moment – incapacitated officers are supposed to cede authority. That Nauk hesitated at all in doing it because she’s a virtual unknown, and you’ll note he only did so after he heard her plan.

It’s virtually impossible for Catherine’s forces to pull off a win as they are, yes. That said, you’ll recall that beating the other company on the field isn’t the way to win: the point of the game is to take the other team’s standard and bring it to your own victory zone. (Which, in Catherine’s case, would be the hill where Rat Company got routed on the first night.)

[*r1c3cak3s*](#)

Hello I just read from the prologue to where we are now and I have to say that this is fantastic. Thank you for writing such a

fantastic novel and I look forward to the direction this series is going

[erraticerrata](#)

Thanks! Your recommendations on other sites are very appreciated, by the way.

stevenneiman

"but I'd [nixed] that idea in the bud" could be "nipped that idea in the bud" or just "nixed that idea"

"there was {a} small stream"

I'm loving the story so far. I look forward to eventually finding out whether Black and Captain are really evil as I would use the term or just ruthless in pursuit of their noble goals. The response to Mazus certainly seems like the latter, but executing the Sons of Steges sounds more like the former.

[rmcd94](#)

You know knocking people out has a very good chance of brain damage or death.

Breaking people's ankles sounds supwr horrific too. Considering everyone here is officer candidate material I'm surprised they put up with it.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

I suspect healing magic has something to do with it, as does the fact that they're the Evil Empire's Legions of Terror. Also, considering how much of the Guideverse runs on tropes already, I'd guess that knocking people out doesn't generally do long term damage. Much like how ten seconds or less for a swordfight is the exception, here, rather than the rule.

stevenneiman

"just like when [I'd used->I used to] sneak out of the orphanage"

"We're looking for {a} safe place to rest"

"but I'd nixed that idea in the bud" should be either just

"nixed" or "nipped in the bud"

"Hakram had roused [up] the other officers"

caimthehero

am I the only one put off by the fact that this went from a war series to a school series like that. The change was abrupt and felt mishandled. Everything about this new direction feels unnatural.

ALKATYN

Doing a reread at the moment I'm reminded of a question I had when originally reading it about how they manage to do these war games without meaningful casualties. Magical healing can deal with minor injuries, but the munitions being thrown around could be instantly fatal.

Also, since 9/10 of the legion members are soldiers not commanders at any given time not sure how well they're being prepared for their supposed future officer roles. But if guess there might be a system where the more experienced students are in command, or they rotate, think that was how it was supposed to work in things like enders game

sswanlake

Some edits:

I'd been wondering that herself. -> I'd been wondering that *myself*.

cartesiandaemon

Oh gosh, I love the wargames stuff.

[Bruno Neves Oliveira \(@Nephandu\)](#)

I'm still pissed she isn't the Squire for real, but these wargames are fun. Reminds me of Ender's Game.

Furion

First company seems underwhelmingly average in strategy. Also for someone with no experience, and the first day in the academy, Callow is a god level of talent. Chinese mc equal. Hopefully she ends up losing next chapter, would be much more realistic – instead of a bloated level of talent that surpasses talent + experience.

Ghost4576

This is a good series, but i think it needs a bit of editing. The author has a tendency to switch between I and her or she for the protagonist, and it does get on my nerves a little.

[how to order sex toys decretly on amazon](#)

Is anyone here in a position to recommend Speciality Items?
Cheers x

Rraune

"I'd been wondering that herself."
myself

"when we'd entered the forest, without even the moonlight to show us where they were going."
where we were going

Chapter 17: Set

"I'll be honest, Chancellor – revenge is the motivation for over half the decrees I've made."

– Dread Empress Sanguinia II, best known for outlawing cats and being taller than her

Nauk was napping when we got back to camp, resting lazily under a tree. One of his legionaries kicked him in the ribs when the war party passed by the sentries. Awaking with a growl, the orc swiped at the laughing dark-haired girl but she danced away. I raised an eyebrow at the exchange but passed no comment as I eased my armour's straps and propped up my shield against a stone.

"Humans," the wounded lieutenant rumbled. "You always think you're funnier than you are."

I felt I'd gotten enough of a handle on orc humour to know that was a joke. Still, it was always hard to tell with orcs.

"Still funnier than you," Robber sniped as he set down his leather satchel.

Nauk eyed Robber balefully.

"You're still conscious? Only half a victory, then," the orc replied.

I didn't know why those two had been at each other's throat since last night, but frankly I was far past caring.

"If the two of you have that much fight left in you, I have a fort that needs taking," I told them flatly. "Any volunteers?"

Robber rolled his eyes and wandered away without a word, leaving me to deal with Nauk – the orc scoffed but refused to meet my gaze. *Yeah, I'm definitely asking Hakram what's up with these two.* Our situation was bad enough already without two of my few remaining officers taking verbal swings at each other in front of the troops.

"We cleared the watchtower and dragged back their sergeant," I informed Nauk. "I'm guessing you'll want to be there for the interrogation?"

The orc grimaced.

"You'll need to help me up," he admitted. "My leg hasn't gotten any better."

I crouched next to him and slung his arm over my shoulder, knees almost buckling under the weight of him as I bore the other

lieutenant's mass.

"Heavens, what did you eat to get this big?" I wheezed, forcing myself upright.

Nauk grinned toothily.

"Whatever was lying around at the time," he replied, "we're not as picky about food as you lot."

"You should consider trying salad," I said, only half-joking. "I hear it's very slimming."

"Do I look like a bloody elf to you?" the orc grumbled as we crab-marched to the rocky outcropping I'd seen my men dragging the sergeant behind. "I might as well lick bark and frolic in meadows while I'm at it."

"Elves eat meat too," I informed him, tone thick with amusement.

"Give it a few years and Lord Black will have us eating the elves," Nauk replied conversationally. "My grandmother got a bite during the Conquest, said it was more tender than lamb."

Does it still count as cannibalism if it's another species? I'd have to ask Scribe, she probably knew. That aside, this was far from the first time I'd heard an orc artlessly profess trust in Black. It was proving to be a recurring pattern.

"Hakram said something along the same lines," I replied. "He was keen on the Black Knight too. Is it an orc thing?"

I almost stumbled when Nauk stopped moving, turning to face me with an unusual serious expression.

"I like you, Callow," he rumbled, "So I'll give you a piece of advice. You look like Wallerspawn and talk like a Callowan, so your folks were probably on the other side during the Conquest. You might have an axe to grind and that's your own business, but don't ever talk bad the Black Knight in front of a greenskin."

The orc's dark eyes burned with an intensity I'd only glimpsed last night when I'd seen him trashing a pair of legionaries with his bare hands, roaring challenges as he knocked their helmets together.

"He raised us up, Callow," Nauk said fervently. "He ended the wars between the Clans and told us that we could be *more*. That even if we were born in a hut, we could still become generals and lords instead of being meat in the grinder. If those fucking prissy nobles in the Tower were still in charge, I wouldn't even know how to read."

"I was just asking," I replied quickly, awkwardly warding him off with a raised while still balancing his weight on my shoulder.

"I've got nothing against him!"

Nauk eyed me sceptically.

"Even met him once," I continued, "I was around when he had Governor Mazus hung."

The orc grinned, doubts apparently cast aside for the moment. I reflected ruefully that with every passing day I was getting better at lying while saying the truth – no doubt Black would be proud. Or at least quietly approving, which was the closest I'd ever seen him to expressing that actual emotion.

"Heard about that," Nauk admitted. "The old families in Ater threw a fit over it."

From the looks of it, the prospect rather delighted the lieutenant. I frowned as we crossed the last few yards separating us from our destination. That was another pattern I'd noticed: most of the cadets hated the nobility in Ater with a vengeance. I could understand the resentment, having had a lean table at the orphanage more than once because of Mazus and his cronies, but it seemed to run deeper than that. Now that I thought about it, the Legion garrison in Laure had always been a little too eager to put the city guards in their place whenever they could. I'd first stopped being scared of the large orcs in armour after seeing one run off guards harassing an old shopkeeper, back when I was seven. The legionary had even helped the old man back to his stall before leaving, I remembered. *So the Legions of Terror and the nobles hate each other's guts. Then why did Black have Mazus executed? Wouldn't that make things worse between them?* My wayward teacher must have had a plan in mind, I guessed. *Or, I thought with a sudden chill, he's decided it's not worth trying to keep them happy anymore.*

That was the stuff civil wars were made of, I knew, and the prospect of a Dread Empire at war with itself was horrifying. Wars were brutal enough between Good and Evil, but between Evil and Evil? There might not be an Empire left by the time the dust settled. Putting the line of thought aside for the moment, I focused on the matters at hand: I helped Nauk sit against a rock facing the still-unconscious sergeant from the First Company and let out a sigh of relief when I dropped off the weight. The sergeant's hands and feet were bound with thick rope I'd seen the sappers carrying around and Hakram was looming over her body with a patient look on his face. Robber was sitting cross-legged on a flat rock, flipping a brightstick in the air lazily and catching it at the very last possible moment. Hakram turned to face me, rolling his shoulders in an unconscious gesture: I could sympathize, after a night and half a day running around in legionary armour.

"Nilin's setting up the watches," me sergeant informed me. "Says he'll be along as soon as he's done."

I nodded absently, taking a closer look at our captive. The girl was on the short side, skin the same bronze colour as Captain's and hair cropped close in the haircut most female legionaries seemed to favour. Her armour was dented noticeably around the ribs: it must have been a nasty hit that had put her down.

"Do we know anything about her?" I asked.

"Name's Juwan," Robber said, stopping to play with his stick.

"She's from Thalassina, I think."

Thalassina was one of the three great cities of the Empire, I knew, along with Ater and Foramen down in the deep south. It was the largest port in the Empire and the main hub of trade with the Free Cities.

"Let's wake her up," I said. "We might have to move camp and I'd rather do it before nightfall."

Hakram knelt by the prone sergeant and slapped her none too gently. I winced: not the way I would have done it, but then I'd

never interrogated anyone before. After a moment Sergeant Juwan blearily opened her eyes, squinting to get used to light before she took a look around her.

"Well, this is unexpected," she croaked out. "I don't suppose any of you asshats could give me a little water?"

Hakram snorted and uncorked his canteen, carefully pouring into the captive's open mouth – he lost patience after a moment, pulling it away and closing it with a small pop.

"I'm Lieutenant Callow," I said. "I have a few questions to ask you."

"Lieutenant what?" Juwan replied incredulously. "Who in the Seventy Thousand Hells are you? I've never heard of you before." *Seventy Thousand Hells?* I blinked in surprise, sneaking a look at Robber to make sure I hadn't misheard that last part. The goblin shrugged.

"They believe in all sorts of weird stuff in Thalassina," the sapper told me. "It's all that salt in the air."

"That's rich coming from someone whose patron deity is called *the Gobbler*," our apparently unimpressed prisoner retorted.

"Hit her, Hakram," Nauk opined over the goblin's retort. "They always get mouthy unless you hit them."

My sergeant shot me a questioning look but I shook my head. In all fairness, Robber had been asking for it.

"I'm new," I addressed Juwan. "But that's irrelevant –"

"Oh gods," the prisoner muttered, "I was ambushed by a greenie. I'm never going to hear the end of this."

"Are you quite done?" I said, a tad more sharply than before.

The sergeant shot me a condescending look.

"Look, 'Lieutenant'," she replied. "You're new, so it's understandable you might not get how fucked you are. Juniper's out there looking for you guys right now and you've got what... maybe a line and handful of sappers? You can't win this."

My face turned blank as the sergeant continued.

"Look, you managed to ambush my tenth so you did well on your first game," Juwan told me. "You might even get transferred to a company that actually wins once in a while. We've got Ratface and all your mages, just surrender the standard and we can all go home tonight."

I could feel the anger coming from the other three officers at our prisoner's casual dismissal and I felt the stirrings of it too, deep in my gut. I passed a hand through my hair and forced myself to calm down. *Don't make decisions angry. Angry means stupid, and if you get stupid you've already lost.*

"Sergeant Hakram," I said. "Hit her."

Sergeant Hakram did.

"Now, as I was saying," I continued icily. "I'm Lieutenant Callow. I have a few questions for you."

—

I really wished we'd managed to keep at least one of the maps, because the vague outline Robber had traced in the dirt looked

more like a Helike mural than the rendition of Spite Valley it was meant to be.

"So that rock is our position?" Nilin asked in a politely sceptical tone.

Robber rolled his eyes.

"That's the fort," he replied. "We're the smaller rock."

We let out a small noise of understanding in unison. Our captive had been blindfolded and stashed in a corner with a legionary standing guard over her, now that the questioning was over. I'd assembled the officers to hold an unofficial war council immediately after. Juwan's interrogation had yielded enough information to make the skirmish at the watchtower more than worthwhile: the sergeant's knowledge of troop disposition was a day old, but it allowed us to place our own position into a broader context. All of Rat Company except our motley band of survivors had been taken prisoner, we now knew, but there hadn't been enough room in the fort to keep seventy-odd legionaries. There was a secondary prisoner camp, and that meant we'd just stumbled on a way to bring up our numbers before hitting the harder target. There was no way taking a shot at the fort with our current line and a half would be anything but suicide, but if we managed to free another tenth – or even better, a few mages – then it would be a whole other story.

"We should move to attack the prison camp as soon as possible," Hakram said, breaking the thoughtful silence. "Juniper might post more soldiers there when she learns we already took out a tenth." "The men marched all night and fought not even a bell ago," Nilin retorted, tone flat and disapproving. "There are limits to what we can ask from them."

"The men will have to tighten their belt if they want to win this, Sergeant," Nauk growled. "Nobody said it was going to be a walk in the park."

"Says the guy who was napping when we came back," Robber scoffed. "Enough," I intervened. "Sergeant Nilin has a point. I'd rather not attack a second time in daylight anyway, we might get followed back to camp."

That gave everyone pause, as I'd intended it to: if even a single tenth found our camp, then that was it for the wounded and the handful of rations we'd managed to salvage. An empty stomach wasn't the kind of enemy you could put down with a sword.

"There'll be a least a line waiting for us there," Hakram rumbled. "And they'll be dug in behind fortifications, you can be sure of it."

"Juniper's sappers are the second best in the College for building defensive positions," Robber admitted, though it ran against his pride to do so. "They go by the book, though. If I get a look at it from a distance I could tell you what plan they're using."

I closed my eyes and silently weighed the risks against the benefits. Night attacks were a messy enough business without going in blind, I decided. The sapper had already proved he could get around quietly, and with the watchtower out of the equation

this might very well be the best chance we'd get.

"Take half a tenth and be back before sundown," I told the goblin. "Don't take stupid risks, we'll need you for the assault."

Robber's answering grin was malicious as ever and he saluted before pushing himself up. I turned my attention back to the "map" as he left, wondering if I was making a mistake. The prisoner camp was my best shot at getting enough soldiers to assault the fort, I knew, but that meant Juniper knew it too. Were we headed right into a trap? *It doesn't matter*, I finally decided. *I can't win this without taking risks, and this is the most reasonable one.*

"Put the troops on half-watch," I said, raising my head to look at the other officers. "Everybody should try to get some sleep, we've got a busy night ahead of us."

Nauk grunted his assent and Nilin helped him up. Hakram was about to follow suit but I discreetly shook my head: I still had a few questions to ask me sergeant. The orc shot me puzzled look but remained seated at my side while the other two officers crab-walked away.

"Lieutenant?" Hakram prompted, raising a hairless brow.

"Robber and Nauk," I said, going straight to the point. "What's their problem?"

The tall orc grinned.

"You didn't hear this from me," Hakram replied, leaning closer, "but it so happens they're both more than a little fond of Lieutenant Pickler."

"The lieutenant for the sappers?" I asked, surprised.

"That's the one," the orc agreed. "They're not usually that blatant about it, but without her around to keep the peace I guess the knives are coming out."

I frowned.

"And what does she have to say about this?"

Hakram's grin widened, showing razor-sharp white fangs.

"She might have mentioned something about how if they kept waving their genitalia around, something was bound to get stuck in a door hinge."

I bit my lip not to burst out laughing, sneaking a look at the retreating Nauk's back.

"I didn't know orcs could be attracted to goblins that way," I admitted.

"It's not common," Hakram replied. "But Nauk's an odd one, and even I have to admit Pickler has a nice set of teeth."

"Teeth," I replied, tone flat. "You're having me on."

The sergeant looked somewhat offended.

"Teeth are very important," he defended himself. "Why do you think no one's interested in humans? You've all got cow teeth."

If someone had told me a year ago I'd be sitting in the grass with an orc discussing the importance of molars in the mating habits of his species, I thought, I would have been rather dubious. Even now it felt more than a little surreal. Hakram apparently took my silence as a sign of displeasure, because he

hurried on.

"No offense meant, Callow," he assured me. "I'm sure you'll find a nice human to eat berries and nuts with."

"You know we eat meat too, right?" I replied, rather bemused. He snorted.

"It doesn't count if you roast it first," he told me with a friendly pat on the shoulder. "You might as well be chewing bread."

I didn't have the heart to tell him that that was rather the point. We walked back to camp in a comfortable silence and I found my bedroll, barely closing my eyes for a moment before sinking into sleep.

—

"Only four and no patrols," Robber said.

I clenched my fingers and unclenched them, taking a closer look at the fortifications. The outer wall was made of stacked stones and about the height of a half a man, with torches every few feet and four legionaries patrolling the perimeter at regular intervals. Behind it the First Company had built a palisade of stakes, too high for my soldiers to climb over. It hid the inside of the camp. There was only one way into the camp itself, an opening in the palisade swerving to the right and wide enough to be held by half a dozen legionaries. It was open field all the way to the first wall, I saw, and I knew my soldiers would have to take out the guards if we wanted to avoid the attack turning into a disaster. *If we don't, they'll sound the alarm and the rest of the line will hold us off in the opening until reinforcements can arrive.* Eyeing the wooden palisade speculatively, I gestured for Hakram to come closer.

"Could you break through that if we needed to?" I whispered. Her sergeant grimaced.

"Not without a battering ram," the orc replied. "They'll have put up buttresses on the other side to hold it up, it's in the manual."

It remained unsaid that we wouldn't have enough room to use a battering ram without tearing down a chunk of the first wall first, and that even then we'd have to make the damned thing first. No, this was going to have to be about getting my men in through the front door. Sergeant Nilin gingerly made his way through the underbrush to me, looking as uncomfortable in the woods as I felt — he was as much a city boy as I was a city girl, I'd gathered.

"Lieutenant, Sergeants," he greeted us in a murmur, snapping a parade-ground salute. "All of our soldiers are in position."

I'd told the sergeants to put all almost-thirty of my men in half circle around the camp's only way in, the three incomplete tenths waiting in silence for the signal to assault the enemy. Only Robber's sappers had remained marauding about in the woods, but I could see them trickling back into the ranks one after the other from the corner of my eye.

"Hakram," I said, "I'll need volunteers to take care of the guards."

The tall orc grunted his assent and made back towards his men.

"My sappers could handle that," Robber countered in a low voice.

"Less of chance we'll caught, too."

"Your sappers are going to be with the rest of Hakram's tenth and my own," I replied.

The goblin's yellow eyes shone with malevolent light in the dark of the woods.

"We finally get to play with the fireworks then, Lieutenant?" the sergeant asked eagerly.

"Hit them with all you've got, Sergeant," I told him.

We'd been hoarding the sappers' munitions so far, but now was the time to use them up. I'd thought about keeping them for the assault on the fort itself, but been forced to concede that if tonight's rescue failed there would be no assault worth the name. Better to use the brightsticks to ensure that the enemy line was too stunned and deafened to form up properly.

"Back to your tenths, gentlemen," I murmured. "Let's get this wheel turning."

They replied with a handful of salutes and I ducked around a tree as silently as I could, electing to stay ahead of my legionaries so I'd be in a better position to watch events unfold. Hakram's volunteers were already moving, I saw, the closest one crawling through the grass as he made his way across the open field. The next few moments would define if my offensive failed or not, I knew, so I held my breath as I watched the volunteer slowly make his way towards the unsuspecting guard. The legionary pressed himself against the outer wall as the guard passed him by, silently pushing himself up and climbing over the fortification. For an instant it looked like the sentry might hear him, but then the volunteer unsheathed his sword and hit the guard in the back of the head with the pommel. The First Company's sentry crumpled to the ground without a dull thump, and with a peremptory hand gesture I got my soldiers moving. Not a moment too soon, as it turned out, for a cry of alarm came from the other side of the outer wall. One of Hakram's volunteers had failed. I cursed under my breath.

"Double time," I called out to my legionaries, running across the empty field as quickly as I could manage in armour.

A dark shape passed me by, then a second, and with my jaw gaping I saw Robber and his sappers scuttling across the grass with the unnatural grace of a pack of spiders. The goblins pushed ahead of my men effortlessly, their thin green limbs moving fluidly as they tore through the distance separating them from the opening. Raising my shield up, I forced myself to catch up with them, my soldiers following suit behind me. By the time my line got to the opening Robber's sappers had already spread out in a line and were watching a half-dressed tenth from the First Company form up.

"Abacinate," Robber called out, his grin sharp and vicious.

All four goblins pulled out thin, elongated sticks and lit them

up with the pinewood matches they carried around everywhere. They threw as one and I barely had the time to close my eyes before the brightsticks exploded, the deafening bang and bright light searing my eyelids anyways. Unlike a real brightstick those wouldn't blind permanently, but they still stung like a bitch. I opened my eyes, already moving forward, only to see the sappers had little spheres in hand, already lit.

"*Spargere*," the goblin sergeant ordered, and the sappers rolled the balls under the enemy's shields with unerring aim.

A moment passed and then a series of explosions scattered the first rank of the enemy, sending shields flying and throwing the legionaries to the ground. Those cussers packed quite a punch, for a training version. I grinned at the goblins as I passed them, my soldiers close behind, and the legionaries threw themselves into the holes the sappers had just torn with savage enthusiasm. A dark-skinned girl around my age bashed her shield against mine, but I used the momentum of the charge to push her down anyway. Knocking out the enemy soldier with the pommel of the short sword I didn't remember unsheathing, I pressed forward into the camp as my legionaries broke the enemy formation. The inside was nothing unusual, four lines of bedrolls where the last handful of legionaries were hastily putting their armour on.

There was a long tent in the back where the prisoners were no doubt being held. Signalling for another handful of legionaries who'd broken through to follow me, I set to pacifying the rest of the camp. It was a grim business, but now was not the time to be gentle. We overwhelmed the first enemy before he managed to land anything more than a glancing hit on my shield and pressed on to charge the next two. One of my legionaries got a nasty hit on the shoulder, but in a matter of moments it was done. *Four outside*, I counted mentally. *Twelve at the breach, and three we just finished. If they were a full line, that still leaves...* There was a flash of flame and the legionary at my side was blown away.

"Guess I still have to work on my aim for that one," a lone legionary in light armour mused as red-orange flames wreathed her hands for a second time. "You'd be the Lieutenant in charge of that lot, then?"

"Lieutenant Callow, third line of Rat Company," I agreed as she raised my shield and steadied my footing. "And you'd be?"

"Lieutenant Assaye, fourth line of First Company," the honey-skinned girl replied with a smirk. "Should have brought a mage, Callow. This is going to have to get messy."

"I seem to have misplaced mine," I told her flatly. "You wouldn't happen to have some spares in that tent, would you?"

"Well look at the mouth on you," Assaye said. "Here's a tip, though, rookie – don't banter with mages when they're buying time to cast."

The flames wreathing the other lieutenant's hand grew in intensity and gathered into an orb that the girl sent flying right at me. I smiled. *Here's a tip for you, Lieutenant*, I thought, *learn to recognize when you're being baited*. Ignoring the primal part of my brain that was screaming at me to duck out

of the way, I raised my shield and ran right into the fireball. The impact nearly blew me off my feet but I grit my teeth and pushed through the flames, closing the distance separating me from the gaping lieutenant. There was no way I was taking another one of those, so I struck the girl on the temple with the flat of my short sword before she could summon up something more vicious. Before Assaye ever hit the ground, I dropped my shield and blade with a curse to put out the flames on my shoulder pads, doing my best to ignore the fact that I was letting out smoke like a small chimney.

"I'm not sure whether that was very brave or very stupid," I heard Robber mutter from behind me.

"I heard she castrated an ogre in single combat," Hakram grunted back in a low voice. "Thought that was just Ratface making the best of things, but I'm starting to believe it."

I turned around to shoot both sergeants a dirty look but they adopted the most innocent expressions they could – which, given that Robber was a yellow-eyed pyromaniac and Hakram had a set of teeth that would make most wolves balk, would have gotten them instantly convicted in any court of law.

"If you two have time to gossip," I told them, "you've got time to go check up on the prisoners we're rescuing."

"Aye aye, Lieutenant," Robber grinned, following Hakram's example and saluting before he made a strategic retreat.

—

As it turned out the tent held only a tenth of prisoners, which would have been disappointing if not for the fact that there were two mages and a sergeant among them. Both of the mages knew how to heal, which was even better news: I fully intended put them to work as soon as my troops got back to camp. Robber had argued we should take a different way back to our clearing to shake off possible followers, meaning the trip back was twice as long as the one to the enemy camp: it was the middle of the night by the time my soldiers were finally able to put down their shields. The sergeant we'd rescued was a short brown-haired girl by the name of Kamilah with a nasty scar running across her cheek, and she was sitting in on the unofficial officer's meeting I'd ordered as soon as watches were set up. Nauk was getting his leg looked at so he'd be missing this, but the orc lieutenant had shrugged and told me he didn't mind being brought up to speed when he was back on his feet. I'd gotten the impression he was rather eager to start moving on his own again, and I could hardly blame him for it.

"They moved some of us earlier today," Sergeant Kilian said. "To the fort, I think – I don't recall hearing anything about another prisoner camp. We used to be a full line of prisoners."

"I was afraid you'd say that," I muttered.

If there'd been another camp it might have been possible to assault it to add a few more legionaries to our forces, though I doubted Juniper would have made it as easy on us the second time.

"The fort's next, then," Hakram rumbled.

"We have healers now," Nilin disagreed. "And enough soldiers to keep prisoners. We could take out some of Juniper's patrols before risking an assault."

"We're dealing with the Hellhound, not a godsdamned first-year," Robber chided him. "The moment we make a patrol disappear she'll be able to guess what part of the woods we're in, and it's all downhill from there."

Nilin shrugged.

"She'll have at least a line getting healed and she'll be forced to leave a garrison at the fort – I say we should take our chances," he replied.

"We're not meeting Captain Juniper on an open field," I cut in.

"Even if we win, we won't be in any shape to assault the fort afterwards."

Sergeant Kilian cleared her throat.

"No disrespect intended, sir," she said, meeting my eyes squarely, "but why are you in command? You've been in the company for barely two days, if I'm not mistaken."

My own sergeant growled, but I held up my hand.

"It's a valid question, Hakram," I said. "Lieutenant Nauk ceded command to me when he was wounded, but now that he's getting healed he has seniority."

"Balls to that," came the voice from behind me.

I turned: the orc in question was striding towards us, leg finally out of its cast. I frowned at the other lieutenant.

"Are you sure, Nauk? I like being in charge," I freely admitted, "but you've been at this a lot longer than I have."

"I would have been in that prisoner camp if not for you, Callow," the large orc replied. "You got the standard and you've bloodied First Company twice. Only idiots change generals halfway through a campaign."

The short sergeant smiled uncomfortably.

"It wasn't meant as a criticism of your performance, sir," Kilian said. "I just thought it was a question that needed to be asked."

I could appreciate that. It would have been awkward for me to bring up the issue myself, anyway.

"No offence taken, sergeant," I replied. "Take a seat, Nauk. We're planning our next move."

The orc plopped himself on the log and everyone politely ignored the creaking sound that came from the wood – except for Robber, who snickered and seemed about to make a comment when Hakram spoke up.

"We should assault the fort in the morning," he gravelled. "No point in giving them more time to prepare than necessary."

"My sappers can have ladders done by then," Robber offered up, looking a little irritated he'd been cut off from indulging in his feud with Nauk.

"How are you doing on munitions?" Nilin murmured.

The goblin waved his hand vaguely.

"Out of cussers and brightsticks, still got enough smokers to ruin someone's day," he told them. "I'll manage."

"We'll have only two lines for the assault," Nauk rumbled.
"That'll be hard fighting."
The officers looked rather uneasy at the thought, but I shrugged.
"They won't have a full house waiting for us in the fort either," I replied.
"Do or die, then," Hakram grinned. "Worse comes to worse, we go out with a bang."
Nauk looked like he rather approved of the thought, slapping the other orc's shoulder cheerfully. I only barely refrained from rolling my eyes.
"Let's set up a full watch tonight," I ordered. "That makes it twice we've kicked the hornet's nest – sooner or later, something is bound to follow us home. Dismissed."
After a round of salutes, they rose and returned to their men. I remained behind, looking up at the night sky and wondering what tomorrow's battle would have in store for us. *Only one way to find out, I suppose.*

[rlc3cak3s](#)

Absolutely lovely thanks for the chapter

[ritsum37](#)

Thanks for the chapter! Loving it!

danielmc73

Love this story. I don't know how she going to win when attacking a fort with less troops but I'm sure it will be great reading. Wish it was realeased more often. Thanks for the chapter

[erraticerrata](#)

Yeah, I'd like to do the same but between work and university classes my schedule's pretty full. Should I ever get ahead enough in chapters I'll probably start updating twice a week, but I wouldn't count on it for the foreseeable future.

nipi

Love this story.

Too bad we didnt get to hear how the information was gotten out of the captive (torture?). And what Callows thoughts on it were.

Noticing plenty of female sergeants and other leaders. I guess the Empire is not sexist. However I do hope that the vast

majority of the legionaries are still male. Because from a societies point of view unlike women men are expendable.

[erraticerrata](#)

The Legions of Terror are a professional army, not a levy, so the proportion of women in the ranks isn't an accurate reflection of the gender percentages there would be in a general mobilization. That said, sexism has more or less been eradicated in Praes – early Dread Empresses thoroughly expunged the concept out of the imperial mindset, often by the sword. The Guideverse in general is a lot less sexist than our own world because of Names, which are roughly split half and half between men and women. Hard to tell a woman she can't do something when she has a mandate from the Heavens that says otherwise.

[nipi](#)

Some thoughts and perhaps inspiration for the author.

So far we have had sword fights. I hope we see some spears or polearms if we ever have a battle in an open plain. They have an advantage against swords in unconfined conditions.

Spear shaft cutting test:

We had some hits with the pommel in this chapter. Story didnt really tell how exactly they were delivered but perhaps some of them were a Murder strike (Mordstreich in German).
Example of half-swording and murder strike:

About Talhoffers manuscript:

Spear vs sword sparring (H.E.M.A.):

[nipi](#)

Last 2 videos arent that important. Also forgot about spear and crossbow in chapter 12.

[erraticerrata](#)

The Dread Empire has been known to use pikes in battle – a direct response to the fact that their closest neighbour had the strongest cavalry on the continent – but polearms aren't a popular weapon in the region aside from the Free Cities.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Nice post. I like that half-sword trick

Poetically Psychotic

I'm going to have to come back and check these out sometime.

[*Shell*](#)

Here are a few grammatical errors I spotted.

Don't make decisions angry. (Don't you mean "Don't make angry decisions.")

I have a few questions got you. (Don't you mean "I have a few questions for you.")

—

I am really enjoying this arc of the story, and like Daniel stated above, I do wish this was released more often.

Geli

Wow, quite a read. I read it all in one sitting and I'm impressed. That's a great character, some great chapters and quite a unique and interesting idea!

I really like Catherine. I think (like most readers) that the moment of Doubt with her healing and the consequences could have been handled better, but really that's the only problem I have seen so far at all.

So great work, keep it up and you have definitely won a loyal reader with me!

Only one question: How often do you update?

[*erraticerrata*](#)

Once a week, on Wednesdays.

Unmaker

Typos:

skeptical

sceptical

(second is the British spelling, first is the US spelling)

ground.Those

ground. Those

Well look at the mouth on you

Well, look at the mouth on you

(comma indicates a pause, doesn't sound right without one)

(the colons are back)

"Look, "Lieutenant","

"Look, 'Lieutenant',"

I have a few questions got you.
I have a few questions for you.

Reactions:

Very nice overall.

Anonymous reader

Noticed that Kilian popped up as a Sgt. is that a typo?

An explan

Its a typo, erraticerrata probably meant to say sgt. Kamilah, the sgt. from the prison camp, instead of Kilian, who's a mage lieutenant.

So in short, exchange the instances/mentions of Kilian with Kamilah and that'll clear up a lot of confusion.

stevenneiman

"awkwardly warding him off with a {hand?} raised while still balancing"

I really wonder what Juniper will think when she realizes that she got (seriously challenged/her butt kicked) by someone who has only been around for one wargame.

[thebookgator](#)

I'm enjoying this story quite a bit, although I confess I tend not to be military-strategy minded. But why choose the word "gravelled" in your dialogue? It just sounds odd. A gravelly voice? A grumble? It's an odd word that makes me think of ground cover. I appreciate that you seem to be looking for dialogue words other than 'said,' but sometimes, 'said' is just fine. Or no marker at all. I also think Catherine does an awful lot of 'grunt[ing]' for a young person. I think of that as a trait of an old, taciturn person.

Also, stylistically speaking, I'd suggest someone taking a run through your book for words that don't fit the setting. A couple chapters back, I believed you used "tetchy," and I think there have been a few word choices along those lines. I assume you are grooming this for publication, because it's very good, and far and away above most self-published I've looked at, so I offer these as the kind of suggestions that help people further dive into your world-building.

Letouriste

The name is kilian or kamilah ?
Thanks for the chapter by the way:)

stevenneiman

"just like when [I'd used->I used to] sneak out of the orphanage"
"We're looking for {a} safe place to rest"
"but I'd nixed that idea in the bud" should be either just
"nixed" or "nipped in the bud"
"Hakram had roused [up] the other officers"
"put all almost-thirty of my men in {a} half circle"
"Less of {a} chance we'll caught"

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Great execution on the Gobbler joke. it was good for a second laugh upon mention of Pickler, which was when I noticed something about the goblin naming scheme 😊

Letouriste

"Dread Empress Sanguinia II, best known for outlawing cats and being taller than her"
So there ARE cats^^! This quote made me think about animals in this novel:we know the animals in praes often have genetics modification,consequence of the craziness in the Tower.
So i'm wondering if cats and dogs are present or not...(the same for usual other common species)

linnilalartyr

Thanks for the chapter!!
It's so good as always~~

I am still feel weird reading the goblin as the engineer though.
In my mind the goblin is not intelligent enough to even speech.

[julienbrightside](#)

Getting an Enders game feel of these chapters.

sswanlake

Some edits:

best known for outlawing cats and being taller than her -> best known for outlawing cats and being taller than her [subjects? dunno]

warding him off with a raised while still -> warding him off with a raised *hand* while still

had a few questions to ask me sergeant -> had a few questions to ask my sergeant

The orc shot me puzzled look but -> The orc shot me *a* puzzled look but

tiki280

I read that as outlawing cats and beings taller than her. (Beings since humans are far from the only species) though I'd personally have used /any one / or every one.

Poetically Psychotic

Yeah I read it as "Outlawed cats and outlawed being taller than her."

NerfGlastigUaine

Wait, Nauk's grandmother got a bit of ELF in the Conquest? How the bloody hell did she do that?! Besides the fact that elves don't live in Callow, we've seen them in the story, they're basically demigods who could slaughter entire companies.

Shveiran

Yes, I believe that is a vestige of a time before EE fully brought in elves in his worldbuilding. It isn't really surprising considering Elves first appear in Book 3 and aren't really central even then.
But it probably needs correcting.

NerfGlaistigUaine

Yeah, that's what I thought too. A few bits in the early chapters don't make as much sense or don't mesh well with the later ones. A minor example IMO is when Black talks about his predecessor's death by mook + exhaustion – I think it'd make more sense if he died after 1000 kills not 100 as 100 kills is strictly little league by now and hard to believe it'd tire out a major Named enough to be poked to death.

[Mental Mouse](#)

Or Nauk was just BSing. This very chapter shows how that works:
> "I heard she castrated an ogre in single combat," Hakram grunted back in a low voice. "Thought that was just Ratface making the best of things, but I'm starting to believe it."

(so that's where that rumor came from!)

Ceres

First fantasy world that makes me go "if I ever play an rpg of this, I'm definitely picking a goblin"

Chapter 18: Match

"Always mistrust these three: a battle that seems won, a chancellor who smiles and a ruler calling you friend."

– Extract from the personal journals of Dread Emperor Terribilis II

The fort at the end of the valley had stood there in one form or another since the beginnings of the Dread Empire, or so Hakram told me. Before the Dark Tower's authority had been firmly established, it had served as a choke point to hold off roving orc clans and Taghreb raiders. In later eras it had become the last defence against armies coming from the Kingdom of Callow before they could march on Ater itself, the last stand Evil could take before Good came to knock at the front door. It had been over a century since the last Crusade, however, and in the interregnum the Legions of Terror had taken to using the fort as a defensive position in their war games.

Still, it wouldn't do to forget that they built this for an actual war, not a fake one, I mused. Cadets were responsible for the upkeep of the fort, meaning every company knew its workings inside out: my soldiers were no exception, though only Robber and his sappers had been able to hash out a detailed plan of it in the sand. The description they'd given me was... daunting.

The fort itself was situated on the flattened top of a hill, its walls thirty feet high and a little more than half as thick, but the true terror of it came from the outside fortifications. Right in front of the walls a ditch about fourteen feet deep had been dug and filled with stagnant water. After a thin strip of land another identical ditch had been dug and filled with jutting wooden spikes. The open field leading to the ditches was dotted with the vicious traps the legionaries had nicknamed "lilies": pits three feet deep with a sharpened stake waiting for unwary soldiers at the bottom, hidden under a layer of branches and dead grass.

All companies had assaulted the fort often enough to know the pattern of the traps by now, but it still forced the ranks of attacking companies to break. From what Robber had told me, trainees still died in accidents regularly – it was considered a good omen for a company to not lose any freshmen cadets in their first game of the year.

"You're sure their mages won't shoot at us while we're going through the lily field?" I asked Hakram.

"It's considered bad form to do it," the sergeant gravelled.

"Companies that hate each other's guts might go ahead anyway, but we're not feuding with the First."

I raised an inquisitive eyebrow at the orc.

"Who are we feuding with, then?"

"No one," Hakram replied, sounding rather chagrined. "We're at the bottom of the company rankings, so no one's bothering."

I let out a vaguely empathetic noise.

"Rat Company's been last for a while, then?" she asked.

"Since before Ratface took over as captain," her sergeant agreed.

"He's done his best, but unless we manage a miracle today it'll still be his twelfth defeat: he'll lose his captainship."

I kept my surprise away from my face – from the casual way Hakram had dropped that tidbit, it seemed like it was common knowledge among the rank and file. It certainly cast the captain's hostility when I'd first met him in a new light: no wonder he'd been furious, being assigned an untaught lieutenant on the eve of a game that had his rank on the line. *Not my fault he lost the last eleven, though, so he could have been less of an ass about it.*

"So, have we got an idea how many are in there?" I asked, changing the subject.

"No way to tell," Hakram grunted back. "Gotta be a least thirty of them, but there could easily be more."

I grimaced. Going in blind was hardly the way I would have preferred to take a crack at the fortress, but we were running out of options fast. At least Robber's sappers had fashioned us four ladders over the night, meaning we'd be able to manage to assault multiple walls simultaneously. How much that would really help them if the enemy was as numerous as they were was arguable, but it was still better than nothing. Speaking of the devil, the goblin sergeant was swaggering his way up the hill towards us.

"That's Lieutenant Trapper on the wall," he announced, his tone implying that particular fact was significant.

I raised an eyebrow.

"I'm sure you have a point," I told the goblin, "but so far I'm missing it."

"Trapper's only the fourth senior-most of the First Company lieutenants," Robber replied. "So that means..."

"They can't have more than two lines in there," I finished thoughtfully. "Otherwise someone else would be in charge."

Robber hummed in agreement, palming a smoker from his satchel and twirling it through his fingers. I frowned and readjusted her plans. Forty legionaries we could manage, with a little luck. It all depended on the nerve of the officers holding the walls, of course, but Robber's deduction was the first bit of good news I'd heard all day.

"How do you know about Trapper's seniority?" Hakram asked, breaking me out of my train of thought.

"Oh, that's easy," the yellow-eyed sergeant replied nonchalantly.

"We know each other from the Great Goblin Conspiracy meetings."

My sergeant barked out a laugh but after a moment of awkward silence he shot an uneasy look at Robber.

"There's not really a Great Goblin Conspiracy, is there?" he rumbled.

"Would I tell you if there was?" the goblin replied with a wicked smile, throwing his smoker up and snatching it out of the air.

Robber saluted lazily and swaggered off back to join the tenth I'd assigned him to. I did my level best not to snicker at my sergeant, but from the disgruntled face the orc was making I guessed some of my amusement was showing. Studying the steel-capped legionaries standing on the southern wall of the fort, I decided to make a last minute change to the assault. We still didn't know how many crossbowmen First Company's garrison could muster, but as far as I could figure our best shot at setting foot on the walls was splitting up the enemy with multiple assaults. Nilin's tenth would assault from the west, Kilian's by the east and Nauk's would take the gate. If anyone could manage to land a ladder while getting shot at by a whole line, it was the orc lieutenant. The pair of mages I'd rescued yesterday was too exhausted to be of any use, so they were hiding in the woods with the standard: I'd given them orders to hide until the games were over if the assault failed. Better a tie than a defeat, if it came to that.

"We won't be backing Nauk at the gate," I told Hakram. "Our tenth will hold back until we see an opening. Give our sappers to Kilian and tell her I want the whole eastern wall turned into a cloud of smoke when she assaults."

The greenskin sergeant cocked his head to the side and eyed me thoughtfully as he tried to puzzle out the meaning behind the corrected instructions.

"You're banking on Trapper panicking when he loses sight of what's going on in the east and giving us an opening," he stated after a long moment of silence.

I blinked in surprise.

"How are you still a sergeant?" I asked.

"Failed Foreign Languages two semesters in a row," Hakram admitted. "Fucking Old Miezán. Can't make higher than sergeant if you'd don't pass everything."

"Lucky for me," I murmured.

I shuddered to think of how much harder this whole game would have been without the tall sergeant quietly covering for all the gaps in my military education. I got a pleased grin for my comment and Hakram walked away to spread my last orders, leaving me alone to watch my plan come to life.

"Let's see how steady your nerves are, then, Lieutenant Trapper," I whispered to myself, watching Nilin and Kilian's troops start moving through the lily field.

The first crossbow shot from the walls clattered uselessly against the shield of one of Nilin's soldiers in a matter of moments, though I immediately heard a sergeant barking for First Company to hold their fire. *Praesi crossbows can hit a target to up to three hundred and fifty yards, effective kill range at one hundred fifty*, I recited mentally. The lessons had been a pain to learn, but I was beginning to understand why Black had put so many military treatises in the pile. The attacking tenths still had at least fifty yards to go before they would start getting shot at in earnest, but the officers were already calling up for the legionaries to form the testudo. The first rank stopped and

raised their shield, the second one propping theirs up to form a roof over their heads. It would slow them down and it was nowhere as effective as if it had been full lines forming up instead of tenths, but it was still better than going in bare. Twenty yards to go, then ten and finally the order came from the enemy on the wall.

"First Company, take aim," a sergeant bellowed.

I clenched my fingers and unclenched them, resting the palm of my hand on my short sword's pommel.

"First Company, FIRE!" the call came.

The twang of crossbows unleashed filled the battlefield, the bolts whistling eerily as they tore through the air. From the corner of my eye, I saw one of Nilin's legionaries get caught in the knee and fall to the ground with a yell but Nauk's tenth was the one they were trying to take out – the orc lieutenant took a blunted bolt straight to the chest but he laughed it off and replied with an obscene gesture. Still, two of Nauk's legionaries were hit, one dropping his shield with a yelp and the other slipping to the ground without a word, knocked out cold. The legionaries fell out of the testudo the very instant First Company was done shooting, sprinting across the lily field as fast as they could. They'd be safe for a minute or two: crossbows might be easier to wield and pack more of a punch than longbows, but their rate of fire was horrendously slow. With a little luck Kilian and Nilin would be past the ditches by the time First Company was ready for another volley.

Nauk's tenth was already at the feet of the gates and trying to prop up their ladder but it kept getting pushed away by a pair of legionaries with forked poles. The lieutenant barked out an order and a pair of smokers spun through the air to land on top of the gate, letting out streams of thick grey smoke. Unlike real smokers it wasn't poisonous, but it was still hard to breathe in. First Company immediately tried to throw those back but a pair of cussers followed and blew an enemy legionary straight off the rampart. Robber's handiwork, at a guess. I winced: a fall from that high was sure to earn broken bones. Turning my attention to the west, I saw Nilin was failing at getting his own ladder up. First Company had somehow managed to set it on fire and his tenth was too busy trying to put the flames out to press their assault. *Magic*. Mages always made everything more complicated. Eyes flicking to the east, I saw Kilian was making good progress. In a matter of moment she would... and there they went, the smokers had landed on the wall.

"Come on, Trapper," I murmured. "You could lose the east if you're not careful, and we both know you've got too many soldiers covering Nauk."

A minute of tense anticipation passed as I waited with baited breath until a handful of legionaries hurried through the battlements to link up with the eastern wall. I grinned.

"Gotcha," I said.

Turning to Hakram, I saw he was milling around the tenth I'd been holding back.

"Sergeant, get our tenth ready to move. We'll give them a minute to get entangled before we hit the wall next to Nauk."

"Aye aye, Lieutenant," the sergeant saluted.

The legionaries picked up the ladder and spread in two lines of five. Fastening my helmet's leather straps, I checked my blade a last time out of habit and made my way to my soldiers.

"We go in hard and fast," I addressed them as soon as I was close enough. "Wounded get left behind, we head straight for the standard."

My tenth managed an awkward salute while keeping a hand on the ladder and I took the lead, my shield already brought up. It would have been shame to get this far only to be taken out by a lucky crossbow shot. I'd already decided we'd stick to the road as long as possible before veering to the right. Nauk was making enough of a mess around the gate that First Company would have more pressing problems on their hands than my tenth. I kept the pace brisk, but there was only so fast the legionaries could go while carrying a ladder – twice I had to slow down so I wouldn't pull ahead too much. By the time they got to the first ditch the smoke on top of the wall was starting to clear and I could see a handful of Nauk's legionaries desperately fighting on top of it to protect the ladder they'd managed to land. *Good*, I thought.

Keep them busy for me, Lieutenant. I slid down the slope and threw my shield on the strip of ground separating the first ditch from the second, picking it up as soon as I'd made the climb. My soldiers were following close behind, Hakram exhorting them to hurry every step of the way, and in a matter of moments they'd propped up their ladder. It was a good thing every company knew how tall the walls were, I had a feeling the sappers' ladders would have come up short otherwise. I was second up on the ladder behind a pale-skinned girl whose name I did not know and I winced when an enemy legionary popped up at the top of the battlements and unloaded his crossbow straight in her chest – the girl managed to divert her fall off of the ladder so I didn't fall with her, but it had been made clear enough that speed was of the essence. I jumped over the edge of the battlements to be greeted by the sight of half a dozen First Company legionaries headed my way. The boy with the crossbow had already taken out his sword but he was too slow. I punched him in the jaw and threw him off the wall while taking out my blade. Hakram suddenly appeared at my back, sword in hand, and with a shared grin we ran towards the enemy. We didn't need to win, we both knew, just delay them long enough for my tenth to make it up the wall.

Shield impacted against shield and I was forced to take a step back, but my adversary's defence was sloppy: I landed a hard blow against the side of the helmet and turned aside a sword stroke from another legionary. Another of my soldiers joined the fight and then another, the whole tenth trickling in before too long had passed. I might not have liked Ratface, but I had to admit that the captain had drilled his legionaries superbly. First Company's legionaries backed off when they saw they were outnumbered, one of them running for reinforcements, but I had no

intention of pursuing. The whole melee had cost us only one wounded and I offered the dark-skinned legionary a sharp nod before running off towards the stairs. Keeping the map of the fort Robber had traced in mind, I knew I'd have to take my tenth through the melee on the eastern wall before reaching a way down: time to see what Kilian had managed to accomplish. The smoke on the battlements had faded away to wisps, making it easy to see the sergeant's men were busy giving First Company a hard fight: Kilian's tenth had wounded and had been outnumbered from the start, but they were fighting with a ferocity that surprised me. Maybe I'd underestimated how badly Rat Company's legionaries wanted a win. My tenth took to First Company's flank like fire to kindling, tearing through it in a matter of moments and scattering the enemy.

"You sure know how to throw a party, Lieutenant," Kilian herself gasped as she made her way towards me, cheek badly bruised.

"It's all about the guest list," I replied amusedly. "Think your men have it in them to head for the standard?"

"HEAR THAT, GIRLS AND BOYS?" Kilian roared out. "LIEUTENANT CALLOW WANTS TO KNOW IF YOU'VE STILL GOT A WIN IN YOU!"

The noise of blade slapping against shields and cheers drowned out everything else for an instant, my own legionaries joining in without hesitation.

"That good enough, sir?" Kilian asked with a cheeky smile.

"It'll do," I agreed. "Fall into rank, we're moving out."

The inside of the fort was about what Robber had described: a low stone house up against the northwestern corner to house prisoners and a series of tents surrounding the wooden palisade that made up the centre. I could see over it from my current vantage point and the enemy standard was right there in its socket, without so much as a single guard. If we hurried enough I'd be able to pull out my troops before casualties got too bad. Ordering my men to pull up the ladder that had brought Kilian's tenth to the top of the wall, I took the lead once more and started running down the stairs. I'd have to set up a cordon of legionaries to make sure we weren't flanked.

The gate to the inner fort wasn't even locked, my soldiers found out to their surprise: they must not have been expecting an assault. This whole thing was going off much more smoothly than I'd thought it would, to be honest. *No point in looking a gift horse in the mouth.* I left the enemy standard in Hakram's capable hands and got my legionaries moving towards the western wall: as far as I could see Nilin was making no progress on it, but we could use his ladder to escape. That was when the first hitch in my plan appeared. Yells came from the cordon I'd set up and I cursed when I saw what was going on. The survivors from the east and what seemed to be at least half the soldiers who'd been fighting Nauk were hitting my flank, the distinctive silhouette of Lieutenant Trapper haranguing them into pushing forward. The whole thing could turn into a rout in a matter of moments, I knew: all it would take was First Company breaking apart my men and then it would just be a matter of taking out scattered groups

of my attackers. There was only one thing for it, I'd have to...
"Lieutenant," I was interrupted by Kilian, "it doesn't have to be you."

I blinked in surprise.

"I'm not sure what you mean," I hedged.

"Someone has to hold the rearguard," the sergeant replied flatly.

"But it can't be you."

"You think I can't handle it?" I challenged her.

"I think Lieutenant Nauk was right," Kilian retorted, meeting my eyes squarely. "You're the one holding this together. Let me handle it, Callow – there must be a reason you got me back in the first place."

Tempting, oh so tempting, but could I really let anyone else do this? Rat Company didn't really need me to get the standard back to camp and claim victory. I closed my eyes, furiously trying to find another solution, but all I could think of was a pair of pale green eyes looking back at me. *The only clean victories are the one in stories, Catherine.* I let out a string of curses that drew a raised eyebrow from Kilian. Sacrifice has never come easy to me, and sacrificing people under my command left an even worst taste in my mouth. *But that's why you sent me here, isn't? So I'd learn that sometimes you being in charge means making decisions like this.*

"Fine," I grit out. "Give them Hells, Sergeant."

Kilian saluted grimly and unsheathed her sword, heading out for the melee.

"LEGIONARIES!" she screamed. "TO ME!"

Hakram tugged at my elbow urgently and I clenched my fingers.

Without another word I ran off towards the stairs to the western wall, my tenth falling in behind me while Kilian's delayed First Company. Time to get out of there.

—

The way out had been surprisingly easy, Nilin's tenth managing to land their ladder within moments of my soldiers hitting the wall. I'd gotten my men through and linked up with Nauk while the orc was making his own escape, having somehow managed to unlock the front gate. We'd hurried away after getting back our own standard, well aware that if we lingered too long the rest of First Company was bound to find us. The walk back to the initial camp site had become more and more leisurely as we neared their objective, though, my soldiers laughing and teasing their way up the valley. And yet I couldn't find it in me to join the merriment. The victory had been too easy, and the more I thought about it the more this was beginning to feel wrong – it was too much of a coincidence that so many troops from the First Company would be out on patrol at the exact moment my own cadets had hit the fort. Hakram had said that Juniper liked bold strokes and swift victories, that it was likely she'd been so frustrated by them surviving that she'd overcommitted on patrols, but I was beginning to think he'd been wrong.

The way the mage line had been hit first had been bothering me for a while: if Captain Juniper meant to take out Rat Company, why hadn't she gone for the scouts? With them silenced she might have managed to overrun the entire camp before the alarm was rung. *Unless that wasn't what she was after*, I thought. *Crippling the company by taking out our healers the first night makes more sense if she was aiming to just chip at us day by day.* But on that night, when the First Company's soldiers crept around the camp, they'd found that Ratface had ordered a half-watch and realized they could do a lot more damage than just taking the mages. Juniper hadn't bet it all on a night assault that could easily have gone wrong, she'd taken an opportunity when she saw an opening. And if that was true... *then there's no way she overcommitted on patrols. There's something I'm missing here.* "If I couldn't find my enemy," I mused out loud to myself, "how would I catch them?"

What did Juniper need to win? *Our standard.* Just as we needed hers. But as long as Rat Company's survivors were on the move, she might as well have been looking for a needle in a haystack: Spite Valley was full of hidey-holes, and a more defensive-minded leader than I might have elected to wait out the remaining time in one and let the game be a draw. *But I showed her I wanted to go on the offensive by hitting the watchtower*, I realized. *So then why were there so few soldiers guarding the prisoners?* ... there'd been no senior officers among the prisoners at the prison camp, now that I thought about it. And only two mages. Enough to patch up all my wounded, sure, but we'd still been barely forty afterwards and my two healers had been too exhausted to be of any use for the assault. I'd thought it was a coincidence at the time, that the more important prisoners had been kept elsewhere. But if that was the case, why had there been any mages at all? *She was giving me those. Building up my confidence so I'd attack the fort.* So I'd taken my men to the fort, and at the cost of almost half of my force taken the First Company's standard. Now I had only a little over a line left and I was headed back for the deserted Rat Company camp, where I'd put down the enemy standard and officially claim victory. *If couldn't find my enemy, how would I catch them?*

"I'd dictate where they have to go," I whispered, a shiver of dread going down her spine.

"What's that, Callow?" Nauk called out cheerfully, the standard still resting on his shoulder.

"RAT COMPANY," I roared, "FORM UP!"

Hakram, bless his soul, instantly started slapping around the disbelieving soldiers around him until they formed a wobbly square. Nauk pushed through the shifting cadets to get at my side, a sceptical look on his brutish face.

"That just gave away our position to any patrol in the area," he growled. "Care to explain?"

"They already know we're coming, Nauk," I breathed out. "Think about it – hasn't it all been going too smoothly?"

"So we got lucky," the orc grunted out. "It happens."

"We haven't been lucky, we've been played," I retorted, eyes scanning the woods around us. We were already in sight of the cluster of hills where we'd camped on the first night. Was it too late? Were we already far enough into the trap that there was no backing out? If we managed to get away with both standards, we might still be able to turn this around.

"You're thinking too hard, Callow," Nauk growled. "Juniper's good, but there's no way she's that-"

In an unpleasant concession to the universal laws of irony, that was the very moment that the soldiers emerged from the woods on both our sides. A line per flank, I guessed, and the garrison we'd escaped from back at the fort had probably been shadowing us during the whole trip, just out of sight.

"Hellgods," Nauk spat out. "That's all sorts of fucked."

A handful of silhouettes appeared at the crest of the hill we'd been about to start scaling, first among them a large orc in legionary armour who idled her way down the dirt path. So there was another line waiting for us uphill – they'd probably caught Robber when I'd sent him scouting ahead with his sappers. Rat Company closed ranks, shields up and faces grim. They still had fight in them, I knew, but none one was expecting to win the battle anymore. The joy had gone out the company the moment the first enemy soldiers had come out.

"So which one of you would be Lieutenant Callow?" the lone orc called out in a smoky voice as soon as she got halfway down the hill, resting a hand on the pommel of her short sword.

I sighed.

"I'm guessing that's Captain Juniper?" I said in an aside to Nauk.

"The Hellhound herself," the orc grunted. "Think we could grab her if we charged?"

I snorted, shaking my head.

"Too obvious," I replied. "She's planned it all out so far, I doubt she missed a ploy that obvious. Guess it's time to meet the woman of the hour."

I tapped the soldier in front of me on the shoulder and the company parted to let me through. I made my way to the bottom of the hill before deciding it was far enough.

"So, you're Captain Juniper," I said. "I'd make a pithy comment about expecting you to be taller, but you've got at least two feet on me."

"Funny," Juniper replied with bared teeth. "I'll get to the point, Lieutenant, we're both busy girls. The Tactics manual says I should offer you a chance to surrender, since you're both surrounded and outnumbered."

There was a pregnant pause.

"This is where you refuse with a scream of defiance and I get to crush you lot while still getting full marks," Captain Juniper prompted.

I eyed my opponent thoughtfully, letting another silence take hold. Juniper had chosen everything about the encounter so far: the terrain, the troop disposition, even the time of day. That

little petulant voice in the back of my head was urging me to throw back the offer of surrender in the orc's face and give her a fight to remember, but I knew better than that. Even before I'd spent a month getting taught by the most dreaded strategist of the age, I'd known better than that. Never give the opponent get what they want. *If you let them dictate the flow of the encounter, you'll lose every time.*

"No," I decided. "We'll surrender. No point in dragging this out, you're right. Give me a minute and I'll talk Lieutenant Nauk into it. Do I just give you the standards or is there a protocol I don't know about?"

Juniper eyed me distrustfully, clearly taken aback. It was all I could do not to smile.

"First you give us back ours, then I send someone to collect yours," she replied. "Don't try to be cute, the moment one of you steps out of line my legionaries are charging. I'll be waiting up the hill."

Dismissing the idea of such wanton treachery with a vague hand gesture, I made my way back to Rat Company's ranks. The company's remaining officers gathered around me.

"Lieutenant," Hakram rumbled. "You can't seriously be considering a surrender. I know the odds are bad, but —"

"Don't be an idiot, Sergeant," I whispered, "I have a plan. Pick another two men to accompany me when I give the Hellhound back her standard."

The orc hid a grin and saluted. I turned to face Nauk and Nilin.

"So, gentlemen," I said cheerfully. "How long do you think you can hold against the bastards?"

Nauk let out a belly laugh.

"For you, Callow? We'll last 'till sundown," he grinned, looking like the world's meanest, ugliest green cat.

"A quarter hour," Nilin ventured more pragmatically, ignoring the dirty look the orc shot him.

I clenched and unclenched my fingers, trying to limber them up. A mostly pointless gesture, but I'd found it helped me think.

"A quarter hour will have to do," I decided. "By then I'll have either failed or succeeded anyway. Give them Hells, boys."

They saluted with grim looks on their faces, but there was an energy to them that had been missing a moment earlier. Funny the way even the slightest hope could fundamentally change the mood in the worst situations. No wonder heroes kept talking armies into taking doomed last stands. Hakram and the two soldiers he'd picked — the pale dark-haired girl I'd seen kick Nauk and a female orc even taller than my sergeant — caught up with me before I left the ranks.

"So what's the plan, Lieutenant?" Hakram whispered.

"We get close, then we charge towards the victory point," I replied in a low voice.

"Simple," the sergeant mused in his gravelly voice. "I like it. And when we get surrounded and stabbed?"

I shot the sergeant an amused look.

"That's also part of the plan, I'm afraid."

I was rewarded by a handful of snickers. I'd hoped I'd stumble upon a miraculous last-minute master plan, but it seemed my brain was fresh out of those. Well, it beat surrendering anyways.

Grabbing the standard the female orc was offering me and propping it on my shoulder, I took the lead and started for the top of the hill. Juniper had deployed her line just behind the crest so I could see the tip of their helms but not what they were doing: clearly the Hellhound wasn't out of tricks yet. I would just have to trust my suicide squad would be quick enough on their feet to get out of it. We were maybe a dozen feet away from the top when I gave my soldiers a warning look and whispered "Now." We broke out running. I heard Juniper scream an order but refused to pay attention, my whole focus on covering the last of the distance separating her from the enemy line.

That was when the logs started rolling down.

Every one of them a whole tree with the branches cut, thick as man and heavy enough to crush anything in their path. Well, I'd chosen right when I'd decided not to charge the company up the slope, I mused with a strange degree of detachment as the first one thundered down towards me. *So this is as far as I could go, then*, I thought. Beaten by a pile of dead trees after having been played like a fiddle at every turn. All the plans I'd hatched over the last three days, all of the triumphs I'd fought for – snatched away in an instant. I could already see the way it would all go in my mind: Juniper's line would charge down the slope behind the logs and snatch the standard from my unconscious body before closing the jaws of the trap on Nauk and Nilin. They'd fight well, but in the end they'd still lose. *No*, the thought came. *I'm not done. I can still do more. I am more than this. I did not come this far to be slapped down by a heap of firewood.*

I felt thunder dance across my skin and the world spun into focus. The logs tumbling down slowed to a crawl and I grit my teeth before *jumping*, sailing into the air and landing behind them in a crouch. I heard Hakram's grunt of pain and the crack of bones as a log caught him in the chest, but I kept moving. No time to look back – Juniper's line was already charging down, but the hill had made it impossible for them to tighten their ranks. They were full of openings, and the Name I'd claimed as my own howled in my mind as I slipped behind a charging legionary, tripping him with his own standard. There was another one behind, an orc who tried to strike me down but I laughed, heady with battle-joy, and the shaft of hardened wood slapped away the short sword before whipping around to take him behind the head. I pushed forward and suddenly I'd passed the enemy line, all I needed to do was run and –

"What the *Hells* was that?" Juniper snarled, impacting into my side with her shield raised.

I rolled with the fall and pushed forward as soon as my feet were back under me but the captain was there again, blocking my way.

"Me," I replied, "winning."

I ducked under a cautious sword stroke and unsheathed my own blade. The power was already leaving me, slipping through my

fingers like sand, but I would not fail when I was so close. I could hear legionaries doubling back to take me from behind, there was no time to waste – throwing the standard behind Juniper, I unslung my shield from my back and stepped forward. The orc captain was quick, I thought as Juniper tested my shield-side with a careful probe of the blade, but compared to the people I'd been getting my clock cleaned by for the last month the Hellhound was an amateur. Shield met sword and I pushed forward again, stabbing forward only to find my own sword bouncing off the orc's armour. Undaunted, I stepped to the side and whipped my blade at Juniper's head. The orc's eyes widened at the speed of the strike and she stepped back, raising her shield to counter the stroke she knew was coming. That was all the opening I'd needed: dropping my shield I ran for the victory point, dropping low to snatch the standard as I did. I heard Juniper curse from behind me but the orc was slow, too slow, and with a roar I passed by the fallen command tent and rammed the First Company's standard into the socket meant for it. There was a heartbeat of silence before Juniper rammed into my side, crushing me under her weight, but then lightning streaked across the sky once, twice.
Victory.

Timmy

HAHA!!

That great, thanks for the chapter mate 😊

[r1c3cak3s](#)

That was excellent
Thanks for the chapter

Cookiehunter

thx for the chapter
also i wonder if she will gets exposed over that

danielmc73

Well I think she just exposed herself? Or are normal humans able to jump a log rolling downhill. I may have an image of a log that's too large but it sounded like something a normal soldier couldn't do...

Wow this was such a fun chapter to read. It's exciting and I loved how you ended it.

[erraticerrata](#)

The jump could technically be done by someone without a Name – adrenaline can allow humans to do some pretty crazy things. How much attention was on her at that moment will be the real factor in whether or not she's exposed.

Letouriste

Now i think about that, they are in armour no? Jumping logs is barely manageable but in armor?

Poetically Psychotic

Well-made armor is actually a much smaller hindrance to agility than you'd think; what it does is sap your endurance incredibly fast.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

The size logs they have out in California? I'm doubt whether an Olympic athlete could The size logs that grow in Colorado? Definitely, *I* probably could. It'd be about timing it right, and hoping it doesn't pick that moment to bounce.

Bart

Of choose they will all realize what she is now. Extra strength, jump super far for a human, rage, speaks orcish, claims she's an orphan, it's obvious. They'll all realize now that she's a half-orc.

Bart

And it occurs to me, the question of her heritage is still wide open. Maybe she is actually a half orc, or quarter orc. Or half goblin. We've just seen a potential cross species relationship, and told that although it's not common, it does happen. Not to mention the recent wars around the time of her birth, and how likely rape is during war.

[erraticerrata](#)

While interspecies romance does exist, it can't lead to the birth of offspring – with the exception of humans and elves, and even then the fertility rate is extremely low. As for rape, while it did happen during the Conquest it wasn't a widespread thing. As of the Reforms, it's an offence under Legion regulations that warrants hanging.

Bart

What are her traits? Learner, "stronger when she's about to die and/or lose everything", and an open slot?

Barim

I haven't got a clue what her third is yet, but her second aspect seems to be shaping into tenacity, doggedness or indefatigable (fun word).

[erraticerrata](#)

Her first aspect is Learn. Her second aspect is Struggle – it was hinted at during Chapter 12.

Barim

See, this is what happens when I don't reread stuff before commenting. I miss important words like that. It was even italicised. Sigh.

Bart

That's an amazing aspect, even better than indomitable, even better than "stronger when she's about to die and/or lose everything" because she doesn't have to be about to die and/or lose everything to get the power up. Basically, whenever she really really wants it, she gets it. It's like having the Voltron/Dragonball/Power of "whenever I'm fighting really hard against someone really tough, I get a free power up".

Those are possibly the best two initial aspects that I could think of.

For a third aspect, the only thing that could possibly be better would be "enhancement" – make her other two aspects better, and enhance everyone around her so that they're all at their best too. Everyone would love to be working with her, and then everyone would be the gem in the rough that her Sergeant is.

[erraticerrata](#)

There are some limitations, unfortunately (for her). For one, it's her Name that chooses whether or not she's struggling. Aside from that, the "power up" is temporary, and like all magic in the Guideverse, comes with a price. While there are Roles that have aspects relating to enhancing others (the most famous on the side of the Empire would be the Black and the Empress) it would be very unusual for a Squire to have one.

Unmaker

Typos:

The pair of mages... were
The pair of mages... was
(‘pair’, oddly enough, is considered singular)

The first rank stopped and raised its shield
The first rank stopped and raised their shields
(here’s the opposite – one ‘rank’ is a plural noun)

testudo/tortudo
(both are used; should be testudo or tortoise)

neared they objective
neared the objective

I mused out loud to herself
I mused out loud to myself

skeptical
sceptical
(first is US English; second is British)

(many colons again; other sentence separators would help the variety)

more defensive-minded leader than me
more defensive-minded leader than I
(‘I was a defensive-minded leader’, not ‘me was’)

Reactions:

So, another of the aspects of Squire has come into play. The first was Learn. The second appears to be some sort of seriously enhanced physical abilities, but the question is what brought it into play. The impossible situation? Her determination?

OK, the ways she previously won begin to make sense – Hellhound was baiting her into a trap. There was still plenty of room for losing, even then – if she hadn’t actually given the right orders, First Company would have beaten her earlier.

A few chapters ago I said I liked underdog stories but would be disappointed if Catherine actually ended up winning because, besides her Name, the odds were simply too bad. I grudgingly retract that statement – I like this win and the fact that it was her Name that allowed the final rush removes my worst objection. I still think it is a bit unlikely, though.

I smell a Rat company / First Company feud coming on. Or will Juniper’s company be First Company after this? That depends heavily on the ranking system – one loss in twelve might still make for first place; one win in twelve might still make for last place, unless relative rank is taken into account.

Bart

This wasn't the first time for her second trait, but I think it confirms that trait. I believe the first time was when the orphanage was threatened, and she saw herself beaten, losing the Squire name, knocked back to nothing, and then picked up her affiliation with the name again. Then this time, she saw herself beaten, losing the standard, knocked back to nothing in the standings, and leaped the logs. Maybe it happened before, but I recently picked this story back up after a long time away. How often does it update?

Indefatigable is a good term, as far as I can see. Her imminent defeat appears to galvanize her.

[r1c3cak3s](#)

It updates every Wednesday

[erraticerrata](#)

It's fairly unlikely, yes, but then that's basically what Names are about.

The rating system is based on points and will be addressed in later chapters.

Soronel Haetir

Honestly, given the initial introduction of Catherine to Rat Company I would say that Ratface deserves to lose his rank. Here they are in a fight against the best company in the school and their fires are still producing smoke that can be seen from a good ways off. He's been out there as Captain eleven times before this, he should have learned that particular lesson by now.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

I'm waiting for the seemingly inevitable moment when Ratface goes all Bonzo Madrid, who I'm guessing is a significant inspiration for him.

Even if th' ol' Rat turns out to be appreciative, he's got a serious chain of command problem looming.

stevenneiman

"In a matter of [moment->moments/a moment] she would"

"It would have been [shame->a shame/shameful] to get this far"

"even [worst->>worse] taste"

"thick as [man->men/a man] and heavy enough to crush anything in their path"

Captain Amazing

I'm rereading and you have a glaring mistake here; Kilian is a lieutenant not a seargent. The name you originally gave began

with an M, I think. I don't think I really need to explain why having Kilian here is incredibly misplaced.

arancahtar

Oh crap.

Rule of drama demands that she's going to lose in a hilariously unforeseen fashion now.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Yeah, for me it was the page quote. It seemed like everything up to that point had been too easy.

stevenneiman

"just like when [I'd used->I used to] sneak out of the orphanage"
"We're looking for {a} safe place to rest"
"but I'd nixed that idea in the bud" should be either just
"nixed" or "nipped in the bud"
"Hakram had roused [up] the other officers"
"put all almost-thirty of my men in {a} half circle"
"Less of {a} chance we'll caught"
"It would have been {a} shame to get this far"
"thick as [man->a man/men] and heavy enough to crush anything in their path" Also, is anyone getting the sense that everybody is using attacks that are suspiciously lethal for a training camp? Concussions to knock people out, grenades with enough power to send people flying, throws off high fort walls, and logs big enough to crush someone. I get that anything short of death can be magically healed, but this is still seeming less like boot camp and more like Monty Python's Defense Against Fresh Fruit course as far as lethality.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

I think people are both weirdly more and less resilient in this universe, following classic Fantasy Movie/not-really-pulp-but-whatever-genre-Tintin-comics-are conventions.
Meaning knockout punches make you fall asleep until you wake up, instead of twenty-seconds-tops-otherwise-coma like in real life, heroes can punch clean through a brick wall or a bystander without breaking a sweat, and since everyone in a story's focus can survive a long fall, and extras aren't usually shown after one, it can be presumed that they don't normally die.

Am I on the right track, @erraticerrata?

[erraticerrata](#)

More or less. Even baseline humans are tougher than they would be in our world, as a result of having been exposed to

factors like magic and other supernatural events. Named are still very much an outlier, though. Drop a normal person down a cliff and they'll die. Mage and priestly healing mostly means that things that would cripple someone for life in reality are thought of as minor inconveniences.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

You'll notice that they don't let the cadets use fresh fruit in the battles, at least they know better than that, at least; the bananas, oranges, et. al. are reserved for the real warriors.

linnilalartyr

She just cheat a little in the end. LoL! use name power to bypass the tree and log~~~~

Aarik

On rereading, I noticed the details for Praesi Crossbow range and- how the hell.

It's not quite up to Longbow range (well, from back when Longbows were used and people trained with them their entire life rather than as a hobby, but only by about 50 yards), but those numbers are about three to four times anything I can find for crossbows outside of hypotheticals like "it would technically still have enough KE to penetrate, if it hit anything and the wind was perfect, which is unlikely."

I'm just going to have to assume whoever made them is some kind of wizard. (Entirely possible.)

Are they using fucking arbalests?

Aarik

Wait, yeah, nevermind, found more numbers on more period appropriate crossbows/longbows.

Longbows were still better in every way except the part where it took a lifetime of training to use them, whereas a Crossbow is just... Point and shoot and let the volley do everything else.

Though if Orcs are stronger straight up than Humans they should be able to use bigger Longbows than humans can with much less need of strength training.

Poetically Psychotic

Yeah, there's an old quote: "If you want to train an archer, start with his grandfather." The amount of training it takes to use a longbow as an expert pretty much requires having been trained by an expert since birth.

caimthehero

Okay now a good chunk of story has been about a battle that the audience has zero investment in. Why do we care about Rat company? Why is she put in Rat company leadership without any other scenes explaining why other than the BK says so? Why is everyone so quick to follow her, a complete unknown? Why do we care about this battle? Why do we care about this school? Why is the only thing we've been introduced to in this school 1 battle and a couple of characters? Just a few issues I'm having.

AngelFaceFae

I just started reading PGtM two days ago, so I may not know the 100% correct answers according to erraticerrata, but I'm going to give you my take.

First, just because we don't know the significance of things happening in the story right now, doesn't mean they won't become clear later on. Second, as a veteran, there are so many things that have happened here so far that civilians might not understand that a soldier might accept without question. Namely, a change in command. You don't get to choose your COs or officers, whether or not you've had the same Lieutenant for a year or a day, if someone higher up in the chain of command gives you a new one, you don't get to choose whether to follow them into battle or not. Go ahead and refuse an order from a commanding officer and see how fast your ass is either articulated or court martialed, lol.

Anyway, we care about the school because before Black came along and recruited her, her life's goal was to go to the school. Anyone wanting to join the commissioned ranks of the Legions must attend, so it's not only important to Catherine, it's important to her development as Squire under the Black Knight. The battle is probably the fastest way for the author to get that development done and in Catherine's arsenal of training.

Everyone is "so quick to follow her" because first, as I was saying earlier, they don't have a choice. And second, if you were referring more to the legionaries' gung-ho attitude about following Cat into the specific craziness of the past few chapters, I would say that she proved herself to them almost immediately. Not to mention that once she gained the respect of her Sergeant(s), the rest were going to follow without question.

Cat was put in the leadership of Rat Company because, for reasons unknown, they were in need of a Lieutenant. And Black needed somewhere to put her while he did whatever it is he's doing with the matrons.

And we didn't care about Rat Company, at first. But I know that after this battle, I certainly have a softer spot for them.

That's my take on the issues you raised. Hopefully that helps in any way at all. Perhaps erraticerrata can help me out here if I got anything wrong. 😊

David

It's impossible not to think of Ender's Game iwth the content of these few chapters, though this was certainly drawn out longer than Ender's first battle. Overall the wargame was fun to read. If the stakes weren't the highest they've been, that just means more tension since defeat was on the table.

Kinda weird that she didn't do ANYTHING with her name powers until the last minute though. Even when she's not riding a sudden surge of "struggle"ing (or whatever the keyword is), this is still a "learning" experience by default so she should at least be visibly faster and stronger than everyone else.

sswanlake

Some edits:

I let out a vaguely empathetic noise. "Rat Company's been last for a while, then?" she asked. -> I let out a vaguely [sympathetic?] noise. "Rat Company's been last for a while, then?" *I* asked.

I frowned and readjusted her plans. -> I frowned and readjusted *my* plans.

a shiver of dread going down her spine. -> a shiver of dread going down *my* spine.

[greatwyrmgold](#)

Always remember: The enemy's gate is down.

WealthyAardvark

Typo:

been shame
-> been a shame

[Vamshi](#)

I was really enjoying the series so far. But I am still stumped over this abrupt change in direction and how is Cat so good at millitary strategy when she has never been in such a fight or had such an experience before? It feels very anime-isque. Is it her squire thing?

neco

I feel that there never was any reason why she is allegedly such a genius in combat and tactics. I mean she is training for a month while they up to several years. Even assuming it's just name shanigan it just feels heavily mary sue

Chapter 19: Pivot

"Please, do keep digging your own grave. I look forward to your splendidly inevitable demise."

– Dread Emperor Benevolent the First

"COMPANIES! SALUTE!"

Two hundred swords rose up in the air, both companies standing at attention in the plain below the hills where a bell ago my band of survivors had been making their desperate last stand. Hakram grinned at me from where he stood in the ranks and I winked back as Ratface and I walked towards Juniper. The orc in question looked like she'd been force-fed a barrel of lemons, but she was pressing on gamely. The Taghreb captain had earlier informed me be there was a ritual involved to the declaration of victory and that I should follow his lead until I learned how it went. Nauk had seemed surprised when Ratface had told the officers of Rat Company I'd be with him during the process, the lot of them exchanging meaningful looks I wasn't quite sure what to make of. "Hellhound," he greeted Juniper as he clasped her arm. "Not how we expected this one to go, huh?"

First Company's captain growled under her breath.

"Gonna be a while before I live this down," she replied frankly.

"I might have to break Morok's nose again if he gloats. Let's get this over with."

She turned towards her legionaries, unsheathing her sword.

"One sin," she called out abruptly.

"DEFEAT," they thundered back

Ratface took out his own blade, facing our men.

"One grace," he yelled.

"VICTORY," they chorused back, slapping their swords against their shields with an enthusiasm that drowned out everything else.

The scowl on Juniper's face was the stuff of nightmares as she handed her blade to Ratface, handle first. The handsome boy took it but, after a heartbeat, handed it to me. There hadn't been any mention of this in the books but then they were about the Legions themselves, not the College. Silence fell over the crowd until Rat Company burst out in another roaring cheer. My eyes flicked

to my captain, whose face was an odd mixture of resignation and amusement.

"Hand it back to her," he whispered.

I did, and Juniper slammed it back into her scabbard before striding away. We were... done, I guessed? I turned to Ratface.

"So we just head back to Ater, now? Seems anticlimactic," I mused.

He grinned. "Silly greenie," he replied. "Now comes the fun part. We spend the night here, and the extra rations should have arrived."

I raised an eyebrow. "Extra rations?"

He smirked. "Ever tried *aragh*, Callow? There's a reason us Taghreb aren't fucking miserable all the time like the Soninke."

—

Night had fallen, and the site of Rat Company's original defeat had turned into a giant feast. Fire pits had been dug and entire pigs put to roast while barrels of dark ale flowed freely. Legionaries from both companies mingled freely, clustering around great bonfires. Nobody seemed to be holding grudges over beating each other bloody during the game, which I supposed made sense if they were held every week. I took a sip from the cup of milky white liquor I'd been handed and immediately started coughing, much to Nauk's amusement.

"Gods Below, what is that stuff?" I croaked out.

"We call it dragon's milk," the other lieutenant replied, easily polishing off the rest of his cup. "If you drink enough it's possible to set your breath on fire."

"Bullshit," I decided, pulling at it again. It was easier to swallow the second time.

"I tell no lie," the massive orc laughed. "Some mage from Vulture Company did it last year, had to spend three weeks with the healers to get her throat fixed."

I snorted.

"People made dragon noises whenever she came into a room for the rest of the year," Ratface grinned from his seat on the other side of the fire.

"If you think this is hard stuff, you should try orc liquor some time," Hakram weighed in. "Some sappers use it as cleaning fluid for the catapults."

"I haven't been in this company for a week and my sergeant is already trying to kill me," I mourned.

There was a round of laughter and I smiled at the warmth coursing through my veins. Unlike most of the older girls in my dormitory, I'd never gone drinking on the beach with the guys from the boy's orphanage down the street. I'd tasted enough drinks at the Nest that the novelty had worn off, and most of the time I had better things to do. Scraping together enough gold for tuition at the College wasn't going to happen on its own. Still, this was... nice. I wasn't sure I'd call any of the other three friends, but for all that they were easy to like. *What does it say about me that I*

find it easier to laugh with the Empire's freshest batch of killers than my own people?

"Looking grim there, Callow," Ratface noted. "Thinking heavy thoughts?"

"Remembering home," I half-lied.

"You're from Laure, aren't you?" Hakram guessed. "You've got the accent."

I raised an eyebrow. "I am," I agreed. "But how would you know what a Laurean accent sounds like?"

"Our history teacher is from there," Nauk said. "Used to be part of the Thirteenth."

Ah, the famous Traitor Legion. *Legio XIII, Auxilia*. It had been raised in the wake of the Conquest, made up mostly of former bandits and mercenaries. Every Callowan with a grudge against the throne had flocked to the banner, and they'd been instrumental in making sure the south surrendered after the fall of the capital – the prospect of that band of armed malcontents sacking their way through the southern cities had been utterly horrifying to the few remaining nobles. Before I could comment on the subject, though, a band of drunken legionaries passed right behind us singing at the top of their lungs.

"- they got a wizard in the West

But no matter how he's blessed

We got a Warlock in the Tower

Who'll use his bones for flour

Let them keep their priestly king

Cause no matter how sweet he sings

We've got an Empress black as sin

Who'll take his throne and grin

We're the Legion and the Terror

They're in the right but we're meaner-"

That was perhaps the most horribly sung rendition of the Legionary's Song I'd ever heard, and I'd heard some pretty bad ones. They continued towards the closest barrel of ale, singing the last couplet until they ended on the customarily yelled *we're gonna swallow the world whole*. The old marching song had always been popular with the rank and file, penned by some unnamed legionary during the Conquest. From the unsurprised looks on everyone's face, this was apparently a common event.

"The thing with Praesi," I started.

Hakram rasped out an amused laugh, biting into his pork, and Ratface rolled his eyes.

"The thing with Praesi," I pressed on bravely. "Is that you have so many godsdamned rituals. Like that thing with the grace and sin earlier. What was that even about?"

Ratface grinned, which suited him much better than his usual sour expression. He really *was* a handsome one, if a little delicate-looking compared to my usual tastes.

"You've never heard of the Speech at the Fields?" he asked.

"That's the thing with Callowans, you always leave out the best

parts of history."

I blinked. "You mean the Fields of Streges?"

Nauk flashed me a double-row of pearly whites.

"Those are the ones. The Black Knight spoke to the Legions, before the battle," he gravelled. "Every kid knows the words."

"Today we set aside Good and Evil," Hakram quoted with reverence.

"There is only one sin, defeat. There is only one grace, victory.

Everything else is meaningless."

I sometimes forgot that the man who'd claimed me as his student was the same one from all the legends. Back home the Calamities were the monsters under the bed but here in Wasteland it was different. All of them were treated like giants among men, the epitome of all it meant to be Praesi.

"Huh," I mused, taking another sip of dragon's milk. "Well, I learned something today."

"That and I named you captain of Rat Company," Ratface continued airily.

I sprayed out the alcohol, to the delight of all the assholes surrounding me.

"What?!"

"Why did you think he handed you Juniper's sword?" Hakram asked, cocking his head to the side. "He was acknowledging it was your victory. No offence, Ratface."

The olive-skinned boy snorted. "I spent the entire game as a prisoner, Hakram. The truth's the truth."

"This is stupid," I objected vehemently. "All I know about the Legions I learned second-hand. I've never even set foot in the College!"

The now former captain of Rat Company shrugged.

"Twelve losses and you lose the captainship. That's the rule. I didn't win this, Callow. In fact I lost pretty badly. Your win, your claim. That's what that entire scene was about, when it comes down to it."

"You've got other lieutenants," I pointed out. "Who might feel a little slighted they got passed over for the promotion."

Ratface turned to face Nauk.

"Are you feeling particularly slighted, Lieutenant Nauk?" he asked.

"We ain't so thin-skinned as you monkeys, taking offence at everything," the large orc scoffed before addressing me. "Callow, the reason Ratface ended up Captain in the first place was that none of the lieutenants want to be."

The boy in question shrugged. "Not that I particularly wanted the job either, but my marks are the highest in the company."

I was about to muster up another denial when Hakram intervened.

"It's only for two months, Callow," he grunted. "We're graduating soon, and our points are so badly in the negatives it's not like you could do much damage anyway."

I sighed.

"Fine," I surrendered. "But I want my objections on the record."

"To Captain Callow, then," Nauk toasted, raising his cup.

"May she manage to have us graduate slightly less in the

negatives," Ratface replied cheerfully.

It was a horrible toast, but we all drank anyway.

I wasn't sure how much time passed when I found myself wandering away from the fire to get my hands on a fresh bottle of *aragh*.

Nauk had disappeared at least half a bell ago when he saw Lieutenant Pickler pass by, running off after her while we all jeered at him and Hakram made some very suggestive comments about his canine length. Apparently that was a thing with orcs? He was replaced almost immediately by Sergeant Nilin. The dark-skinned boy was quiet one, compared to the others, but he had a wry sense of humour that was almost Callowan. I supposed it made sense for Nauk's sergeant to be more grounded, given the large orc's tendency for impulsive decisions. Ratface passed out by the time we'd polished off our second bottle of dragon's milk and I was officially mandated by the survivors to get us a new one before we did the same. It hadn't occurred to anyone, including myself, that I had no idea where to get one. I headed for the latrines first anyway, only to find a grim-looking orc waiting for me when I came out.

"Captain Callow," Captain Juniper said flatly. "Let's take a walk."

—

I followed the Hellhound to the edge of the festivities, too drunk to be nervous but sober enough to be wary. We ended up standing at the top of the tallest slope, where a few bells before Juniper had tried to bury me under an avalanche of logs — the wood in question was still at the bottom of the hill, mostly intact.

"You have a Name," the captain of First Company spoke.

It was not a question.

"That's quite an assumption to make," I replied anyway. "For all you know, my family might have a long tradition of being great jumpers."

It might even be true, though admittedly the odds weren't that great.

"I've seen Roles in action before," Juniper denied me sharply.

"Don't take me for an idiot."

I probably should have put in a little more effort into that parry, I admitted ruefully to myself. I'd been lulled into a sense of false security by the fact that no one had called me out on the fact that I'd done something that bordered on the limits of human capabilities — part of it, I assumed, was that few people had been looking at me except for Juniper and her personal line. For something done in broad daylight, there'd been surprisingly few witnesses.

"Everything's possible," I finally said, deciding that vagueness was still the way to go. I'd been supposed to keep a low profile, after all. "Are you here to complain that made the fight unfair?" The orc eyed me like I'd just sprouted wings.

"This is practice for a real war," she said slowly. "Fair doesn't

factor in it. Anyhow, I should have seen it coming. An unknown stranger with an obviously fake name takes a rank in the lowest-ranked company on the edge of their twelfth defeat? Name bait. I should have sent two lines to bury you on the first night just in case."

"Yeah, that would probably have worked," I admitted.

The greenskin captain's eyes narrowed.

"So not a Name that's overwhelmingly strong," she murmured in that smoky voice of hers. "Something transitional, maybe?"

Juniper, I noticed, did not smell of alcohol at all. Had she been waiting for me to get drunk before we had this conversation? I would have admired that kind of patient ruthlessness, if it hadn't been directed at me.

"Something that's supposed to stay *quiet*," I replied briskly.

"You're the Squire," the Hellhound realized after a heartbeat.

"You're the girl who set half of Summerholm on fire just to smoke out a hero."

She eyed me up and down, like she had a hard time reconciling what was apparently my reputation with the person standing before her.

"Why do people keep blaming me for the goblinfire?" I complained, deciding that at his point the deception was so flimsy it wasn't even worth it to keep trying. "I'm not the one who was throwing munitions around!"

"I'm sure you weren't," Juniper replied, clearly not believing a word of what I'd said. "So the Squire, huh. No wonder you ended up being a pivot for Rat Company."

I really wished people would stop using words out of the blue and somehow keep expecting me to know exactly what they were talking about. It always made me feel like an idiot when I had to ask.

"A pivot," I repeated, flavouring the words with an invitation to elaborate.

Juniper frowned, which I'd always thought looked strange on orcs – they had no hair on their brows, only thick ridges of skin.

"Your ignorance offends me on a personal level," the other captain informed me. "How can you not know what a pivot is? It's basic Name knowledge."

"Hey! I'm new at this," I defended myself. "And my teacher's a bit of an ass. He never tells me anything outright. I think me might be physically incapable of not being cryptic."

"Did you just call the Black Knight an ass?" Juniper replied, aghast.

"He really is," I told her frankly.

"Lord Black is the best thing to happen to the Empire in centuries," the Hellhound glared.

I squinted.

"Are you *blushing*?" I asked. "It's hard to tell in the dark."

"You're seeing things," Juniper growled. "Fine, I'll educate you. Names are stories."

"I do know that much," I said with a roll of the eyes.

I was familiar with the look she got at that – it was the face someone made whenever they were asking their deities of choice

for patience.

"The stories have been around since the dawn of Creation, meaning there's an endless variety of ways they can go. A pivot is a point in time or a decision where the Named pushes her story in a particular direction. It influences the kind of powers you develop."

Mhm. Had I ever had one of those? My little talk with Heiress, maybe. Otherwise I couldn't think of-

"Oh," I spoke. "Oh."

Juniper frowned.

"What?"

"I fucked up," I admitted out loud. "Today was the first time in weeks I've been able to tap into my Name, and I think I just realized why."

"That ought to be illuminating," Juniper sneered. "Do continue."

"So a pivot is the beginning of a plot in the story, right?" I mumbled.

"Truly, your insight is an awe-inspiring thing," the Hellhound commented.

I glared at her, but she was magnificently unconcerned.

"So take a boy and a girl, of roughly the same age. They're on opposite sides. The boy doesn't take a golden opportunity to finish the girl when he has it, and after she gets her shit together and beats him she also spares him."

"The girl's on the side of Evil?" Juniper asked, eyes much too knowing for my comfort.

"Something like that," I grimaced.

"That's a redemption story," the Hellhound opined.

It was. I'd heard a dozen different tales that went that way, all with the same pattern. Spared on the first fight, an even match on the second and the climactic third meeting ended up with the conflicted evildoer changing sides after an impassioned speech by the hero or the heroine. *No wonder my Name threw a shitfit.* I looked back on the way I'd reacted to the hangings in Summerholm, and I could see I'd been... influenced. Not by much: most of the disgust I'd felt then I still felt, but my reaction had been too strong. I'd been nudged just a little to the side of my usual mindset, and the realization sickened me. I'd been pulled by my own mind in two different directions, and the effect had been bad enough I'd ended up weeping my eyes out in an alley.

"I'm going to smother him with his own intestines," I spoke into the night, tone cold as ice.

The Lone Swordsman had muddled my free will. *Unforgivable.* Not even Mazus had tried to rob me from who I was, and he'd hanged for what he'd done. My fingers clenched and I felt hatred twist my stomach. Juniper's face was unreadable.

"We're done here," she finally said. "Go to sleep, Callow. We've got a long march ahead of us tomorrow."

I stumbled into my tent, my good mood evaporated into thin air. The others would have to soldier on without me, I didn't feel like keeping company with anyone at the moment. Besides, Juniper was right. The hangover I was headed for would already make the

march back to Ater a painful affair, there was no need to add to it. My bedroll was where I'd left it, blessedly unrolled. There was, however, a small bowl next it. I knelt on the ground to take a closer look. It was unadorned wood, full of water and with a small piece of granite incrustated at the bottom. Was it supposed to be symbolic of something, or had someone put it here by mistake? The answer came when the water rippled, the barely-visible reflection of my own face turning into the profile of my teacher as a subtle glow lit up the surface.

"Lieutenant Callow," Black greeted me, his voice sounding like he was speaking from across the room.

"Black," I replied, not as surprised as I should have been. "This is new."

"Long-distance scrying. One of Warlock's more useful tricks," he acknowledged. "I hear the war game is over?"

"Pulled off a win at the last minute," I grinned. "Though you seem to be missing a crucial piece of information."

His brow rose. "And that would be?"

"You are addressing *Captain* Callow," I informed him.

His lips twitched. "Well done. We'll go over your campaign when I return. Which company did you happen to beat?"

"Who do you think? First Company, of course," I replied haughtily.

"It wouldn't happen to be headed by an orc girl by the name of Juniper, would it?" he asked.

"You've heard of her?" I blinked.

He laughed.

"Istrid keeps bragging about how her eldest is the next Grem One-Eye whenever she gets into her cups," he murmured. "Well now. Finally I have a retort."

"General Istrid?" I said, surprised. "She never said anything about being her daughter."

"I imagine it's not common knowledge," Black mused. "She's rather independent-minded, I've been given to understand. Doesn't want to trade in on the family name."

I could respect that. The orc captain rose up a notch in my esteem.

"How are things in the south?" I asked, changing the subject.

"Are the Matrons giving you trouble?"

"Much to the contrary," he replied. "The situation's already taken care of. They even sent an envoy to apologize for not catching on before the situation warranted a Red Letter. I should be back in Ater by tomorrow evening."

"Good to know," I grunted. "Am I staying in the College even after you're back? I'd prefer not to leave Rat Company until graduation, if that's possible."

He inclined his head. "I'm inclined to grant that, within reason. You won't be attending most of the classes – we'll be continuing our lessons instead."

I nodded. It was what I'd wanted anyway: I was sure the teachers at the College were competent sorts, but I doubted what they had to offer compared to one-on-one tutelage by the Dread Empress'

right hand.

"Did you have time to look into what I asked you to?" I asked after a breath of hesitation.

"The orphanage is untouched," he replied. "Not a soul missing. A good thing you killed the other claimants in such spectacular manners, I doubt Heiress would have taken you seriously otherwise."

"That would have been unfortunate," I murmured. "Because I meant every word."

He smiled. "You're beginning to garner enough of a reputation that you can leverage it. Be careful in managing it. Oh, and there's one last thing."

"Now why did you have to say that?" I complained, rubbing the bridge of my nose. "This conversation was going so well."

He snorted. "Keep your evening free tomorrow, you already have plans."

"Am I allowed to know what those plans are?" I asked sardonically.

"Of course," he agreed. "Catherine Foundling is being officially introduced to the Imperial Court."

Well, shit.

[rlc3cak3s](#)

Thanks for the chapter

I have a feeling the next chapter is going to be an awkward one



Sean

"Hey! I'm new at this"

Hey I'm new at this

—

Oh dear. A redemption story?

And what's more, people can change their names. Or at least the directions of their stories. I mean, it fits into the general philosophy of this universe, but it's still interesting to note.

Fun chapter, can't wait for next week.

Politics is always so much fun.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Nice, this is very close to what I was thinking. Only I don't see Black going all Ned Stark on us just yet.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Although "what I'm thinking" has a terrible track record so far in this story

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Ok very weird. That first comment was replying to Captain Amazing's post below. Makes no sense here =/

corrado alamanni

I dont really get way the hero robbed her of free will!

Talking is coercion for catherine? Yes she was tempted by good but having a choiche is necessary to be free!

tynam

He was using his Name to alter her perceptions. The Lone Swordsman having a romance with the girls who is on the side of evil but who is only doing it for reasons that seem justified is a trope, a trope that includes making her realise the evil of the side she's on. It affected Cat's emotions the same way the Black Knight can make people get scared and run out the room even when he hasn't actually threatened them yet.

Captain Amazing

I am totally in favor of this redemption story, but I think the one who's going to be redeemed is the Lone Swordsman to the side of Evil. Just how anti hero are you willing to go? As far as it takes. He's the one who killed the goblin who was fighting for the rights of her people. His only goal is to free Callow from the imperial grip of the Praesi. He has also sworn to kill the Black Knight, paving the way for her to take the mantle. Catherine can accomplish two of their objectives at once. The Black Knight dies and Callow becomes a free independent state under the banner of evil. I'm thinking Empire Strikes Back

Luke you can destroy the emperor. He has foreseen this. It is your destiny. Join me and together we can rule this galaxy as father and son.

Perfect redemption story.

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Wow. That *does* make sense. Aside from killing Black, that is – Catherine wants many things, but I think the thing she wants

most is for competent people to be in charge. And Black is nothing if not competent.

Also, I don't think they can kill him if he doesn't allow it, barring an out of context problem like the Gnomes.

(Which he might, if it's part of his master plan, but he seems like the sort who'd prefer to stay around and ensure that his masterplan has the results he wanted.)

Unmaker

More reactions later, but this stands out:

"The boy doesn't take a golden opportunity to finish the girl when he has it, and after she gets her shit together and beats him she also spares him."

This is a dangerous secret that Catherine just spouted to a potential enemy. Catherine might survive if Black finds out, because Black is ultimately practical and Catherine can explain her reaction to finding out, but Heiress would have an evilgasm upon having this confirmed by a credible witness.

[erraticerrata](#)

Yup. That's why you don't have important semi-confrontational conversations when you're drunk. Though taking into consideration that Juniper is an orc and that Heiress stands for the more conservative elements of the Empire, tattling on Catherine might not be the Hellhound's priority here.

stevenneiman

Frankly, I think Juniper seems too respectful of Catherine as an opponent to simply sabotage her on a grander field out spite unless there was a good reason for it.

FirstDragon

Thanks as always for the entertainment.

Reaction: From what I remember of her battle with the Lone Swordsman, he killed her. She only survived because she got some wacky Name boost and proceeded to reanimated herself. If not beheading someone counts as avoiding a "golden opportunity to finish the girl" then perhaps her muddled perception of their confrontation fits.

As far as her getting pissy over the Hero trying to warp her? Just plain hypocritical...though I suppose most everyone feels fine manipulating others and uncomfortable when it's their turn.

stevenneiman

Frankly leaving a Named with only a wound presumed to be enough to bleed them out is more or less the equivalent of a flirty wink and a business card. These aren't people you want to trust to die. To quote a character from another series on a similar topic: "He just fell out the third-story window, plummeting toward certain doom. Of course he'll live!"

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

She wasn't a named when that happened. Swordsie killing the final remaining contender caused the full power of the Squire to rush into her, which IIRC is what gave her the motivation to get up and keep moving

corrado alamanni

Yeah he simply spoke and she complains!

[thefatduke](#)

I read a lot of web serials. I have to say, this is my favorite one by far. Keep up the good work!

Miri-Bell

This was good chapter. I will say one thing ,though, I can't think of anything more counterproductive to persuading a person to join your side than a speech....seriously I hate those they make me sleepy.

Unmaker

Typos:

that's suppose to
that's supposed to

I'm knew at this
I'm new at this

Name are stories
Names are stories

The hangover I was headed for would already make the march back to Ater a painful affair, there was no need to add to it.
(good place to separate with a semi-colon)
The hangover I was headed for would already make the march back to Ater a painful affair; there was no need to add to it.

His brow raised.
His brow rose.

(the way the song is laid out is a nice use of line breaks instead of paragraph markers)

(further) Reactions:

"Are you blushing?"

This one made me smile – the big bad female orc has a crush on the Black Knight, it appears.

So, did the Lone Swordsman use the pivot on Catherine deliberately, or did he just follow the urgings of his Name and Role? Either way, she's pissed – watch out Lone Swordsman.

Bart

So, has she only had "one" fight with the Lone Swordsman, two fights, or has she had her third fight? I think she's either had two or three fights with him, not really sure where she's at with that particular story.

[erraticerrata](#)

One fight. While she technically engaged him twice, it counted as a single confrontation.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Wait, the Swordsfellow "used" the pivot on her? I had the impression it was something that followed naturally as a consequence of her decision, not something that can be used like a move in a fight. Am I mistaken?

If it is a card that can be deliberately kinvoked, I'm guessing it doesn't apply to most circumstances, but it's a hell of a trump card when it does (lowercase t, not a Trump card lol)

Either way this gives Cat significantly less reason to worry about Black's reaction, since he neglected to teach her that tidbit he bears some responsibility too. Take that thought a little further and now letting her remain ignorant a bit longer was intentional, and he WANTED her to spare the Sword-carrying citizen.

P.S. I thought the "Lone" modifier was a bit of a pet name for Cat to use in her head (she's fond of those), and his real Name was the Swordsman. Which is it?

Unmaker

Another typo, maybe: "incrusted" passes some spell-checkers but is much less common than "encrusted".

Soronel Haetir

Soronel Haetir

Bart

???

stevenneiman

He's actually a very oddly-named Pokemon. Most of them can only say their own name.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

stevenneiman!

Alegio

Just loving the direction this is taking, best web serial

stevenneiman

"The dark-skinned boy was {a} quiet one"
"at [his->this] point the deception was so flimsy"
Keep up the awesome story, don't worry about typos.

txika

<>

I think me -> I think he

stevenneiman

"The dark-skinned boy was {a} quiet one,"

[Peter Carlisle](#)

This is a great story, but I have to ask, would it possible to get a full version of the "Legionary Song"?

Isa Lumitus

I just came back after losing sight of this for a while. At least now I have a good idea why her Name got all butthurt when Cat betrayed her allies in the pursuit of personal ambition. That said, I'm reading this a bit differently:

1. Lone Swordsman strikes down Squire, before being forced to face other opponents. There wasn't so much of a "golden opportunity" to kill her.
2. Squire wins, and spares the Lone Swordsman.
3. The Lone Swordsman gathers an army, which gets defeated by the army led by either Squire or Black Knight.
4. Squire thanks Lone Swordsman for leading his countrymen to be slaughtered on the altar of her career, exactly as she planned.
5. Lone Swordsman has a heroic BSOD.
6. Squire completes the "redemption arc" by seducing the Lone Swordsman onto her side.

Now... I have a lot of archive to binge through. Let's see how my guesses turn out.

[charl X](#)

Im glad im reading this with so much already written, or the cliffhanger chapter endings would annoy me so much

Because if theres one thing ive noticed about this author other than genre savviness its the love of thrice damned cliffhangers as chapter endings

[Bruno Neves Oliveira \(@Nephandu\)](#)

Aha, so that was what happened then. Makes sense. Perhaps Redemption is one of the Powers of the Lone Swordsman, and he found a very useful possibility on Cat, since she was also from Callow.

Of course, she isn't too happy to have been manipulated like this. Also, I'm sure that Black is aware of the whole thing, which explains why he made her watch the hangings – so that she would remember the pain she felt then, and induce it was not the real her, but the fruit of Swordsman's Redemption moves.

Chapter 20: Rise

"Who reigns up high?

A dead man's sigh

What sleeps below?

A crown of woe

That is the Tower:

Learn and cower."

– Extract from 'And So I Dreamt I Was Awake', Sherehazad the Seer

I tugged at my cloak's collar for the twentieth time, ignoring Black's amused look.

I'd been politely abducted by the Blackguards within a bell of entering Ater, to the dismayed surprise of Nauk and Ratface: they'd known better than to press the matter then and there, but I had a feeling I'd be getting asked some fairly pointed questions the moment I got back to the barracks. Apparently the low profile section of my association with the College had come to an end. I'd been smuggled deeper into the city and changed into what would be my attire for the evening under Scribe's

watchful gaze. The aketon and armour I was familiar with, though it had been cleaned and polished since I'd last worn them. The thick black cloak held tight against my shoulders by a woven golden braid was new, though, and I felt like I was getting strangled every time I took a breath.

There was something odd about the cloth – every now and then, when I moved, the way it caught the light made it look like it was made of pitch black feathers. Sorcery was involved, as far as I could guess, though a purely decorative working seemed... out of character, for Black. There was probably more to it. My teacher was still wearing his usual plain steel plate, though he wore a cloak that was mine writ slightly larger. The implication of our matching clothes was less than subtle. Captain had traded her usual armour for something more ceremonial, her breastplate and greaves decorated with snarling wolf heads. Her cloak was of a brown tone that bordered on red.

"Do you really wear armour every time you come to Court?" I asked as we strolled down a wide – and strangely deserted – avenue.

"Praesi nobility has a regrettable propensity for stabbing," Black replied.

"And poisoning," Captain grunted from behind us. "And blood magic. Calling the Tower a snake pit is doing a disservice to snakes: they don't usually bite unless provoked. Some of the fuckers up there will have you killed for wearing robes that look too much like theirs."

My fingers closed against the hilt of the sword sheathed at my hip. Since the wrecking of my last blade back in Summerholm, I'd been provided with another goblin-wrought short sword. The grinning goblin's head the last pommel had been shaped as had been replaced by a stylized version of green flames. My teacher's sense of humour was ever a twisted thing.

"You think someone's going to try to kill me?" I asked.

The thought didn't leave me feeling as worried as it would have a month ago, which in and of itself was worrying. Strange, how quickly one's standard for normality could change. Black let out a thoughtful hum as we took a right down another empty avenue. Where were all the locals? This was just eerie.

"That depends on how quickly Heiress moved to secure her support," he finally said. "No doubt she'll attempt *something*, but it might not be as crass as outright assassination."

Crass, of all the adjectives to use. Sometimes the Praesi seemed the same as us, but then they said something and I was struck by

how differently they looked at things. Culturally speaking Ater might have been more Soninke than Taghreb, but the capital of the Dread Empire had developed into something that was entirely different from both. Ater was the touchstone of Praes and at Court murder was considered as much of an art as sculpting or painting. Lack of elegance in the death was more of a sin than the killing itself.

"How can the Empire even function, with the nobles poisoning each other at the drop of a hat?" I wondered. "I always thought the stories about the Imperial Court were exaggerated, but if anything things seem to be worse."

"The Empire functions *because* the nobles are poisoning each other at the drop of a hat," Black replied easily. "If they're fighting each other, they're not fighting the Tower. Ensuring that state of affairs used to be the province of the Chancellor, but things being what they are Malicia's had to get her own hands dirty."

"The Name she had outlawed," I murmured. "Seems like there's a story there."

Pale green eyes flicked to me, then away.

"A long one," he said. "That will have to be told another day. We've arrived."

I'd thought I'd seen the Tower.

It was impossible to miss even miles away from Ater, that hulking spire of dark stone that jutted out into the perpetual storm clouds. After passing through the Gate of Bones with the other cadets I'd gotten a closer look, glimpsed the tall arches in the stone that served as windows and the hundreds of balconies that sprang from them. The stories did not do it justice. *Emperors rise, Emperors fall, the Tower endures*. Or so legionaries said, when they got into their cups. Twice it had been cast down – first by Dread Empress Triumphant's infamous last act of spite and again by a Proceran army during Second Crusade – but twice it had been built back up, even taller. In Callow the symbol that bound us was the ancient bells of Laure, to the extent that even the Fairfax kings and queens had used them in their heraldry. Here in Praes, though, it was the Tower.

I stood before the beating heart of the Dread Empire and felt like an ant.

There was no comprehending how *enormous* the Tower really was, until you stood at its feet. You could have fit the entire ruins

at the Blessed Isle inside its walls, and it was so tall I couldn't even see the top of it. The stone stairs leading up to the gates were carved into the likeness of weeping men and women, every step taken coming squarely on their backs. *Charming*. Was there such a thing as an evil architect? The sight before me was an argument in favour. Twin rows of steel-clad soldiers stood in perfect silence on the sides of the steps, faces covered by masks of wrought black iron. *No wonder they all go mad. How could you live in that without coming to think of yourself as a god?* Black stepped forward and I followed, Captain a close behind us. There was not a sound except for the creaking of our leather boots, and a shiver went up my spine as we came before the gates. They were just as hulking as the rest of this madman's nightmare, smooth obsidian marred by the thousands of runes and symbols carved into it. I could feel a dull thrum coming from them, age-old sorcery permeating the very air around it.

"I come summoned by the Tyrant," Black called out into the silence. "Gatekeeper, grant me entrance."

There was a heartbeat and then the obsidian *stirred*. Like ripples in a pond the stone came alive, until a face emerged from the surface: two symbols that had me shivering just to look at them made up its eyes, and a rictus formed into a sinister parody of a mouth.

"The prodigal knight returns," the abomination drawled. "And with an apprentice in tow."

"Gods, tell me that thing isn't going to ask us to solve a riddle," someone said, and in a moment of horror I realized it had been me.

Black's hand fell around my arm and I could feel it squeeze painfully even through the armour. I really needed to get a handle on the mouthing-off-in-the-face-of-fear thing. The thing in the gate laughed and I regretted every opening my mouth: it sounded like both the wail of a child and the shattering of a hundred swords.

"Even now, you bring me the most interesting strays," it spoke. "I grant you entrance, Black Knight."

The face melted back into the obsidian and I heard a series of locks unlatch through the gate, until it slowly swung open. The antechamber was empty, not a soul haunting the riot of dark marble that preceded the deeper Tower. We stepped inside and my teacher turned on me as soon as the gates closed.

"Don't ever do that again," he whispered furiously.

"It let us in anyway!" I whispered back, tone defensive.

"The Gatekeeper *ate the soul* of the last person who spoke out of turn to it," he hissed. "Not even Warlock could have brought you back if it had taken offence."

My blood ran cold. Souls couldn't be destroyed, the House of Light said, not except by-

"That thing was a demon?" I choked.

"From the Twenty-Third Hell," he said.

His face was calm again, but his eyes were still sharp as a knife.

"Weeping Heavens," I whispered. "Who uses a *demon* as a doorman?"

Making deals with devils was one thing – they were exceedingly dangerous, but bound by their nature to honour the letter of any deal they made. Demons, though? They followed no rules. Their very existence was a wound upon Creation. At best they could be contained. At worst? Entire kingdoms had been brought down by a single loose demon. And apparently one of the Dread Emperors had thought it was a splendid idea to *use one as his greeter*. I felt a fresh flush of panic, but got my breathing under control.

"You're a long way from Laure, Catherine," Black murmured. "The evil that dwells here runs deep and old. It took two empires and a continent-wide rebellion to bring down Triumphant, when Praes was at its peak. There are still shadows of that madness lurking."

Fuck. I took a deep breath and settled my nerves. I could still do this. Whatever horrors prowled inside the Tower didn't matter: it was the Court I was here for, and they were just people. People I could deal with, no matter how dangerous they were.

"Got it," I said through gritted teeth. "Let's move on."

The antechamber led to a high-ceilinged room of cold black stone, bare of any tapestries. The only thing that wasn't polished marble around was the series of mosaics on the walls, strangely patterned in a hundred subtle shades of red and grey. I frowned as we got passed one by, slowing to take a closer look. A large hand came to rest on my shoulder almost immediately, gently pushing me forward.

"Don't," Captain murmured, her tanned face expressionless. "If you manage to see the eyes, you'll be speaking in tongues for weeks."

I jerked back.

"Is this entire place a death trap?" I asked peevishly.

"Yes," Black agreed blandly.

Well, that kind of took the wind out of my sails. Shame, a good rant would have helped to settle my nerves. Two sets of spiralling stairs rose to the first level, the smooth railing guarding them shaped as the tail of a snake. *Yeah, I'm not touching that.* Given how the rest of my visit here had gone the thing might be some sort of animated stone snake just waiting to smother anyone touching it. Black paused as we came to the head of the stairs to the upper floor, turning to grant me a glance.

"Steel yourself," he spoke. "This part is always... unpleasant."

Without giving me the time to reply, he stepped through the archway to the next room. My determination to be cool and unflappable in the face of whatever was coming lasted exactly three heartbeats. The long corridor awaiting me was filled with human heads. They hung from the ceiling by silk ropes, kept close to the walls so that they formed a curtain of mutilated flesh covering the entire span of the stone. That alone would have been enough to fill my nightmares for the next few months, but the moment we stepped in they all swivelled to face us. A thousand mouths opened and they started moaning and yelling and begging, words spoken in half a dozen different tongues drowning each other out into incoherence until all that could be heard was one deafening scream of despair and hatred. I flinched back and saw the closest ones were laughing at me now, leering and calling out sentences I couldn't make out. One in particular stood out to me, a pale-skinned man with a bushy red beard whose entire face was covered in pockmarks and scars. The derision I saw on that face was the last straw.

"Enough," I screamed.

For the span of a single breath my Name filled the room. The power that surged through my veins winked out of existence as swiftly as it had appeared, but in its wake silence reigned. I felt the weight of a thousand stares on me, but I was too angry to care.

"Interesting," Black murmured, resuming his walk. "You've picked up Speaking after seeing me use it only the once. A decent effort, for a beginner."

I strode ahead of him, not bothering to reply, and in a matter of moments we were making our way up another flight of stairs.

"What the Hells was that place?" I asked after a long moment.

"The Hall of Screams," Captain replied. "It's where people end up, when they try for a Dread Empress' crown and fail."

"The necromancy keeping the heads alive goes back to the Declaration," Black mused. "No one's been able to reproduce it since, and not for lack of trying."

"Well isn't this place just a nice little box full of fucking horrifying surprises," I growled. "A more specific word of warning would have been nice. Like say 'Hey, Catherine, there's a hall full of humans heads just ahead. So you know, heads up!'"

"I was interested in seeing your reaction," Black admitted shamelessly, and if we hadn't been in the Tower I would have shown him some of the more insulting gestures I'd learned in the Pit.

"How high up are we going anyway?" I asked, since dwelling on the subject would just have made me angrier.

A little anger would be enough to keep me steady, but if I worked up any more than that I'd lose focus.

"Official Imperial Court functions are held on the twenty-fourth floor," the green-eyed man replied.

"That doesn't sound like a coincidence," I muttered.

"It's been some time since the numerical value was used to facilitate devil summoning," Black noted. "The Court still remembers when they came to collect with Nefarious."

"It doesn't bother you at all that the godsdamned *Imperial Court* used to summon hellspawn?" I asked. "I mean, you know things are going downhill when the rulers of a place make literal deals with the devil."

The dark-haired man shrugged, though the gesture was hard to make out under his cloak.

"Borrowed power always betrays its user, in the end," he simply said. "It might gain the one making the deal some short-term victories, but it inevitably turns into a death sentence down the line. It's as good a way as any to weed out the more foolish elements of the aristocracy."

"They still have to cause a costly amount of damage when they go crazy," I replied curiously. "Why don't you just ban it entirely? It would save resources in the long term."

The way the green-eyed man talked about making deal with devils implied he found the matter distasteful, and Black wasn't the kind of man who let traditions linger when they were counterproductive. Was I missing something?

"It already disqualifies mages from service in the Legions," Captain replied from behind us.

The look my teacher sent me made it clear he knew I was mostly pressing the matter to keep my mind off of the coming evening, but for now he seemed inclined to indulge me.

"There'd be no practical way to enforce the ban," he explained. "Any half-decent warlock can summon something if they get their hands on the right manuscript. Therefore, Catherine, what would be the consequences of Malicia passing such a decree?"

It was almost reassuring to hear him slip into his teaching voice, given our surroundings.

"An erosion of Imperial authority," I replied after a moment. "If the Empress can't enforce her own laws, people are going start breaking more than that single one."

He nodded, looking satisfied.

"The myth of Imperial omnipotence is what keeps Praes together," he murmured. "We must manage that illusion carefully."

We stepped foot on the second floor. After the general level of nightmarishness displayed by the last two I'd expected yet another sight I would wake up screaming about in the coming weeks but it was surprisingly mundane. The entire level, much like the one beneath us, had been carved into a single room but unlike the hallway this one occupied the entire space. There were no real walls, just some spaces between large sculpted archways that led straight into oversized circular balconies. For the first time since we'd entered the Tower there were other people around, guards wearing the same armour-and-mask as those outside standing between the archways in the same creepy silence. There were no stairs for us to go up by, I noticed, and shot the Calamities a quizzical look.

"How are we getting to the twenty-fourth?" I asked.

"Getting a lift," Captain grunted.

Both of them ignored the silent guards and headed straight for one of the archways to the left – I managed to discern a twenty-

four in Miezian numerals in the pattern adorning its stone when we got closer. Stepping out onto the balcony, Black whistled sharply as I stared down. No railing here, and wasn't that just horrible architectural design? *It's like they want someone to slip and fall.* I paused for a heartbeat. *Hells, they actually might.* *Strike two for the evil architecture school theory.* I was about to ask what we were doing there besides standing and looking like the village idiots when a reptilian shriek resounded from above and a dark shape flew down towards the balcony. A grey-skinned creature with bat wings the size of a small house landed on the edge of the balcony, hissing hatefully at us in a way that displayed its bloody saw-like teeth.

"What is that?" I asked, taking a wary step back. "Some dragon's inbred cousin?"

"Our ride up," Black replied amusedly, and I followed his pointed finger to the large saddle placed on the creature's back.

"You're a bad man," I accused. "A bad, bad man."

"Guilty," he mused. "Though never charged."

Against my better judgement, I snorted.

"I'm taking the reins on this one," Captain spoke up in a tone that brooked no argument. "We're not having a repeat of last time."

"I have no idea what you could possibly mean," Black demurred. "High Lord Nok lingered too long on the landing pad. That accident could have happened to anyone."

"Everybody heard you telling it to take a bite in the Dark Tongue," the Taghreb warrior replied, thoroughly unimpressed.

"My pronunciation's still a little off," the Knight smiled sardonically. "I was trying to tell it to 'take a hike', I assure you."

So I'm avoiding the High Lord of Nok, then. Good to know. Captain climbed onto the beast first, followed by Black who moved much too gracefully for a man wearing plate armour. I took his offered hand to hoist myself up, keeping myself steady by clasping a pair of helpfully placed leather handles on the saddle. The gargantuan warrior-woman spat out a harsh, guttural word in a language I didn't recognize – immediately the abomination we were riding let out another screech and jumped off the balcony. For a moment we were free falling and I bit my lip to keep myself from screaming. My old fear of heights was coming back with a vengeance. The thing's enormous wings started beating and it rose through upwards steadily. I close my eyes and clasped the handles hard enough I was sure my knuckles turned white.

Several eternities later, the creature landed on what I felt to be solid ground. I opened my eyes again and let out a breath of relief when I saw we'd arrived on what looked like a large, gaudier version of the balcony we'd come from. Without waiting for anyone's permission I jumped down from our ride, dancing out of the way when the creature turned to hiss and snap its teeth at me. The balcony led into a smaller chamber with a handful of wooden benches heavily encrusted with gold and jewels. I eyed a ruby the size of my fist that probably made actually sitting on the bench highly uncomfortable and sighed. There was such a thing as being *too* rich. Golden hooks jutted from the walls, meant for guests to hang their coats on, but I didn't have any more time to gawk: my companions had dismounted and Black casually adjusted his cape over his shoulders.

"Here we go," he murmured, and without further ado pushed the doors open.

My first thought was that there was no way the throne room in display could actually fit inside the Tower. It was way too broad and the ceiling was high enough I half-expected there to be clouds trailing the ceiling. The usual theme of black marble hard returned with a vengeance, but this once there was actually a bit of colour around: drapes of red, green and gold cascaded down everywhere like strange cloth pillars. The floor was one single immense mosaic depicting a hundred different scenes – the part I was in front of showed what I was fairly certain was the latter parts of First Crusade. The large army with its myriad of banners laying siege to a stylized Ater was something of a hint. My attention almost immediately left the decor, though: there must have been at least several hundred people standing in the gallery, and all of them were looking at us.

I'd seen very little of Praesi nobility, back in Laure. Besides Mazus and a handful of his hanger-ons, there wasn't any in the city. But now I was in their natural habitat, and though I despised them on principle I had to admit they were a stunning sight. Tunics and dresses of every colour and every pattern, every one of them more exotic than the last. Silk and brocade, velour and velvet and half a dozen other cloths I didn't even know the name for. The hair styles for both men and woman were outrageously elaborate, from braids with emeralds woven into them to a closely-cropped head with ever-changing arcane patterns shaved into it. There were Taghreb and Soninke both, and the overwhelming majority of the people inside were humans. There were but a handful of orcs, and no goblins at all. That I could see, anyway. Given their size they might be hiding behind someone else. Black stepped to my side and his face might as well have been carved out of stone. I schooled my own expression into something more neutral as I followed behind him, hearing the music that had been gently sounding in the background trail off as we did. The crowd parted before us as we strode with purpose,

until we came to stand a few dozen meters away from the dais in the back of the room where the throne stood.

I barely looked at the throne itself, though it was a thing of legend, for all my attention was commanded by the woman sitting on it. I'd seen some beautiful women in my handful of years. More than most. The Baroness Dormer had visited Laure, when I'd been a child, and I remembered thinking her hair looked like it was spun out of silver. She'd been pale as the moon and just as lovely. I'd served drinks to Yan Tei missionary once and spent most of the evening sneaking looks at her smooth honey-coloured skin and amber eyes. She'd been lean in the way all their warrior-priests were, with the muscles of a swimmer and the mysterious smile of a sage. Heiress, too, had been gorgeous in a way I could only envy: generations of good breeding culminating in a perfect figure and flawless features that not even a sneer could mar.

Compared to Dread Empress Malicia, they might as well have been pigs.

She was tall, even with her sitting I could see that much, but there was more to it than that. There were statues of ancient warrior-queens in Laure and they'd been... too perfect. Beautiful, but looking at them you knew they were art and not a living thing. The Empress was breathtaking because she was so very *alive*, like a bonfire compared to everyone else's candle. It didn't matter that I didn't usually find sharp Soninke cheekbones like those on her face attractive, they were part of a whole that went beyond its separate parts. I couldn't pick out a single feature that made her beautiful, she just *was*. Her silk dress was a stream of green and gold that suggested the curves of her body without revealing them, leaving bare her long neck and curling down to caress smooth dark calves. *Black as sin*, the Legionary's Song called her, and it was impossible *not* to think of something sinful when looking at her. Fluidly, with the easy grace of a hunting cat, she rose to her feet.

"All kneel for Her Most Dreadful Majesty Malicia, First of Her Name, Tyrant of Dominions High and Low, Holder of the Nine Gates, Sovereign of All She Beholds," a harsh voice rang out.

As one, the nobles filling the throne room dropped to their knees. After a moment Captain's armour creaked as she did the same, cloak pooling on the ground around her. Without thinking I was halfway to doing the same when a hand fell upon my shoulder.

"We," Black said, "do not kneel."

He'd spoken quietly, but in the hush of the room the words reverberated like the crack of a whip. The sentence was heavy with meaning, a claim and a declaration both. *We do not follow the law. We are the law. And if you want me to kneel, come and make me.* There we stood, the two of us clad in steel and black

like a pair of crows surrounded by birds of paradise. The only two people still on our feet among a sea of kneelers. I felt a shiver go down my spine at the sight. It felt like power. It felt like a beginning, though of what I was not sure. Dread Empress Malicia smiled as she sashayed toward us – just looking at the quirk of her lips made my heart clench.

"Welcome home, Amadeus," she said. "I see you brought along your Squire."

[rlc3cak3s](#)

Goddamn that was a good chapter. That architect must've had a lot of fun designing that castle. >_>
Thanks for the chapter

danielmc73

I love that the architect included a lack of railings in the tower. He included big evils like the room of heads and the demon but he didn't forget the little things like being able to fall to your death or uncomfortable ruby covered seats 😊

Thank you for the chapter, it was great.

John Galt

Easily my favorite story on TWF.

Unmaker

More detailed review later, but a minor gripe now.

The nobility get in and out of the castle regularly. Some servants, and there are probably a lot of servants, get in and out of the castle regularly. Tons and tons of supplies get into and out of the castle regularly and have to be moved by someone. So the scenes with the guards and steps, and especially the events with the demon and flying up by nightmare bat, don't normally happen. This was a special ceremony, or the Named were deliberately sent by the difficult route. Which is fine, but no-one called the whole scene out as over-the-top and unusual.

[AndHisHorse](#)

The gatekeeper is a demon; the servants might well not be creatures that need to go home at night...

Barim

I'm placing my bet, one of the aspects of the Tyrant is 'beautiful'.

Barim

Actually, is her Name 'Tyrant' or 'Dread Empress'?

[erraticerrata](#)

Dread Empress. Tyrant is an older version of the Name that's been kept as a ceremonial title.

Geli

If we are betting... I would say that no aspect of hers is "beautiful". I think it might simply be "awe" or maybe even something like "reverence"

Unmaker

Typos:

it.My
it. My

Her own cloak
Her cloak
(reflexive pronoun only if subject and object are the same – cloak and Captain aren't)

in an of itself
in and of itself

with a a
with a

scuplted
sculpted

thoroughly
thoroughly

keep myself steadying
keep myself steady

it was was
it was

momentCaptain's
moment Captain's

faces covered by mask
faces covered by masks

drowning each other out into coherence
drowning each other out of coherence

'take a hike',
(should the comma be inside the single quote?)

large saddle place on the creature's back
large saddle placed...

was high enough I half-expected
(not wrong, but clearer as)
was high enough that I half expected

(further) Reactions:

Guess: thick black cloak = sorcery protection

I wonder if Speaking is an aspect (so we know her three aspects)
or a granted power.

[erraticerrata](#)

All aspects are expressed as an infinitive verb (Learn,
Struggle, Destroy, Conquer, Protect, ect).

Bart

frowned as we got passed one by,
Remove got.
The usual theme of black marble hard returned with a vengeance
Remove hard.

Unmaker

I am guessing one of the favorite games to try to play with
newbies at the court is teaching them to fly:
Noble: "We have some business to discuss. Let's step out onto the
balcony to get a little privacy."
Newcomer: "OK."
Noble: (trip) (shove)
Newcomer: "AAaaahhh" (fading)
Noble: "He tripped. Really."
Newcomer: (thud)
Noble (looking down): "And didn't learn to fly either."

[erraticerrata](#)

Someone has got to feed the bat-things.

Geli

I love the tower. All the big and little details. Sure, have a
demon as a greeter, curses, a Court that someones devils and no
railings, and who knows what else. Because evil is as evil does.

XD I now want such a tower, the dark side definitely offers perks.

I think the nobels have some other way of coming and going. Probably take another flying beast.

Who wants to bet that you take the "scenic" road only once, when you're introduced?

"We do not kneel." – Perfect declaration of power to all and everyone. Paints a HUGE target on her back, but that seems to be the name of the game. (Live and have power or die painfully).

[erraticerrata](#)

You are correct! Not with the flying beasts, since that's an affectation, but there's other ways in. The nobles wear stuff that's much too expensive to want to risk it on a batmonster ride.

Also that last line could serve as a pretty decent tagline for the entire series.

Cpt. Obvious

"Live and have power or die painfully"

Or in Cat's case, kind of live. After all she was mostly a necromantic abomination at the end of her fight in Summerholm. So at least occasionally just kind of alive.

stevenneiman

"Captain [a] close behind us"

"and it rose through upwards steadily" no clue what to do about this one, but I can't make any sense of the wording.

"black marble [hard->had] returned"

"the latter parts of {the} First Crusade."

"I'd served drinks to {a?} Yan Tei missionary once"

For my money, I'm going to say that Malcia's aspect here is something like Impress or Inspire. Just a guess, though.

arancaytar

Sure, but it also just seems like common sense, story-wise.

Pretty sure that she also beheads anyone applying to be her Grand Vizier, just as a precaution.

arancaytar

face-desk

stevenneiman

"I'd served drinks to {a} Yan Tei missionary once"

Simurgh

Why does the Gatekeeper call the Black Knight prodigal? Prodigal means wastefully extravagant, and he doesn't seem to be so at all.

NomadElves

It can also mean someone who abandons you but is welcomed back later.

SilentLurker

So I am rereading this story out of a desire to make sure I missed nothing important earlier on as the fourth book is being published, and I have a question. How does the Tower compare, structurally speaking, to modern buildings on Earth? I got curious and found a photo looking up from the base of the Dubai Tower, and you could still see the top. So how tall exactly is the tower? And also what would you say the diameter of the building is?

I know this isn't really a "story" question, but I want to understand the scale of the Tower better.

[frolamiz](#)

Maybe the permanent thundercloud around the top make it difficult to see?

sswanlake

Some edits:

I regretted every opening my mouth -> I regretted **ever** opening my mouth

theme of black marble hard returned with a vengeance -> theme of black marble **had** returned with a vengeance

I'd served drinks to Yan Tei missionary once -> I'd served drinks to **a** Yan Tei missionary once

[Bruno Neves Oliveira \(@Nephandu\)](#)

Man, I loved the Black Tower. I wish I could live in there.

green

"There was something odd about the cloth – every now and then, when I moved, the way it caught the light made it look like it was made of pitch black feathers."

ah, **this** is the debut of The Mantle. and I want to say this is fantastic foreshadowing but I honestly don't know if it is, but I'm going to believe it anyway. XD

[*serpentrose*](#)

The quote at the beginning of this chapter is a lot more interesting in light of later developments. I love catching things like that when I revisit the earlier parts of a work.

Rraune

" and again by a Proceran army during Second Crusade"
during the Second Crusade

"and I regretted every opening my mouth:"
ever

"I was fairly certain was the latter parts of First Crusade"
of the First Crusade

Chapter 21: Fall

"Victory, most fickle of friends."
-Taghreb saying

Gods, even her voice was gorgeous. How was that fair in any way? I knew taking a Name could change your appearance, over time, but somehow I got the feeling that wasn't the case with Malicia. *I suppose once in a while someone does get born that outrageously good-looking.* With an effort, I forced myself to look away – I certainly wasn't going to get my head back in the game as long as I was gawping at the Empress like a dumbstruck fool.

"It's good to be home, Malicia," Black replied mildly. "If I may introduce Catherine Foundling, formerly of Laure."

The direct mention was enough to jolt me back into a semblance of attention. I kept my face as blank as I could manage and inclined my head as the Dread Empress' dark eyes turned to me.

"My dear Knight has long been delaying the taking of an apprentice," she mused. "I look forward to finding out how you changed his mind. I must confess I have great hopes for you, Squire."

Smiling in that heartbreaking manner of hers, she cast a warmly fond look at the Court.

"We *all* have great hopes for you," she asserted, and the nobles effortlessly painted polite agreement over their faces.

I imagine they would have done much the same, if she'd opened me from crotch to throat with a sacrificial knife. One did not openly disagree with the ruler of Praes without consequence – and who would even want to, while she was smiling at them like that? “I will try to live up to them, Your Majesty,” I replied, and had to force down a cringe when I heard how hesitant my voice sounded.

I might as well have been throwing a barrel of blood in a pond full of sharks. Malicia's expression was kindly, but I was beginning to have a handle on how striking she was. I was, nominally at least, on Black's side. That more or less meant I was on hers considering that Black was her staunchest supporter, but I'd been given to understand that there were nuances at play. My teacher had made it clear from the beginning that while he deferred to the Empress he didn't agree with her every decision. Already I was beginning to regret I hadn't spent more time asking questions about the current state of Imperial factions at Court – this was a battlefield like any other, but I had no idea who my enemies actually were. Malicia lightly tread around us, forcing us to turn as the kneeling nobles rose to their feet. They were still silent, though, so I got the feeling that the show wasn't over yet.

“How go the provinces, Black Knight?” the Empress asked, voice carrying clearly across the enormous throne room.

Provinces. My face turned properly expressionless for the first time since I'd stepped into this mess. That was how they thought of Callow here, wasn't it? Uncivilized provinces good only for shaking until gold and other useful materials came out.

“Settled,” my teacher replied calmly. “For now.”

Malicia cast a soulful look at the nobles.

“It is,” she spoke with genteel regret, “a great shame that Governor Mazus forced our hand in such a way. I do dislike ending old bloodlines.”

The Tyrant was the very picture of an aggrieved young woman. Black turned to face the crowd too, and there was no such regret on his face. A hint of the... thing I'd glimpsed in Summerholm was peering out through those unsettling green eyes, offering the aristocrats a smile that bared too many teeth to be anything of the sort.

“That is the ever the way, with those who overreach,” he told them. “It should be remembered that unsightly ambition so often lead to an unsightly end.”

He ran a pale thumb across his throat in a seemingly casual gesture and I saw several silhouettes go still as stone. The casual reminder that in the end Mazus had been robbed of the easy death all those colourfully plumaged vultures thought was their birthright was unsettling them. *None of this is spontaneous*, I instinctively grasped. The easy repartee between the two most powerful individuals in the Empire was too fluid to have been rehearsed, perhaps, but there was still something almost practiced about it. Like they'd been in their respective roles for so long that they no longer needed to plan out the dance,

only be who they were supposed to be and let the music lead them. *So that's how it is*, I frowned. Malicia was gentle and soft and regretful, respected the importance of the old families and their place in the halls of power – and all the while my teacher stood there reminding them with a smile that if he had his way all of their heads would be in the Hall of Screams. The Empress smiled and casually laid a hand on Black's arm, four hundred eyes following the gesture. *Look at my monster*, she seemed to be saying. *Isn't he dangerous? Remember, I'm the only thing standing between you and him. So why don't you all behave, my darlings? Leashes are such slippery things.*

"Now that the inevitable politics are out of the way," Malicia announced cheerfully, "we can get back to the part of the evening you're all actually here for."

Chuckles and smiles ripped through the crowd, though she hadn't been being particularly funny. The Empress idly clapped her hands, and immediately the music started playing again. In a heartbeat the court split into a hundred smaller clusters, conversing among themselves and calling over servants carrying trays full of cups. With a last smile at us, the Empress trailed away to mingle.

"You did passably well, for you first time at Court," Black assessed quietly. "They'll think you weaker than you are, but that can be useful."

"I really need some etiquette classes," I grunted back. "The stuff I learned at the orphanage is useless here."

"I'll work it into your schedule," the dark-haired man murmured. "But don't forget you have a Name, Catherine. Rudeness is one of the many privileges that affords you."

I raised an eyebrow. "If I'm gonna be rude to one of them, I want to be on purpose," I retorted.

He conceded the point with a mild inclination of the head.

"You'll have to mingle on your own," he said. "Captain will be keeping an eye on you, but she'll be remaining at a distance."

"Got an assignment of your own, have you?" I guessed.

Black smiled thinly.

"The High Lady of Kahtan has been making noises about revising the legal number of household troops," he replied. "She seems to need a reminder as to why she inherited her seat so young."

"You have fun with that," I snorted. "Anybody in particular I should talk to?"

"There might be some well-connected cadets from the College in attendance," Black murmured. "Allies are a useful thing."

I acknowledged the hint with a nod and turned to face the crowd as he strode away. Where to start? Gods, I'd never been all that good at the social butterfly thing. *All right, let's get a drink first. Should make the rest of this easier.* I gestured for one of the drinks-carrying servants to come closer and snatched a golden goblet with wine in it. Something fruity, from the smell of it.

"Don't drink that," Scribe murmured.

I nearly dropped the cup, cursing under my breath. The plain-faced woman was standing at my side like she'd always been there

– and for all I know she'd been. There was a ring of empty space around me for at least twenty feet, which made it all the more ridiculous I hadn't seen or heard her coming.

"You *really* need to stop doing that," I complained.

A flicker of amusement went through her eyes, gone in a heartbeat.

"Haven't seen you since the Blackguards picked me up," I observed after composing myself. "Where did you go?"

"I had other duties," she replied, and didn't elaborate even after I raised an eyebrow.

I sighed and eye the cup of wine wistfully.

"It's poisoned, isn't it?" I said with resignation.

"All the drinks are," she said. "A mild poison, with embarrassing side-effects. Attendees find out what antidote they'll need in advance: not drinking is seen as a sign of incompetence."

"Fucking Praesi," I grunted under my breath. "No offence, Scribe."

"None taken. I was not born in Praes," she replied without inflection.

That was the first bit of personal information I'd ever learned about Black's shadow, and I filed it away for mulling over later. Very little was known about Scribe, given how rarely she made it into the stories. The Empress passed at the edge of my field of vision, laughing throatily at a richly dressed young boy's jest. From the poleaxed look on his face, he seemed as unable to deal with her as I'd been not too long ago. The Named woman followed my gaze, clicking her tongue against the roof of her mouth.

"Be careful with her," Scribe said.

I kept my surprise off of my face. She wasn't usually one to bother with warnings, and to be honest I was a little surprised we were still talking at all: this might very well be the longest conversation the two of us had had since the first time we'd met. I'd never gotten the feeling that Scribe disliked me, per se, she just didn't seem particularly invested in my general existence.

"I know she'd dangerous," I replied quietly. "It'll take more than few smiles to make me forget that."

"You don't understand *how* dangerous she is," the plain-faced woman murmured. "Not even Black does, and he's known her the longest."

"They knew each other before she took the throne?" I asked, openly surprised.

I'd heard next to nothing about Dread Empress Malicia before she claimed the Tower. Even how she'd managed that was rather vague: I knew she'd been opposed and a civil war had ensued where Black had served as her general, but details were scarce in the books I'd been provided.

"They met before he claimed his first Name in full," Scribe said.

"When she was still a waitress at her father's inn in Satus."

I blinked. "A *waitress*?" I hissed out in disbelief. "The Dread Empress of Praes used to be a *waitress*?"

The other Named folded her ink-stained fingers into her sleeves.

"What do you know about Dread Emperor Nefarious?" she finally

asked.

I frowned. "He ruled before Malicia. Went a little cuckoo in the head after he failed to invade Callow and got whipped by the Wizard of the West."

Scribe's face was unreadable. "The nature of his fall was less charming than your expression might imply. Nefarious never again left the Tower after he returned, leaving matters of ruling to the Chancellor. He spent his time expanding the ranks of his seraglio."

Just the word made my skin crawl. I'd known that some of the Dread Emperors – and Empresses – had kept consorts, but from the way Scribe was talking about it Nefarious hadn't been looking for volunteers.

"Her beauty has little to do with her Name," she murmured. "The Emperor had his Sentinels scouring the breadth of Praes for beauties and word of her looks had spread beyond the town. Her father protested, so they nailed him to the floor of his own inn."

I grimaced. I sometimes forgot that the bastards that held the Tower were just as brutal towards their own people as they were towards the other kingdoms.

"So they met when she was taken to Nefarious?" I guessed.

Scribe shook her head. "A few days beforehand. He and Wekesa were still claimants to Squire and Apprentice, back then. They met again when he became the Black Knight and Chancellor summoned him to the Tower."

"From concubine to Empress," I muttered. "Weeping Heavens, how did she manage that?"

"Patience," Scribe said. "Patience, poison and making the right promises."

That certainly got my attention. "And what did she promise him?"

"What she needed to," Scribe replied flatly. "Not as much as she should have. They are, after all, friends."

Her face had remained impassive, but there was no hiding the thick distaste in the way she pronounced the last word.

"You don't sound very fond of the Empress," I said very, very quietly.

"Amadeus is a loyal man, in his own way," Scribe replied. "It's why we follow him – he'd break the world, for one of us. In some ways he already has. But the blade bites from both sides."

I cast a shifty look around us, which probably made us look twice as guilty.

"We are not being overheard," the plain-faced woman said, and the utter certitude in her voice gave me pause. Something related to her Name? "Ranger and I disagreed on many matters, Catherine, but there was one thing we always agreed on."

"And what's that?"

Scribe leaned closer.

"We should have an Emperor, not an Empress," she whispered into my ear.

Without another word, she stepped into the crowd. A drunken noble passed in front of her, tittering with a companion whose hair was

shaped like a roaring dragon, and by the time they cleared my field of vision there was no sign of Scribe. She might as well have vanished into thin air, and if I hadn't known how hilariously disproportionate the amount of magic needed for even the smallest transportation spells was I would have thought she'd teleported. *Well, wasn't that the most ominous conversation I've had all week. If you don't count the fucking demon doorman, anyways.* It wasn't every day I got spoken treason to, and there was no way this was anything but treason. Coming from the Named who worked closest with my teacher, to boot.

Scribe's mention of Ranger had come as something of a surprise, considering the woman in question had left the Empire early into the Conquest – if the stories were true, anyway. So there were Praesi who'd wanted Black to claim the Tower. That wasn't all that surprising, considering he'd been the face of the Empire's latest victories. *But he doesn't seem to want the Tower. And I'm not sure he could actually take it, considering he's pale-skinned.* There were three ethnicities, in the Wasteland. The two largest were the Soninke and the Taghreb, often overshadowing the less-known Duni. Most dark and olive-skinned people who lived in the Green Stretch still considered themselves of the associated culture, but the pale-skinned people who'd trickled into the Stretch from Callow as well as those who had much more ancient Miezan roots were branded with the name of Duni.

The Soninke had some kind of religious grounds for despising them, I'd read – it was associated with the same reason they thought of the Taghreb as a lesser people – but the Taghreb simply hated them for being a visible reminder of the Miezan occupation. Over a thousand years later no living Taghreb had been actually seen and the blood of the original settlers who'd remained in Stretch was so diluted as to have nothing in common with their ancestors, but the hatred remained. There had been Black Knights of Duni blood before my teacher and a few Chancellors. But no Warlock, and no one of those roots had ever held the Tower. The very idea was anathema to the beliefs of most of the old nobility.

I wasn't sure what Black actually wanted, when it came down to it. I'd grown to know the person he presented himself as and even looked the monster he could be in the eye, but his intentions were still a mystery to me. With every passing day I felt more like the only dancer in the ballroom who didn't know the tune or the steps, and there was only so long I was willing to allow that. I could still hear rope creak and necks break whenever I closed my eyes: those were the consequences, when I took a swing in the dark instead of planning out my actions carefully. *Gods, I really wish I could have a bloody cup of wine at the moment.*

There seemed to be food displayed on a table by one of the cloth pillars, and I made my way towards it. Odds were it was just as poisoned as the wine, but I figured I'd at least look whether some people helped themselves to it before writing it off. There was already someone there sniffing around pork cutlets, as it happened. I recognized the silhouette even from a distance: I

didn't know a lot of orcs as tall as Juniper, aside from Hakram. "Hellhound," I greeted her, pleasantly surprised. "Didn't think you'd go for this sort of thing."

Juniper turned to eye me and then stabbed a cutlet with a fork, dropping it on an ornate gold plate.

"Someone from the family needs to show up at the important stuff," she grunted. "Mom's in Summerholm and Dad is taking care of my sisters up north so I got stuck doing it."

I eyed the cutlet enviously as she took a bite.

"I don't suppose those are safe?" I asked hopefully.

"Bishara told me what the antidote for tonight was," Juniper replied with a smirk, flashing her fangs. "Only brought enough for one, I'm afraid. Should have planned this one better, Squire."

"A common failure of hers, I've found," a female voice casually butted in from behind me.

"The density of smugness in this room has suddenly intensified," I announced without turning. "I wonder why that is?"

I turned towards the source of the comment and saw a pretty dark-skinned girl smiling at me in a way that never quite reached her eyes.

"Oh, Heiress," I added cheerfully. "Hadn't seen you there. Did you say something?"

Juniper snorted.

"It's rather astonishing what passes as a sense of humour in the provinces," someone else commented.

My eyes flicked to the pair of girls and the single boy my nemesis – one of them, anyway, and Gods when had I gotten to a point in my life where I'd need to look up the plural for the word nemesis? – had decided to bring along with her. The girls were Soninke, the boy Taghreb. Richly dressed, all of them, in shades of red and gold. Heiress' long red dress brought a pang of envy from me, if only because of the way it fit around her curves perfectly. I'd yet to grow in any of those to speak of myself, much to my dismay. *At least I don't have to bind my breasts too hard under plate. Must be Hells on her, when she does.* After a heartbeat to take them in, I addressed Heiress.

"You brought bookends," I said amusedly. "I didn't think that was something people actually did. Did you train them to say snappy phrases whenever you signal them? Go on, tug at your earlobe. I'm hoping it'll make one of them strike a pose."

"I suppose allowances need to be made for poor breeding," one of the Soninke girls sighed. "I am Barika Unonti, heiress to the Ladyship of Unonti. You may kiss my hand, Wallerspaw."

She extended a slender dark-skinned arm, palm facing downward. I eye her dubiously and she sneered. I sighed and my hand snapped out, closing around her little finger. Her eyes widened and she had to bite down a scream when I twisted sharply, breaking the bone without much effort. Soft hands, this one. I let go and smiled pleasantly at the lot of them.

"That's your first warning," I said. "You say another thing about breeding of any kind, or reference the fact I'm Callowan, and

I'll take something more drastic. An eye, maybe, since you little shits don't see to be using them to recognize I am *not somebody to fuck with.*"

Unonti eyed me like I'd turned into a raving madwoman and something arcane in nature flickered around the other girl's fingers – it felt like lightning, but she did not strike out. The boy's hand dipped to the bastard sword at his hip and I made eye contact with him, still smiling.

"Draw it," I said softly. "See where that gets you."

His hand returned to his side, his face flushed with anger. I returned my attention to Heiress and something I couldn't quite identify passed through her eyes.

"Barbarity," she spoke calmly, "is all you are good for. I'm told you couldn't even manage a win at the College without using your Name."

"She used all the tools at her disposal," a gravelly voice interjected. Juniper was onto a second cutlet, eyeing us with mild amusement. "That's the purpose of the games: training for war. She'd have been an idiot not to use it."

Well now, an unexpected display of support from the Hellhound. Hadn't seen that coming.

"Is defeat all it takes to cow one of the Knightsbane's blood?" Heiress spoke softly.

Juniper's eyes turned hard and she bared her teeth, pushing herself up to her full height.

"The likes of you don't get to say shit about my blood, Soninke. We still remember the Night of Red Winds," she snarled. She rounded up on me immediately afterwards. "And you, don't you look so pleased. I'm not taking sides in your little pissing contest – I just want you both to leave your fucking politics out of my Legions. There's more to this Empire than humans bickering over who gets to be in charge."

And with that she dropped her plate on the table, walking away with a growl. Heiress smiled and met my eyes. *Ah, she did that on purpose. Burned the bridge for me. But that means...*

"You have now slighted me twice, Catherine Foundling," the Soninke called out, and her voice carried.

It got the attention of people around us, and they watched with interest – a loose circle of watchers formed.

"Well," I replied blandly, "you do take things so personally."

"You have assaulted a guest under my protection," Heiress announced. "Do you deny this?"

Mhm, how to qualify the feeling in my bones at that moment? *Like a rabbit seeing the noose tighten around its throat.* I could hardly deny breaking Unonti's finger when it was still, in fact, broken. Besides Heiress had witnesses. Had I been baited? It was starting to look like I had been. *Now time to see for what.*

"Sometimes I see something particularly breakable and I just can't help myself," I shrugged, noting the girl in question was still cradling her finger and glaring at me.

"Talk like that will cost you your tongue, *uchaffe,*" the boy snarled.

It meant filth, in Mthethwa. I ignored him anyway. He was just Heiress' mouthpiece, allowing him to distract me would just let her gain more ground.

"You comport yourself like a thug and still expect to rack up honours and commands," my rival spoke, gracefully circling around me in a stalk. "You have not proved worthy of the promotion you are being given."

"And what promotion would that be?" I replied flatly. "The one where my company in the College named me captain by acclaim?"

Heiress dismissed that with a contemptuous flick of the wrist.

"I speak, of course, of the request made for your commission as the head of the Fifteenth Legion," she said.

I kept my face carefully blank. That was the first I was hearing about that. As far as I knew, there was no Fifteenth Legion existing at the moment, or even a Fourteenth. More than that, there was only one person I knew who could have made that request. I resisted the urge to scan the crowd for Black.

"Think you're the one who deserves it, do you?" I mocked.

Heiress' smile widened.

"As a matter of fact, I do," she purred. "What have you done, to deserve such an appointment?"

I felt the crowd move more than I saw it, the sea of aristocrats parting for the bigger fish. Dread Empress Malicia sauntered into the scene, elegance personified.

"My, my," she murmured. "Such spirited youths we have in attendance tonight. What seems to be the problem, my dears?"

Heiress knelt, and for a heartbeat I almost regretted I couldn't – wouldn't – do the same. The display of deference might have been useful, and I could only envy how my rival was turning a mark of lower status into a useful tool.

"Your Majesty," the Soninke girl spoke before rising back to her feet. "I was merely questioning the fitness of this... Callowan to command Praesi legionaries."

There was a murmur of approval among the nobles. She really was going to milk my origins for all they were worth, wasn't she? I'd never been more painfully aware that I had no friends in that crowd.

"The Callowan actually attends the War College, unlike you," I noted flatly.

"An attendance that has not been marked by successes justifying such a rise in authority," Heiress retorted smoothly.

"The contrary, if anything," her Taghreb from earlier contributed with a sneer.

"Captain?"

The voice came from far behind me, to my left, but even at that distance Black's voice was pitched perfectly to carry across the room.

"Lord?" Captain replied.

"If the boy interrupts again, snap his neck."

"With pleasure."

The boy went pale as a ghost, taking a half-step back. Times like these were when I was glad to have the Black Knight in my corner,

cryptic jackass or not. Malicia laughed, and the entire world held its breath at the sight of it – it defused the tension that had risen in the crowd easy as snapping your fingers.

"You have a solution in mind, Heiress," the Empress smiled. "I can see it in your eyes."

"I do," my rival agreed. "To keep things interesting, I would propose a wager."

The Empress cast her an interested look. "You have my attention."

"Another war game," Heiress announced. "The College once held grand five-way melees, in older times. Better times. If Squire is to command, I would have her prove her worth. Isn't that the way of our Legions, Your Majesty?"

My rival's smile turned sardonic.

"One sin, one grace," she quoted softly.

I felt my fingers clench around the pommel of my sword.

"And should, Gods forbid," the Empress prompted, "our Squire lose?"

"I would ask that for the slights she has given me, Catherine Foundling's appointment be made mine," she replied, and triumph glinted in her eyes.

Oh, that bitch. She knows Rat Company is ranked last. And if Summerholm was any indication, she wouldn't be above bribing my opponents to make sure I failed.

"That does sound interesting," Malicia mused, tapping her chin with a slender finger as her eyes raked the crowd.

I could see the intellect behind the beautiful face weighing the advantages and disadvantages, what the throne could gain and lose by allowing this to proceed. A moment later, she returned her attention to us.

"It will be so," the Empress spoke, and this time there was iron in her voice. "In two days hence, with the outlined stakes."

"I thank Your Majesty for her wisdom, as always," my rival said with a low bow.

And just like that, it was done. Malicia drifted away and I felt the eyes of the entire wretched flock on me, mocking. A few splatters of laughter came from different corners of the room. Heiress passed me by, pausing to lean into my ear.

"And all it cost me was a broken finger," she murmured.

The grip on my sword strengthened until my knuckles were white, my face flushed with humiliation. She'd played me like a fiddle, and everybody in the room knew it. Some of them weren't even bothering to be subtle about it, eyeing me like I was wearing a fool's motley. *I suppose I might as well have been, falling for it so easily.* I strode out of the crowd, heading for the closest door I could see. It led straight into an antechamber much like the one I'd come in through, though night had fallen in the lapse of time since I'd first come in. The beginnings of a storm were whipping at the stone with ropes of water. I tightened my cloak around my shoulders and stepped into the rain.

I stood and let the water run down my face, unsure of why I'd thought it would make me feel better. Lightning struck in the distance, streaking the night sky for the barest fraction of a

moment. I didn't feel soothed by the beat of the rain on my head: just wet and cold and still so very humiliated. Ater was sprawled out in the distance around me, the labyrinth of stone dotted by torches all the way to those enormous walls and the famous nine black gates the City of Gates had been named for. I'm not sure how I knew Black had joined me up out on the balcony, but I knew it as sure as I knew my own breath. My Name, probably – the more I learned how to use it the more it changed me, broadened my perceptions in some indescribable way. My teacher came to stand by my side on the edge, standing still and silent like he hadn't even noticed we were in the middle of a storm.

"They're always going to get in my way, aren't they?" I spoke into the silence. "Because I'm from Callow, because I'm a commoner, because I'm not one of them. They're going to fight me on everything just because they can. Because every time I win when they think I should lose, it insults them."

Black was silent for a long time.

"Yes," he agreed, and there was a world of weariness in that single word.

"She beat me," I said, knowing it to be the truth. "Without lifting a finger. A handful of sentences and she managed to make my every success meaningless in less time than it takes to boil a cup of tea."

He didn't move and lay his hand on my shoulder the way I'd seen some fathers do with their daughters. It had never been this way with the two of us, and it never would be. He would not prop me up when I fell, but I'd never expected that from him. I was the Squire and he was the Black Knight, and so instead of comforting me he stood by my side in the pouring rain, waiting for me to rise back up on my own the way I always had. I closed my eyes and raised my head, letting the water flow against my cheeks as I let out a shaky laugh. Lightning struck again and I screamed at the night sky, screamed until my throat was sore and my stomach hurt.

"How do I do it," I panted afterwards, "how do I beat them?"

And I didn't mean the other companies. I meant all those dagger-eyed nobles inside, just waiting for me to step wrong so I could be buried in a shallow grave. Black turned towards me and smiled the same wicked smile he had what seemed so long ago, when he'd walked into the palace in Laure and turned a man's death sentence into a lesson for me. Lightning struck again, casting his pale face in a madman's light.

"How does a villain deal with enemies? It's the simplest thing in the world, Catherine. When they get in your way... *step on them.*"

Ben

Thanks for the chapter~

I looking forward to the noble stomping 😊

stevenneiman

Hip hip hurray, it's noble stomping daaaay!

InsulaAvalon

Put your Legionaire helmet on
Spread that Dragon's milk on the lawn.

The Hunter

Don't you know it's Noble Stomping Day

Captain Amazing

slow clap

Sean

"My eyes flicked to the pair of girls and the single boy my nemesis – one of them, anyway"

Confusing wording/punctuation.

Excellent chapter. I always love it when writers manage to turn social interactions into edge-of-my-seat verbal battles.

I think this might be one of my favorite chapters so far, quite honestly. A lot happened. More was promised to happen. All done very interestingly and entertainingly.

Those last five paragraphs especially were wonderful. Created good imagery, but more than that had an excellent mood in varying shades and strength, while showing some of the relationship between two main characters.

5/5

Extant1

Seems like the shittiest wager in existence: "If you lose, you lose everything. If I lose, I lose nothing." Feels like someone should have said something to put more on Heiress's end, otherwise anyone might come up with 2 mild slights and a trap to kill/knock her out in the wager.

nipi

Not really. Remember she wasn't made the leader of the legion yet. Besides you don't need to be fair if you're evil.

Cpt. Obvious

Heiress worded the "wager" very carefully so it's not primarily about her and Catherine but about what's best for Praes and the Legion. That way she doesn't have to offer up anything personal should Cat succeed.

It's all very much in style for Heiress, and appreciated by the nobles witnessing. They see Catherine's failure to recognize the the trap and failing to turn it into something potentially advantageous as a proof that this Squire is a stupid barbarian, and so it cements Heiress claims without her having to prove anything.

And neither Black, Malicia, Captain or anyone else can bring this discrepancy up or it will make Cat look even weaker. The best thing she could have done would have been to treat it as beneath her to even consider the possibility of failing to win this wargame. Pretend that goading Heiress into issuing this challenge was her plan from the start. But instead she fled the room.

In Praes it's all smoke and mirrors, poisoned wine and daggers under the cloak. You don't have to be the best commander, you just have to out maneuver or murder everyone else. And the more elegantly you do it the more they will respect you.

Lobo

Nemeses? Nemesi? Either way I'm very much enjoying this story!

Evi

Hello! I just wanted to say that this web serial is really really amazing and incorporates all of my favorite kind of tropes. (Or the subversion of them at least) I rather impatiently await it's update every week.

Also, I do have a question? It may just be me, but I'm still a little confused on the matter of race and the average appearance for the people that comprise of that race. It's not a big deal by any means, but I keep trying to wrap my mental image around average depictions and the cultures behind it and etc. For example, Catherine is very clearly a Callowan to people but is it her appearances? She's described as generally darker but could pass as just having a serious tan in the summer. But this chapter we have a description of the Callowans trickling down to the Stretch that says they're pale. I'm wondering if Callowan people are just a mixed bag.

The Praesi comprise of the Soninke, Taghreb, and so on? And then we have other mentions of ethnicities like the Yan Tei which is also interesting.

So would it be possible for you to give some kind of general description for the general groups of people? Or eventually have a page or something as a kind of index? I understand why you haven't just slabbed down paragraphs in the middle of the story itself, but I am kind of interested in getting a clearer picture of this world.

If that would be too much work, just ignore me. Primarily I just wanted to tell you that you're awesome and so is this story.

erraticerrata

Hello! Thank you for all the compliments, it's always a pleasure to get those xD

While Catherine refers to herself – and is referred to – as Callowan she has the heritage of a specific ethnicity in Callow, the Deoraithe. They are what could be called a naturally tanned people, whose closest RL equivalent would be Native Americans (more specifically the Huron and Iroquois, from which I've derived some of their customs). "Callowan", when used to refer to an ethnic background, refers to the rest of the former Kingdom of Callow (basically everything that's not the Duchy of Daoine), where the people are usually fair-skinned and often blue or brown-eyed. Blond hair is also very common.

As for the ethnicities of the Dread Empire, I'll give you a quick rundown. The Soninke (who live everywhere that's above Thalassina on the map) are generally dark-skinned and tall. They're also the the most numerous population group, and the most politically powerful. Malicia is one, so is Heiress. The Taghreb are usually described as being tanned or olive-skinned as well as narrow of frame, and are mostly based in the Hungering Sands (though they have a significant presence in Foramen). They're loosely based on Bedouins, though the similarities are largely superficial. Captain is one, as well as Ratface. The last ethnicity is the Duni, who live almost exclusively in the Green Stretch though it should be noted they don't make up the majority of the population there. They're typically pale-skinned, as they have both Miezan origins and some bloodline mixing with Callowans and Procerans (most of it from the later Crusades).

Evi

Oh wow, that's really interesting. (Now I kind of want to know more, but I can wait for in-story world-building haha)
Thank you so much for taking the time to type all that up!!!

Bart

Typo thread:

Sometimes I see something particularly breakable and I just can't

myself
Add help between can't and myself.

FirstDragon

Outside of the inanely one-sidedness of the "wager", which came across as an imposition rather than any kind of agreement or bet, I liked the chapter. I'm all for the MC getting stepped on but it feels like she got spiked rather than having any chance to return the ball...and that felt unrealistic to me. Or perhaps contrived is a better word. On a similar note, I'm curious as to why the Empress wants the deck stacked against the MC considering the squire was actively selected by her friend / confidant Monsieur Black.

Overall, at least from a common-sense perspective, the story is moving too quickly. The MC isn't getting enough training or preparation or coaching but rather is continually tossed to the wolves. Black talked about how the MC had the ability to learn all the great stuff served to the Heiress on a silver platter since birth...but as a mentor / coach he fails miserably re: prepping his Squire. I understand from a narrative perspective why you as the author might want to rush everything along and toss the MC into the deep end again and again for heightened excitement; it makes her journey more difficult and her reek of underdog. As a reader, I'm looking for a rational reason why she shouldn't just get some decent training under her belt. Good swimmers don't just grow from being nearly drowned in shark-infested waters. They learn technique from great teachers and then mastery through monitored repetition. Her supporters and teachers should be helping her gain the necessary experience, context, and training.

That said, still an awesome read.

stevenneiman

I don't think that a Named and one hundred against four hundred with divided leadership is quite as unfair as you might think. Especially if they don't realize until too late that it is all of them against her and hers.

As far as the protagonist getting thrown in the deep end, she is actually given as much training as she and Black have time for and he seems to be on some kind of schedule. Also, he is very definitely a sink or swim mentor and Catherine has thus far given no indication that she really can't handle the stuff getting thrown her way. Barely able to yes, but nothing so far has been beyond her and if she fights smart as well as hard this won't be either. If she fails beyond recovery he still hasn't invested a huge amount in her, and if she doesn't she'll be ready to take a more active role in his plans. Also, let's not forget that the most surefire way revealed so far to tap her Role requires that she start out more or less screwed and

work out of that without help, and she can't do much if she doesn't get used to using her full power.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

"feels like she got spiked rather than having any chance to return the ball...and that felt unrealistic to me"

Getting completely outclassed by Heiress felt unrealistic? Not sure what your complaint is, but it sounds like you're wanting to read a totally different story than this one? You might as well say "I want to read a story where the main character wins every time!"

TheSmokingGnu

While she reeks of underdog, she still manages to win/do extremely well in every thing she does, which, combined with her self-confidence makes it look like she will just succeed in literally everything. That annoys me a little at times(at other times it seems exciting and totally natural, in contrast).

The fact that you've mentioned – that the story is going too fast, adds a lot to this impression, as in the few weeks Catherine, in completely hostile and new environment, without decent training and completely unprepared for the tasks just goes here and there, claims a stunning victory and moves to next places where she needs to succeed.

That being said, i enjoy the world very, very much, the impression it gives is really special. Maybe i just havent read YA, or more heroish fantasy stories for a long time now).

aurikdomi

TheSmokingGnu, nice. Yeah endless victories are a pretty common thing and not everything can live up to the great Terry, but this is also the first book of this series and the author really grows as do their characters as the story progresses.

stevenneiman

"That is [the] ever the way"

"I sighed and [eye->eyed] the cup of wine wistfully."

"no living Taghreb had [been] actually seen a Miezan"

"I'd grown to know the person he presented himself [at->as]"

"I [eye-eyed] her dubiously and she sneered"

I don't think the Heiress is really in as good of a position as she seems to think. Just because you were the one steering the whole time doesn't mean that you won't die if you drive your car off a cliff, and if Catherine manages to win in the big game that

will be exactly what she has (metaphorically) done. Given that only one person knows that she is Named, she seems to have good odds of playing the other factions against one another until she can sweep up the pieces. In fact, considering the competence on a troop level being ranked last for so long and then getting one seemingly lucky break will probably make it easier to use her best weapon available at the moment, which is underestimation.

stevenneiman

"I'd served drinks to {a} Yan Tei missionary once"

"If I'm gonna be rude to one of them, I want {it} to be on purpose"

"Over a thousand years later no living Taghreb had [been] actually seen a Miezan"

"There had been Black Knights of Duni blood before my teacher and a few [Warlock->Warlocks]"

"I'd grown to know the person he presented himself [at->as]"

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

I was rooting for Squire to say something like "I'm sorry, I must not have realized she was under your protection when you weren't protecting her"

Byzantine

The mistake I feel she made was she didn't turn it back around. It is unfair that her title be at risk and Heiress's not, and it should have been easy to sell that as part of the wager. After all, if she's going to challenge your leadership she should have a stake in it.

linnilalartyr

Yessssssss! step on them!! go! go!!

arancaytar

I give you – my archnemesises...es.

Isa Lumitus

While it would be horribly out of character, I can't help but think that Catharine could have spared herself some grief by just running Heiress through at first sight.

I mean, Black's role is already to be the Empress's monster on a leash. Squire can be the monster on Black's leash. Besides, if I'm reading the Praesi right, she'd mostly be looked down upon for killing Heiress with a sword, rather than adding another poison to her drink.

Then again, Squire's job is to learn. Once she's a full-fledged villain, she'll understand that suddenly murdering annoyances is ENCOURAGED.

[tmeenaks](#)

Well, that would only work if she was a threat even above the Black Knight. If anybody harms the Empress, then the leash goes lose and they'll have to deal with something even worse than her. If Squire is weaker than Black, then she's more a favourite pet with a body count than a monster restrained by a single chain.

sswanlake

Some edits:

person he presented himself at and even looked -> person he presented himself **as** and even looked

[Bruno Neves Oliveira \(@Nephandu\)](#)

This one and the previous are the kind of chapter I like best.

However, I can't feel any kind of compassion or relation to the protagonist. Besides being extremely impulsive and never think before she acts (being so easily provoked), she has 0 deviousness or slyness. She's not very smart, no matter how I look at it.

As a Slytherin and a Ravenclaw simpathizer, I can't find a bigger fault. She's truly Gryffindor to the bone, and I really dislike Gryffindor. It's there and Hufflepuff heroes come from, and I don't mean that as a compliment.

Clint

I feel you on everything you said

WealthyAardvark

Typo:

vanished into thing air
-> thin air

Max Scherer

Ahh shit Great Story, but i hate Heiress so so much and hope that Catherine will stomp her in the ground hard.

nasiba

A bit disappointed in this chapter. I agree with TheSmokingGnu and FirstDragon that the story is falling into a too predictable

pattern of throwing Catherine into an impossible situation for which she is totally unprepared, only to once again emerge victorious. I understand that one of her aspects is 'struggle' but it's getting too repetitive. I'm also disappointed that the next round is yet another huge battle, when we literally just went through this the previous chapters. I was hoping she would move on to learn some of the diplomacy/court skills she so badly needs and has been completely devoid of any tutelage of at this point. After all, her real enemies are going to be Nobles. Hopefully I will be proven wrong, that there is more going on, here. I'm really enjoying the story thus far.

Chapter 22: All According To

"Diplomacy is the art of selling a deal you don't want to people you don't trust for reasons you won't admit to."

-Prokopia Lekapene, first and only Hierarch of the League of Free Cities

"No one goes through the front gate, Callow," Ratface told me pityingly. "Not unless you have a Name or you're in disfavour with the Empress."

"That just bloody figures," I muttered. "There's another way in?"

"Try twenty," Hakram gravelled. "Most of them through tunnels, but the nobles have some fancy gate in the back."

I scowled, much to the amusement of my officers. I'd missed the communal breakfast for my company, as Black had let me sleep in up to Morning Bell before sending me back. Within moments of setting foot on the grounds my officers had come to ambush me: morning classes had been dismissed because of an announcement that was the talk of the College. A five-way melee had been ordered by the Empress herself, and the participants had been informed in the middle of the meal. We commandeered one of the classrooms to serve as our meeting hall, ushering out the handful of cadets studying inside. There were advantages to Captain rank, even when it was a purely collegial title. My lieutenants clustered together on the same bench as if I was about to start a lesson while Hakram propped himself up on what was likely the teacher's desk: he was the only sergeant in attendance, since this was theoretically a senior officers' meeting. No one objected to his presence, not that I would have given in if they had: I'd come to value his advice too much to care if him being around ruffled a few feathers.

"So," Kilian spoke up, "a five-way melee. Been a while since they organized one of those. I'm guessing it's not a coincidence that

the people in it are the four top companies and little old us?" I'd paid little attention to the lieutenant of the mage line, when I'd first come across her in Ratface's tent, and hadn't see much of her since. Red-haired and pale-skinned, she was an unusual sight this deep in the Wasteland. *Likely there's a story to that.* Setting aside my curiosity for the moment I grimaced, leaning back against the desk with my arms folded over my chest. "There's other forces at play here," I told them. "My name, as you might have guessed, is not Callow."

Pickler cocked her head to the side.

"You're not actually the Duchess of Daoine's secret bastard offspring, are you?" she asked flatly.

"I-" I opened my mouth, closed it and then opened it again. "I genuinely don't know how to respond to that."

"That's the most popular rumour as to why the Blackguards picked you up," Ratface informed me in an irritatingly amused tone. "Ran away to Praes so you could learn war from the best. Very romantic stuff. Until the melee everyone was talking about it."

"I am not, in fact, the hidden heir to the Duchy of Daoine," I replied patiently, rubbing the bridge of my nose to stem the no-doubt oncoming headache.

Ratface cursed under his breath, handing a smug-looking Kilian a handful of silver denarii.

"Told you it was Name stuff," she crowed.

"She doesn't do magic and there's already a Squire and Heiress running around," he argued. "What Name could she possibly have?" I cleared my throat.

"Yeah, funny thing about that," I admitted.

Surprisingly, Nauk was the first one to get it.

"You were there when Lord Black hung the Governor, huh," he grunted. "Well, that explains that."

A ripple of surprise went through the officers. I'd have to remember not to underestimate how sharp the orc lieutenant was just because he was muscled like a bear and liked punching people in the face. It took more than brawn to make his rank.

"Long story short," I continued, "I got baited by Heiress and now we're in this mess. You have my apologies for that."

"Ah, Imperial politics," Ratface murmured. "Someone always gets screwed, and never the one who deserves it."

He got sympathetic looks from the others at that and I made a mental note to get the whole story about why from Hakram later.

My sergeant seemed to have an inside track into every story going on in the College and displayed absolutely no reluctance in feeding me the juiciest morsels.

"Something like that," I agreed. "If Heiress continues to make the same kind of plays she has so far, we might have a company – or more – going for us from the beginning. Girl has deep pockets, and she's not above bribing her way to victory."

Pickler shook her head.

"Won't work," she assessed. "Not here."

I raised an eyebrow. Hopefully she wasn't about to make a speech on the strength of Praesi moral fibre, because so far I'd found

the subject less than impressive.

"She's right," Ratface agreed. "Anyone takes a bribe for this and their career in the Legions is over."

I hadn't considered that, actually. True, my teacher could just put in a quiet word with some of his followers and kill someone's career if he wanted to. Would he? After a heartbeat I decided he would. It'd be seen as Heiress meddling in his backyard, so he'd have to make an example.

"Even then," I finally said, "expect sabotage. She wouldn't have put forward those terms if she didn't think she could affect the odds."

"Eh," Nauk shrugged. "As long as they keep that shit off the battlefield it doesn't matter, does it? We just need to wreck everyone else."

"He's right. This isn't the kind of war game that can be easily stacked, anyhow," Pickler murmured. "Too many people in play, too many different priorities."

The almost adoring look Nauk sent her after the comment forced me to bite down on a smile. I'd never really gotten to see the two of them interacting before but I had no trouble at all believing what Hakram had told me about the large orc having a thing for the goblin lieutenant.

"Which brings me to the point of this little chat," I broke in after having smoothed my face out of any amusement. "There's four other captains participating and I'm going to need anything on them you can give me."

"You sure you need us to tell you anything about the Hellhound?" Kilian mused, dark eyes dancing with amusement. "From what I hear you whipped her pretty bad even without us around."

I smiled but inside I was wondering about the most polite way to nip this in the bud. I didn't want to antagonize one of my senior officers within the three days of my getting a command, but underestimating Juniper was a sure-fire way to get spanked so hard our grandkids would still be feeling the sting.

"She actually played me like a fiddle from start to finish," I admitted, deciding that a little self-deprecation was the way to go. It wasn't like I'd have to lie to get my point across, or even stretch the truth. "If I hadn't blindsided her by having a Name she would have won – and she nearly did anyway."

Ratface cleared his throat, breaking in.

"On the bright side, she'd unlikely to hold a grudge," he mentioned. "She'll want to win this one too badly to focus on us: she'll go for victory, not payback."

"We can focus on Juniper later," I agreed. "I think I've got a decent read on her anyway, it's the other three that are unknowns. I only know the name of the guy in charge of Fox Company – Captain Snatcher, right?"

Pickler nodded.

"He's not going to be an immediate threat," she spoke quietly, "but we can't afford to give him time to dig in. He's turned his entire company into defence specialists – made it mandatory for every single one of his cadets to take the sapper classes."

Defence, huh? Not the flashiest of specialties but it sounded like it could get troublesome. Snatcher might not meet us on an open plain – tough since I had no idea what our battlefield would look like, I had no idea whether we'd even have one of those handy – but recent history was full of stories making it very clear that giving Legion sappers the time to set up surprises always ended nastily for the attacker.

"Anyone assaulting a position he's fortified is going to take brutal losses," Hakram gravelled from my side. "That might be enough to lay the groundwork for cooperation with another company, at least until he's out."

"Something to think about," I mused. "What are we looking at, in terms of allies?"

"Captain Aisha Bishara is our best bet," Ratface contributed immediately, "she runs Wolf Company."

Bishara. I'd heard the name before – hadn't Juniper mentioned it last night? There was a wave of snickering by the others. Even Pickler cracked a smile.

"I bet you'd like to ally with her, all right," Nauk grinned. I raised an eyebrow and sent Hakram a quizzical look.

"They were involved," my sergeant informed me. "She dumped him a few months back and he's still in denial."

"She didn't *dump* me, you green arse," Ratface scowled. "We're just on a break until we're less busy with things."

"Like I said," Hakram continued with a sagely nod. "Still in denial."

"All right, let's table further mockery of Lieutenant Ratface for the moment," I replied with a wry smile. "Who's our last contender?"

"Captain Morok," Kilian spoke up. "Head of Lizard Company. They're second in company rankings, so he'll be wanting the Hellhound's head on a pike."

"They've got a feud running?" I asked my officers.

"Not really," Ratface said. "Well, maybe him – he takes things personally. They're nearly head to head in points, so if he wins this and Juniper loses he'll climb up to first rank. It's his last year before graduation, so he won't be getting another chance."

"That's something I can use," I muttered, passing a hand through my hair.

I'd braided it into a semblance of order this morning, but I might have to cut it soon. It was getting too long, and it was awkward to wear under a legionary helmet. Hakram cleared his throat, which made him sound like he was retching out half a desert.

"Have you decided how many points we're going to be bidding, Captain?" he asked.

I frowned.

"Bidding? That's the first I'm hearing of this."

Kilian folded her hands together. "Instructor Bolade said we're supposed to bid a set amount of points. If we win the melee, we'll gain that many – and if we lose, we'll lose that many."

"An exercise in calculating risk, she called it," Pickler contributed quietly.

I could see how. Company scores, as I understood, were not the affair of a single batch of cadets: they were a legacy inherited by the next one. All scores were set back to zero every decade, but considering the last reset had been two years ago a large bid that failed could haunt a company for a very long time. Nobody wanted to leave a mess like that behind and be remembered as the captain that tried to bite off more than they could chew, screwing over the next two batches of cadets. Which reminded me, I still had no idea what Rat Company's score actually was.

"I know we're in the negatives," I said, "but how far down are we? Seventeen, twenty?"

Ratface closed his eyes, his face flushed.

"Forty-two," he muttered.

I kept my face smooth, almost grateful for the refresher course in doing exactly that the Court had turned out to be. *Forty-two*? A win in the war games was a two point gain, a defeat a two point loss. A draw was a one point gain for the defender and a one point loss for the attacker. I knew Ratface had lost twelve in a row and that Rat Company hadn't been doing well even before that, but I hadn't expected them to be stuck that deep down the well. It meant that even before the Taghreb had been put in charge the company had been losing far, far more often than they won. I could see the embarrassment in the face of my officers, the shame of having let their standing fall so far, but now was not the time for self-recrimination.

"That's a relief," I said.

Ratface blinked. "Pardon?" he asked.

I smiled. "With that kind of a handicap, I feel a lot more comfortable in using some of my more... debatable ideas."

Nauk laughed, apparently delighted at the prospect. Pickler was hard to read, but Kilian looked like she was wondering whether to be insulted or amused.

"Hopefully it doesn't involve jumping logs this time," Hakram muttered. "That hasn't been a winner for me so far."

I shot my sergeant an amused look.

"I'm sure I could find a drill, if you'd like," I mused. "Always be prepared, right?"

"I seem to recall having urgent duties anywhere but here," the tall orc replied. "I really should go see to them."

I snorted. "All right, dismissed. Get the company ready, we don't have a lot of time."

They slid off the bench one by one, saluting before going through the door. Hakram shot me a questioning look, but I gestured for him to go. It was Ratface's shoulder I clasped to hold him back.

"So you're our supply guy," I said, drumming my fingers against the desk, leaning back against it.

Ratface shrugged, his handsome features highlighting the absurdity of his chosen name.

"Something like that," he agreed. "Usually it's the captain's job to handle this stuff, but you have enough on your plate already."

Didn't I just?

"I got a sealed letter from the Headmistress this morning, before I got back to the College. It specifies what quantity of stuff we're allowed to requisition for the melee, with caps for types of goblin munitions," I told him. "I'm considering our options, and you know your way around the College stocks a lot better than I do."

The olive-skinned boy straightened his back, interest piqued.

"You've got something particular in mind?" he asked.

"We'll get to that later," I replied. "When we passed the stocks earlier I noticed that they have a parchment nailed down with what they have available on it. I want you to send someone to copy it. I'm guessing the other captains are doing the same."

The grey-eyed lieutenant raised an eyebrow.

"You want to know what the others will be taking into the melee," he said.

"It should give us an idea of the way they intend to go at it," I acknowledged. "But what I really want to know is if there's a way to get anything without going through the College stocks."

Ratface paused, eyeing me very carefully.

"Not... officially," he said. "But I might know a few people. Why? It'd be a lot of effort, and we can't take more than allowed onto the field. More than that, the others will notice we haven't drawn as much from the stocks as we can – they'll know something is up."

"They will," I noted, "unless we draw up to our limit until the last possible moment. Then we return our surplus, and..."

"They'll go into the match with wrong information about what we're carrying," Ratface finished thoughtfully. "I'll talk with my friends. Get back to me as soon as you have hard numbers."

I nodded.

"Another two things," I added. "Send someone to the College archives. I want everything you have on the old melees. There's also records of more recent games, right?"

Ratface nodded.

"I want a record of every game Juniper was a captain for," I grunted. "As quickly as possible."

"Anything else?" the lieutenant asked drily.

"Well, since you asked," I mused. "I'll need a guide for the day. I have a few people to meet."

—

It seemed that having a vicious sense of humour might be a widespread Praesi trait instead of just my teacher's: the guide Ratface had assigned me was Robber.

"He'll be easy to recognize, Cap," the goblin said. "Just look for the ugliest orc in the training yard, can't miss him."

The grounds we were headed to weren't inside the College, though they were close. It was apparently possible to reserve them for a bell if you signed up with one of the instructors, and aside from First Company the Lizards were the company whose name came most

often on the list.

"Is that so," I said neutrally.

"Now, as is well known," Robber told me in a tone implying he was about to impart a fundamental truth of life, "orcs are the ugliest creatures in Creation as well as the dumbest. But Morok is in a class in and of himself, as is only fitting for a captain. His face has been known to scare goats and make children cry."

"Isn't Hakram one of your friends?" I asked mildly. "And, you know, an orc."

"He's an honorary goblin," the yellow-eyed sergeant replied without missing a beat. "One of these days I'll get around to adopting him into the Rock Breaker tribe as my ugly but still-beloved son."

I must have been a bad person, deep down, because I actually found the little shit kind of funny. Regardless, we'd arrived. A wall about a man's height encircled the yard, though I could hear the sound of metal against metal coming from inside. A pair of human cadets flanked the main entrance, eyeing us distrustfully. Or not actually *us*, I noticed after a moment. They were both glaring at Robber.

"What did you do?" I asked with a sigh.

"Nothing," the goblin sergeant protested.

"I'm sure those rats got into our dormitory all by themselves," a dark-skinned boy said through gritted teeth.

"They must have heard you lot talking shit about Rat Company and gotten confused," the small goblin grinned maliciously. "You know how small-brained creatures get, I'm sure."

The other cadet, Soninke as well, let her hand drop to her sword.

"You utter prick," she snarled. "One of them bit my-"

I cleared my throat, loudly. "Robber, go wait down the street. Cadets, I'm Captain Callow. I'd like to talk with Captain Morok." They exchanged looks. "He said-" the boy started.

"A visit by another Captain qualifies," the girl grunted. "You might have to wait until he's done, though."

I nodded and granted Robber a steady look.

"Try not to get stabbed, Sergeant," I ordered.

I was halfway through the doorway when I heard him call back "no promises!" I bit my cheek so I wouldn't smile. The inside of the yard was beaten earth with weapon racks propped against the walls, though lines of ground chalk had been traced to form some patterns I vaguely recognized from my lectures on the Legions. *Formation drills*. There were benches between the racks and most of the hundred or so legionaries inside were sitting on them, watching two people fight in the middle of the yard.

One was a Taghreb girl, the largest I'd seen since Captain – meaty and thick-shouldered where her people were usually slight of frame. The other, who was currently hammering at her shield with his own, was the ugliest orc I'd ever seen. *Godsdamnit, Robber*. He wasn't wearing his helmet so I could see from the occasional grin that his teeth were yellowish. His eyes were dark and deep-set, and I couldn't help but notice he had a large

brownish mole just above his lip that was almost fascinatingly hideous. Like most orcs Captain Morok was heavily-muscled, but where the likes of Hakram and Nauk were in perfect shape he had something a pot-belly.

Not that it seemed to be hindering him any: he was winning the fight, and pretty handily. Slower than Juniper, I assessed, and his movements were kind of sloppy. But the girl he was fighting looked like she was getting kicked by a horse every time he hit her, and he battered her defence down until she was kneeling in the dirt. There was a cheer when he helped her up afterwards, and I leaned against the wall as another legionary walked up to the pair. They talked, too far away for me to overhear, and Morok glanced in my direction. Spitting on the ground, he shoved his sword and shield in the cadet's hands before beginning to walk towards me.

"Captain fucking Callow, is it?" he leered, passing me by to pick up a water skin off a bench.

Popping off the cork, he took a long swallow – some of the water trickled off his lips onto his chin, mixing with the sweat already there.

"That's me," I agreed.

"You're a skinny thing, for the heiress to Daoine," he snorted.

"This is going to be worse than the goblinfire, isn't it?" I sighed.

The captain's eyes sharpened. "What's that?"

"Nothing," I grunted. "No relation to Duchess Kegan, it's just a rumour."

"Sure it is," he smirked.

It occurred to me then that he was being rude on purpose. Pushing me to see how I'd react, like I'd once done to fighters in the Pit. The thought was comforting: I might have been a long way from home, but some things stayed the same. *And I know how to deal with his type.*

"So, you're Juniper's runner-up," I mused. "Must sting, that she whipped your lot like children when Rat Company pulled off a win."

Morok smiled, showing off yellow but still very sharp fangs.

"Did your little helper Ratface tell you what I did to your company last time we fought?" he asked. "Didn't even use munitions and we still took the fort. First time it ever happened, I'm told."

I now had no problem whatsoever understanding why Robber had flooded their dormitory with disease-carrying rodents. Pushing down the flash of anger, I raised a hand in peace.

"We could do this all day," I acknowledged, "but we've got better things to do."

"I do, anyway," Morok snickered. "So why the fuck are you here, greenie?"

"Because I beat Juniper," I stated flatly. "And she's not the kind of person that takes that lying down."

The other captain wiggled his hairless brows in a thoroughly horrifying gesture.

"You and the Hellhound lying down, now there's an image," he said.

Ripping out one of his teeth and jamming it in that fat ugly mole wouldn't help me, I told myself. It'd be deeply satisfying, but it wouldn't help me.

"You're second in rankings," I gritted out. "If anyone else wants a shot at her, it's you."

Morok shrugged.

"Could be," he said. "What's that got to do with you?"

I narrowed my eyes. He wasn't an idiot – he wouldn't be a close second in company scores if that was the case. But he was deliberately ignoring the offer I'd implied. *Why?* My mind raced, and the answer I settled on had me tightening my lips. *He thinks we'll weaken First Company just enough for him to pick them off afterwards. He's not interested in working together, he just wants us to tear at each other so his position's stronger regardless of the result.* Hellgods, I was sick of being used as a piece in other people's games.

"She'd beat us," I admitted. It was the truth: in a straight fight, First Company would walk over us like we were a freshly-paved Miezana road. "But Morok, here's the thing: if I'm going down, I'm taking everyone else with me."

The fat orc eyed me cautiously.

"I'm not getting into a fight I can't win," I said. "So we'll surrender – and before getting the Hells off that field, I'll clap her on the back and hand her all our munitions."

He only half-managed to suppress his wince. Fighting First Company was one thing, but fighting a First Company at full strength with twice the amount of goblin munitions? There wasn't a force on the field that'd be able to take Juniper then, and we both knew who she'd be headed for.

"It'd take someone with no pride to flop belly-up like that," he growled.

I shrugged.

"I'm Callowan, Morok," I spoke in Kharsum. "I've spent my entire life with an Imperial boot pushing down on my throat. How proud do you really think I am?"

The captain spat again, the fat gob of saliva coming dangerously close to my boots.

"So we ream her together," he conceded in the same tongue. "But that's all, Callow. You're not riding this one on my coattails. The moment we withdraw from the field, the truce is done."

"Wouldn't have it any other way," I agreed.

I offered up my arm. After a moment, he clasped it.

—

I'd learned from the last trip and left Robber at a street corner close by.

"Tea?"

Captain Aisha Bishara was taller than me, I was chagrined to notice. Was it too much to ask to meet at least one military

officer that was shorter? One that wasn't a goblin, anyway.

"Please," I replied.

She was rather pretty, in that way some Taghreb were. With a lovely heart-shaped face, tanned skin and wide dark eyes, I could easily see how she would have caught Ratface's eye. Her hair was cut in short bob, though strictly speaking it was still longer than Legion regulations allowed. *Then again, so's mine.* Like Morok she'd been rather easy to find: it was common knowledge she had a private room set aside in the Sword and Cup for her personal use. The busy tavern wasn't the kind of place I would have expected a girl of her apparently noble origins to adopt as her unofficial headquarters, but then I supposed that if she'd been the kind of person who cared for that stuff she would never have gone to the College in the first place. Aisha poured for both of us, elegantly setting aside the porcelain tea cup when she was done. Hospitality was a point of pride for the Taghreb, I remembered Captain telling me. An old tradition from before the days the first Miezian galley had ever reached the Wasteland's shore, and one that was central to the southern culture in many respects.

"Captain Callow," the dark-eyed girl mused. "So you're Ratface's replacement."

I felt a flicker of unease at that, though it never reached my face. Her involvement with the boy I'd replaced as captain of Rat Company had been mostly a source of amusement so far, but it occurred to me for the first time that she might have an issue with me replacing her – former? – paramour.

"So they keep telling me," I said prudently. "Is it going to be an issue?"

She blinked, though that was the only sign of surprise she gave. That was what I hated about dealing with Praesi: you could dump a bucket full of sheep heads on one's table and you wouldn't get much more than a frown out of them. Trying to get a read on the nobility of the Wasteland was like trying to dry a godsdamned lake.

"Why would – *Hakram*, you gossipy bitch," she cursed in a low voice.

I hid a grin. In other circumstances I might have tried to defend my favourite minion but he really was a gossip. Aisha let out a frustrated sigh.

"Look, Callow," she addressed me flatly. "If he was cut out for that kind of command the Rats wouldn't have lost as much as they did. It was right for him to be replaced. One sin, one grace."

The last four words she'd said with the fervour of a woman at prayer, which would have gotten a pained grimace out of me if I weren't already working on keeping my expression neutral. I was as good as apprenticed to the man who'd introduced that philosophy to the Legions, and that was why I could grasp how utterly terrifying it was. Black had indoctrinated the better part of a generation into thinking that morality was irrelevant to the battlefield: the only things that mattered when the swords came out were victory and defeat. When the next war came, and I

had no doubt that one was coming, there would no blundering generals at the head of the Legions. The coming generation of Evil would not fall apart on its own. *They've been taught that winning matters more than anything else, and they're not above breaking the world if that's the only way to own it.*

"So I've heard," I muttered.

"But I doubt you came to speak about my love life, Callow," Aisha said pleasantly. "What is it you actually want?"

Ah, and now came the tricky part. Time to get my head in the game.

"I'm more interested in talking about what *you* want, Aisha," I replied with a smile. "I've been keeping an eye on the stocks, you see."

"Quick learner," the dark-eyed girl said approvingly. "If you've been doing that, though, you know your company isn't the one I'm after."

Her grabbing as many siege munitions as she could had made that plain enough, true.

"That's what I'm here about, to tell you the truth," I told her, sipping at my tea for the first time. Huh, that was the first time I ever tasted that blend – it wasn't the stuff Praesi usually served. Imported from the Senrima, maybe? That had to cost a fortune. "I'm not keen on letting Snatcher build his walls while the rest of us fight it out."

Aisha smiled.

"Well now, Captain Callow," she purred. "It seems like we have a common interest."

I put down my teacup and my smile broadened.

"Let us talk business, then," I replied in Taghrebi.

—

After touching base with my officers I'd gone back to Black for my usual lesson and stayed around afterwards, electing to remain in the comfortable solar he'd appropriated in central Ater instead of returning to the College.

"I've read through all the reports on games Juniper commanded a company in," I said after a few hours of silence.

"And?"

I sighed, reaching for the cup of wine he'd poured me earlier and taking a sip.

"She doesn't make mistakes," I informed my teacher after swallowing. "Every time she had the necessary information, the calls she made were perfect."

Black seemed more amused by that than sympathetic.

"Maybe I should have made her my Squire then," he spoke airily.

I scowled at the bastard.

"You know people only laugh at your jokes because they're scared of you right?"

He snorted. "I'm assuming you have a point, apart from your apparently upcoming nuptials with Istrid's daughter."

I sneered at him as best I could, though compared to the nobility

he so often had to deal with I was an amateur at the art. I'd never found orcs particularly attractive, which I'd been informed was a shared opinion from their side of the wall.

"How do you beat someone who always makes the right choices?" I finally asked him.

Morok I could deal with – I'd faced men like him before, fought and beat them. Aisha was trickier, but her focus on Snatcher made it possible. And Snatcher? Well, I was keeping quiet on my way to deal with him. Some cards needed to stay face down until the very last moment. But Juniper? I'd tried to come up with something to trump the Hellhound and come up empty.

In a straight-up fight she'd crush me, I knew that much. She had more command experience, a formal education in tactics and she'd shaped First Company into a heavy combat force my own legionaries would be unable to deal with. Which was fine, anyway: I'd never been all that fond of straight-up fights. I could scrap with the best of them, sure, but there was always someone who was bigger or better at taking hits. The problem was that every single dirty trick I'd manage to think of was present in one of those reports, and *she had beaten every single one of them*.

Her only defeat on record was the one I'd inflicted on her, and it had been a fluke. She'd led me around by the nose the whole time and if she'd suspected I had a Name she might very well have managed to beat me even if I'd somehow managed to tap in my power. A power I couldn't even count on, anyway, since I hadn't managed to use my Name since the last game – and not for lack of trying. *Godsdamned Lone Swordsman*.

"Ah," Black hummed. "She's that kind of an opponent, then."

"It's kind of hateful how good she is at this," I admitted.

"I've had Grem One-Eye under my command for twenty years, Catherine," he told me dryly. "I can certainly empathize with the feeling."

That was a pretty jarring admission, coming from a man I'd been told had once toppled the king of one of the Free Cities using only a rowboat, a donkey and a pair of broken shovels. There were stories about Marshall One-Eye too, of course – the Wall had stood firm against the greenskin clans for centuries before he'd somehow managed to take all three of the forts the same night – but they were nothing compared to the outrageous ones they told about the Black Knight. He smiled at me, once again managing to read me like a book despite my best efforts.

"There's always someone better," he said. "Nonetheless, in your particular situation there's one thing that should do the trick." I raised an eyebrow, not savouring the suspense as much as he clearly was.

"Are you going to do that thing where you give me cryptic advice that later comes in useful at a critical moment?" I asked, trying to convey how irritating that particular habit was through my tone.

Black took a sip from his cup, though not quickly enough to hide that he'd actually been a little offended by that. I tried not to be openly amused, though not very hard.

"Well not *now*, I'm not," he muttered. "Fine, you killjoy. Here's your advice: cheat."

I eyed him sceptically from across the table.

"So who do I talk to, to trade you in for a better mentor?" I asked.

"There's no attributed Imperial bureau for uppity Squires, unfortunately," he sneered at me.

I grinned, smothering a laugh, and even the cold fish that was my teacher deigned to offer a smile to the world.

"So," I said after a moment. "Cheating, huh. I don't suppose you'd care to elaborate on that?"

"War games are, ultimately, still games," he murmured over the rim of his cup. "You're still trying to win according to the rules, when you should be trying to win despite them."

I leaned back into my comfortable seat, letting myself enjoy the warmth of the fire and the bellyful of wine as I closed my eyes.

The both of us let silence fall over the room as we descended into our own thoughts. *How do you beat someone you can't beat?* I asked myself. My teacher had long left the room when I felt a savage smile stretch my lips. There was a way, maybe. It was underhanded and unfair, not to mention a little immoral around the edges, but then I was a villain wasn't I?

I supposed it was about time I started acting like one.

[Lobo](#)

I think my favourite part of this – with apologies to the author for passing by all the awesome storytelling – are the quotes at the start of each chapter. They are hilarious.

Extant1

Have to agree, the quotes at the beginning of each chapter are a highlight.

Lankhmar

Pithy quotes are nice but the banter throughout is way more fun. Character development, scene setting and entertaining to read!

Unmaker

Robert Asprin did that for each chapter of the Myth Inc. series and commented later on how it started out fun but then turned into an awful chore.

NerfContessa

And where the last pivot was about cats morality, this one will determine her methods to. Go. About EVERY battle. Cheat. Win. Repeat.

Ben

LOVED IT!!!

Thanks for the chapter, really looking forward to the wargame

Extant1

Typo thread:

"She'd that kind of an opponent, then." She'd -> She's

Evi

An excellent chapter as always!! I love the sense of humor you get when you're a bad person.

Typo I noticed:

In "apart from you apparently upcoming nuptials" the "from you" should probably be changed to "from your"??

Unmaker

More thorough review later, one big point now:

Why aren't the other captains doing diplomacy to start out with also? They have been written with tendencies to attack each other, fine, but there are still opportunities for alliance. In a similar vein, there should be at least one good betrayal worked into the mix to make things interesting, i.e. a hidden alliance.

And one comment:

This will be an interesting test of erraticerrata's writing – I found the last combat believable, which is a nice surprise (too many people who haven't wargamed make simple and obvious mistakes), but a five-way melee when you have to write one of the opponents as perfect is, I think, a little bit more of a challenge.

[erraticerrata](#)

Just because it hasn't been shown "on screen" doesn't mean it's not happening. We haven't even seen the full extent of Catherine's diplomacy. As for betrayal, well, this is Praes. Backstabbing is the national sport.

I wouldn't call Juniper perfect, per se. She uses what she has very well, but the Legions as a military organization have several weaknesses. The fact that First Company is an all-rounder gives her a broader toolbox, but it also means she'll

never be as good in specific domains as a company that specializes in them.

Lankhmar

To be fair, they probably are a bit, but everyone else has an axe to grind and a target to use it on. Plus the top companies are going to be **competitive** and they know the others will want the victory just as much as them. The Rats though can probably be rolled up without too much difficulty – I mean losing a fort without needing goblin munitions when the defenders probably **were** using them....

Plus importantly Juniper isn't perfect, knowledge is the limiting factor and that was probably alluded to for a reason. Can't defend against things you didn't know existed. Or as Black so elegantly put it: cheat 😊

Sean

"After touching base with my officers I'd gone back to Black for my usual lesson and stayed around afterwards, electing to remain in the comfortable solar he'd appropriated in central Ater instead of returning to the College."

In a different font.

DonRamon

So I feel safe assuming Catherine is just going to swarm everybody's bunks with rats and let Bubonic Plague win the grand melee. "How do you beat someone you can't beat?" Plague is a pretty good answer.

But in all seriousness it seems we're building for a reveal that Cheat will be her third aspect as Squire. Seeing as how that was the climax of Amadeus's flashback when he was the Squire. It seems a fundamental aspect of how the Black Knight operates so it would naturally trickle through to his pupil.

Unmaker

Typos:

into out own thoughts
into our own thoughts

had:I'd
had: I'd

There's other forces
There are other forces
(character speech, may be written as intended)

bit down on a smile
bite down on a smile

surefire
sure-fire

There's also records
There are also records
(character speech, may be written as intended)

an fundamental truth
a fundamental truth

I'm
I'm

Robber, got wait
Robber, go wait

"no promises!".
"no promises!"

His eyes dark and deep-set
His eyes were dark and deep-set

it was was common knowledge
it was common knowledge

skeptically
sceptically
(and yes, the proofing language was set to UK English – it is the other way around in American English)

My lieutenants cluttered together
My lieutenants clustered together
(usually)

They've got feud running
They've got a feud running
(usually)

If he was cut out for that
If he were cut out for that
(character speech, may be written as intended)

(the paragraph that starts 'After touching base' is in a different font than the others)

(the colons are back! please try other clause separators – my spell-checker recommended semicolons in several places, but I didn't note those above)

(further) Reactions:

Catherine drank odd-tasting tea from Aisha Bishara. Long-term poison, maybe?

The talk of bidding, which was then not mentioned again, strikes me as a Checkov's gun – Catherine is bound to do something with this later. The implication that you can bid even when negative is interesting.

The idea of skewing what the others expect by what you are carrying seems like a minor advantage at best, unless the switch is so radical that no-one is expecting it. She could then trade with someone, e.g. Aisha, and further skew the results. And how is she paying for the extra supplies? She isn't a wealthy noble.

Catherine may be one of the only people in the empire who dares to casually offend Black. I wonder if that is ever going to come back and bite her – Black might consider reprisal for offense to be a good object lesson for dealing with people who tend to back stab when offended.

I don't fully understand the "win despite the rules" thing, but one really nasty thing Catherine could do is somehow add extra stores to someone's stash, thereby making them disqualified. I would classify that as "winning by unusual application of the rules" though.

Daemion

Poisoned tea? Now that's a paranoid thought. Well done. You'd go far in the Empire. 😊

Is there a limit on how much she can bid? Because losing doesn't change a thing if you're dead last with no chance to recover through conventional means. Bid 200 points, win the melee and come out on top of the rankings.

I agree, the storehouse ploy won't do her all that much good but it might give her a moment of surprise and that might be enough in the right circumstances. Juniper will likely adapt quickly while others might struggle more with it.

She didn't -really- offend him. He also likes her, as much as that counts with a villain like him. Since this happened in private there is no reason for him to do anything about it. It would be different if she sassing him in public but even then it wouldn't be all that bad unless she goes against his authority or something. He's quite rational and abhors waste, he wouldn't just throw her away over hurt feelings.

Catherine is trying to ally herself with everyone else and seems to have managed that. Question is, what other alliances exist, how are they going to interfere and how long is that

whole mess going to last in the heat of battle? It's not enough to win.

Cheating. Well, the poison idea has some merit. If your enemy is too sick to fight, you win by default. It would also be very obvious and I don't think they tolerate being caught while cheating. The trick with the rats (and perhaps spreading diseases that way) is probably not going to work again and it would point towards Rat Company in any case.

If Catherine had money, she could perhaps hire lots of attractive girls (and boys) to seduce her enemies and get them drunk the night before the games start. Hungover soldiers won't be as effective and no one could blame her. Problem is, she doesn't have money. Heiress does though.

Honestly, in Catherine's place I would try to figure out what game Heiress is playing here. Her earlier assumption of Heiress bribing everyone to attack Rat Company was proven false, so what is the game now?

Figure that out and use it for your own purposes, that's the way to victory. Or at least to survival.

What else could you do? If you knew the location beforehand, you could prepare it in advance. Have your defenses ready, lay traps for your enemies, turn the environment into your ally. Find the best location for a base camp, mine it and then make sure Juniper gets there ahead of you. Boom, no more First Company.

It's not very likely though and I don't know if those mines would count against the resources you are permitted to use. Speaking of resources... if you had advanced knowledge of the battlefield, you could have caches of munitions in place before the start, too. Or arrange deliveries from merchants or something like that. Not sure that would work though.

I doubt psychological warfare would work, she isn't scary enough. Even if she was, it would probably unite everyone against her. Does she have the time to find and exploit the weaknesses of her enemies?

Could she mess with the equipment of your enemies? Say... break into the storeroom and replace all munitions with duds? Could she do so without the sappers noticing?

What about their food?

Could she hire mercenaries? Again, doubt that would work and would cost money she doesn't have.

What about magical items? Something to turn invisible perhaps. Or something to create illusions.

Maybe poison gas?

Her Name likely won't help at all and using it isn't considered cheating. Juniper at least will have planned for it.

I'm running out of ideas but I am looking forward to the next chapter. 😊

[erraticerrata](#)

None of the captains have prior knowledge of where the melee will be fought.

Catherine has access to limited resources (essentially her own personal reserves of gold and whatever connections Rat Company members can bring to the table) and magical items are extremely expensive. It takes a very powerful practitioner to make a item that will last for more than a few weeks and people like that tend to charge heavily for their services, when they're for sale at all.

The seduction idea is fairly impractical, considering the forces of the other companies have members from three different species and about twice as many cultures. Taking into consideration different sexual preferences and just being able to find those legionaries to start with, the logistics would be nightmarish to organize – not to mention rather expensive. Besides, few of the captains would allow their soldiers to go out drinking the night before a melee that will define the company scores for the next few years. As for what game Heiress is playing, who knows? Her Name is in direct contrast to Catherine's, more skilled in the subtler applications of power where Squires tend to be very martial.

[erraticerrata](#)

1) The bidding will come back later, yes.

2) She wouldn't be paying for the extra supplies, in his case. What she asked Ratface for was essentially a way to not have the supplies she takes into the game on record – they'd still have to be College property, since taking real goblin munitions into the melee would have her disqualified. And it's a minor advantage, yes, but then those can be used for specific purpose.

3) You'll note Black has a record of associating with people who sass him. Fear only brings you so far when you're trying to foster loyalty in people you're working closely with.

Jerden

Well, I'll eagerly be checking back regularly on this story that was so good that I read the whole thing in a day. The impressive thing about it is that the characters are so likable and complex

despite being ridiculously Evil. I mean, Dread Emperors and Legions of Doom and Evil Architecture?

stevenneiman

"he had something {of} a pot-belly."

I want so much to say stuff, but this is a reread and I don't want to spoil.

arancaytar

I just realized: Is his name both a *Goblins* and an *Order of the Stick* reference?

[Bruno Neves Oliveira \(@Nephandu\)](#)

"Honestly, in Catherine's place I would try to figure out what game Heiress is playing here"

If the Heiress puts up this game, then she has a hint that Catherine isn't going to win, and that means she has rigged it somehow. I would also investigate possible connections between Heiress and the commanders. Doesn't need a bribe if the person is already a friend or ally. That Juniper exchange at the party is a tad suspicious, too.

My opinion about the best way to cheat would be to steal the flags of the opponents before the game begins, and substitute them for fakes. But for that she would have to know where they put the flags before the game. I would ask.. ahem... Scribe. She knows everything. Of course, there must be a way to differ between the real and fake flags, something minute like "fake" written in very small letters somewhere. This cheat seems a bit far-fetched though, since it would be a bit too easy. But I would go for that one...

Another way (non-cheat) would be to make tunnels underground and then raid the place where the enemy is holding their flag, but it is impractical, risky and takes too long.

"he had something {of} a pot-belly"

Pregnancy? This definitely hints at something odd, and it might be related to Heiress somehow.

Rraune

"and hadn't see much of her since."

seen

"On the bright side, she'd unlikely to hold a grudge,""

she's unlikely

"the likes of Hakram and Nauk were in perfect shape he had something a pot-belly"

something of a

Chapter 23: Morok's Plan

"Trust is the victory of sentiment over reason."

-Extract from the personal memoirs of Dread Emperor Terribilis II

The High Lord of Kahtan was a skilled general, Black was willing to admit.

It was unfortunate those skills were being used against him but expecting fairness of the world was to pave a road towards bitterness. The Taghreb aristocrat had learned the correct lesson from the Burning Cliffs: he'd avoided the narrow passes west of Okoro, taking Chancellor's army through the flat expanse of Jugomo's Folly instead. There would be no drowning the superior forces in goblinfire this time, not that he'd expected the trick to work twice. That was fine. Another three clans had been come over to their side in the aftermath of the last victory, bringing them up to a little under four thousand soldiers. Though 'soldiers' was a generous term to use for the newly arrived orcs, truth be told. Unlike Grem's Howling Wolves and Istrid's Red Shields there was little discipline to these fresh arrivals. Grem had told him in private they'd been on the losing side of the constant raids between the Clans. By throwing their lot in with Dread Empress Malicia they thought to better their fortunes. They might just accomplish that, should this day not end in crushing defeat.

"I have them," Warlock laughed suddenly. "A Wolofite warding scheme, really? Nobody's bothered to use those since the Second Crusade. All blood and no finesse."

Wekesa had half a dozen water bowls placed in a loose circle around him, the candles in between casting shaky light on the images that had appeared over the surface of the liquid. Black allowed a sharp smile to flicker across his face. High Lord Mawasi might have been a vigilant man, but his mages were subpar. That would come back to haunt him. Istrid crouched by one of the

bowls, ignoring Warlock's warning look, and squinted at the shapes inside.

"You were right, Grem," she grunted. "They split in four."

One-Eye showed no sign of surprise. Black had yet to see the orc's tactical judgement fail and doubted he ever would.

"Mawasi wants to be able to concentrate his forces easily when they make contact," he gravelled. "If they manage it, we'll lose."

Chancellor had sent twelve thousand killers into the Steppes to end what the nobility had taken to calling the Whore's Rebellion. Not that Malicia was actually with them: she'd gone to Thalassina to talk the ruling High Lady into supporting them.

"None of the commanders will be willing to commit to a real fight until the others are there," Ranker murmured, her slight shape stirring in the shadows. Even young as the goblin was, her face was already creased. "The High Lord will have forbidden it."

Black knuckled an old denarii with Dread Empress Vindictive's face on it, allowing the silver to spin between his fingers.

"They will," the green-eyed man said calmly. "Chancellor made a mistake, when he put a price on my head."

Whoever killed the Black Knight would be granted gold enough for a dozen kings as well as a noble title, such was the word out of Ater. The kind of price men would kill for. The kind of price men would die for – and Black fully intended to see this done.

"We start with the eastern division," he told the others.

One-Eye frowned. "You want to bait them. With what?"

Black finished spinning the coin with a theatrical flick of the wrist, snatching away the silver.

"What they want most, right now," he replied. "My head."

I woke up in Rat Company's dormitory with a gasp. The dream had been weaker than the last, the connection not as deep: the ghostly sensations I'd felt in the wake of the other time were missing. Was it because I'd accidentally weakened my Name, or had it always been supposed to be this way? Not for the first time, I wished Black wasn't so tight-lipped on the subject of Roles. He'd already taught me plenty on the history of Praesi Names and even a few tricks about putting heroes down, but when it came to my own Name he remained frustratingly vague. No doubt there was a reason for it, but that didn't make it any less irritating. The dreams were meant to teach me lessons, that much I'd divined on my own. Drawing from the experiences of my

predecessor, it showed his victories so that I could emulate the ways that had worked and avoid those that hadn't. *So what was this one meant to teach me?* Defeat in detail, but I'd already known that was the only way I could win the melee. That Warlock could break through scrying wards was an interesting tidbit I'd have to ask Lieutenant Kilian about, but I had a feeling it was related to his Name: it was dubious at best my own mages would be able to replicate the feat.

My head, Black had said. That was where the memory had ended. He'd used the greed of his opponents to bait them into making an ill-advised move. While I'd never gone over the battle with my teacher as we'd done for some others, it was one of the most famous engagements of the civil war: the Battle of the Four Defeats was in every history book that covered the time period, often mentioned as the point where the war started to turn in Dread Empress Malicia's favour. So how could I apply this to my situation? I pushed my covers aside and sat up in the cot, surrounded by still-sleeping cadets. Dawn had yet to rise. My mind was still sleep-addled and slow, and as I rubbed my eyes I came to the conclusion that this was *not* something I was going to figure until I was more than half-awake.

I slipped out of the bunk and picked up the pair of trousers I'd lazily dropped next to it last night. Not folding my clothes and neatly sliding them in the exact space assigned for them was technically against Legion regulations, but who was going to report me? Every company had two dorms assigned, one for each gender. Which dorm you got changed according to your ranking, meaning that instead of beds and a nice view Rat Company got cots and a former warehouse that still smelled vaguely like olive oil. The part for women was the same size as the one for men, though it wasn't full. A cursory look at the company's rolls had told me that about four in ten of my soldiers were women, which was actually slightly under the average for the College. Forcing myself awake, I ran a hand along the ugly red scar that the Lone Swordsman had left me. The skin was strangely sensitive, and sometimes it felt like if I exerted myself too much it would open up again. Sighing, I picked up a roll of cloth and bound my chest. Slipping on a loose cloth shirt over it, I left the dorms before I could wake up anyone. My legionaries would need their sleep.

There was a well in the plaza just outside, easy to make out even in the half-light preceding dawn. Someone was already using it, to my surprise. A half-naked Ratface pulled up the bucket and splashed his face with water as I approached. He turned when I got close, nodding a silent greeting to me.

"Do you mind?" I asked, pointing at the bucket and scrupulously not looking at his muscled chest.

It would be inappropriate to ogle one of my subordinates, I reminded myself. Even if it's very easy to imagine rivulets of water running down to...

"Go ahead," he replied after flicking the water off his shoulders.

I sharply put the thoughts aside, rinsing my face as I got back my bearings.

"I got word from my friends," the lieutenant said as he sat on the edge of the well. "We've got the munitions ready for the swap."

"Good," I grunted back. "Did Snatcher finally pick his load?"

There were two official munition templates for a company as taught in the College. The first was commonly known as "Siege", heavy on sharpeners and demolition charges. Aisha had claimed one within hours of the melee was announced. The second was called "Field" and was broader in scope, though it had a proportionally large amount of smokers. Hakram had informed me that several manoeuvres were taught in the classroom related to their use, but I hadn't had the time to look into them. Both Juniper and Morok had gone that route.

"Yeah. He didn't use one of the templates, though," Ratface replied. "Brightsticks and demolition charges, mostly, though there's a few smokers as well. He's up to something."

"He's a goblin," I murmured. "They're always up to something."

He shot me an amused look but said nothing. Silence reigned for a few moments and it was starting to get awkward when I cleared my throat.

"I have a question," I said. "It's a little personal, though, so feel free to tell me to bugger off if you want."

The Taghreb boy raised an eyebrow.

"I'm all ears," he said.

"Why Ratface?" I asked. "I know you get to pick the name you enrol under, but it seems a little..."

"Insulting?" he replied with faint smile. "That's the point."

The lieutenant let out a long breath.

"It's not like half the College doesn't know the story already," he finally spoke. "I'm a bastard, Callow."

I opened my mouth, but he turned sharp eyes in my direction.

"I've already heard all the jokes, so spare me," he said.

"No idea what you're talking about," I lied.

Ratface rolled his eyes, not seeming all that offended.

"My father's one of the lords sworn to Kahtan. Old family, one of the tribes from before the Miezens," he continued. "He married late and slept around before he did – hence my existence."

I grimaced. With a beginning like that it was hard to imagine the story ending well.

"I had a pretty easy childhood, all things considered," he mused. "Not like I ever lacked for anything. But eventually Father married and spawned a legitimate heir."

"And that put you in an awkward position," I murmured.

"My half-sister is ten. Sweet girl, spends a lot of time braiding her pet goat," he shrugged. "I don't blame her for any of this. Father eventually decided to simplify the line of succession and one night I woke up to a knife in my back."

He half-turned, showing me a short crescent mark just a few inches away from his spine.

"The soldier botched the job," he grimaced. "And panicked when I woke up. I managed to get away, stole enough from the vault to buy my way into a caravan and pay for my first year of tuition here."

It would have been indiscreet to ask how he'd paid for the other years, so I held my tongue.

"Doesn't explain why you picked Ratface, though," I pointed out.

The Taghreb smiled coldly.

"I'm told I'm the spitting image of my father at the same age," he replied.

I laughed and he cracked a much warmer smile.

"Come on, Callow," he said. "Let's grab something to eat. Only a few hours left until they want us ready for the game, and I'm not marching to wherever the Hells we're going on an empty stomach."

I stood in the middle of a rocky plain with no recollection of how I'd gotten there.

Dusk was already beginning to darken the sky. Behind me Rat Company was spread out in a marching column – I could see the tracks indicating we'd walked here, but I couldn't remember

actually doing it. To the west the rocks rose in a slope and led into a canyon I could barely make out. There was a forest of tall dragon trees and ferns to the north, getting progressively thicker. The east was closer to what I'd been told to expect of the Wasteland, badlands of silt and shale forming tall rocky outcroppings that cut my line of sight. I felt a little woozy and there was a small cut on the palm of my hand, already mostly healed: I got a strange sensation from it, like a bee buzzing in the back of my head. I took me a moment to recognize the feeling. *Blood magic.* I swore under my breath. *So someone fucked with my memories.* I strode over to my legionaries who were still standing around with blank expressions, though by the time I got close some of them were already snapping out of it. I picked out Hakram near the head of the column – he was still in a trance, so I slapped him across the face. His eyes snapped back into focus and he let out a bestial snarl, the rage only leaving his expression when he realized I was the one standing in front of him.

"Callow?" he gravelled. "Where are we?"

"I have no idea," I admitted. "Do you remember how we got here?"

The tall orc frowned. "No," he replied. "And this thing is itching like you wouldn't believe."

He showed me his forearm, where a small cut had also been made. Not only me, then.

"Last thing I remember is..." he trailed off.

I forced my mind to focus. "When we shed blood on the tablet," I finished.

The College instructors had us assemble in front of a large stone tablet, a different one for every company, and drip a few drops of blood on it. The Headmistress had mentioned it was intended to recreate the fog of war, though she hadn't elaborated. After that it was a blank until just now.

"They sealed our memories," I grunted. "So we don't know where we are or where the other companies are starting from."

"Not entirely true," a voice intervened softly.

Lieutenant Pickler walked up to us, stride unhurried. In her hand she held a rolled up leather scroll with a broken seal. I picked out crossed swords that were the emblem of the College on the wax pieces, something I shouldn't have been able to do in the gloom. *Ah, getting the sight back.* About time my Name started making itself useful again.

"Map?" I asked bluntly.

Pickled nodded. "Our starting position is marked, though only ours."

I accepted the offered scroll and took a look at the inked map. We were in the southernmost part of the area, it seemed. A few miles of flat ground behind us, with the canyon I'd glimpsed earlier snaking its way in an arc towards the northern end. The forest extended for longer than I would have guessed, though eventually it led into another wide plain. The badlands apparently covered the entire eastern half of our battlefield, a labyrinth of hills and depressions. *If one of the companies isn't setting up fortifications somewhere in there as of this moment, I'll eat my helmet.* Hakram leaned over my shoulder to take a look with almost insulting ease. Hadn't one of the Empresses outlawed being taller than her? Maybe it was time to start looking into that.

"We have the worst starting position," my sergeant assessed bluntly.

He was right. No terrain to fortify unless we marched somewhere else in the dark, which would leave us exhausted tomorrow. Any company with a scout on higher ground would be able to find us within moments, and with the way goblins saw in the dark even nightfall wouldn't be enough to cover us. *This doesn't feel like a coincidence,* I grimaced. Could Heiress have meddled with the position I was assigned? I couldn't remember the process at the moment, so it was hard to tell. *Doesn't matter. Can't change the facts now.* It was impossible for me to implement the deals I'd made where we currently were, regardless, which meant we'd have to march past nightfall. *Close to the forest.*

"Lieutenant Pickler, prepare a scouting tenth," I ordered. "We're going north as quickly as we can."

Surprise flickered across the smooth-skinned goblin's face, but her amber eyes remained calm. She saluted and went to attend her troops. Hakram waited until she was gone before clearing his throat.

"Is that wise?" he asked. "We're carrying enough *sudis* to make a fortified camp here. If we carry them through a forced march we'll be slower tomorrow."

The pair of large wooden stakes carried by every one of my legionaries would start weighing heavy on them after a day's march, well-drilled or not. He was correct in that. But we couldn't afford to be where we currently were when dawn came. I took off my helmet and passed a hand through my hair, the pony tail it was kept in unpleasantly soaked with sweat.

"We need to meet up with Morok as quickly as possible," I told him. "Any company but Snatcher's catches us on an open plain and we're done for."

"You sure we can trust him?" my sergeant gravelled. "He's Blackspear Clan, Callow. They've never made a pact they didn't break."

"I wouldn't trust him with a handful of coppers, Hakram," I admitted. "But I've got a decent read on what he wants right now. Not sure I can answer for what he'll be thinking in two days, though."

That was my largest problem at the moment: what I'd planned was time-sensitive. Black had once told me that the great weakness of plans with several stages was the difficulty of getting the timing right. Miss the window of opportunity for one stage due to unexpected complications and the whole thing would come tumbling down. Usually on your head, with the way villain's luck went. *Better to use several small schemes to stack the odds than a single complicated one giving you a marginal chance at victory*, he'd said. Unfortunately, I couldn't afford to play the game that way. The odds were stacked against us too badly for a handful of quick tricks to be able to see the company through the fights. I needed to move quickly enough that the circumstances I'd made my pacts in hadn't changed, because if they did then this was going to turn into an actual melee and Rat Company was basically fucked.

"Get our line moving, Sergeant, we're taking the lead," I ordered. "Double-time. If we want to win this, we're going to have to pay the long price for it."

He frowned. "Long price?"

I blinked in surprise. *Would have thought that one made it across the border.*

"Callowan expression," I explained. "A long price is one you have to keep paying for. People use it to mean paying unpleasant dues."

"Long price, huh," he grunted thoughtfully. "Well it'll be a long night, I'll give you that."

Our pace was slower than I would have liked, and became slower still when night fell.

Hakram kept my line steady while we moved forward in the marching order I'd let him organize. He'd used what was apparently the standard for Legion expeditions in hostile territory: regulars in the front, sappers and mages in the middle, then a line of regulars in the back again. The line behind the second regulars,

Nauk's, was a little different. They were called heavies: their armour was plate rather than chain mail, and their shields much thicker. I'd taken the time yesterday to inquire what the companies we were up against had in their roster, and been left rather troubled by the answers.

Snatcher's Fox Company was in some ways the least dangerous, as almost half of his forces were goblins. Shield wall against shield wall even my soldiers would wreck them. But he had the highest concentration of crossbowmen in the College, and his legionaries always fought from behind fortifications. Aisha and her Wolf Company had borrowed from old Taghreb tactics, putting mobility above all else. They had no heavies at all, but they'd pulled off outrageous victories by hitting the opponent out of nowhere. Lately she'd been drilling her soldiers in siege tactics, determined to take third place in the rankings from Snatcher.

If the Wolves were all about swiftness, then Lizard Company was about brutal, unrelenting might. Morok's entire force, save for a tenth of mages, was made of heavies. He had no legionaries formally trained as sappers, which would have made assaulting fortified positions hard if not for his trump card: he had a tenth of ogres. Fifteen feet tall and clad in a small mountain of steel, they were living battering rams that used massive war hammers. First Company was an all-rounder, the traditional company composition for the College. A line of sappers, a line of mages, two of regulars and one of heavies.

The same as us, except they'd won every battle they'd been in instead of accumulate defeats like Rat Company. Ratface had outright admitted to me that he'd modelled the Rats after Juniper's company, hoping to recapture some of her success. Doomed to failure, that. *It works for Juniper because she's at her most effective when she has a broad toolbox: she uses different lines to solve different problems. But unless you have someone like Juniper giving the orders, all you have is a company with no real strong point. No weak one, either, but that's not enough to beat an opponent that knows what they're doing.*

It was hard to tell how long it took us to make it close to the woods. Several hours, at least but how far past midnight we were I had no idea. Robber spent most of the march scuttling about with our scouts, regularly checking in to tell me there was no sign of anyone else. Perhaps the only saving grace of our starting position was that it would be next to impossible for any of the other captains to ambush us. Plenty of ground to see them coming, and while Robber's tenth was not meant to be a scouting one they'd been used for that purpose often enough to pick up the basics. I had us halt in sight of the canyon's entrance, near the beginning of the forest. My legionaries dropped their packs to

the ground with vocal relief. The break was a short one, though. I had my senior officers in council within moments.

"We should back further away from the canyon," Ratface opened bluntly. "Or else go entirely into it."

"Not inside," Pickler immediately replied. "I could bring that thing down on our heads with an hour's work, and so could most of the other companies. We *should* move, though. Too easy to sneak up on us here."

"Callow ain't an idiot," Nauk grunted. "You got a reason for this, Cap?"

Pickler graced him with a surprised look, apparently unused to disagreement from the large orc.

"We're staying here," I spoke flatly. "This isn't a mistake, I chose this place specifically."

Hakram eyed me carefully.

"We're baiting someone," he guessed.

I nodded. "We're waiting on Morok before moving out, so we'll make camp here. Half-watches for the night. That aside, Kilian, how far up can you shoot a fireball?"

The redhead blinked in surprise. Every mage cadet had to be able to cast two spells by the end of their first year: basic field healing and a standardized fireball. Those that couldn't were forced to drop the mage curriculum and repurpose as regulars. Older years learned more advanced healing, a few different offensive spells and the most talented were even taught to scry, but those two basic spells were the bread and butter of cadet magery.

"That depends," she replied after a moment. "If I tweak the incantation to strengthen momentum over power I might be able to manage five hundred feet. Wouldn't even drop a bird, though – it'd be more warm air and light than fire by that point."

"I'd still look like a fireball, right?" I confirmed.

She nodded.

"Good," I grunted. "Send up three in a row."

There was a moment of utter silence.

"Captain," Ratface started slowly, "with all due respect, that..."

"Every other company will know exactly where we are," Pickler finished.

Nauk barked out a laugh. "Now that's one way to start the party," he growled. "I like it. Come at us, you fuckers. See what happens."

"What will happen is we'll lose," Pickler hissed at him. "She bid eighty-four points – we screw this up and Rat Company will be in the red for the next eight years. What do you think that will do for our careers? I'm not getting posted in Thalassina with the Thirteenth to break up bickering merchants."

I took a deep breath, determined not to lose my temper.

"*Enough*," I Spoke, and they went still as statues. "This isn't the Highest Assembly, and you aren't Proceran princes. If I give an order it will *damn well be obeyed*."

I stared them down.

"Do you understand me?"

Whatever was holding them by the throat let go and I received a handful of shaky nods. Kilian eyed me warily – she was probably the only one with enough arcane education to understand how I'd managed this.

"I know exactly who's coming," I told them. "I've planned for it. We're all tired and tempers are rough, but if we start arguing about everything we're as good as done."

"You're the captain," Ratface murmured.

They saluted and all went to attend their lines except for Kilian, who stepped a few feet away and started muttering under her breath. She snapped a hand upwards and a ball of bright red flame went sailing up in the air. It was hard to judge if it had really gone up to five hundred feet, but it'd clearly be visible from everywhere in the area. Another two followed quickly. After a moment, a single ball of blue flame rose in the distance.

"The canyon," I muttered to myself.

So that was where Morok was. I'd yet to hear Hakram leave, so I wasn't surprised when he cleared his throat.

"You're playing your cards pretty close to the chest, Callow," he gravelled.

What little I had of it, anyway.

"I had a dream, this morning," I told him instead of a true reply.

The orc shot me a quizzical look.

"So?"

"It was trying to teach me a lesson," I mused. "I think I might be getting it, now."

"Anything useful?" he asked curiously.

"If we're to win this," I said, "it won't be by playing the game. It's the players I need to play."

"I take it that made sense in your head," he snorted, flashing me his fangs in a small smile.

"Something like that," I agreed. "Before you get to work, I need you to tell two things to Lieutenant Pickler."

He leaned in close.

I only managed to grab a few hours of sleep before dawn came. Rat Company had formed a square of jutting spikes around its camp, sharp end outwards. There was a large entrance facing the canyon for quick deployment and two smaller ones on the adjacent sides. I'd somehow managed to miss a rock under my bedroll and it had dug into my back the whole time, so it was with a bruised back that I put my armour back on after Robber woke me.

"They're here," he told me, biting into a piece of jerky.

"The entire company?" I asked, tightening my sword belt.

"That's my guess," he replied. "They're not deployed in a way that makes it easy to count them."

I nodded, and to my mild irritation he lingered.

"We're playing with fire, aren't we?" he grinned. "Knew you'd make this interesting."

"Don't you have things to do, Sergeant?" I grunted.

"Eh, nothing urgent," he dismissed. "Pickler's sorry, by the way."

That got my attention. I glanced at him and for once his face was lacking the usual malicious grin.

"She's not the kind of person who apologizes," he continued, "but she knows she stepped out of line. After you made us bury the stuff, she got the same look on her face she usually makes when she screws up a weapon design."

I passed a hand through my hair, putting the pony tail into a semblance of order.

"I know I'm asking the company to take a lot on faith," I finally said. "I'm not going to hold grudges over a moment of doubt, as long as it doesn't happen again."

"Must be that soft Callowan upbringing that makes you so forgiving. No wonder you lot got conquered," the little shit grinned. "I'll pass the message along."

I flipped him the finger and he scuttled off after a horribly sloppy salute. Inexplicably, I was now in a better mood. In the distance I could see Lizard Company kicking up a trail of dust as they marched out from the canyon. I noted with approval that, now that Morok was less than half a mile away, all my legionaries were up. The last ones to wake were hurrying to put on their armour. I fished out some dried and salted meat from my pack, taking a bite with distaste. *Goat jerky. Ugh.* I left my shield with my cot, strolling towards the middle of the camp: there was slight rise there, and I claimed a flat rock for my throne. Eventually Ratface made his way to me. Without a word, he offered me a water skin: after last night's confrontation, it felt like something a peace offering. I took it without comment and gulped down some tepid water. We let a long while pass in silence, my soldiers slowly assembling in ranks as Morok's company marched towards us. In the light of day, it was easier to make out our surroundings. We were a little closer to the forest than I would have liked, though it was too late to do anything about it now. Ratface eyed Lizard Company's ranks as they came closer, his face settling into a frown.

"He's got his ogre tenth right behind his first line," he spoke with a frown. "That's not standard practice."

I handed him back his water skin.

"No, it isn't," I agreed.

Two hundred feet away Lizard Company paused, its lizard skull standard coming up to the front. And then, without so much as a sound of warning, they charged forward. A stir went through my soldiers, a few of them cursing out loud.

"The fucker's betraying us," Ratface bit out. "On the *first day*? Who even does that?"

"He got this look on his face, when I threatened to hand our munitions over to Juniper," I informed the lieutenant absent-mindedly. "Tried to hide it, but I've been dealing with tricky sorts lately. He was thinking about what he could do if he had them."

Kilian's line was standing in front of the entrance about to get charged, her ten mages standing behind the ten soldiers with the oversized shield that served as their mobile cover.

"You're being very calm about this," Ratface accused.

Less than a hundred yards now.

"I'd be hypocritical of me to get angry about him betraying us," I mused.

I tore off a chunk of jerky and swallowed it. Fifty yards. Too late for Morok to pull out.

"After all," I continued, "I betrayed him first."

The moment before the vanguard of Lizard Company stepped foot into our camp, a hundred voices howling like wolves sounded from the woods. Armour shining bright in the morning sun, Wolf Company charged out of cover right into Morok's flank.

Ben

Thanks for the chapters

nirg

Predictable but still awesome 🤔

daniel73

Great chapter and a superb ending. This looks like it's going well so far but she will still have 2 company's to fight after this.

[erraticerrata](#)

Three companies, actually. There can only be one winner, alliance or not.

George

I think she's about to blow up goblin munitions between both of those two companies

stevenneiman

I think the assumption was that Wolf would be left to fend for themselves, leaving the winner there too weak to fight and giving Rat three teams worth of supplies. First and Fox are going to have to decide whether to fight each other or the strengthened Rat after that, leaving Rat with an edge.

Evi

Would it be bad of me to say this? But I'm saying it anyway, so sorry in advance.

"Just according to keikaku."(Keikaku means plan)

Though I do hope Catherine gets a better ending than the Light Yagami. I like her more for one.

George

I don't think this gambit is quite on the level of those done in Death Note; she's left things looser so that failure whether in totality or in a few aspects of the plan doesn't destroy or cripple her.

Alegio

Damn, I would be lying if I told yah I saw that ending coming.

Still loving this novel, the best by far

Bart

I sure wish there was a "notify me when a new post is made"option as well as the "notify me when someone comments" option that's already here.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

In the entire toolbox google gave us, you're seriously complaining that something isn't possible? I'm calling BS on that. Really you're complaining that what you want isn't one-click easy. I know for a fact it shouldn't be difficult if you're even a little creative. You might even come up with something better than the workaround I have in mind.

Bart

How passive-aggressive is that? 1) I think you meant WordPress, not Google. 2) If you have a solution to the problem I expressed, feel free to share it instead of mentioning offhand that you have a workaround in mind.

kelioez

I love how u instantly came back to reply even 2 years later

Unmaker

Typos:

full.A
full. A

I'm
I'm

showed my his forearm
showed me his forearm

as quick as we can
as quickly as we can
(character speech, may be written as intended)

Miss the window of opportunity for one stage due to unexpected complications and the whole thing came tumbling down.
(verb tense)
would come tumbling

Unfortunately,I
Unfortunately, I

hammers.First
hammers. First

I we're to win this
If we're to win this

Though soldiers was a generous term to use for the newly arrived orcs, truth be told.
Though 'soldiers' was a generous term to use for the newly arrived orcs, truth be told.

Chancellor had sent twelve thousand killers into the Steppes to end what the called the nobility had taken to calling the Whore's Rebellion.
(extra words)
Chancellor had sent twelve thousand killers into the Steppes to end what the nobility had taken to calling the Whore's Rebellion.

I woke up in Rat Company's dormitory with a gasp.
(sentence is OK, missing a paragraph spacing afterward)

in the wake the other time
in the wake of the other time

So how could -I- apply this to my situation?

To the west the rocks rose in a slope and led into a canyon I could barely make out.
(this is not clear construction – the direction led to a canyon, but the actual noun of the sentence is 'rocks'; therefore clearer as)
To the west rocks rose in a slope; beyond that, there was a canyon I could barely make out.

(they state they are going north, but the canyon is to the west; if they went to the north mouth of the canyon, they actually ended up going around Morok's forces while marching; not impossible, but a bit odd – why not use the nearer canyon mouth)

I noted with approval that now that Morok was less than half a mile away all my legionaries were up
(reads better if the clause is set off fully with commas)
I noted with approval that, now that Morok was less than half a mile away, all my legionaries were up

Reactions:

(I am late commenting. Busy time right now.)

So, we know some more now – Malicia was a concubine who tried to ascend with Black's help and Chancellor rebelled. That would be why the Name Chancellor is forbidden.

"A cursory look at the company's rolls had told me that about four in ten of my soldiers were women, which was actually slightly under the average for the College."
That is REALLY high for almost any armed forces in history, integrated or not. The only way that makes sense is if the previous several generations spent lots of time removing half or more of the available men. That has happened in history – France had it happen around WWI and WWII.

Note that Catherine is bisexual, or at least likes to look at both sexes. I wonder how common and how well-accepted that is.

"The College instructors had us assemble in front of a large stone tablet, a different one for every company, and drip a few drops of blood on it."
So, were the instructors bought off, the tablets altered, or did someone screw with them outside of that? That is unlikely to be the only trick Heiress pulled, though.

"We have the worst starting position,"
Heiress again, luck of the draw, or assigned based on rank?

[erraticerrata](#)

Keep in mind that the War College is for officers, not grunts, and is rather costly to attend. The gender ratio in the actual Legions is different, though still higher than in any RL military organization I've heard of. There's background reasons for the College ratio, of course. Praesi nobles usually see the College as a good way to unload both sons and daughters not in line to inherit. Orcs have very little sexual dimorphism and who raises the offspring is decided by a ritual that doesn't particularly favour either gender. Ironically it's the goblins, the only outright matriarchal culture in Praes, who enrol the

fewest female cadets. Service in the Legions disqualifies from ever becoming a Matron, and there's a cultural bias for male goblins to automatically obey older female goblins regardless of rank – which can be a bother, in a military setting.

stevenneiman

"Another three clans had [been] come over to their side"

I loved the line about who betrayed who first.

stevenneiman

"Another three clans had [been] come over to their side"

""Enough," I Spoke" Enough should be in bold rather than italics
"it felt like something {of} a peace offering."

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Ah, bolding 'Enough' would have gone a long way in increasing
vlarit

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

*clarity

dalek955

Two hundred [yards] away, Lizard Company paused

In Euclidian space, it would be tricky for them to form up two
hundred feet away and then charge through the hundred-yard
line.

The Kakuna Bandit

Hah, *wolf* company charged into Morok's *flank*
get it, like, a wolf chasing prey
haha
good pun haha

victor janus

"four in ten of my soldiers were women, which was actually
slightly under the average for the College."

That's uh... I really hope that's just an officer rating. Ok look
equality is nice but you have to understand lack of sexism as a
good thing is a really new thing, and unlike racism that's less
about enlightenment and more about the fact that no major nation
has been at war for a long time. I mean sure Names are exempt
you're not going to stop a tank from fighting just because it
identifies as female, but you have to understand why every single
major civilization practiced sexism and war torn nations still
are. Take the following scenario three tribes of 150 people(half

men and women) hate each other. One uses only male warriors, one is equalitarian, and one are amazons that use only women as warriors. These tribes send out 50 warriors as they feel if they send less they will be wiped out. The war is the bloodiest they have ever had and all 50 of all the warriors die. The villages are shocked by this blood shed, and in their hearts they remember those who did this to them. Life continues on they have children in a spree of happy to be alive sex(say two per mother. one boy and one girl). Village A has 150 children, village B has 100 children, village C has 50 children. They grow up listening to the stories and hunger for revenge. war comes again, but B and C find themselves overwhelmed and are forced to work together to destroy A's army After the war B and C huddle together their villages devastated, but not so for A they are just mad and waiting for the next war. And so in three generations the practice of women warriors was wiped from the earth. Pretty much the empire is doomed if they practice such bad military doctrine, and this is after the reforms? I thought the bad guys were smart and wanted victory and yet they can't do math... so as I said I hope women are only allowed to apply for officer school if they want to join the army.

victor janus

wait never mind saw the explanation in the comments. As long as it's just the officer it fine

Poetically Psychotic

I think you're seriously overestimating the percent of people fighting in the army, much less the percent actually dying. In a reserve force like the Legions, the vast majority of people are not going to be members, and almost no-one is going to be dying. Even in war time, a force is typically routed after losing only a fraction of its troops (though admittedly they can regroup later and keep fighting); the amount of women dying even in a 50% female army would be insufficient to seriously hurt the reproductive capacity of the society. Besides, your example assumes that Society A is either getting extra men to have kids with from *somewhere* or that they are practicing polygamy, neither of which appears to be the norm in the Dread Empire; even if the army is totally wiped out, the reproductive rate of the survivors would be more dependent on the less common gender after the war (so the society with the 50% army would, barring other factors, have a *higher* reproductive rate than one that had an army with more men than women, which now has more women than men left in the society as a whole, and in your example, Society A would go extinct at the same time as Society C, leaving the egalitarian society the only survivors).

georgelanetz

I'm a little bit tired of mentions of her touching her hair. In some books, it's white knuckles, in MoL it's endless scowling, here it's her hand put through her hair. Is it the same for the next five books?

On the other side – this is the only problem I have with this book, I'm just more motivated to complain now and praise when I'll finish it. Thanks a lot, I do enjoy it a lot!

Chapter 24: Aisha's Plan

"Grand designs in war are a thing of vanity. Victory goes to the general that blunders the least."

– Theodosius the Unconquered, Tyrant of Helike

I'd known from the beginning that the ogres would be the biggest problem. No pun intended. I rather loathed puns, actually. The main two military treatises I'd sunk my teeth into were the *Ars Tactica* and the *Praecepta Militaria*, though the smaller *Commentaries on the Campaigns of Dread Emperor Terribilis the Second* had been a lot more interesting – and useful – to read. None of the three went into how to deal with a tenth of heavily armoured ogres, though. Good ol' Terribilis had subdued a band of giants when dismantling the crusader kingdoms, but unlike him I couldn't afford to put a small city to the flame and shoot anything that crawled out.

I'd asked Black to find me some of the manuals used under the Kingdom of Callow, but he'd told me that there was no equivalent to the War College in my homeland. Nobles who'd wanted their children to have a military education either had them join a chivalric order or serve in the Order of the White Hand for a few years. Given that the Order had been wiped out with remarkable thoroughness and that chivalric orders were now illegal in Callow, there would be no help coming from that front.

So I'd looked into Juniper's old games. She'd beat Morok every time they fought, after all, and while Rat Company wouldn't be anywhere as smooth in executing her techniques we theoretically had the right tools to use them. In short, she outmanoeuvred the tenth. She'd systematically baited Morok into grounds she'd prepared to turn the size of the ogres into a disadvantage or outright mined them with demolition charges. With the tenth dispersed or knocked down, she had her mage line concentrate fire on individuals until they were down for the count. The fact that

the Hellhound had never used sharpeners on the ogres indicated they probably wouldn't be effective, something I'd taken heed of.

That was one of the two reasons that, officially speaking, Rat Company had gone with the Siege template. Morok had been until recently under the impression that his betrayal would come as a surprise to me. *So he won't be expecting the main entrance to be mined.* That the other munitions we could supposedly bring to bear against him would be ineffective had just been additional bait for him to betray us. The second reason was how I'd managed to have the hundred Wolf Company legionaries running down the hill to flank Lizards. Going with Siege was as good as declaring my intention to go after Snatcher and his fortifications – which had been one of the main conditions Bishara had extracted in exchange for her help against Morok. The other condition was much more costly, but I wouldn't have to worry about that for a while yet.

"Ratface," I spoke. "Go back to your line. Things are about to get interesting."

The Taghreb lieutenant nodded and picked up his shield before leaving, rolling his shoulder to stretch it out. My eyes remained on the skirmish. I'd had Pickler bury demolition charges under the entrance Morok had his company charging through. Though I'd been worried he'd send more expendable troops in first after being burned by Juniper in a similar manner – as he was currently doing with a forward tenth of heavies – she'd told me it wouldn't be an issue. She'd fiddled with the triggers so that they wouldn't blow unless a large enough weight pressed down on them: unless she'd made a mistake, the charges should ignore the first ten heavies entirely. With a frown I watched the ten heavily armoured legionaries slow as they got to the entrance, sheathe their swords and reach for- I got to my feet.

"KILIAN," I yelled out. "FIRE, NOW!"

I saw the redheaded lieutenant glance in my direction, my voice managing to carry over even from where I stood, but by the time she started incanting it was too late. Morok's heavies sent sharpeners rolling over the mined grounds, the clay balls detonating a moment later and triggering our demolition charges. *Fuck.* Ten fireballs sailed right into the ensuing cloud of dust and rock in a mocking aftermath: it was impossible to tell if they'd hit anything. More importantly, the ogre tenth had a free path right into my mages. Aside from my sappers they by far my most vulnerable line. *And if the healers get taken out there's no one to get my wounded back on their feet.*

"Captain," a voice came from behind me. "Orders?"

Hakram and the rest our line had come to stand behind me while I was distracted. The tall orc looked unworried even though our

first line of defence had just disappeared into literal smoke. His calm soothed my own nerves and I took a deep breath.

"Have Pickler drown the gap in smokers," I ordered after a heartbeat. "Are Ratface and Nauk in position?"

Getting my legionaries in fighting order without them looking like they were in fighting order had been a tricky proposition. I had Ratface's line to the left of the main entrance and Nauk's to the right, hopefully read to close like a jaw on the first men of Lizard Company to pass through. Kilian and her mages were right in front of the enemy, with Pickler's line close behind them. My own men I'd held back as a reserve to plug gaps or use a possible flanking force, should an opportunity present itself.

"They're ready," my sergeant gravelled after sending off a messenger to Pickler.

In the distance I saw the forward heavies charge out of the smoke, unharmed. Godsdamnit, couldn't Kilian have taken out at least one?

"Have them form a wedge with the point facing us," I ordered. "Quick."

That should leave a broad enough kill zone that Kilian's mages could do damage by continuously pouring flames into the melee. A dozen smokers fell into the gap just as I finished speaking, obscuring the visibility that had just begun to clear. Looking outside the boundaries of my own camp just as Morok's heavies rammed themselves into Ratface's line, I saw that Aisha's men were finally about to hit Lizard Company's left flank. Mages in the back of her company threw fireballs into the enemy a heartbeat before the lines made contact, Wolf Company's regulars pouring into the gaps the impacts created to pry open the formation.

Morok was redeploying his company to secure his left, a line hurriedly moving to extend the flank so that Aisha couldn't just encircle him. *Come on, you ugly bastard. You know if Aisha manages to go around that you're done. Sent the ogres in to make a dent in her troops.* The ogres emerged from the smoke, hammers held high. I closed my eyes. What was his play here? He wasn't committing enough men to do more than hold Wolf Company for a few moments. So he was pushing straight into us. Why? He was an asshole, not an idiot. He wouldn't go for vengeance in the middle of a melee.

"He wants the camp, Captain," Hakram suddenly said. "He's trying to push us out and use the fortifications to hold off Wolf Company."

I opened my eyes.

"Ready our line," I grimaced. "If it goes sour for them, we're going in."

Already Ratface's line was having trouble dealing with the tenth of heavies: they weren't losing ground, but they weren't pushing them back either. A flurry of fireballs hit the ogres as they strode forward, but it barely slowed them – Kilian hadn't thought to concentrate on a single target. The flames slid off the plate and then the ogres impacted into Nauk's heavies. *Oh, Weeping Heavens*. Back at the orphanage, I'd once seen a girl drop a heated plate on a block of butter. Seeing the ogres crumple the first rank of heavies with the initial swing was eerily reminiscent of that. Shields broke, legionaries fell and the only reason they were stopped was because the second rank heavies got in close. I saw Nauk take a swing straight in the shield arm and though I couldn't actually hear the bones break from where I stood my imagination provided a vivid approximate. The lieutenant fell to the ground, dropping his shield, but that was when things got... weird. The large orc spasmed once, then twice, and I heard Hakram breathe in sharply.

"Sergeant," I began, "what's-"

Nauk let out a blood curling scream and rose to his feet. I'd once seen him take on two legionaries with his bare hands but there'd been a degree of control to him back then, for all his roaring. There was no trace of that now. He jumped on the back of the ogre who'd struck him, abandoning his weapon, and started hammering into the legionary's helmet with his bare hands. The first strike saw the hands turn into a bloodied mess and it got worse from there.

"What the actual fuck," I said in a faint tone.

"You ever wonder why Nauk was never in the running for captain?" Hakram said quietly. "That's why. He's got the Red Rage."

"He's a berserker?" I asked.

My sergeant shook his head. "Berserkers can... well, not control it but direct it at least. He can't. He'll keep fighting everything until he drops, friend or foe."

As if to drive the point home Nauk's armoured boot impacted with the face of one of his own soldiers, sending him sprawling. His line was on the verge of collapse and already more heavies were nearing the camp, aiming to reinforce the tenth locking down my left flank.

"We performed a lot better against Juniper's soldiers," I frowned. "Ratface shouldn't be doing this badly."

"They're not underestimating us anymore, Captain," Hakram gravelled. "You took the fort with even numbers, last game. People took notice. They're taking us seriously now."

"Balls," I said, feelingly. "Damage control time. We're going to back up Nauk."

The greenskin sergeant barked out orders and we set to a brisk walk. Pickler's line parted for us silently and I allowed my line to pull a little ahead as I stopped for a word with the lieutenant.

"Captain," the goblin grimaced. "I should have taken sharpeners into consideration. This is my mistake."

"We can do the blame game after this is done," I grunted back. "Pull out all the stops, Pickler. I want brightsticks and sharpeners in the lot of them as soon as they fill the wedge. Wait for my signal."

She nodded. I felt Robber sneaking behind me before I saw him, turning to fix the diminutive goblin with a steady look. He threw me a sharper and I caught the clay ball with my free hand, raising an eyebrow.

"If you get one under the armour they'll take one of the big guys out," he grinned. "Go do your thing, Captain. I'm looking forward to the chaos."

Of course he was. I was half-tempted to throw the thing right at his head, but now was not the moment to be petulant. I put a spring to my step and caught up with my line just as they got to Nauk's. I slipped my way through one of the gaps in the ranks right before my regulars filled it, heading straight for the nearest ogre. Was that lieutenant's stripes I saw on the shoulder? As usual, luck was enjoying pissing all over my day. *All right, Catherine. This is just like sparring with Captain, if she was half a dozen feet taller and intent on really beating me up.* The gargantuan mountain of steel moved in my direction, face impossible to see under the close plate helm. The ogre struck with vicious speed, hammer coming for my shoulder in the blink of an eye. Calmly, carefully, I took a half-step back out of range. My opponent slowed the swing, getting closer, and that was when I pushed forward. All in the timing, the way Black had taught me. I slipped inside my enemy's guard and slapped the flat of my blade into the ogre's helm. It bounced off with a sharp ring.

Well, that was useless. I danced around a kick that would have sent me sprawling, trying to get a hit in on the knee joint but being forced to back away by an awkward swing of the hammer. Given the size of the thing, even a weak hit would have enough weight to it to mess me up. My fingers tightened against the sharper Robber had given me as I tried to circle around the ogre,

dodging another hammer stroke by the skin of my teeth. The malevolent little sergeant hadn't given me anything to light it with, I suddenly realized. Not that I had a free hand to use even if he had. *Robber, you asshole.* I snuck a look back at my line and saw they were somehow managing to hold back the enemy advance, swarming the ogres with numbers and taking hard losses as they did. Ahead of me Kilian's mages were holding off down enemy advance with a near-continuous stream of fireballs but Morok's heavies were forming into a shield wall and when they managed that would be the end of that. Regulars wouldn't be able to power through a sorcery barrage, but heavies certainly would.

My inattention was rewarded by the ogre's hammer clipping my shoulder. It was a glancing hit at best, but it still spun me about like a leaf. I managed to stay on my feet but a moment later I got kicked in the chest. I fell on my knees and absently wished I hadn't just eaten, because that jerky was doing its level best to resurface. *Did I just feel the chain mail loosen?*

"All right," I croaked out as I pushed myself back to my feet. "That's enough."

The ogre huffed out a metallic laugh. Snatching up the sharper I'd dropped after the kick, I ran in my opponent's direction. *Come on, these are pretty horrible odds. Doesn't it count as a Struggle?* My Name stirred slightly, but there was no sudden influx of power. Fine, a trickle was all I needed anyway. Gritting my teeth, I watched the hammer rise and counted down. One, two, three steps and – there it went. Apparently done playing, the ogre swung down in a stroke that would have shattered my shoulders in several smaller and painful bone shards had it landed. Too slow, though. The hammer struck the ground a little to my right and I jumped onto the ogre's chest, ramming the sharper into the joint between the neck and the shoulder. Hanging on for dear life I forcefully took hold of that small thread of power my Name had granted me, forcefully pushing it into my hand. My fingers crackled with pitch black energy and I punched the sharper as hard as I could.

This was, admittedly, not the most elegant plan I'd come up with.

The impact blew me clean off the ogre. I landed painfully in the dust, breath pushed out of my stomach and my ears ringing. I grinned when I felt the ground shake, opening my eyes to the sight of my toppled opponent. *That's going to be one nasty concussion, my friend, but that's what healers are for.* I got to my feet and coughed out a bit of dust, taking a bleary look around. It seemed I'd landed somewhere around the wedge. I glanced to my left and my blood ran cold. I *had* landed in the wedge, I realized. In the middle. Just before Morok's heavies pushed in with their shield wall.

"That's their Captain," I heard a girl's voice call out from the enemy ranks. "She's on the priority target list."

Rat Company replied by sending a volley of fireballs right into the shield wall, though they were noticeably less bright than they'd been at the beginning of the fight. My mages were getting tired. Spitting out a bit of stone stuck in my mouth, I wiped my lips and took a look at the rest of the fight. The ogre tenth was on its last legs, overwhelmed by numbers and the lack of back-up Kilian had managed to accomplish. Two of them were still fighting but my legionaries and Nauk's were piling up on them so much they could hardly move. I just needed to distract the enemy long enough for them to be taken out.

"Gods, this feels unpleasantly heroic," I muttered to myself.

I took a deep breath and limbered my fingers.

"CAPTAIN MOROK," I called out. "COME OUT, YOU WRETCH. YOU AND ME, OUT HERE ON THE FIELD."

There was a heartbeat of silence.

"She *did* punch a sharper," someone mused out loud. "That'd scramble anyone's brains."

I shot the Soninke boy in question an offended look. There was no need to get personal about this. I snuck another look at the melee to my left – one ogre remaining now, and it was in trouble. *Come on, Morok. You're one of the proud ones. You can still salvage how this looks by taking me out.*

"LIZARD COMPANY, FORWARD," the captain in question barked.

And the bait had failed. Godsdamnit, I hated it when my enemies were competent. It made everything so complicated. I took a moment to look suitably defiant at the enemy before praying Pickler was close enough to hear me over the sound of the fighting.

"PICKLER, NOW," I yelled.

For a moment nothing happened and I looked like a complete imbecile, standing in front of about thirty enemy heavies with my sword pointed forward. Then a dozen clay cylinders arced above me, coming to roll at the feet of Morok's forward line. I closed my eyes right before the blinding light hit, turning a clean pair of heels to the enemy and getting the Hells out of there before they could run me down. By the time I'd gotten back to my line, the last ogre was down and Pickler's sappers had tossed a round of sharpeners into the enemy ranks. It made me wince to think that we'd wasted at least half of our munitions on what had been supposed to be our easiest battle, but there was no helping it.

Lizard Company would not have been so high in the rankings if they were easy to deal with. I saw Hakram drag back an unconscious Nauk behind our lines and drop him none too gently, turning to salute me when he noticed my return.

"How are we doing, sergeant?" I panted out, sheathing my sword as I took cover behind my assembling men.

"Between the rest of the heavies and our own cadets capable of fighting, we make up most of a line," he gravelled.

That barely qualified as good news, but I'd still take it. I pushed back a sweaty lock of hair that had slipped out from under my helmet.

"Send a messenger to Kilian," I told my sergeant. "I want her tenth of shields sent to back up Ratface. We need to start pushing them out of camp."

"I'll see to it. But it might not even be necessary, Captain," the tall orc grinned savagely. "Smoke's clearing out. Look at what Bishara's up to."

I did. The handful of smokers I'd ordered thrown into the entrance at the beginning of the battle had finally started to disperse. Wolf Company had slipped around Morok's extended flank with almost contemptuous ease, flipping an entire line and using the momentum to drive the other one right into the stakes surrounding my camp. Lizard Company had sent another tenth into the mess to try to salvage it, but it was already collapsing under the pressure. In a matter of moments the Wolves would be hitting the back of Morok's heavies right as they tried pushing their way through my wedge.

"There's no way he can swing this," I realized. "He needs to pull back or he's out of the game."

The conditions for the elimination of a company were very straightforward: either every officer in a company of lieutenant rank and above had to be incapacitated, or else eight soldiers out of ten in the company. Rat Company had, by the skin of its teeth, managed to take out a line. Aisha's legionaries had done the same to another two lines and were getting started on a third. If Morok didn't pull out now, the Lizards he risked elimination by numbers. Which was exactly my intention, actually. The number of prisoners and enemy wounded this skirmish would result in was so large that the manpower cost of keeping an eye on them would be crippling. We wouldn't be able to move that many people quickly or easily, and we didn't have a defensible stronghold where we could put them away. The Lizards needed to be broken here and now, or they'd leave a bloody mess for me to deal with.

Morok seemed to agreed with my assessment. His companu sounded the retreat, the tenth Ratface was still struggling with pulling out in good order. Immediately I ordered my own line to push forward, signalling for the former captain's to do the same. The grounds were uneven where the demolition charges had been blown, but both lines formed in the best order they could. We held position at the mouth of the entrance as Wolf Company moved to complete their encirclement. *Only a matter of time now.* There was a sudden flash of lightning from Aisha's mage line and a bolt struck in the middle of the enemy's formation. I couldn't see who they'd hit and the effort seemed something of a waste, but a few heartbeats later thunder rumbled in the distance. Lizard Company's standard appeared as a giant image in the sky, a red streak across it. *Eliminated. She must have aimed for Morok.*

I raised my sword in victory, my company cheering behind me.

Clean up was as much work as the actual fighting.

Legionaries from both victorious companies were picking through the packs of the vanquished one, putting aside the goblin munitions in a great pile we'd distribute later. Aisha had agreed on splitting them half and half when we'd struck our deal, though it had taken a great deal of wheedling on my part. She'd given in in the end, though, since if the both of us were to assault Snatcher's fortifications then I could hardly be expected to send my cadets into the breach with depleted stores. Mages from all companies were already at work on the wounded, the Rats and Wolves because we'd need to get moving before too long and the Lizards because they needed to be able to march to their pick up point before being escorted back to Ater. The mood was festive on the winning side, legionaries trading good-natured jibes and boasts as I finished taking casualty reports from my lieutenants.

The butcher's bill wasn't as bad as it could have been: Ratface had played it out conservatively and barely had a handful of wounded to his name. Nauk's line had been the most brutally hit and the orc lieutenant was still out of it. Sergeant Nilin was handling his duties until the healers managed to drag him back to consciousness. Overall there were twenty seven wounded among my men, the majority of which would be back on their feet after a session with our healers. The four that were more severely hurt were still able to march, though they wouldn't be fighting again in the melee. *That's fine. It could have been worse, and I can still use them for sentries.* I dismissed my officers when I saw Aisha strolling down the main entrance with a handful of her own legionaries escorting her. Ratface cast a long look in her direction before saluting and returning to his line. I only barely refrained from sighing. Now was not the time for the lieutenant to start mooning over the captain of Wolf Company.

"Captain Callow," Aisha greeted me with a smile. "Well fought."

I clasped the forearm she offered me.

"You did most of the heavy lifting on this one," I acknowledged. "All we did was hold the line."

"Your inspired trick with the smokers hurt him more than you think," the Taghreb captain assured me. "It was clever of you to keep him from concentrating his force with the smoke so the fireballs would be able to keep him away."

I'd done what now? Ordering Pickler to throw the smokers in had been a knee-jerk reaction to Morok blowing the charges, not something I'd given a lot of thought to. I'd originally meant for Lizard Company to fill the wedge I'd made so that my sapper line's munitions would have the greatest possible effect, though in retrospective I could see how that would have ended badly. If Morok had managed to bring that many troops inside my camp he would have broken through my lines for sure, and it would have been all downhill from there.

"I try," I replied neutrally, doing my best to hide that my 'tactical ingenuity' was news to me. "How were casualties on your side?"

"Light," the olive-skinned girl noted. "We'll be ready to march in a quarter bell."

I grimaced.

"I'll need at least twice that," I replied. "My mages are running out of juice and the ogres did a number on my heavies."

"They have a way of doing that," Aisha said sympathetically. "Is that why I'm hearing chatter about you getting so angry you punched an ogre into unconsciousness?"

I closed my eyes and rubbed the bridge of my nose, imploring the Heavens for patience.

"That's not what happened," I told her, "I mean, I can understand it might have *looked* like that from a distance but I used a sharper."

The other captain patted me on the shoulder, dark eyes glittering with amusement.

"It's all right, Callow, you don't need to pretend with me," she consoled me. "There were already rumours about your grudge against them, anyhow, what with you castrating one in single combat."

"I used to think the girls at my orphanage were the worst gossips in the world," I sighed, "but then I came to the College."

The dark-haired girl snorted, though after a moment her face turned serious again.

"I became worried when you were late in giving me the signal," she said. "What happened?"

"We had a bad starting position," I grunted. "Middle of the plain to the south."

Aisha raised an eyebrow.

"And you didn't manage to get here before sundown? I thought Ratface drilled your cadets better than that."

"*Before* sundown?" I asked dubiously. "The sun was already setting when we snapped out of the blood magic."

The Taghreb girl blinked in surprise.

"That's strange. We were all awake around Afternoon Bell," she told me.

Oh, fuck you Heiress. Seriously?

"Must have been a mistake with the casting," I grunted, unwilling to give a real explanation.

The other captain looked unconvinced, but she didn't press the subject.

"Regardless," Aisha spoke, "it gave me time to scout around thoroughly. First Company was on the plains on the other side of the forest yesterday, though where they are now is anyone's guess. Morok seems to have started in the canyon, which means Fox Company is east of us."

"In the badlands," I grimaced. "Burning Hells. He'll have fortified wherever he ended up to a ridiculous extent."

"On one hand," my temporary ally noted, "it means he won't have been able to have cut many trees from the forest, if any. But he might have eschewed that entirely and built in rock instead, which would be... troublesome."

"We need to find him before he ends up making an actual castle, then," I grunted. "I'll tell my mages to hurry it up."

"That would be appreciated," Aisha nodded. "I'll have one of my lieutenants handle the distribution of the munitions."

There was only so much magic Kilian's minions were able to squeeze out in a day, unfortunately, and their earlier pyrotechnics had used up the lion's share. Given how physically exhausting casting could be, I wouldn't even be able to set a

fast pace when we marched: after last night's moonlit stroll and the morning's fighting they would be physically incapable of moving that fast. I ended up remaining within the bounds of my original prediction of a half bell, though it was a close thing. The entire allied force took a turn towards the south east for the first leg of our journey, Wolf Company being well aware of how easy it would be to charge out of the woods into someone's flanks after having done that exact thing. I put Ratface's line in the lead this time and left Hakram to take care of mine, keeping a newly-awakened Nauk company instead. The large orc was sheepish about the entire Red Rage debacle and apologized at least twice before I dismissed the whole thing.

"Hakram told me it's why you were never in the running for captain," I told him.

"Can't have the man in charge fly into rage every time he's too badly injured," Nauk grunted. "Been lucky enough to have Nilin with me since my first semester – he knows how to pick up the slack when I lose it."

"Ratface is too conservative when he commands," I noted, "and I can see why it might be a liability to have you in charge. Kilian and Pickler, though, why did they never step up?"

It would be a lie to say I hadn't been appalled by how abysmal Rat Company's score was. I had a hard time reconciling that with their performance in our first war games, though after the battle we'd just gone through I could see that one of the reasons my band of survivors had been so effective was that we'd been badly underestimated by the First Company. The fact that Ratface's line of twenty regulars hadn't managed to drive back a single tenth of heavies was a grim indicator of how my cadets would actually perform in a straight up fight.

"Kilian's got some kind of condition from her creature blood," Nauk told me. "Sometimes she draws too much magic and start speaking in tongues."

Creature blood? Something to ask my sergeant about. Anyhow, that was already half of my senior officers who could find themselves incapacitated if things got a little too hot. *No wonder they fold every time the other companies turn up the pressure..*

"Pickler?" I prompted.

The large orc looked uncomfortable, which would have been an amusing sight on his thick-skinned face if the subject wasn't so serious.

"She failed out of Advanced Tactics," he admitted. "If it ain't related to engineering she doesn't care for it."

Of the problems with my officers, that was the least damaging. The goblin served effectively enough as the lieutenant for my sapper line, I just had to ensure she never ended up having to make decisions too broad in scope. I clapped Nauk on the back, carefully avoiding his still-tender arm, and moved back to the head of my column as I chewed over what I'd learned. Flawed officers, but nothing I couldn't work with. I just had to find the right way to use them.

By the time sundown came we'd gotten fairly deep into the badlands.

Wolf Company's scouts had found a day-old trail a few hours back that led straight to the forest – and then another fresher one, with much deeper tracks. Snatcher's men had brought back timber to wherever he was holed up. The scouts tried to follow the tracks back to his camp but after a patch of bare rock they simply disappeared. *Of course it wouldn't be that easy.* Robber climbed his way up a rock spire and reported that the slope in the south east went downhill: there was no sign of any camp down there, though of course it was possible Snatcher had hid away behind one of the many stone hills. After conferring with Aisha we decided to head towards the northeast regardless. The grounds got more difficult to navigate in that direction, and that was best sort of territory for Fox Company to settle in.

We made camp right before nightfall, neither of our companies putting in the effort to fortify the hollow we claimed as our spot. I wasn't sure what Aisha's reasons were, but I was simply reluctant to put my legionaries through more hard labour after the day they'd had. I needed them as fresh as possible for the assault on Snatcher's fortifications, the mages especially. Still, I drew the line at ordering half-watches. There were still two other companies marauding about and while I doubted anyone would attack me while my alliance with Wolf Company was still active I wasn't going to be taking any risks. Not with Juniper still out there. My night of sleep ended up being a short one, as Hakram woke me up while the moon was still out.

"Callow," he gravelled. "We have a problem."

I cursed and reached for my sword belt, tossing away my blanket.

"Wolf Company?" I asked immediately.

Without my Name I probably wouldn't have been able to make out the way my sergeant grimaced.

"I don't know," he admitted. "Doesn't seem like it, but..."

I finished putting on my boots and frowned at him.

"What happened, Hakram?"

"Seven of our sentries have disappeared," he told me.

The vast majority of my camp was still asleep, and casting an eye around I couldn't see anything that qualified as unusual activity. Wolf Company wasn't assembling, so it didn't seem like they were planning to betray us. *Not yet, anyway.*

"Our munitions are still untouched?" I asked.

"First thing I checked," the sergeant replied. "Nothing wrong there, Pickler inspected them herself."

So whoever was behind this wasn't planning an attack. *Then why are they doing this?* Normally taking out sentries would be a prelude to a night attack, but my opponent wasn't pressing their advantage.

"Juniper," I realized suddenly.

"Then why didn't she raid deeper into the camp?" Hakram wondered.

"Because she's not after our munitions," I cursed. "She's just trying to lower our numbers."

The Hellhound knew I had a Name, knew what kind of damage those could cause. So to mitigate that advantage she was going to keep grinding down my forces as much as she could before giving battle. What did it matter if I could take a tenth of heavies on my own, if I had a single line to back me up against the entire First Company?

"Double the watch," I ordered tiredly. "No one patrols alone and send word to Captain Bishara that First Company has men in the area."

My sleep was uneasy after the wake-up call, but there were no more abductions that night. There was no more time to worry, anyhow: by Noon Bell the next day, we'd found Snatcher's camp.

Ben

Thanks for the chapter~

The odds are still heavily stack against her

Evi

Hello Author!! Would you be okay if I drew fanart for this series?

I've been kind of meaning to draw Catherine in all her shit-eating grinned glory and er, I'll do my best to be relatively accurate. I can post a link in the comments when I'm done? 😊

[erraticerrata](#)

Please do! If you need a reference for her appearance, the best description is in Chapter 1.

Bart

How often do updates happen again?

Also, "If Morok didn't pull out now, the Lizards he risked elimination by numbers." Remove the word "he".

Unmaker

Every Wednesday: <https://practicalguidetoevil.wordpress.com/>

Unmaker

Hey, erraticerrata, good to see you have a banner on Topwebfiction now.

[erraticerrata](#)

Thanks! Friend of mine made it, very kind of him.

Thorbjorn42gbf

Just caught up 😊

I really like the premise of this serial, it feels very fresh and everyone is just so... Practical.

Also have you thought about getting an RSS feed? Because i rather like not having to check multiple sides for updates.

DonRamon

Great chapter as always. I'm catching myself counting the days until the next updates now. I'm taking a liking to Catherine and her struggles.

I'd like something clarified, though, because I feel this might get relevant really soon. How does killing and casualty works in the context of the War Games? Obviously you can't outright murder an opponent but if this is supposed to be a preparation for actual war, is there any way to "pretend-kill" them? In the first games, Juniper had only captured the opposing force and Catherine has a similar train of thoughts in that chapter about why she needs to eliminate Morok completely.

So how does "killing" works? Is there some gesture one can

perform to declare an opponent to be "dead"? This is supposed to prepare them for actual war and given the nature of the Empire, I'm guessing the War College doesn't teach them mercy and proper treatment of war prisoners.

Right now, Juniper seems to be aiming to methodically whittle down Catherine. That plan will work best if she isn't forced to take prisoners. Those seven sentries who just disappeared, are they merely captured and always save-able or can Juniper actually remove them from the games entirely?

[erraticerrata](#)

While there is no "pretend-kill" signal and actual killing is strictly forbidden – though now and then it still happens accidentally – there are ways to incapacitate cadets without actually killing them. If you read through the first war games again, you'll see that in Chapter 16 Catherine had the ankles of Juniper's men broken when she decided she needed only one prisoner. Injuries of the kind can be fixed by a decent mage line, yes, but no one with a broken leg is going to be in any state to fight for the rest of the melee. That Nauk is pushing himself to stay involved even though he as a broken arm says a lot about him.

TheSmokingGnu

About that... Isn't it a little outrageous, that you can end up with a broken leg at the start of a game – this not being your fault at all – and just lie there for possibly couple of days in hellish pain... The real war does involve it, sure, but how would it be a good thing to do with 16-year teens(of non-orcish upbringing)?

Firstly, why would anyone cope with that, especially future officers, that seems a little discouraging, if not just worst career-educational path ever. Gotta have people interested in going to army, with all the conquests.

And secondly, there s bound to be a more proficient way to mark people as killed, t least when you are executing them – magic, maybe? How to mark enemy as decapacitaded in battle is a harder question... I reckon now all the soldiers are just unconscious or limb – broken after being hit with the vlunt weapons.

Oh and the thing with the blunt weapons... how do you hurt a full-plated ogre with them? The fireballs seem to not be up to the task, and you cant just hold them off no matter how much soliers you have.

Unmaker

Typos:

they by far my most vulnerable line
they are...

hand't
hadn't

Was that lieutenant's stripes
Were those lieutenant's stripes
(character speech, may be as intended)

look. There
look. There

seemed to agreed with
seemed to agree with

companu
company

pressure..
pressure.

(late) Reactions:

I love the opening quote, so true if you read history.

Catherine's ability to keep her head, see the whole picture, and effectively give orders in the middle of combat is probably what saved the whole thing. I guess every captain does that, but really, most people in the middle of a melee are not able to do that sort of thing.

stevenneiman

"Another three clans had [been] come over to their side"
"Aside from my sappers they {were} by far my most vulnerable line."
"hopefully [read->ready] to close like a jaw"
"[Sent->Send] the ogres in to make a dent in her troops."
"Kilian hand't [though->thought] to concentrate"
"Morok seemed to [agreed->agree] with my assessment."
"in [retrospective->retrospect]"

I've always felt conflicted about having a plan that the protagonist knows but not the audience. On one hand, it can preserve a bit of tension and mystery, but on the other hand it also feels a bit unfair to not reveal something important that is known by the POV character.

M

Why didn't she use necromancy on the ogres? Having a literal tank on your side seems like a nice advantage.

James, Mostly Harmless

The ogres are not dead, just wounded.

M

Neither was she when she used it on herself.

kelioez

I think that was just a fluke because of the power boost she got from her Struggle and of knowing her body intimately well, only then could she do that.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

Come on, do you really think Cat would even consider anything like that? Maybe IRL when it's life or death, but in a GAME? Absolutely not.

stevenneiman

"hopefully [read->ready] to close like a jaw"

"Kilian [hand't->hadn't] [though->thought] to concentrate on a single target."

"Kilian's mages were holding [off down] enemy advance" should only be one of those

"a stroke that would have shattered my shoulders [in->into] several smaller and painful bone shards"

"the Lizards [he] risked elimination by numbers."

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

I've never heard the phrase "mooning over" someone, but given Wolf company, it works

sswanlake

Some edits:

hopefully read to close like a jaw -> hopefully *ready* to close like a jaw

His companu sounded the retreat -> His company sounded the retreat

Max Scherer

ugh i get frustrated reading this and if heiress doesnt end up with something bad i get upset. She is the kind of character i just cant stand and i just want to gut her... And i hate this kind

of arc where the MC is crippled(Well her powers are gone and that is one thing i hat the most. Why writing something like this when the power doesnt even matters. She doesnt really do stuff with this in this first book and its just meh)

Cpt. Obvious

There's no "The Newbs Guide to Being Named" for Cat to read. And Black thinks it's best she learns from making her own mistakes. After all it's different for every named. So instead of him spoon feeding her how to be named and risk her rushing headfirst to her death because of something that never happened to him she has to learn to expect that her powers can and will occasionally fail. That's a big part of his philosophy. So while he could have warned her about going against the nature of her name that wouldn't have taught her as much. And it's better she experience it now when threats are still relatively low key rather than when she has grown used to depend on having Name powers and the really dangerous Heroes and Villains are out to kill her.

Chapter 25: Snatcher's Plan

"The patient knife always strikes true."
– Soninke saying

I let out a soft whistle. "That doesn't look like a Legion design."

"Bin hamar," Aisha cursed in a low voice. "He must have had his cadets working through the night."

I glanced at her curiously. My Taghrebi was still a little iffy, though I recognized the word for donkey in there. Still, Snatcher's fortifications did warrant quite a bit of cussing. Fox Company had made camp over a hill in the centre of a hollow, though their defences extended quite a bit further than that. The first wall wouldn't be too hard to take, I assessed. Three feet of stone and sand packed together tightly were topped by a row of sudis, with small openings slits for crossbowmen to shoot through. Demolition charges would punch through those in a matter of moments, though my own company was running a little short on those. Morok hadn't carried any, and though Rat Company was once more topped off on smokers and brightsticks a shortage of heavier munitions had the potential to be very costly here. From the high

grounds where Captain Bishara and I stood, however, we could see that the first wall was the least of our worries.

There were about a hundred feet of open ground after the wall, and one didn't need my Name-improved sight to see some of it had been freshly dug. *Rubies to piglets that Snatcher mined the Hells out of that.* Too many places had been dug into for all of them to be covering a demolition charge, but there was way to tell which of them really were mined. If any of them were, I thought with a grimace. He might have left the more obvious marks as a feint and dug in his charges less obviously. Should the Wolves and my Rats manage to breach the first wall, then we'd have to charge across the flat grounds through the traps while getting shot at by Fox Company. And then we'd get to the fucking second wall. It was more or less impossible to see the hill the sapper-built fort had been based from, with the stone ramparts ten feet high hiding away the sight of it. The depth of the ditch the Foxes had dug right in front of said ramparts was hard to estimate, but even from where I stood I could glimpse the sight of the sharp wooden stakes jutting out of it.

Some kind of wooden tower had been erected in the middle of the fort, standing above even the ramparts – it looked more like a platform, actually, though its purpose eluded me for now. At the moment most of Fox Company's legionaries were taking cover behind the first wall, patiently waiting for our own cadets to come into range. No attempt had been made on Snatcher's side to initiate talks after we'd arrived, and neither Aisha nor I were particularly inclined to attempt them. At this point, giving the other captain more time to dig in would be shooting ourselves in the foot.

"I can have my company ready for the fight fairly quickly," I grunted. "We'll be taking the first wave, as agreed."

That had been the second price I'd agreed to pay for Wolf Company's assistance against the Lizards. When the time to assault Snatcher came, my soldiers would be the first into the breach – and so would be the ones running into all the nasty little surprises the goblin captain no doubt had in store. Aisha eyed me sideways.

"Rushing our attack might prove more costly than we can afford," she demurred. "First we set up our camps, then we'll hash out a planned offensive."

I clenched my fingers and unclenched them. I could see the sense in what Bishara was proposing, but it did not suit my own plans.

"The longer we delay, the higher the chances Juniper stabs us in the back while we're dealing with Snatcher," I reminded her. "We know she has men in the area, and following our tracks here will be child's play."

Hiding away the tracks of two hundred legionaries, some of them in heavy plate, was not something any of us had been trained for. If Juniper wanted to find us, she would. The Taghreb girl's lovely face was marred by a dubious look.

"It's unlikely she has more than a single line shadowing us," she replied. "Regardless, we will not be attacking blindly: I fully intend on scouting our backs before committing to the assault. You can have your men patrol the south-east, if you're truly worried. Should she bring her whole company to bear, we can take her together before dealing with Snatcher."

I smiled politely at her words, not believing a word of them. *I trust you to hold up your end of the bargain against the Foxes, Bishara, but against the Hellhound? That's a whole other story.* Ensuring Snatcher would be knocked out of the melee as quick as possible was a priority for the Wolves, since their company score would hitch them up to third place if the Foxes lost their bid. But everything after that got trickier. Juniper and Aisha were friends, I knew. How much that would weigh in on her decision making I couldn't be sure, but I did not think the other captain would think twice about selling me out to First Company. She could take on Snatcher with their help instead of mine, and there was no denying that Juniper's soldiers would perform better than Rat Company's in the matter. And yet I couldn't just tell her that. I sighed.

"We do it your way, then," I conceded.

After a silent nod I made my way down the hill, returning to my company's ranks. Hakram was already waiting for me, wonder of a sergeant that he was, and a few orders to him got my cadets started on making camp. I found Pickler in the midst of the flurry of sudden activity, Robber at her side. Good, I'd needed to talk with the both of them.

"Lieutenant, Sergeant," I greeted them as they saluted. "I have work for you."

The yellow-eyed little bastard immediately started grinning, though his commanding officer remained more sedate.

"What do you need, Captain?" Pickler asked.

"I want a tenth out on patrol," I grunted back. "Start in our south-east quadrant but swing around to the south of Snatcher's camp afterwards. Keep an eye out for First Company."

"And if Snatcher makes contact?" Robber slyly inquired.

I held his gaze steadily. "Use your better judgement."

To the sergeant's left I saw Pickler wince.

"Dismissed," I spoke, ending the conversation.

—

By the time Pickler's patrol came back, half a bell had passed.

The bare bones of Rat Company's camp had been laid down, the regulation-spaced wall of sudis spikes rising out of the stony ground. To the west of us Wolf Company had claimed a hill for its own, with Aisha's tent pitched at the top with the wolf skull standard close by. There was something of a commotion when Robber's tenth came back, for they had a new addition to their ranks: an unusually large dead goat was being carried by a pair of sappers, neck bloodied where one of them had stabbed it. The corpse was dropped next to my bedroll — I'd elected not to bring a tent, preferring to travel light — as the sergeant strutted around like a victorious conqueror to the cheers of my cadets.

"Fresh meat for the next meal, Captain," Robber told me proudly. "Hatcher stuck a knife in its neck before it even realized she was there."

The female goblin he'd just provided me the name for shuffled on her feet, obviously uncomfortable with the attention. I rose from where I'd been sitting going over our only map and clapped the cadet's armoured shoulder amicably.

"Well done, soldier," I praised her warmly and bit back a smile when her cheeks flushed darkly.

"Thank you, sir," she squeaked out, managing a salute before she basically ran away.

I watch her scuttle into the rocks like she was fleeing the scene of a crime, eyebrows raised.

"Shy type, is she?" I asked the sergeant.

"You're beginning to have a bit of a reputation with the troops, 'Cap," Robber replied cheerfully. "You know, what with all that charging into fireballs and punching out ogres."

"That was only the once, and you know the ogre thing is a filthy lie," I protested.

"That's my favourite kind of lie," the sergeant admitted shamelessly. "Which is probably why I've been spreading it every occasion I get."

"You're an insubordinate wretch, Robber," I told him.

"Title of my report card three years running," the sergeant replied cheerfully, and it took an effort not to be openly amused.

"I don't suppose you've got anything to report aside from your adventures in aggressive goat herding?" I prompted.

"Funny you would say that," he murmured. "Half the reason we put the goat in front was so that no one would notice we had eleven sappers coming back. Snatcher sent a messenger."

"I thought he might," I grunted. "You keeping an eye on him?"

"I've got two cadets watching his back," the sergeant replied.

"Go get your Lieutenant," I ordered, "and spread the word I want a senior officer meeting immediately."

"You got it," he grinned, sauntering away as he whistled the first few notes of a strangely haunting tune. I'd heard it before, I thought, though I couldn't remember where.

They say the third step is the cruelest

Walk when the moon is at her clearest:

Love ends with the kiss of the knife,

Trust is the wager that takes your life

The words accompanying the tune came back easily enough. Not a song I'd ever heard at the Rat's Nest, I decided. Might have overheard it in the streets of Laure, or maybe someone had sung it to me when I'd been too young to remember. I mulled over the matter until all my lieutenants were assembled, though a real answer eluded me. Nauk was the first to break the silence when everyone had arrived.

"We hashing out a plan to suggest to Bishara?" he asked.

"Not exactly," I replied. "It's time to let you all in on the second step of my plan for the melee."

Ratface was the first to catch on.

"Gods Below," he cursed. "We're betraying Wolf Company to the Foxes, aren't we?"

"Got it in one," I replied amusedly. "Snatcher came to have a talk after I first met with Aisha. He had an interesting proposition for me."

"Is there anyone we *aren't* betraying?" the Taghreb lieutenant quipped dryly.

I paused, mulling it over, and watch his face turn pale.

"Define betray," I equivocated.

"This is not a question that should require this much thought to answer," he burst out.

Kilian cleared her throat. "Amusing as this is, I'd prefer a little more information. How will this be going down?"

"Ideally we'd split our forces in two for the assault, each half on one of the flanks of Wolf Company," I explained. "When the signal is given, Snatcher will make a sortie into their centre and we'll fall on them from both sides."

"And we're sure Snatcher will hold up his part of the deal?" Pickler questioned.

"He wants Aisha out of the melee very, very badly," I grunted. "He knows she won't stop until one of them is done."

"It should be enough to keep him honest for now," Nauk gravelled in approval.

"Speaking of Snatcher," I continued, "we have a messenger from the man."

I motioned for the Fox Company sapper to come closer, dismissing his two escorts with a nod.

"Your name, cadet?" Nauk growled.

"Latcher, sir," the goblin replied serenely.

Even in the heart of another company's camp, the Fox legionary seemed unruffled. I'd noticed more than once that his eyes never stopped moving, always seeking out additional details he could report to his own captain about the state of my company. A reminder that after Aisha was down for the count we'd be enemies again. The part of his armour where the foxhead stamp revealing where his allegiances lay had been cleverly scratched out, though if anyone from Wolf Company recognized his face that would be a moot point. I'd need to keep him carefully out of sight, and with his helmet on at all times.

"And what message does Captain Snatcher send you with, Latcher?" I prompted.

"Our company will be ready to hit Captain Bishara's centre the moment yours sounds the horn twice," he replied.

I hummed thoughtfully, drumming my fingers against my knee.

"I'm not seeing a door in the first wall, cadet," I pointed out. "How will Fox Company be joining the battle?"

The goblin bobbed his head. "Some parts of the palisade are removable," he informed us. "That said, most of our company will

be staying at a distance to contribute through crossbows. Only our two lines of regulars will be charging into the fight."

I'd expected about as much. Sending in goblin sappers into a sword fight would result in catastrophic losses for him and little change in the engagement's outcome.

"It will do," I grunted. "I expect we'll be beginning our assault by Afternoon Bell, so you won't have time to sneak back into your camp. You'll be staying with Pickler's line until then. Don't draw attention to yourself."

"By your will, Captain," Latcher agreed softly.

—

Talking Aisha into my formation had been surprisingly easy, considering it was far from the optimal way to attack the wall. My guess was that as a new captain she'd been expecting me to blunder for some time, and that she'd decided Rat Company taking losses here would make us easier to mop up afterwards. I kept Nauk and his heavies in my half, in case there was another Red Rage episode, and put Ratface in charge of the other one. Pickler went with him and Kilian's line was split in two, with her shields bolstering Ratface's line while I took the mages and the lieutenant in question. I could glimpse Snatcher's men behind the palisade, much more heavily concentrated than they had been this morning. I watched Ratface position his men just out of crossbow range and prepare his line as Hakram did the same with own with my forces. We'd be ready soon. The Wolves stood in the flat grounds of the hollow, ranks perfectly ordered and ready to move: Aisha had put her mages and sappers in the middle of a tightly-packed square, though given how quickly her company could move that meant very little. Taking the signal horn from my pack, I took a deep breath and prepared to sound the beginning of the battle. *Sorry, Aisha, but this was my best option.* The deep sound thundered across the badlands.

I had not been the one to blow it.

Armour shining in the sun, Wolf Company pivoted with parade-ground perfection to face my separated men and started to charge. Pushing down the urge to curse my heart out, I put my lips to the polished ram's horn and sounded it twice. Four chunks of the palisade were immediately raised up and put aside, Snatcher's lines starting to pour through. What the Hells was Aisha's game here, I wondered. Had she been aware I was about to betray her? No, if she had she would have left more than a line facing the direction Fox Company was currently forming ranks in. It didn't make sense for her to force a fight with me before we'd assaulted Snatcher's fortifications. She'd probably beat me, but she'd still take losses and —

"Oh fuck my life," I spoke out loud.

I turned to look at the northwest, the part of our back Wolf Company's patrols had been supposed to be covering. A black standard with the silver crossed swords of the War College rose over the crest of the hills, First Company's forward lines briskly marching in our direction. *Well, that explains why she wanted to wait a bell until the assault. She was giving Juniper time to catch up.* The thought was oddly calm, considering I was panicking at the moment. What should I do? Take a gamble and hope we could rout Aisha before Juniper arrived? No, even then we'd be stuck facing First Company with split forces and I wasn't sure I could count on Snatcher to stick with me through the fight. He might just withdraw behind the walls and let us fight it out. I threw my helmet on the ground and let out a cry of anger.

I couldn't let it end here. Not with everything that was at stake.

"Hakram," I called out.

"Sir?" my sergeant prompted.

He'd been about to rejoin our line to prepare it for the fight with Aisha's men, who were less than a hundred feet from us now. I spat on the ground.

"We withdraw," I told him, the words feeling like ash in my mouth. "Follow Snatcher's wall to the east, there's bound to be another way in there."

The goblin captain wouldn't refuse me entrance, not when he had two other companies knocking at his gates. He needed the numbers. The real problem was that there was no way to get a message to Ratface to tell him to do the same on the other side. The tall orc saluted without a word, returning to our men to see my bidding done. Gingerly I picked up my helmet, watching as the half of my forces under the command of Rat Company's former captain prepared to meet the charge of the Wolves. My own soldiers started retreating in their assigned direction a moment later, and I sounded the horn one last time as a warning to the rest of my cadets. It was for naught. The lines met, and over the horizon Juniper's legionaries turned in their direction. I would have stayed to watch longer, but Wolf Company was getting close and there was a limit to how many people I could take on even with my Name. Fingers clenched, I ran to catch up with my legionaries and we fled.

—

Fox Company opened another chunk of the palisade to let us through long before Wolf Company was in a position to do anything about it, the captain himself coming to meet me almost

immediately. Snatcher was tall, for a goblin: the top of his head went up to my chin. His skin was of a paler green than I was accustomed to, smooth and almost entirely without the usual wrinkles. Yellow eyes like Robber's looked back at me, although his left one had a way of facing away from where he was looking. It made it hard to meet him eye-to-eye.

"Captain Callow," he rasped out in an ever-surprisingly deep voice for a goblin.

"Captain Snatcher," I replied tiredly, clasping the offered arm.

"Bit of a mess today," he sympathized. "Didn't think Bishara had it in her."

"Neither did I," I admitted. "A lesson to remember. Do you know what happened to the rest of my men?"

"They broke and ran when they saw Juniper coming to sweep them," he replied. "We opened a gate for them on the western side when they fled in that direction. Most of your sappers made it through, as well as a few of Ratface's cadets. Twenty-three overall."

With my own survivors, that brought me down to seventy-one legionaries. Not as bad of a disaster as it could have been, but still a crippling defeat. I grimaced. Black had been right, damn his Praesi hide: one step of my plan had failed and now the whole thing was useless. I'd have to start planning from scratch again, and my position was horribly weak.

"Do they show any sign of wanting to assault?" I asked.

Snatcher shook his head. "First Company is taking over your camp. I doubt they'll try anything until tomorrow morning."

I frowned. "Why the wait? They still have at least a bell until sundown."

"Juniper's forces aren't all here," the other captain grimaced. "Her sappers are still missing. Building ladders and a ram, if I had to guess."

"They'll still be at a disadvantage going on the offence, even with those," I noted. "Between your crossbows and my heavies we'll be able to hold them off even if they attack several spots at the same time."

"I have a few thoughts about this, as it happens," the goblin smiled. "Walk with me, Callow."

For a moment I thought he'd make like a Callowan and offer me his arm to slip into mine but he simply ambled on ahead. *Probably better that way*, I mused. *Never seen a goblin riding a horse*

before, so knighthood would be a stretch. I caught up with him and we strolled next to the wall like this was a Proceran garden viewing.

"As you've no doubt noticed," he started, "the walls to my second ring of my fortifications are stone and dirt."

I nodded, curious where he was going with this.

"And yet," he spoke almost casually, "there is no sign of the digging efforts that would be necessary for such an accomplishment."

My eyes sharpened. He was right: I'd been so focused on the possible mine field I'd never thought to wonder where the materials making his rampart from had come from. Some of it must have been from the ditch in front of it, but that wasn't enough to explain ten feet high walls.

"You've been digging elsewhere," I said.

Snatcher's lazy eye wandered as he bared yellowing needle-like teeth in approval.

"Goblins weren't always surfacers, you know," he told me. "We once lived underground, before the dwarves drove us out and into the Grey Eyries."

I clenched my fingers and unclenched them, letting my other hand rest on the pommel of my sword.

"Tunnels," I realized. "You've been digging tunnels."

"And they lead right to the two most likely camp sites for a besieging force," he chuckled. "So tell me, Captain Callow: how would you like to even your score with Bishara?"

My answering smile was a savage thing. "I think you and I will get along very well, Captain Snatcher."

[syphax1](#)

Oh man, this is a clusterfuck or two. And there's been nothing from the Heiress so far, either. I'm willing to bet this ends with everything just exploding.

Thorbjorn42gbf

Starting at the worst location and loosing half a day was from Heiress though. I am sure she have more up her sleeve though. The question is though, can Catherine turn Heiress next play into something that favors her?

SirSci

Unless she had set up an allaince between the others including snatcher

Ben

Thanks for the chapter, so much CHAOS!!!

NerfContessa

Indeed.

So far it's. A triple cross, and before end izlt will be a quintuple one.

Thorbjorn42gbf

"Define Betray"

New favorite moment 😊

Cpt. Obvious

Dread Emperor Traitorous would agree.

Evi

I said I'd do it and I did! Fanart ahoy!!! <http://evionth.deviantart.com/art/Squire-560652346>

[*erraticerrata*](#)

Umph, that's beautiful. I love it, and you got her appearance pretty much as I imagined it. If you're willing I could link it in the Maps page (the title of which would be adjusted :P)

Evi

That would totally be okay with me. Go for it!!! 😊

stevenneiman

That was roughly how I was imagining her looking. Good to know I wasn't too far off in her mental image.

Ethan Smith

God fan art is convenient – Makes it much easier to imagine a character. Nice work man

eduardo

Just finished the archive binge and must say that this is highly addictive.

Catherine is fun and the world in which she lives is interesting. I must admit that I got a huge urge to see some gnomes dead since they are what keeps this world in "medieval phantasy" stage instead of allowing it to progress to a magic x science industrial revolution.

Unmaker

Typos:

take on on
take on

cruelest
(my spell checker likes cruellest when set to UK English; one 'l' is correct for US English)

" the
"the

They say the third step is the cruelest
Walk when the moon is at her clearest:
Love ends with the kiss of the knife,
Trust is the wager that takes your life
(inconsistent text size for those lines)

(late) Reactions:

Catherine is planning on betraying everyone who allies with her, it appears. It is so far just desserts, because everyone has betrayed her. Snatcher is next – when she sends her heavies to assault the camps, it would be so easy to cut them off by collapsing the tunnels. Then her force would be divided. Of course, Catherine could instead try to take the fort from the inside. That is a really uneasy partnership there.

Nice to see that the other captains did some negotiating as well. Round-robin betrayal, I mean "re-allying", is so fun... to read about.

Catherine easily remembers lyrics to a tune she can't remember anything else about. I suspect her Name is feeding her more than dreams.

"Define betray"
Snicker.

"Juniper's forces aren't all here," the other captain grimaced. "Her sappers are still missing. Building ladders and a ram, if I had to guess."

Yeah, right, I am not betting on that. Counter-tunneling maybe. Wait until most of Snatcher's force is engaged on the walls and send a few heavies in to clean up from inside, or send in a sneak to detonate the munitions stores.

The amount of work described in Snatcher's fortifications appears extreme for what has been essentially two days of prep. Moving a lot of dirt is serious work and size counts, so the goblins should be at a disadvantage for that, natural ability or no.

Unmaker

Forgot one part: has no-one in this world developed a trebuchet? On a complexity vs. effectiveness rating, it is one of the best siege engines. Juniper could sit back and drop rocks on Snatcher well outside of crossbow range and there is little he could do about it.

Unmaker

Apologies for the successive posts, I keep thinking of stuff: Rocks, hell, they can drop munitions into the camp. One lucky hit on a captain or on ammo storage could turn the battle.

[erraticerrata](#)

Trebuchets do exist – one of the most notable goblin contributions to Imperial engineering. That said, it's forbidden to bring siege weapons into war games and building a trebuchet from scratch would require a lot of very specific tools and resources.

Ethan Smith

Hmm doesn't really surprise me – It'd give too big an advantage in addition to the sheer lethality of it. They clearly aren't afraid to let cadets get severely injured or die but siege weapons would be a bit much I image

stevenneiman

"with small [openings->opening] slits"

"but there was {no} way to tell which of them really were mined."

"She could take [on] on Snatcher with their help instead of mine"

I get the definite sense that Snatcher and Callow are going to get along great until Bishara and Juniper are out of the picture.

stevenneiman

"She could take on [on] Snatcher with their help instead of mine"

"I paused, mulling it over, and [watch->watched] his face turn pale." Technically, they aren't betraying Juniper. She knew better than to trust the one Named in the college

"there was a limit to how [any->many] people I could take on even with my Name"

sswanlake

Some edits:

but there was way to tell -> but there was *no* way to tell

She could take on on Snatcher -> She could take ~on~ on Snatcher

limit to how any people -> limit to how *many* people

[Mental Mouse](#)

On reread: It may be Early Installment Weirdness, but the fact that Robber knows That Song has interesting implications.

Alexander

He doesn't. It's Cat who hears the song in her head, even though Robber is singing something else entirely.

Raune

"but there was way to tell which of them really were mined"
was no way

"Hakram did the same with own with my forces"
same with my own

Chapter 26: Juniper's Plan

"Never back the Praesi in a corner, son. That's when the devil-summoning starts, and it's all downhill from there."

-King Jehan of Callow, addressing the future King Pater the Unheeding

Snatcher had suggested we wait until sundown for the sneak attack, and I wasn't inclined to disagree.

I had a lot of work before me, as it happened. I needed to get a real headcount of my remaining cadets, go through our stocks to see what we had left munitions-wise and brief my remaining officers on the new plan. We were in no danger of being eliminated through officer attrition, given that my only missing

lieutenant was – once again – Ratface but I'd already figured out that numbers were the way Juniper was aiming to take me out. Wise of her, considering I'd take quite a few legionaries to put me down if she cornered me badly enough. My Name was still being a temperamental bitch about coughing out power, but I had a feeling that if the opposition got too overwhelming it would trigger my Struggle aspect again. *Though how much help that would be against a group is still up in the air.*

Though he remained tight-lipped on more general Role lore, I'd managed to get some tips on using my own from Black. He'd told me that aspects always needed specific conditions to be tapped into, and usually had at least one flat limitation. Learn, for example, only applied when I was consciously being taught. Trying to pick up a sword trick in the middle of a duel would fail every time. As for Struggle, he'd been less helpful in puzzling it out: it had not been one of his aspects back when he'd been the Squire, and though he'd made a study of Names their powers had a way of varying wildly from one Named to another. His guess was that the aspect was meant as an equalizer: when I was outclassed, my Name would put me on even footing with my opponent for a short amount of time. There was no way to be sure whether he was right or not until it was put to the test, but his theory had felt... right. Like it fit in a wider pattern.

Names were supposed to respond with who you were, and I'd known from the moment I'd accepted the Calamity's offer that most of my battles would be uphill ones. That my Name had responded to my desire for a way to even the playing field made perfect sense to me. I was worrying, though, that it would not react the same to multiple opponents. When I'd taken Rashid by surprise and stabbed his sorry ass we'd essentially been duelling. When I'd jumped over the log in the last war game I'd not been tapping into the Struggle, I was pretty sure. Just making use of what little power my damaged connection to my Name had made available at the time. Would the aspect trigger if I was facing multiple opponents that were, strictly speaking, weaker than I? I had my doubts.

Already I knew that it only reacted to direct threats, or it would have reacted when Heiress was outmanoeuvring me in the Tower. I was kind of hoping my third aspect would involve a loud alarm blaring in the back of my head whenever the Soninke noble was fucking me over, but I doubted it would be that easy. There was a sort of twisted duality to my Name and hers, one that brought to mind one of the first afternoon lessons with my teacher. Most of the time we went over my assigned readings and he clarified points or expanded on them, but once in a while he'd strike a debate over a subject and the afternoon was spent discussing it. I'd learn to both dread and look forward to those particular lessons: I always came out having learned something useful, but the conclusions could be... morally flexible, to put it mildly.

That time, the subject had been the nature of power. "Dread Emperor Terribilis once said that power is the ability to see your will done," he'd begun. "Using that as a touchstone, I would classify power in two broad types: soft power and hard power." Soft power, he'd elaborated, was the use of indirect methods and influence. Convincing and coercing others to do your bidding through persuasion or social pressure. Though I disliked her on a personal level, on an objective one I could see that Heiress excelled at that kind of work. She'd managed to turn all the other claimants against me back in Summerholm with minimum effort and no risk to herself. When we'd met face to face on the Blessed Isle the use of force had been a backup plan, not the main thrust of her effort: instead she'd offered me something she thought I wanted, in a way that would marginalize me as an obstacle to her plans.

Hard power, by contrast, was where I lived at. Direct application of force to dictate your will on others. The way Black had phrased that made me uncomfortable, but there was some truth to his words. In the end, I was not above imposing what I thought was right and wrong on others at the edge of a sword. Even what could be called my one foray into soft power, when I'd decided to use the Lone Swordsman as a way to set Callow on fire an advance my cause, had been something I'd managed to accomplish by forcefully beating the hero first. I still remembered the way every one of the claimants for Squire had gone about things differently, almost as if the Name was pitting different methods against each other to see which was the most worthy. In that light, I did not think it was a coincidence that Heiress and I used fundamentally different ways of getting what we wanted. We were in a competition, clearly, I just wasn't sure for *what*.

Not that it changed anything. Heiress had been sharpening knives meant for my back before we'd ever met, and I did not think she was done interfering in the melee yet. The blood magic delay and my shitty starting position felt like her hand at work, but that could not be the only string to her bow. The two incidents I suspected she was behind had damaged my performance, yes, but so far she'd always gone for more thorough plots than that. All the moves she'd made before had the potential of taking me entirely out of the equation, which meant there was likely a third stroke coming for my neck. *But from where?* So far she'd interfered through the College, which made sense: it was an old institution, one where her family was likely to have pre-existing contacts. Pickler had already killed my initial guess of her bribing one of the participating captains, which left... outside interference?

That seemed unlikely, with the way Black was bound to be watching all of this like a hawk. Heiress was good, but not good enough to pull the wool over the eyes of one of the fucking Calamities. I sighed and put the matter aside. It was an unfortunate fact that

I had a lot more difficulty predicting Heiress than she apparently did predicting me. *One who prefers soft power is weak to direct confrontation*, I remembered Black murmuring over a cup of wine, *but one who uses only hard power is easy to entrap*. As in all things, balance is paramount. It didn't matter, I decided as I clenched my fingers tightly. However sharp the jaws of the trap my rival would have closing on me, I would pry them open and throw the whole bloody contraption at her head. Adjusting my sword belt – it had loosened a bit while running away from Wolf Company – I put my helmet back on and returned to my cadets.

My initial count of seventy-one legionaries had been overly optimistic. I had that many cadets present, certainly, but not all of them were in fighting shape. Damnably, most of the legionaries unfit to fight were in my heavies. Getting trampled by a tenth of ogres was not something you recovered from in a day, and though Kilian's mages were fairly talented they were nowhere close to the kind of ability you'd need to truly heal broken bones. They could put them back into place and patch them up, but any hard impact would break them right back – and make them that much harder to heal the second time. Flesh could only soak in so much magic before it became saturated, the redheaded lieutenant explained to me. Trying to push in sorcery past that point would lead to... bad things. All in all, I had about fifty-five soldiers in fighting shape. Most of my own line, the mage half of Kilian's and miraculously all of Pickler's sappers. The goblin lieutenant did have a talent for ducking out of the way before trouble reached her, one probably helped along by the way her sergeant snuck around and compulsively eavesdropped on everything.

"We don't have the numbers to overwhelm Wolf Company anymore," I told my remaining officers. "Not even a surprise attack will change that."

"We're going for the officers, then," Hakram graveled.

"Finding them will be the real problem," I grunted back. "Even if we manage to penetrate the camp quietly, which isn't a given, we'll only have so much time before the alarm is sounded."

Pickler gently cleared her throat. "There shouldn't be a problem, Captain. Aisha's sapper line is lacking, so they largely stick to the book. Their camp layout is Legion standard." I frowned.

"I'm not seeing the significance of that," I admitted.

Nauk snorted out a laugh. "It means their officer tents are in designated spots for quick assembly," he grinned savagely. "If we move quick enough, we could have all their senior officers out before the pack wakes."

Well now. I'd been due some good news, and this seemed to qualify.

"I'll need four other people to sneak in with me," I decided. "One per target officer. Any of you have recommendations?"

"Sergeant Robber," Pickler immediately offered, not noticing the disgruntled look taking hold of Nauk's face. "He's good at quiet work, and you won't find anyone better at taking out sleeping soldiers."

Her tone seemed to imply that the last part of that sentence had been a compliment. *Goblins*. The Tribes had very definite ideas about the way wars should be fought, and most of them would have the knights of Old Callow sputtering in mortal outrage. Thankfully, I'd never been afflicted by that whole chivalrous ethics mess. The Fields of Streges had made it very clear which way worked better when it counted, and in the end that was all that mattered.

"That's two," I noted. "Anyone else?"

"I'll give you Nilin," Nauk grunted. "My line's not gonna be seeing action anyway, so he shouldn't be needed."

I nodded.

"Hakram?" I prompted.

"I'd go myself," my sergeant graveled, "but someone needs to attend our line. Take Nomusa – not too tall, for a Soninke, and she packs a punch."

I turned my eyes to Kilian and found her frowning.

"I'll come," she finally said. "You might need a mage, and I can be quiet if I need to."

I hesitated before accepting that. Two sergeants, a lieutenant and the company's captain were quite a few assets to risk on a strike that might very well fail. *On the other hand, if we don't succeed we're pretty much fucked anyways. All or nothing, huh? Should I be worried how often that ends up being my play?*

"Nauk, you'll be in command in my absence," I ordered, tacitly accepting Kilian's offer.

The orc in question cleared his throat. "Where do you want Rat Company deployed, then?" he asked. "Not to get too obvious, but the moment the Wolves are out Snatcher no longer needs us."

And there lay the thorniest of the thorns in my godsdamned side. Fox Company needed us to bolster their ranks on the walls only so long as there were two companies besieging them. If there were only Juniper and I left, I couldn't be sure Snatcher wouldn't decide to take his chances with the Hellhound and backstab Rat Company. As things stood, with most of my troops already behind the first wall I was pretty sure I could take his fort from him.

But there'd be casualties, and then I'd be stuck in the same position he'd let me in to avoid: alone on the hill with Aisha and Juniper out for my blood. Not a feasible option, especially considering there were tunnels connecting to both their camps. The plan Snatcher had proposed was that I would strike at the Wolves under the cover of night while he made his move against First Company. On the surface that seemed to be on the level, but he'd left himself a door. He'd have the option of pulling out after Aisha was done and leave me to deal with a pissed off Juniper, shutting the tunnels down behind me. Something to avoid as much as possible.

My options were either to leave my survivors inside with him and have them ready for a fight in case he betrayed me or to have Rat Company bail out the moment I headed into Aisha's camp. I was leaning more towards the second: even if this whole thing went south, I'd still have enough troops left to find another angle to victory. *And if I manage to drop Aisha while leaving the Foxes mostly intact behind their pretty little walls? I'm not sure it's me Juniper will be pointing her blade at.* That the Hellhound got to work cracking open Fox Company's defences while I found a better position for the final confrontation was the best outcome I could hope for. Not that there was any chance of me getting there *now*, since just by thinking that I'd pretty much sent an engraved invitation to the Gods asking them to piss all over my plans.

Still. It was worth a try.

"Wait fifteen Hails after my team moves out and then take the company north," I told him after chewing over my options a little longer. "Avoid fighting."

The large lieutenant shot me a bewildered look.

"What the Hells are 'Hails'," he growled.

Kilian snorted. "It's the time it takes to recite one of their fancy House of Light hymns," she explained, eyeing me amusedly. "Wrong gods for this neck of the woods, Captain."

"Right," I coughed, somewhat embarrassed. "I, er, don't know the equivalent for the Gods Below."

"About six basic line drills," the redheaded lieutenant said after pausing an instant to close her eyes and think. "The Hellgods don't really go for hymns, as it happens. Probably safer to stick with Legion exercises."

Clearly I'd need to actually learn those at some point. My lessons had been rather sparse in that regard, as it happened. After teaching me the bare essentials of fighting as a legionary,

Captain and Black had focused on other kinds of swordsmanship. I'd never actually seen my teacher use a scutum outside of those first few mornings: Black usually favoured a smaller kite shield with his short sword and taught me with the same.

"Duly noted," I grunted. "That should be it for the moment, unless anyone else has a point to raise?"

No one did, and they took heed of the implied dismissal. I motioned for Kilian to stick around as the others started leaving, not bothering to vocalize the order. The pale-skinned girl looked surprised but she sat back down without a comment. I waited for the other officers to be at a safe distance before clearing my throat.

"There's a thing I'd like clarified before we head into combat," I told her. "I've heard you can be incapacitated if you draw too much on magic – something about creature blood?" The lieutenant sighed, fine lashes fluttering over hazel eyes.

"Hakram?" she asked in a resigned tone.

I snorted. "Surprisingly enough, no. Got it out of Nauk."

"Like he's one to talk, the bloody failed berserker," she muttered.

"I don't mean to pry into personal matters," I said. Not strictly true, but I figured I might as well pretend not to be nosy. "I just want to know how it might affect things."

Either she bought that or she was polite enough to pretend to. Pushing back a strand of red hair into the sides of her pixie cut, the lieutenant took a deep breath.

"My grandmother was one of the Fae," she said.

I blinked in surprise. "Like the ones in the Waning Woods, or does that mean something different in Praes?"

She eyed me cautiously. "I keep forgetting you're Callowan," she admitted. "The Fae are... not popular around here, even in the Green Stretch."

I raised an eyebrow. "I mean, they kill Callowans too whenever one's stupid enough to go too deep into the forest but it's not exactly a big deal. They never wander out and the path to Refuge is supposed to be safe."

"The benefits of having a former Calamity ruling your city," Kilian noted. "The blood's pretty diluted, but I still got some things out of it. Mostly the unusual hair and some mage tricks

that require control beyond what most humans can manage.”

“I’m not really seeing downsides, so far,” I pointed out. “Well, besides the racism. But that was kind of given already, what with you being Duni.”

“Isn’t it just?” she replied bitterly. “You’d think with the fucking *Black Knight* being one of us they’d start holding their tongues, but it doesn’t seem to have changed anything.” She took another deep breath, forcing herself to return to the original subject. “Anyway. You’ll note I don’t have wings, which Fae are supposed to have. Whenever I draw in too much power my body tries to make some, which fucks with my head and occasionally makes me lose control over the magic.”

“That sound bad,” I contributed helpfully.

“Pretty bad,” she agreed with the ghost of a smile.

“But you know your limits?” I probed.

“Learned them the hard way,” Kilian grimaced.

“All I needed to know,” I told her, clapping her shoulder in reassurance. “I’ll let you brief your tenth, I need to have a talk with Captain Snatcher.”

She nodded and I rose to my feet, rolling my shoulder under the chain mail. Wearing it for so long was killing my muscles, especially without a proper aketon under to soften the weight. Legionaries were issued something thinner than the padded jacket I was used to, though admittedly mine was meant to be worn with mail.

“Captain,” Kilian suddenly called out.

I half-turned to meet her eyes. “Lieutenant?”

“Thank you,” she said, looking away.

“Any time, Kilian,” I replied quietly.

I hated the part of myself that coldly noted she was more loyal to me now than ever before, but I did not ignore it. *Guilt is fine. Healthy, even. But I will not let it stop me.* Thumb rubbing the hilt of my sword, I went to find Snatcher. There were still details to hash out, and all of my ambitions would be for naught if I lost today.

Arranging a meeting ended up a more complicated matter than I would have thought. Snatcher was inside the fort, and that meant going across the – possibly – mined field. I asked one of the

sergeants still at the wall and he informed me that my fellow captain had left instructions that I be escorted to him if I asked. I was guided across on a hilarious overcomplicated path by a cadet in what I suspected was far from the most efficient route. I did my best to commit it to memory anyway: for all I knew, I might need to use it before the melee was done. To my surprise, I came to find the goblin captain doing manual labour. The wooden platform I'd glimpsed earlier today was being linked to the ground by a minimalist ramp: Snatcher was part of a group of half a dozen goblins laying the finishing touches on it. He gestured for one of the sentries to replace him when he saw me, patting down his clothes to get some of the dust out of them.

"Captain Callow," he greeted me. "I take it you're done briefing your officers?"

"They'll be read when the time comes," I agreed. "Just one last thing to go over with you – I'll be taking a small team through the tunnels, not the entire company. Lieutenant Nauk will be taking most of my cadets north while I'm targeting Aisha's officers."

I did not phrase it as a request because it was not up for debate. Snatcher studied me with a calm face.

"Fair enough," he conceded. "I'll notify my officers. One of my cadets has volunteered to guide you through the tunnels." He paused. "If I may say so, Captain Callow, you're a rather quick study. It has been a pleasure to work with you."

"The same to you," I replied, somewhat surprised to find I meant it.

Snatcher was a pleasant enough sort, and by far the politest goblin I'd ever come across. Talking with General Sacker had been like having a knife at my throat the whole time, I couldn't help but think that Pickler was only ever half-listening when I spoke and the less said about Robber the better. I enjoyed the malevolent little sergeant, true, but if he ever met politeness in a dark alley he'd knife it and rob the corpse.

"All of the Deoraithe attending the College show promise," the other captain noted. "It's a shame so few of you actually serve in the Legions afterwards."

I'd had no idea whatsoever that there were any of the People around, but I kept my surprise off of my face. *Why the Hells would Deoraithe go through a Praesi officer school?*

"You're the first Praesi I've heard referring to them as anything other than Wallerspawn," I replied instead, subtly steering the subject away from my ignorance. Snatcher shrugged.

"The Grey Eyries are a long way from the Wall," he replied.

"Unlike the Clans, the Tribes have no bloody history with the Duchy of Daoine and no grudge to go along with it."

I nodded slowly. That was good to know. It was hard to break the habit of thinking of the Empire as a monolithic entity: even now that I'd learned of the different forces at work inside of it I still had a tendency to assume general opinions remained the same regardless of ethnicity. I considered leaving the conversation at that, but my eyes flicked to the platform and I decided to push my luck.

"If you don't mind my asking," I spoke, "what is that thing for? I've been wondering since Rat Company first set camp."

Snatcher smiled a tad nastily, though the nastiness did not feel like it was directed at me.

"My little surprise for Juniper," he replied. "Did you pay attention to the stocks?"

I nodded. "Though I don't recall anything shedding light on this."

"It's a common mistake to only keep track of the munitions," the goblin said. "It leads people to miss things like my requesting a large bowstring, nails and iron plate."

A large bowstring? What would he use that for? I frowned. Fox Company was, at its core, a sapper company. The function of the sappers in the broader Legion was the use of goblin munitions, the building of fortifications and...

"I thought siege weaponry was forbidden," I said.

"Bringing one is forbidden," Snatcher corrected me. "The regulations say nothing about *building* one."

Another detail fell into place.

"So that's why my scouts found tracks coming from the woods. You were bringing back materials to work with."

"It was a gamble," Snatcher admitted. "There was no way of telling whether or not our battlefield would have lumber on it, and I must admit the ballista we've cobbled together is rather crude."

A *ballista*. Weeping Heavens, and to think I'd believed his company would be the easiest to deal with. And since the better part of his company was goblins, starting bombardment during night time would make no difference to him. He interpreted my silence as worry, and to be honest he wasn't entirely wrong – I really hoped Juniper was the one who ended up having to take this

fort, because I didn't think my own men could pull it off.

"No cause for alarm," he assured me. "We'll only begin firing after either you've taken out Wolf Company or conspicuously failed in doing so."

"Very kind of you," I faintly replied.

Thanks all the Hells I hadn't stuck to my original deal with Aisha: it would have been a bloody rout.

—

I already knew all of my team except for Nomusa. I recognized her from my line when she met us at the head of the tunnel, but we'd never actually talked before. She was Soninke, like Hakram had said, and only a head taller than me – which qualified as short by the standards of her people. She was missing a finger and there was a nasty burn mark in the hollow of her cheek I decided not to ask about. Nilin I already knew, having shared drinks with him in the aftermath of the last game, and smiled at him when he arrived. Robber had already been there when I'd arrived, skulking around and managing to look suspicious without actually doing anything concrete. It was a skill he'd perfected through years of hard work, or so he'd informed me cheerfully. Kilian was the last to show up, slightly out of breath. When she fell behind me in silence our guide for the night finally opened his eyes and rose to his feet.

"My name is Hatcher," he informed us curtly. "I see none of you brought your scutum, which is good – the tunnel is tight enough without dragging along a shield. It'll be dark in there, so keep close to me."

Without further ado he scuttled into the hole in the ground. I was the first to follow and a short drop later I was on solid ground again, crawling on my knees. For once in my life I was glad of my height: even Nilin would find the tunnel a tight fit, and Hakram wouldn't have managed more than a few feet before getting stuck. We waited until everyone dropped and so began our wriggling in the dark. Progress was damnably slow and the air felt thin, but after an eternity of making like worms the tunnel broadened a bit and Hatcher told us to take a break.

"We've passed the first wall," he told me. "Only a bit further now."

"Do you know where in the camp we'll be coming out?" I muttered back.

"The tunnel splits around there in four different directions," he replied. "Most are close to the middle, but you'll be going in

blind.”

“Lucky us,” I grunted.

Without my Name I would not have seen him glare at me in the dark. Soon after we resumed the crawl, and around what I estimated to be the tenth Hail the tunnel broadened again, splitting in the directions as he’d mentioned. Hatcher tapped a hand against the wall of the centre one.

“That one’s the best situated,” he spoke. “You should send two people there, split the others.”

“You heard the man,” I murmured. “Nilin and Kilian, take that one.”

“The rightmost tunnel goes a bit further,” Hatcher told me. “I’ll show you the way.”

Presumptuous of him to assume I’d take that one, but I saw no point in arguing. Robber and Nomusa headed into theirs while I followed the Fox Company legionary. The tunnel tightened again, much to my dismay, and our progress slowed. I peered over Hatcher’s soldier and my blood ran cold when I saw that up ahead was a dead end. *Trap. Shit.*

“Just a moment,” Hatcher spoke. “Something wrong with the ceiling here, I need to have a closer look.”

His hand slowly moved towards a small hole in the wall ground under him, where I glimpsed clay balls. My hand went for my sword and slowly, silently, I unsheathed it.

“You ever been to Summerholm, Captain?” Hatcher asked.

“Only the once,” I replied, shifting around to get a better angle to strike.

“Never been, myself,” he casually spoke. “But my cousin did. She never came back, Squ-”

I rammed the pommel of my sword into the back of his head before he could finish the monologue covering his motivation. *Amateur.* He yelped but the angle had been awkward and he wasn’t knocked out. He dropped the sharper though, and that was what mattered. He threw himself at me but I was ready – releasing my sword I caught his hands and forced him down. Hissing furiously, he bared his teeth and tried for my throat but I head-butted him violently. His nose broke and I did it again, twice as hard. He screamed but his struggling weakened, eventually ceasing entirely.

"I'm guessing you're talking about Chider," I spoke quietly.

"Murderer," he garbled out.

"The hero was the one to kill her, actually," I replied. "Though I won't deny I would have done it myself if it came down to it."

"They'll get you," he sneered through the blood. "Sooner or later, someone will. Little Callowan playing the Squire. You're a joke and everyone knows it."

"Let me guess," I sighed. "You got the information through an anonymous source right before the beginning of the melee?"

A flicker of doubt went through his eyes but, as desperate sorts are wont to do, he doubled down instead of folding.

"No idea what you're talking about," he mocked.

How many other knives had Heiress pointed at me this way, I wondered? How many other legionaries in the melee were out to kill me if they could? I'd need to watch my back very, very closely.

"The part that confuses me is how you thought you'd get away with this," I admitted. "The College is scrying this whole thing as it happens."

"Can't scry underground, you ignorant sow," he spat.

"Ah," I said softly. "That changes things."

There was a look in the goblin's eyes I recognized from the Pit. The one sore losers got, the kind of opponents who knew they'd lost the fight but were already thinking of the next one. He wasn't going to stop. He'd come for me again. Not tonight, not even tomorrow but one day he would try his luck a second time.

"You know, the first night I met him, he told me it didn't get easier," I told the goblin softly.

A trickle of power ran through me as my Name stirred, strengthening my grip. Hand moving with swift purpose, I broke Hatcher's neck.

"It was," I decided, "a very kind lie."

Softly, I closed the cadet's eyes and let out a long breath. I picked up my sword and sheathed it, turning around to crawl back the way I'd come from. I still had a game to win. And no time to think about what a stupid, meaningless way it had been for that cadet to die.

—

I surfaced after having taken the tunnel I'd sent Nilin and Kilian through, the one closest to the centre of the camp. The exit was hidden behind a stone much too large to move easily, covered so it wouldn't be seen at a casual glance. I pushed myself out and knelt in the dirt, holding my breath to hear there were any sentries close by. A few heartbeats later, satisfied there were none, I rose up to a half-crouch and took a better look at my surroundings. I was a little to the south of where I needed to be, if I remembered Pickler's drawing correctly. The captain's tent was supposed to be in the very centre of the camp, where the two main avenues crossed. Aisha had been the target I'd chosen for myself, as she was the most likely to have guards around her — I had a few trump cards at my disposal that the rest of my team didn't if things got out of control. Admittedly the cards were fickle and still rather displeased with me at the moment, but they were still nominally in my hand.

Wolf Company seemed to be largely asleep and there shouldn't be any sentries this deep inside the camp, but I still moved carefully. I passed by two rows of tents nestled close to each other, pausing when I saw torchlight lighting up the space ahead. I peered around the corner of a tent and grimaced when I saw that there was still light in what looked like Aisha's tent. Worse, there was a pair of legionaries standing next to the entry flaps — orcs, and not small ones either. Would it be worth it to circle around and try my way by the back? The longer I waited the higher the chance of getting caught, of course, but it might be wiser to take a chance than go for the noisy front assault. I was late already, thanks to Hatcher's failed assassination plot, but I shouldn't be a problem as long as — I tensed, waiting for the alarm to ring. Silence.

Huh, I mused. This might actually go as planned.

A horn sounded a heartbeat later and I decided that if I ever came face to face with a god I was going to stab it somewhere painful. Casually I started walking in the direction of Bishara's tent, not quite hurrying but definitely not slowly. The guards had snapped to full attention the moment the horn sounded, and *fuck* had one of my legionaries failed? This wouldn't work if we didn't get all of the senior officers. I saw the closest orc glance at me and then to something in the distance — *that's right, nothing to see here, just one of your legionaries assembling* — but the gaze snapped back.

"INTRUDER!" she yelled, but I was already running. "TO THE CAPTAIN!"

She barely had the time to bring her shield up before I bodily slammed into it, knocking her back. The other guard tried to

strike my neck but I angled my head and it bounced off my helmet. The hit still hurt, but I gritted my teeth and stumbled through the flaps to the tent. Aisha was inside, tightening her sword belt without having even bothered to put on a shirt.

"Callow?" she squawked. "What the-"

The flat of my blade, swung two-handed, struck her on the temple before she could reach for her sword. A moment later someone struck me in the back and I was thrown to the ground, rolling to get to my feet as a very angry orc tried to bash my head in with their shield. I ducked behind Aisha's cot, sneaking a look at Wolf Company's captain while a pair of furious orcs turned the wooden frame to kindling. She was out like a light, most likely concussed.

"This has been great," I told the legionaries, backing away to the edge of the tent, "but this is getting a little serious for me. I'm not sure I'm ready for that kind of commitment."

"I'm going to take this out of your hide, *Rat*," the male orc spoke in a surprisingly mellow voice.

And that was my cue to make a daring escape. I kicked the tent pole I'd managed to position myself next to. It did not fall.

"Dug into the ground, huh," I spoke into the incredulous silence. "Bummer."

Well, what was going to follow was not going to be pleasant. I could already hear reinforcements closing in. Actually, I could hear them screaming. In dismay.

"I don't suppose one of you could check the sky?" I asked. "I think-"

Thunder rumbled. Sheathing my sword, I raised my hands up in surrender and carefully walked back out of the tent – one of the orcs shouldered me as I went by, but I was a magnanimous winner and so allowed it to pass without comment. The night sky was streaked with the beautiful image of Wolf Company's standard, a red streak across it. The sweet taste of victory was a little harder to enjoy with a crowd of hostile legionaries gathering around me, but after a moment Nilin pushed his way through them and to me with a wide grin on his face.

"Captain," he said, sounding almost disbelieving. "We did it. I mean, I thought maybe we could pull it off, but we *actually pulled it off*."

His babbling was actually somewhat endearing. I clapped his shoulder with a smile of my own.

"We should have one Hell of a spectacle starting soon, sergeant," I told him. "Captain Snatcher's minions made a ballista, and by now they should be ready to bombard First Company."

"So that's what the platform was for," he mused. "I'd been wondering."

Kilian came around a corner and I waved her over, ignoring the multitude of glares coming in my direction. She put a spring to her step and joined us, Wolf Company parting for her as they started dispersing.

"Lieutenant Kilian," I grinned. "Come on, we need to find a good vantage point."
She raised an eyebrow. "Why would we-"

Thunder rumbled. *What?* I looked up, and next to the red-slashed wolf a fox glared back down on me. Ignoring my legionaries, I headed for the peak of the hill Wolf Company had built their camp on. First Company's camp looked untouched, the few fires surrounded by tents in it slowly dying down. What had happened? Snatcher hadn't so much as thrown a stone. *Wait, where are the sentries?* Not a single legionary was patrolling the perimeter. There should have been someone, if only because of the ruckus my team had made hitting the Wolves. Slowly I felt my stomach sinking and I turned my eyes to Fox Company's walls. In the distance, over the fort's ramparts, a standard bearing crossed silver swords flapped lazily in the night breeze.

"Well," I said. "That's going to be a problem."

nirg

Typos!

An advanced. Missing d

I did not fall. I should be it.

Unmaker

Usual long comment later, but for now, how the heck did Juniper manage that? Right now I am guessing Snatcher's trick in reverse – tunnel into his compound and take out the leadership. And now Catherine *really* has an uphill struggle – the best company, dug into some of the best fortifications.

Soronel Haetir

And hopefully Juniper didn't take out a bunch of Rat company on her way to Fox.

Shikome Kido Mi

Alternately, she found his tunnels.

[greatwyrmgold](#)

Or some of both.

"Thanks for digging those tunnels, Snatcher. If I hadn't found them, I'd have had to dig and deal with the Rats at the same time."

Unmaker

Typos:

weaker than me
weaker than I [was]

"a loud alarm blaring in the back of my head whenever the Soninke noble was fucking me over"
(should that be a Praesi noble?)

disgruntled look taking to Nauk's face
(not wrong, but it reads oddly, especially since 'taking' is used in the next sentence; how about 'appearing on')

If there was
If there were
(hypothetical situations get 'were': https://web.cn.edu/kwheeler/grammar_subjunctive.html)

to both their camp
to both their camps

(possible continuity problem: the tunnel should be completely black, or as near as makes no difference; the goblins can maybe see a little and Catherine has her Name, but how do Nilin and Kilian know where to go when they split up?)

I did not fall.
It did not fall.

back up plan
(usually)
backup plan
(or)
back-up plan

graveled (more than one)
gravelled

(maybe, the word is non-standard anyway, so the correct verb form is not standard either)

If we move quick enough
If we move quickly enough
(character speech, may be as intended)

Two sergeants, a lieutenant and the company's captain was
...were

Juniper and me left
Juniper and I left

defenses
defences
(UK English; original is correct for US English)

avored
favoured
(UK English; original is correct for US English)

nighttime
night time
(or)
night-time

his his head
his head

the the peak
the peak

dueling
duelling
(UK English; original is correct for US English)

outmaneuvering
outmanoeuvring
(UK English; original is correct for US English)

Reactions:

Ratface is missing? The last time we heard from him most of his command had made it into Snatcher's camp. I wonder what the chance is that he has been suborned by Heiress? Getting his father to acknowledge him would be a heck of a bribe.

"a loud alarm blaring in the back of my head whenever the Soninke noble was fucking me over"
Not a good idea – she would never get any sleep for the noise.

"only string to her bow"
This is correct – I have heard this before, but the saying always puzzled me: shouldn't it be the only arrow in her quiver?

I loved it when Catherine interrupted the justification speech and thought he was an amateur for doing it.

"Can't scry underground"

The gamer in me sat up and took note of this. Is it because of the darkness? You would think a goblin mage could look through that. Can't scry inside things? Then a room with the door closed would work. Some inherent property of dirt/rock? Then if a knight can carry around plate armor, then someone equally strong could carry around a covering of dirt/rock to block scrying. However this comes out, it is exploitable. The other possibility is that the goblin was lying and Catherine was seen.

Juniper taking the Fox's fort is going to screw the Rats so hard – now the strongest company is in the strongest fortification. Juniper can just wait and win on points or the equivalent. This is also somewhat unusual – Juniper has been shown as leader who doesn't make mistakes, but that is not the same as coming up with novel strategies. The fact that she or one of her officers can makes her much more dangerous.

George

Woo! Cue devil summoning!

alegio

Another great chapter, another plan I didnt saw coming and another cliff hanger.

This is why I love this thing XD

chadeo

The suspense is killing me :p

One question though, why would Juniper win on points? She has one kill to Catherine's two, if time runs out they tie and that would put Rat company ahead, right?

Unmaker

Depends on how it is scored – taking out other companies might not be worth as much as how many of your people are left standing. Ignoring "how it got that way", a nearly complete company in strong fortifications is notably better than a company reduced to maybe half outside of those fortifications.

More to the point, unless Catherine outright wins, she probably doesn't get the position that she and Heiress are vying for.

FinalPyre

Just found this and read it today. Fun story so far. I'd recommend looking over past chapters for typos, and especially

the formatting errors (giant blocks of text, small sections with different fonts, etc.).

Is there an RSS for this story? I can't seem to find one.

[*bastardjas*](#)

Just finished bingeing, and this is amazing! The dialogue is incredible, the world building seamless, and characters are as deep as a giraffes gullet.

Bravo. Looks like I have another bookmark to make on my computer.

stevenneiman

"set Callow on fire [an->and] advance my cause"

"holding my breath to hear {whether} there were any sentries"

Don't feel too bad, Catherine. Three out of four is pretty good for a first try.

random

Typo:

"They'll be read when the time comes," I agreed

Assuming this is supposed to be "ready" and not read like literature.

jamesc9

On one of my passes, I misread it as 'read in', as in told what's going on.

stevenneiman

"Wise of her, considering [I'd->it'd] take quite a few legionaries"

"I'd decided to use the Lone Swordsman as a way to set Callow on fire [an->and] advance my cause"

"They'll be [read->ready] when the time comes"

[*The Warren Peace NFL Report*](#)

Good to see Cat beginning to acknowledge she was a winner in the power lottery. Sure, she wishes she had something active, flashy, impressive looking. But how much more valuable can it get than a power that gives you the strength to get out of your worst situations alive! It's why her career will be epic. I wonder if Black was looking for someone with her personality traits though not necessarily her, to "game" the Name for the most useful aspects in his squire

[*Horatio Von Becker*](#)

Interesting theory. Plausible, too. Sadly, I just don't have enough data to give more commentary on it.

kelioez

Hey, thats a really intresting perspective, this begs the question that is there a cooldown on the Name or can another one be made just after the one before and that are the Black knights really farming the to get the best rolls, also do all squires become black knight or what other paths are there?

[Horatio Von Becker](#)

Thoughts:

I like Captain Snatcher. A villain of the best school; competent, polite, and with no particular animosity towards their opponents.

Hatcher was interesting. Hard to believe he would be a genuine threat in future, however – I just don't see it. Doesn't seem competent enough.

Catherine didn't pick up the grenade her fallen foe had dropped. Again. And this time, it would have seriously simplified her taking out Aisha when the alarm was already raised.

Are modesty standards different in Praes, or was Aisha wearing an undershirt, or was she uncharacteristically short-sighted for the captain of the ultramobile company? (Similarly, it's odd that the ultramobile company uses legion standard camp setup instead of everybody paring down to bedrolls. An oversight, perhaps.)

[benthelynx](#)

Typo: ready

"They'll be read when the time comes"

sswanlake

Some edits:

set Callow on fire an advance my cause -> set Callow on fire
and advance my cause

They'll be read when the time comes -> They'll be *ready* when the time comes

[Illunis](#)

I sweaaaaar ever since this started I've been thinking that Heiress bribed or blackmailed one of Cat's officers. That's gotta be her final card. Idk how Cat doesn't see it, she's known her Company for like what, a week? And trusts them unconditionally?

Plus Heiress has shown multiple times being adept at manipulating PEOPLE.

First I thought it would be Robber, but that seems too obvious. Then Hakram, but damnit I love the big fella.

But after that heart-to-heart conversation with Kilian? And she shows up “breathless” for the raid? Stab her now, Cat! Stab her now!

Also that shy goblin who killed that goat was named Hatcher, and the goblin Cat just killed was also a Hatcher. They must run out of named fast.

[greatwyrmgold](#)

The Rats seem to care deeply about their company’s lack of standing. Combine that with the punishment for accepting bribes, and it’d take one heck of a deal to get a Rat officer to betray Catherine. (Especially with 84 points on the line.)

[greatwyrmgold](#)

Killing Hatcher in cold blood like that was probably Catherine’s first truly villainous act. Sure, it was in long-term self-defense, but it was still murdering someone who *might* become a threat.

Chapter 27: Callow’s Plan

“What Foundling does isn’t thinking outside the box so much as stealing the box and hitting her opponents with it until they stop moving.”

– Extract from “A Commentary on the Uncivil Wars”, by Juniper of the Red Moon Clan

I crouched down and peered into the dark.

I couldn’t see where it linked up with the tunnels dug by Snatcher’s sappers but there was no doubt that it did: there’d been no assault on the walls and I hadn’t heard any munitions being used. Most likely First Company had taken the Foxes while they were spread out and preparing an assault of their own, decapitating the leadership before they could muster up a real fight.

“Hurried work,” Pickler noted from where she was crouching next to me, “but still stable. Juniper makes up for limited sapper assets by quality.”

First Company’s camp – the one my own legionaries had built – had

been empty. Tents and bedrolls were still in place and often with rocks and debris slipped in so from a distance it would look like they were full, but there was not a living soul among the rocks. I sent Robber to link up with the rest of Rat Company as soon as I saw Juniper's banner on the walls and went to follow the tracks coming out of the back of the camp. They led to the entrance of a tunnel hidden behind a nearby hill, freshly dug. *Which solves the mystery of where First Company's sappers had been holing up.* I sighed and forced myself back up. The night's excitement was already catching up with me, though the ever-expanding list of issues I had to solve would keep me far away from my bedroll for the foreseeable future.

"Collapse the tunnels, Lieutenant," I finally said. "That trick isn't going to work for anyone twice."

Unclasping the cheek flaps of my helmet, I set it down and took a moment to straighten up my ponytail. The part of the helm that covered my neck kept pushing down the leather strip keeping it together, though I usually didn't notice until the fighting was done. *I might have to get it cut soon,* I thought. It kept getting in the way, and I didn't have the time to straighten the knots with my old beaten-up comb the way I'd used to: the whole mess was so tangled up it could have been used as a rope. *Or a noose.*

"It'll be done in a quarter bell," Pickler spoke quietly. "A little more, if you want us to be thorough."

"Thorough is good," I grunted. "Have Robber do the same for the tunnels leading in Wolf Company's camp, I'm not giving Juniper multiple ways out of that fortress."

Sure, I could have used the tunnels too. But now that the element of surprise was gone she would just drop a handful of smokers in them whenever she caught sight of us and let us choke our lungs out in the dark before sweeping up whoever was still standing. Well, crawling. The point still stood. I didn't think she'd risk an assault herself, considering we could do the same to her, but I wasn't going to be taking chances with the Hellhound. Snatcher evidently had, and how had that ended up for him? I made my way up the hill, ducking around a stone spire that looked a little too unstable for my tastes and allowed myself to drop on the ground after checking the close-by bush for snakes.

Ratface had informed me that pretty much everything out in the Wasteland was either poisonous or out to eat your liver – and possibly your soul – before he'd been taken prisoner. Something about how everyone who took over the Tower let out the experiments of the last Tyrant into the wilds, which seemed like a horrible idea to me and therefore entirely in line with the usual Praesi way of doing things. I closed my eyes and lay back against the rock, taking comfort in the fact that I was out of sight and therefore none of my troops could see me totally at a loss for what to do. Nauk had pulled out of Fox Company's fortifications before Juniper had taken them and been entirely unaware of their taking over when Robber had made contact with him. I'd ordered him to take our survivors in the hills beyond either of the already-made camps as soon as he finished looting

Wolf Company's supplies.

It would have been more comfortable to stay in one of the camps instead of pitching our tents out in the wilds, but by now Juniper was bound to have gotten her hands on the ballista. I wasn't sure what the range on that thing was, but Snatcher had believed it could reach First Company's camp and that meant we weren't sticking around. Not that ducking out of sight was going to accomplish anything in the long term: Juniper was still holed up in that *fucking* fortress, with only token casualties and a godsdamned siege weapon to point at my company should it attack. There was no sign of the prisoners taken during our little betrayal reach around from earlier, though I'd found the tents where they'd been kept, so I was still down in the fifties when it came to my effective fighting force. *Which nearly half of is sappers, and those are worthless in a melee.*

What did I have that Juniper did not? She had more men, a better position, and considering she must have ransacked Snatcher's stocks like I had Aisha's we should be about even on munitions. I'd have more demolition charges, considering Wolf Company had taken a Siege inventory, but my cadets would have to get close to use those. *And I'll eat my helmet if she didn't grab all the crossbows she could from Fox Company's men.* My plan had been an elegant thing, when we'd started out the melee. Betray Morok to Aisha, betray Aisha to Snatcher and betray Snatcher to use his fortifications against Juniper. The moment Wolf Company had turned on me, though, it had all gone up in smoke. I'd been on the back foot ever since, and the moment I'd thought I was getting a modicum of control again the Hellhound had turned the entire thing on its head by ending Fox Company in one swift blow. Gods, I was tired. Tired and out of ideas to use against a captain who it was becoming obvious was just better at Legion tactics than I was. It shouldn't have come as a surprise, really. Juniper had trained for years in the College and she was the daughter of one of the most talented generals in the Empire. And yet, on some level, I'd still expected things to turn out to my advantage. They had back in Laure, when my murder had turned into an apprenticeship to Black, and once again in Summerholm when the cock up with the Lone Swordsman had turned into a mess I'd been the most effective at exploiting. Chaos was something I was good at dealing with: rolling with the punches was a skill I'd perfected through my years in the Pit and it served me well when things spun out of control.

The hard truth was that, right now, my bag of tricks was empty. None of the things I'd learned on my own were of any use, and what had Black taught me since I'd become the Squire? A lot of history, some generalities and the basics of swordsmanship. My Name was a recalcitrant little brat and even if it had been cooperating I barely even knew how to use it. I closed my eyes and forced myself to think about nothing, letting the cool night breeze lick at my face. This was the most restful thing I could manage short of actually napping, and I was too wired for that right now. How long passed as I drifted away I couldn't be sure,

but eventually I heard someone make their way up the hill through the same path I had. I opened my eyes but didn't bother to get up. Hakram eventually found me, raising a hairless brow when he saw me sprawled without even the pretence of dignity.

"Taking a break?" he asked.

"This is my thinking pose," I lied.

The tall orc snorted, then took a seat next to me.

"Anything urgent?" I murmured.

"Not right now," he grunted. "First Company's not moving and Pickler is finishing up with the tunnels. You should probably call an officer meeting soon."

"And tell them what?" I scoffed. "That I have no idea how to get us how of this mess?"

It helped that we weren't looking at each other. I wasn't sure I would have managed to admit that if we'd been face-to-face. I liked Hakram, probably the most out of all of my officers. He had a steadiness to him that I found soothing, and even outside the games he was good company.

"Nobody's expecting miracles out of you, Callow," he finally said. "You already got us much farther than anyone else would have."

"I'm also the one who got Rat Company in this mess in the first place," I replied bitterly. "Pickler was right. If I screw this up your careers are going to suffer, all because I thought I was better at this than I actually am."

It was oddly relieving to admit that out loud. I hadn't quite grasped the kind of damage putting Rat Company's score so horribly in the negatives would do to my cadet's placement in the Legions. And yet I could be honest enough with myself to admit that even if I had, I would have made the same gamble.

"You knew the risks," my sergeant gravelled. "And took the chance anyway. Why?"

There was nothing confrontational about the orc's tone. He was, from looks of it, genuinely curious. Trusting implicitly that I'd had a good reason for what I'd done.

"We win this and I'll get command of the Fifteenth Legion," I confessed quietly.

He did not point out that there was no Fifteenth Legion currently in existence, or even a Fourteenth for that matter. I was grateful for it: I was still vague on the details myself, and did not feel like having to explain any of it.

"And if you lose?" Hakram asked instead.

"Heiress gets it," I replied. "She played me, in the Tower.

Called it a wager when it was the most one-sided deal I've ever heard of – and I lived under the rule of Governor fucking Mazus."

"That's how they do things, Callow," the orc breathed out slowly.

"They give you one out to have the pretence of fairness and then tighten the screws. Then they smile and ask how can it be their fault, when you had a way to win but failed?"

There was something bitter in the orc's voice, an old anger that might not have ruled him but was never far from the surface. It was something I could relate to.

"You ever want to change the world, Hakram?"

He laughed quietly. "World's always changing, Callow. We roll the boulder up the mountain until it falls down the other slope, and then we start again. If you're lucky, it doesn't crush anything you care for on the way down."

"And that's all we can hope for?" I grimaced. "Not to be crushed?"

"For people like me?" Hakram gravelled. "Yeah. It is. But you're not like me, Callow. For some reason, you seem to think you can fix this mess. I don't know if you really can. Hells, I don't know if anyone can." I could feel him smile without looking. "But I'd like to see you try."

He pushed himself up and offered me a hand.

"So get off your ass, Callow, and start scheming again. We're not down for the count yet, and I'll be damned if we don't go out making a bloody mess of it."

I looked into the orc's dark eyes and felt a spike of guilt through my stomach. It had been easier to think of the legionaries I wanted to command as tools before I got to know them. I took his hand and let him drag me up.

"Catherine," I finally said. "Call me Catherine."

We made our way back down the hill and I got my head back in the game. I called a meeting as soon as I found a runner, though I didn't bother to limit it to senior officers this time. There were few enough of us left, and I'd had my own sergeant attend every one of them so far anyhow. Kilian's sergeant had been taken prisoner with Ratface but the former captain's own second-in-command was still with us, a stocky female orc named Tordis. She'd remained quiet so far, her brown-red eyes shifting from one lieutenant to the other as they finished giving their reports.

"We set up everyone on half-watches since it's unlikely the Hellhound will move again tonight," Nauk finished in a grunt.

"Camp's not fortified, but with our position it'll be hard for them to sneak up on us."

Nilin looked exhausted, I noticed. His eyelids drooped every few moments and twice now I'd seen him pinch his own wrist. Pickler and Kilian seemed in a better state, though it was admittedly hard to tell with the goblin. As for the sapper lieutenant's main minion, he'd been chewing on something through all the reports which I took mean he was just fine.

"We won't be doing anything until the sun is up either," I told them. "Rest up your cadets as much as possible, we've got a rough patch ahead of us. That said, Robber, what the Weeping Heavens are you eating?"

The small goblin noisily swallowed.

"Goat," he replied. "The one we hunted. First Company roasted it and left some scraps when they moved out."

I raised an eyebrow but passed no further comment. Rations wouldn't be a problem for us: we'd taken both Morok's and Aisha's, so we should have enough for at least another four days. More, actually, considering we weren't at full strength. I'd given thought to trying to starve Juniper out of the

fortifications, given that there was no time limit in this melee, but we'd come to a head long before that. Hunting for more game would be unnecessary, though fresh meat might improve morale if I had the time. Huh. Fresh meat.

"You're a brilliant little bastard, Robber," I told him.

"One of the fundamental truths of Creation," he agreed without missing a beat.

I ignored his gloating. "We'll be sending hunting parties out with dawn," I told my officers. "As many as we can."

Pickler eyed me like I'd grown a second head.

"May I ask why, Captain?" she said hesitantly.

I clenched my fingers and unclenched them. "I'm going to fell some trees to make some carts."

—

By Noon Bell the next day I had laid out in front of me three goats, a pretty mangled antelope and what looked like a rabbit with horns. Wait, did it also have *fangs*? Why would — no, it didn't matter. Trying to figure out why a Dread Emperor had created a breed of carnivorous rabbits would gain me nothing except a splitting headache. The creature would be useless for my purposes anyway, though I supposed that was my own fault for not being more specific.

"I don't know where this is going," Robber announced cheerfully, "but the fact that step one involves slaughtering the local wildlife has filled me with great expectations. Sir."

In an entirely predictable turn of events, my praise had gone to Robber's head with swift efficiency. The better part of my sapper line was standing in the sun looking at the line of corpses with politely confused expressions. I'd seen Pickler open her mouth and then close it without saying a word several times from the corner of my eye.

"One of the goats first," I muttered to myself.

I knelt next to the closest corpse and closed my eyes, reaching for my Name. It felt faraway still, but not as much as it once had — the last few weeks had begun to repair the bridge I'd

damaged, one morally dubious decision at a time. This was different in nature to tapping into one of my aspects, where I let the power flow through me and harnessed it for my own

purposes. I was submerging myself into my Role, reaching for those cool depths I'd touched only twice before. For a moment

nothing happened, but then I felt it. That great weight pushing against me, the coldness unnatural to Creation that somehow managed not to feel *wrong*. I smiled and felt a sharp prick

against the palm of my hand, like I'd been jabbed by a needle. The coldness spread to the goat's corpse. I got back on my feet

and, after a heartbeat, so did the goat. I tugged at a string and its head turned to look at me. Another exertion of will and it

stepped forward, then back.

"Necromancy," Pickler spoke after a blink of surprise. "I did not know you were a mage."

"I'm not," I admitted. "This is Name shenanigans, I'm not entirely clear on how it works."

The goblin lieutenant was openly dubious but managed to rally valiantly. "So we now have a goat. This is... progress?"

"You're going to carve it up," I told her. "And put munitions in it."

There was a moment of silence until Robber's convulsive laughter filled it.

"Oh Gods," he gasped. "Juniper's got a fortress and our answer is *suicide goats*."

"I'm not sure if that's technically accurate," I frowned. "I mean, they're already dead."

Another burst of laughter. "Undead suicide goats," he corrected himself breathlessly. "Very sorry, Captain. For the record, I don't care whether we lose this one anymore. This is already a victory in every way that matters."

Engaging him any further would just be seen as encouragement, I decided. I turned to Pickler, who looked like she wasn't sure whether to be appalled or impressed. I had a feeling it was not the last time in my career a subordinate was going to be looking at me this way.

"I want the first one to have enough munitions stuffed in that it can blow cleanly through the palisade," I told the lieutenant. Pickler cleared her throat. "Punching our way through the first wall will be pointless if the entire First Company is arrayed behind it," she pointed out. "We'll still be outnumbered and outclassed."

"We're not going to be fighting them, Lieutenant," I grunted.

"The only thing we have going for us right now is a ridiculous amount of munitions and the ability to make expendable carriers for them. I intend to abuse that as much as possible."

She nodded, uncertain but unwilling to argue.

"We'll still need to get a mage in range to detonate the... goats," she reminded me.

It took a visible effort to speak the last word of that sentence.

"I'll escort Kilian onto the field," I replied. "I need line of sight myself for fine – *Robber stop godsdamned touching it*."

I could feel the goblin's fingers poking experimentally at the corpse's skin, which added that layer of additional creepiness to an already eerie feeling. The sergeant grinned unrepentantly in my direction.

"Permission to name the goats, sir?" he asked.

"Denied," I replied without so much as a speck of hesitation.

"Both Morok's Revenge and I are very disappointed in your decision, Captain," he told me, patting the goat's head comfortingly.

"Morok's Revenge?" I repeated, already regretting the quizzical intonation before I'd even finished saying the words.

"It's the ugliest and least impressive of the three," Robber provided cheerfully.

I really needed to have a closer look at Legion regulations. It was an Evil institution, there was bound to be a loophole that

allowed you to strangle irritating minions in the bylaws.
“Well. He’s not wrong,” another of the goblins muttered.
“Oh, we can have another one referring to Bishara,” a third contributed excitedly. “Something like ‘Aisha’dnt Have Done That’.”

The meeting quickly devolved into my sappers throwing around progressively more absurd names for our secret weapons.

“Pickler,” I spoke flatly, turning to the embarrassed-looking lieutenant who was watching the madness spread through her cadets. “I expect you to find a truly vicious punishment for the one that made the pun.”

Without a single look back I walked away, massaging the bridge of my nose and ignoring the indignant cry of “we’re not naming it ‘Ratface’s Ex’, he’s not even here to hear about it” for the sake of my sanity. *Sappers. Mad, every last one of them.*

—

Keeping my tenth in a ramshackle testudo formation meant we could only move slowly, but it was necessary nonetheless: I didn’t want any of the soldiers on the wall to see our trump card until it was too close for them to do anything about it.

“Incoming,” Kilian hissed, a streak of fear in her voice.

I popped my head out from behind the cover of the shields, immediately seeing the stone sailing across the clear afternoon sky. First Company had overshot – it was in no danger of hitting us and landed on the hill behind my tenth. The geyser of sand and stone caused by the impact made it very clear that none of us would be getting back up if Juniper landed a shot properly, though.

“Pick up the pace, cadets,” I ordered.

From the looks of it Juniper had put two lines up on the palisade Snatcher had helpfully built for her, which wouldn’t have been as much of a problem if even from where I stood I hadn’t been able to glimpse that the cadets were armed with crossbows. I knew the Hellhound could easily have fit twice as many legionaries behind the wall, which probably meant she was trying to bait me into an assault. If I’d truly been in straits as desperate as the ones she believed, it might even have worked.

“Another thirty feet, then we disperse,” I told the legionaries in a whisper.

A few of us would probably get shot by crossbow bolts – we were already in range, actually, but limited ammunition meant Juniper had likely ordered her legionaries to hold off until they could make the bolts count – but if it was a choice between that and continuing to present a good ballista target then there was no need to think about it twice.

“Even a glancing hit will set it off,” I reminded Kilian in a murmur. “The demolition charge alone would have done the trick but they added a few sharpers just in case.”

The sappers had spent quite some time tinkering with the munitions after carving up the corpse. I’d become a little

curious about what it would look like when Morok's Revenge went out in a blaze of glory.

"Ten feet," I warned my cadets after peeking out from behind the shields.

I counted my breaths in silence, glancing at Kilian every few moments to verify the ballista wasn't about to make us a moot point. The redhead's face remained outwardly calm, though the way her fingers held the grip of her sword so tightly her knuckles were paling was something of a giveaway for her true state of mind.

"On my word, disperse," I whispered.

My legionaries immediately scattered, leaving Kilian and I standing beside an already moving undead. The mage lost no time in chanting her incantation as I willed the goat to move more quickly, crossing the last dozen feet separating it from the palisade in moments. There was a cry of alarm from the soldiers behind it but it was late, too late, and the fireball flew from Kilian's outstretched hand. It clipped the side of the animated creature, and that was enough. There was a flash of light and then thunder struck, the explosion outright shattering a chunk of the palisade at least ten feet wide. The redheaded lieutenant and I started legging it without missing a beat, though a part of me wanted to stop and gape. Neither of us stopped before we were well in cover behind another hill: I dropped down, catching my breath and making a quick headcount. None of my cadets had been shot, it seemed. Lucky us.

"The explosion should not have been that large," I got out breathlessly. "Or that intense."

"It's because of the Name, I think," Kilian panted. "Munitions are alchemy, they can feed on other power sources."

I closed my eyes. So, my trump card was more effective than previously anticipated. I could work with that.

"Send Nauk a runner," I told the lieutenant. "We start phase two immediately."

seronx

Oh jeez! UNDEAD SUICIDE GOATS!

cartesiandaemon

Undead suicide goats!

NerfContessa

Indeed.

The second leg of cats early fame.

1: green fire

2:suicide goat zombies

3: read on 😊

Ceres

I am falling in love with the goblins, they are hilarious.

Tata Man

Goblins are always a treat when done right. Tiny Chaotic Neutral buggers made up entirely of concentrated spite is a recipe for some very entertaining characters.

LionHeart

Getting the same vibes from these goblin sappers as the Sappers from Malazan. Love it!

Cpt. Obvious

I think they're distantly related. As in erraticerrata has said he read and liked The Malazan Book of the Dead. Also I seem to remember him saying he borrowed the name 'cusser' for a nasty piece of sapper munitions from the Malazan sappers.

But other than being certifiably crazy, which is more or less a requirement if you are going to lug around satchels full of highly volatile munitions, they are quite different. For instance does Malazan sappers rarely eat their enemies...

samshadar

Undead Suicide Goats? This is priceless! And you just have to love the sappers... they are happy whenever they have access to new and creative ways of blowing things up... but this? The goblins will revere her as a "herald of boom" ^^

Soronel Haetir

Dayum, undead suicide goat, now that is just awesome.

Daemion

This chapter had me laughing so hard. Undead suicide goats and the sappers ... 😊

stevenneiman

Likewise. I especially liked the bit about why they couldn't name one Ratface's Ex.

samshadar

Undead Suicide Goats? That's just hilarious! Sappers by and large are always happy to have new and creative methods of blowing things up. But this one takes the cake. She will be revered by her goblin sappers as the "herald of boom". 😊

[euodiachloris](#)

Well, it appears that a certain Name quite likes practical jokes as well chemical geekiness. The Squire, ladies and gents: industrious, studious and serious on the surface, but a trickster when It can get away with it. 😊

Unmaker

"I could feel the goblin's fingers poking experimentally at the corpse's skin"

Then how did it feel to have the goat cut up and stuffed with munitions? That must have been unpleasant.

Yunamed

Hey man, are you still around for the latest chapters...? I'd really love to see your take on them.

Evi

The undead suicide goats were priceless. And also the puny names were just too much.

I read the name "Aisha'dnt Have Done That'." and laughed out loud. In class. Luckily we were just coming back from lunch break and not in the middle of a presentation or something but STILL. Also the beginning quote has given me so many high expectations for the rest of this war wow.

Catherine continues to be the best.

Captain Amazing

That quote at the top makes me think that Juniper is going to get that other new army they're setting up. I was thinking that Catherine should give the army to Juniper in order to encourage good relations and get back to training, but with that quote suggesting her as a peer I have to think differently.

nipi

Or maybe Heiress will get a legion anyway. She is the Empresses mini-me.

Unmaker

Typos:

I closed my eyes and laid back
...lay back

no as much
not as much

It felt faraway
(usually)
It felt far away

muntions
munitions

standing besides
standing beside

at lest ten feet wide
at least ten feet wide

myself went to follow
I went to follow

Reactions:

Oh, that chapter opening quote is telling. It implies that Juniper and Catherine are both still around much later and that something called the Uncivil Wars happens, which sounds an awful lot like what Catherine wants to happen.

I understand why Catherine collapsed the tunnels, but sending in an undead carnivorous bunny would have been such a good intimidation tactic. Or spy tactic, if Catherine can use some of her zombie's senses.

Robber's amusement is infectious, including to the reader. The mad bomber stereotype lives!

I am not getting what Phase 2 is, besides the fact that it includes carts. Unless the undead goats move a lot faster than people on foot do, all Juniper has to do is disengage when they get close, and the worst that Catherine can do is knock down the fortifications, which would still leave Juniper with about a 2:1 numerical advantage to work with.

Cpt. Obvious

Seven years and counting. Necro posting at its finest!

But this is more for new readers, and yes those still exists now seven years later.

As for Catherine using the zombies senses that appears to be a big no. When talking about the goat bomber she said she needed line of sight to maneuver it with any precision. This indicates that she can't see through her link with the zombie.

"But she could feel Robber poking at it?" I hear (not really) some say. I think this had more to do with her link to the zombies muscles than to any sense of touch. When Robber poked the undead goat the strings Cat visualises as being used to make the kadaver move will be stretched or go slack, and that's probably what Cat 'feels'.

Also goats... But no that would be a spoiler. Sorry but you'll have to wonder about the goats for quite a while... Ain't I a stinker? ;>)

Ratface's Ex

Catherine manages to be surprising, funny and effective at the same time. This is amazing. I really want to see how this battle unfolds.

I'm also 99% sure her actual trump card is hidden away behind Robber's song from two chapters ago. The quote at the start of this chapter can't be referring just to the goats. I mean they're hilarious and great tools but that can't be a level of thinking outside the box that would be chronicled. That song clearly has something to do with their little spot of drug-induced amnesia at the start of the games. Catherine probably built up a plan after taking the memory-erasing thingy and the better way to make sure Juniper doesn't catch on is that if she herself forgets it as well.

I really thought "Love ends with the kiss of the knife" would refer to Ratface and Aisha but he's MIA and she's out of the melee.

And as someone else mentioned in the comments, the scrying underground rule is weird. If I put my tinfoil hat on, I would theorize this is a plan of Heiress to get Catherine to break the rules of the game while she thinks she's not getting scryed and therefore disqualifying herself from the games. But that might be taking things to far. Is there any actual rule against killing?

Okay that's enough theorizing. Can't wait until next week!

[erraticerrata](#)

There is a rule against killing, though to be specific it is against intended killing – accidents happen now and then, but they're not a motive for disqualification.

Matthew

This is comment necromancy but how is there not a way in the games to simulate killing?

If I am in the wargame and I capture 8 soldiers, I should be able to kill them.

In the actual field, if the Legions of Terror capture 8 people but they need to move and don't have the troops to spare to hold them, they would definitely just kill them. Killing enemy troops you have captured is definitely an option under the "One sin, One Grace" framework.

So why can't the Legion do that during war games? If they capture someone, or get close enough to put a blunted sword at their throat, then they should be able to say... "You're dead" and then they have to leave the game. There is scrying so the game runners can make sure they hold to it.

The solution in the story so far to taking enemy troops out permanently seems to be breaking ankles or causing concussions which seems like a bad thing to do repeatedly to troops you want to use later.

Bart

"The solution in the story so far to taking enemy troops out permanently seems to be breaking ankles or causing concussions which seems like a bad thing to do repeatedly to troops you want to use later."

There's a practical aspect as well. With healing magic really available, it trains the troops to see broken ankles and concussions as no big deal. Plus the troops get practical experience in causing pain, which is important if you don't want namby-pamby troops.

I'm nobody special, but the usual practice is to post a comment on the latest thread, linking back to the old post you want to talk about.

FinalPyre

I can't seem to post, so hopefully I don't end up multi-posting...

Hahaha, that is a pretty fun plan indeed. 😊

I know I asked about it last time, but it would appear there isn't one: would you mind adding an RSS, so I can easily follow the story?

Typos (I think I removed all the already caught ones...):
I close my eyes and forced
close -> closed

up the hill through the same path I'd had.
I'd -> I

Then they smile and ask how can it be their fault, when you had a way to win but failed?"

I don't think you intend for this to end with a question mark.

I'd given though to trying
though -> thought

though I suppose that was my own
probably should be "supposed"

A few of us would probably get shot by crossbow bolts – we were already in range, actually, but limited ammunition meant Juniper had likely ordered her legionaries to hold off until they could make the bolts count – but if it was a choice between that and continuing to present a good ballista target then there was no need to think about it twice.

Entirely one sentence, consider revising. The dashes improve the situation, but I find the two but's in a row make reading it awkward.

[erraticerrata](#)

Added the RSS yesterday, bottom of the sidebar menu. Do tell me if there's something wrong with it – technologically incompetent is one of the kindest things I've been called when it comes to the wordpress stuff.

FinalPyre

Thank you! It looks like it is working properly so far.

Bart

I'm so happy that the next chapter comes in only two days. 😊

I wish there was a way to sign up to get updates emailed to me, instead of just getting comments emailed to me.

Alegio

Cant wait for the next chapter, but seriously how can I not like a story where suicide undead goats are actually a viable war plan;

Alegio

/sorry about typos, Im at work and my boss scared me)

ArtNJ

Really good work so far. I almost didnt try this one because of the title. There are a lot of really amateurish and dumb books

with similar titles. I know that's kind of a dumb comment in a way, but a lot of experience led me to conclude that a book with a title like this is likely bad. I know the title fits your story, but something like "Embracing the Darkness" wouldn't have set off my warning bells the same way. Anyway, suicide goats ftw! Wish you were faster! Do you really need ALL your real life time??

Captain Amazing

Ok, anyone think the next chapter might be Heiress' Plan? As the game isn't actually over yet the title theme has to change or they have to pick someone else, and we haven't yet seen the full ramifications of Heiress' setup.

[moridain](#)

Yeah, I am with him. Win or Loss you are one of the people on the side with Undead Suicide Goats. You already Won at Life. The game itself is gravy.

Shikome Kido Mi

Like our narrator, I find myself quite fond of Robber and often agreeing with him.

This truly is a victory in every way that counts.

stevenneiman

"which I took {to} mean he was just fine."

Undead suicide goats almost sounds like a band name.

[coloursofdespair](#)

That quote at the start of the chapter tho

[DarkoNeko](#)

I totally lost it at the naming part, hahaha

[Thanatos](#)

"Aisha'dnt have done that"

My sides are *in fucking orbit*

stevenneiman

"would do to my [cadet's->cadets'] placement in the Legions" this is the possessive form of a plural noun, assuming I'm reading it right.

In other news, I just realized that this page's comment means that there will be something called the Uncivil Wars.

Mecanimus

You're a fucking genius

sswanlake

Some edits:

remained outwardly calm, tough the way -> remained outwardly calm, *though* the way

[madstack](#)

I really hope Robber sticks around. 😊

Poetically Psychotic

The page quote has me expecting great things. The suicide goats is a good start (though it was the punning sappers that really sold it!), and I'm looking forward to Phase 2.

Aron Nykom

"Undead suicide goats, fabulous idea sir!"

Anon

"Undead suicide goats, fabulous idea sir!"

[Mental Mouse](#)

> I turned to Pickler, who looked like she wasn't sure whether to be appalled or impressed. I had a feeling it was not the last time in my career a subordinate was going to be looking at me this way.

Spoiler: It's not. 😊

Rraune

"he'd been chewing on something through all the reports which I took mean he was just fine."
took to mean

Lynn

god i love robber that devious little bastard.

this is still shaping up to be a really fun read! i'm already dreading the end and i'm not even fully through the first book yet.

Chapter 28: Win Condition

"Our doctrine is one of cost-efficiency. Any officer who believes extermination of the enemy is a valid path to victory should immediately be demoted back to the ranks."

—Marshal Ranker

"What makes you think she'll abandon the first wall?"

Kilian's breath was steadier now that she'd had a few moments to catch it. Running in chain mail could really take it out of you, and if Captain hadn't made a habit of drilling me in plate it might have been as hard on my lungs as the redhead's. I cast her a sideways look.

"Having doubts, Lieutenant?" I asked.

She shook her head. "I'm trying to understand where your certainty is coming from," she replied.

"It took me a while to get it, but Juniper's actually somewhat predictable," I grunted.

Now there *definitely* was scepticism on the pretty mage's face.

"Predictable is, uh, not a word I'd use for the Hellhound. Sir," she said delicately.

"She always makes the correct choice," I pointed out, closing my eyes. "When she has the necessary information, she makes the best decision she could make."

Kilian frowned. "So you're saying..." she trailed off, evidently not too sure about what I was saying.

Couldn't blame her, really. This wasn't something I'd figured out using wits and logic – it had been instinctual. Similar to the way I'd read opponents in the Pit, only applied to warfare instead of breaking a single person's legs.

"If I know what the best move for her to make is, I can be fairly certain it's the one she'll make," I replied, opening my eyes and turning on my belly to crawl my way closer to the crest of the hill.

The redheaded lieutenant did the same, joining me in taking a peek over the dust and stone. Like I'd predicted, First Company's

lines were preparing to retreat back across the mine field. One of Juniper's sappers casually tossed a smoker into the hole I'd blown through the palisade a moment later, preventing me from getting a look at the path they were using. *Ugh. I mean, I was pretty sure they'd do that but it's still going to be a pain to figure out the way through.*

"It's limited in scope, Kilian," I told her as I pushed myself back into cover. "I have no reliable way of knowing what she does and doesn't know, so it's still very much a guessing game. But if I have the initiative, then I can predict some of her reactions."

I waved vaguely in the direction of what had once been Fox Company's stronghold.

"What she knows right now is that I have access to munitions that can blow through her first wall and some sort of expendable creature minions to deliver them," I grunted. "So she's going to pull back behind the rampart until she can figure out how I managed that. It's not like she's losing anything, anyway: even if we manned the first wall from the other side we don't have the strength to hold it against her. She could just claim it back whenever she wants."

By now the runner I'd sent to Nauk should have gotten the remnants of my company moving. Keeping out of sight as long as possible, they'd wait until the last moment to run across the ballista's killing field until they could take shelter behind the enemy's own palisade. Pickler had assured me that the same platform Snatcher had built to ensure the siege engine would have a clear shot at the enemy camps meant that once we got close enough Juniper wouldn't be able to adjust the angle low enough to aim at us. There was something mildly absurd about using the enemy's fortifications as cover against them, but the situation I was in was beyond the ability of orthodox tactics to salvage.

Pretty much the only advantage on my side at this point was that by holing up in the fortress Juniper had given up the initiative. It was, I believed, a conscious decision on her part. She could have assaulted us almost immediately after taking out Snatcher, but the Hellhound was aware of what kind of fuckery Names could pull when you put their backs up against the wall. She was doing all she could to avoid outright cornering me while still stacking the odds on her side. If I'd decided to pull out and head into the wilds, then she would have simply followed in her own time: First Company functioned at its best when on the field, so it wasn't like she'd have been giving me much of an edge there. Regardless, after hitting the bottom of the barrel last night I'd bounced back into the semblance of a plan. My largest mistake so far was that I'd been trying to beat Juniper as a captain when the fact was that she was just *better* at this than I was.

She was a better tactician and her company was flatly superior to mine – which shouldn't have come as a surprise, considering Ratface had tried to make Rat Company a knock-off version of hers. If I played this game the way it was meant to be played, I'd lose every time. Like Black had told me in his usual semi-cryptic jackass advice session, I had to win despite the rules instead of according to them. The suicide goats were a first step towards that, as a method of attack that had no real precedent in the war games. The necromantic constructs weren't significant because of how effective they were, although it looked like they'd be pretty damned effective, but because by pulling out a new trick I'd been able to seize the initiative. As long as I had Juniper reacting instead of acting, the Heavens were on my side.

"Although I guess technically they're on neither of our sides," I muttered to myself. "Probably should stop calling on them period."

Kilian shot me a curious look but passed no comment. I glanced at my tenth and was pleased to see they appeared to have recovered from the run. Whatever his flaws as a captain, Ratface had drilled his legionaries into very good shape.

"As soon as Nauk gets out of cover, we'll be running across," I called out, making sure all of them acknowledged the reminder before turning my attention back to more pressing matters.

Crawling my way back up the hill, I scanned the distance for the rest of my company. Couldn't see any sign of them, which I put down as another mark in Nauk's favour: the large lieutenant was a highly competent officer, when he wasn't in the throes of the Red Rage. Overly aggressive in his tactics, maybe, but for a frontline commander that wasn't always a bad thing. Captain had mentioned General Istrid was also considered a little too bloodthirsty and she was one of the most respected military commanders in the Empire. After the three Marshals, she was one of the household names forged during the Conquest. I waited in silence for Rat Company to appear, and my patience was eventually rewarded: without so much as a word of warning, sixty-odd legionaries started running downhill towards the palisade.

"That's our cue, ladies and gentlemen," I called out, pushing myself up.

I picked up my shield and waited a few heartbeats before starting to sprint back across the grounds I'd covered only moments ago. There was no point in having my legionaries form up: if anything, it would be a liability. A tenth moving slowly and clustered together was prime ballista bait. Feeling my lungs burn as I forced my body to move, I jumped over a low-riding bush and only barely managed not to trip as my foot got snagged into a root. Whirling on myself I steadied my footing at the last minute and continued to push through. My tenth wasn't far behind and before

I'd managed to catch my breath at the foot of the palisade the majority of them were already at my side.

"We got everyone?" I panted.

Kilian nodded, too out of breath to get any actual words out. Gods, I hated running in armour. I'd heard no impact in the distance, which meant First Company either hadn't been ready to shoot in time or that we'd offered them no target worth the effort. Nauk's soldiers were milling by the palisade further to the south-east, slowly spreading out, and I gestured for my own tenth to join them. We walked, taking our time – there was no need to hurry this part of the operation, and going in unprepared was likely to see us brutally spanked. The lieutenant with the still-broken arm found me easily. There was a restless way to him, like he had an itch he couldn't quite scratch.

"Callow," Nauk greeted me. "Divided the lot of them like you told me. We'll be ready to move as soon as Kilian reclaims her tenth."

From the corner of my eye I could see the redhead heading for her mages, soldiers moving out of her way as she did.

"Good," I grunted. "Pickler managed to make all the screens?"

"They're ready," the orc nodded. "Shame we don't have vinegar to soak them in, but we'll make do."

I'd been more than happy to delegate the whole affair to the sapper lieutenant, having no experience whatsoever in crafting the likes of it myself. To be honest, my skillset largely considered of "bashing people's heads in" and "ordering people to bash other people's heads in". It was a good thing that for all their quirks my officers had a knack for their area of expertise, because what I knew about sapper's work would fit into a thimble. And not even a very big one.

"Wish I could do more than stand around like a waste of flesh," Nauk admitted. "I've been useless to you since the scrap with Morok."

I clapped his shoulder. "I don't need someone to break skulls right now, Nauk," I told him honestly. "I need someone to watch over the company while I try to outmanoeuvre Juniper, and you've done that just fine."

The large orc shuffled his feet uncomfortably. He looked pleased – or hungry. It could be hard to tell with orcs.

"Wade in their blood, Captain," Nauk gravelled. "I've been looking forward to this part since you told us the plan."

So had I. It was about time we got to be the ones causing trouble. I left the orc lieutenant to it and went to check on the walking absurdity that was my trump card. Unsurprisingly, Robber was the one watching over Ratface's Ex. My legionaries insisted on calling the goat by the verbal abomination that was the other proposed name, but I refused to humour them in this. A girl had to have *some* principles, and I drew the line at puns.

"Everything ready, Sergeant?" I asked.

"On our part, sure," the goblin replied, eyes still fixed on the unmoving goat. "Can't answer for Lieutenant Kilian's merry parade of magical minions."

I let the dig pass without comment, since he'd at least bothered to tack on Kilian's rank to it. Kneeling next to the corpse, I touched its forehead and with an exertion of will had it rise to its feet. To my surprise I'd manage to raise all of the carcasses provided by my men without any real trouble, though I'd yet to figure out how to manipulate more than one at a time. The corpses remained still unless I willed it otherwise, and I'd found that after leaving one alone for too long I needed physical contact to make it work properly again. There would be no zombie army for me, it seemed, and Weeping Heavens when had I reached a point in my life where I was using the words "zombie army" without a hint of irony?

"Tell Pickler to get the line in position," I told another sapper standing close by. "We won't have much time between the first hit and the second."

The female goblin saluted and scuttled off without a word as I returned my attention to the zombie. My main obstacle at the moment was the mine field. Assaulting the rampart was nothing more than a daydream as long as my company hadn't secured a way across it. That we weren't in the ballista's angle of fire anymore was one problem dealt with, but the fact remained that any people I sent through would be getting peppered with crossbow fire the whole time. I could more or less deal with that by putting my cadets in a testudo formation, but packing them that tightly as they made their way through a field line with demolition charges would lead to horrific casualties. My first step, then, was to be clearing a safe path for my company. Thankfully, I had expendable assets to send into the grinder.

Ratface's Ex dutifully followed me as I passed through the gap I'd had blown into the palisade, coming to stand at the edge of the killing field and gazing at the rampart. As expected the top of it was bristling with enemy legionaries, all of them armed with Snatcher's crossbows. I couldn't see Juniper, but I had no doubt that she was standing somewhere she could see the whole battlefield. Behind me my sapper line trickled through the hole, the front ranks carrying large screens of leather framed by

repurposed sudis. All of the components had been cannibalized from Aisha's camp, the leather coming from her tents and the wood and nails taken from her first line of defence. In the absence of the second tenth of my mage line and their large shields this ramshackle kind of cover would have to serve – much to my displeasure, every single member of that tenth had been taken prisoner with Ratface. Kilian's mages spread out among the sappers in groups of three, the redhead in question coming to stand by my side in silence. I cracked my fingers and took a deep breath. *Time to get the stone rolling.*

Before I could get so much as a word out, Robber broke formation and strolled to the edge of the field. Straightening his back, he stood as high as his four feet and a half of height allowed him and slowly unsheathed his sword. Face solemn, he brandished the blade at First Company.

"Unleash the goat," he commanded, clearly relishing every word coming out of his mouth.

"Remind me to stick him with latrine duty for at least a month," I told Kilian in an aside.

The mage snorted. With a sigh, I willed the goat to move forward. The pace I set was fast, though not enough to damage the corpse's integrity, and I set it to a path that passed straight through the middle of the field. It was facing the only part of the ramparts that wasn't ten feet high: instead of packed rock and dirt there was a palisade there serving as a makeshift gate. More importantly, it was the only part of the fortifications that wasn't barred by the ditch. The goat made it about fifteen feet before the sand under it detonated. I grimaced. It was a good thing that my ability to sense through the creature's skin numbed pretty quickly after I raised it, otherwise that would have been a bitch of a backlash. I focused on my connection to the necromantic construct and noted that while it was damaged it was still, in fact, capable of moving. *Makes sense. Snatcher's not going to use a munition grade that risks actually killing other cadets.* No doubt a living creature would have been knocked unconscious or, barring that, been incapacitated by the shattered bones. Fortunately, Ratface's Ex had no such limitations. Mustering vague memories of when I'd done the same to my own fingers, I pulled at strings and popped the goat's bones back into place. It slowly got back to its feet and started limping forward the field. It managed to make it to fifty feet before the first fireball from the rampart struck it. Another three followed almost a heartbeat later, hitting the goat almost simultaneously.

"Gotcha," I grinned sharply.

"NOW," Kilian called out.

My three clusters of three mages immediately fired back fireballs of their own straight at the source of the enemy magic. All but one of the enemy casters were drowned in a storm of flame before they could get back in cover. One fireball they might have weathered without too much damage, but three? Those three mages had been knocked out of the melee for now. Unfortunate that I'd had to split my mage line in clusters of three instead of pairs, but Kilian had informed me she couldn't promise a sure takedown if she couldn't concentrate the magic at least that much. First Company was superbly trained: before I could count five heartbeats the rest of its mage line was returning fire at my now exposed mages. *Too late, Hellhound.* My sappers moved their screens forward and the mages ran to take cover behind the stretched out leather. I frowned as the flame impacted Pickler's screens: two of them held up admirably, but the third's frame splintered as fire spread across its surface. Kilian cursed and I followed her gaze to a lone silhouette on the rampart, where a mage's raised hand was slowly wreathing itself in bolts of blinding energy. *Shit.* I hadn't anticipated Juniper would have any mages capable of calling down lightning. If they managed to hit the screen that had already been damaged...

"No you don't," the Duni growled.

The redhead bit her thumb as I blinked in surprise, drawing blood and swiping a line of it across her cheek.

"I am the root and the crown, the source and the flow, the storm and the calm," she murmured. "Power is purpose, purpose is will. Gods of my mother, take this offering and *grant me the wrath of Heaven.*"

The last words were an angry hiss, and she threw her hand forward in a snap. A gauntlet of lightning burst into existence around her fingers, a thick thread of it streaking forward across the air with a violent crackle and colliding with the bolt thrown by the enemy mage maybe four feet above my fleeing soldiers. The magic impacted with a deafening howl but Kilian's spell held, both streaks of lightning flickering out of existence after the clash. My lieutenant's cheeks were flushed and she was panting, the streak of blood on her cheek somehow turned to ash.

That had been... impressive. And, if I was to be entirely honest, just a little bit arousing. Seeing her harness that kind of power with nothing more than a handful of words and being pissed off... I coughed and turned my attention back to the now-smouldering Ratface's Ex. Now was definitely not the time to wonder what the redhead looked like out of her armour.

Unfortunately, my zombie was no longer in a state fit for running. I willed it to crawl forward anyhow and it made it another ten feet before a last fireball destroyed it beyond even my ability to control. I clenched my fingers and unclenched them.

Sixty feet out of a hundred, not bad. The question was, was there another charge buried in those last forty feet? The path I'd cleared was the easiest, quickest way to the fort's entrance. If there was somewhere to mine, that was definitely it. On the other hand, Snatcher might have thought that no one would be stupid enough to go further in a straight line after running into a charge fifteen feet in. Out of my four undead, two were already unusable. The remaining goat and the gazelle were loaded with munitions I couldn't afford to lose on a mine: I needed that gate blown up, and quickly.

"Well, Snatcher," I murmured to myself. "Here's hoping you decided to get tricky on our asses."

Pickler had brought the next goat forward when she'd moved in her sappers, propping it up against the palisade like it was a poorly-built bookshelf. It took no more than a few moments to re-establish my connection with the undead, the animated corpse skipping back with me when I returned to Kilian's side.

"Give the signal," I ordered her. "We're beginning phase three."

"Operation Fainting Goat is a go," she murmured, and I shot her a genuinely betrayed look.

Kilian had been one of the few strongholds of sanity left when the undead suicide goat plan had spread to the rank and file, that she would get on the wagon now was treachery of the worst sort. That Hakram had been the one to dryly suggest the name was even worse. Regardless, the mage raised her hand and with a few mangled syllables created the Miezian numeral for three out of flames. A moment later half of my sappers got moving, escorted by the surviving tenth of Ratface's line: Sergeant Tordis led from the front, shield raised high. This would be the tricky part, when it came down to it. I should have made Juniper wary of using her mages by making it clear my own would immediately retaliate but she had other options. Risking one of my remaining tenths in fighting shape left a foul taste in the mouth yet it was necessary if the sappers were to get within range without getting put down by crossbow fire.

The first bolts hit when they'd made it twenty feet in through the path I'd cleared. Immediately my regulars tightened their ranks and the sappers crouched behind them, the lot of them still pushing forward at a glacial pace. When Juniper's mages popped out my own were ready to pre-empt them, but she was ready for us this time: every one of First Company's spellcasters had a pair of soldiers covering them with their shields. Not even concentration of fire managed to break through it. I grimaced when the enemy's own fireballs impacted Sergeant Tordis' group, knocking three cadets out of formation and immediately seeing them shot.

"Kilian," I spoke up. "That thing you did with the lightning; could your mages do the same with enemy fireballs?"

"No," she admitted. "The spell they teach us at the College isn't precise enough for that."

"Godsdamnit," I cursed, watching as another two members of Tordis' tenth bit the dust. "This is going to cost us."

They were in position now, at least. The sappers wasted no time in throwing their smokers ahead, their whole position becoming obscured by the thick smoke in a matter of moments. They started backing up almost immediately, another regular getting hit by a blindly-thrown fireball but managing to shake it off since it wasn't immediately followed by getting shot. The sappers dragged back our unconscious cadets, the entire formation managing to get back safely out of enemy range without any further trouble. From fifty feet into the path to the very bottom of the enemy rampart was now covered in smoke, but there was no time to waste. Smokers didn't last as long when the space they filled was that broad, and though the day wasn't particularly windy it wasn't absent of wind either. Without so much as my looking in its direction, the goat started running forward.

"So what's this one called, anyway?" I absently asked Kilian.

I could feel her smile through the tone, though my attention was still on my zombie.

"Snatcher's Cousin," she replied.

"That feels mildly racist," I mused.

"Can it really be racist if goblins are the ones who named it?" she wondered out loud.

I didn't answer the question, as the Cousin had finally entered the smoke. I'd ordered the obscuration of the battlefield to ensure Juniper couldn't blow the zombie before I did, but the obvious downside was that I couldn't see where it was going either. All my Name was giving was a vague sense of where it was standing and how its parts were moving. It would have been useful if I'd been able to see through the zombie's own eyes but when it came down to it what my ability could create was little more than an elaborate flesh puppet. All I could do was send it in a straight line and hope for the best. With a silent tug of the strings I had the goat halt at what I estimated was about eighty feet, returning a portion of my attention to Kilian.

"I can have it at the gate in about six breaths," I told her. "Tell me when to get it moving."

The redhead frowned but nodded, eyes faraway as she tried to puzzle out the timing. Aiming for perfection here would be overestimating ourselves but we couldn't let it stand in front of the gate too long either: I couldn't take the risk Juniper had figured out a way to deal with it without blowing it up. Frankly, just sending out a legionary to pick it up and run back inside might do the trick if they were fast enough. The mage softly started chanting and I kept an eye on her as red-orange flames started forming around her hand. Suddenly she nodded and instead of replying I set my construct moving, the ball of flames shooting into the smoke a moment later. A few heartbeats later I felt the goat run into something solid. The explosion that struck a moment later was, once again, deafening. While I couldn't see the effect of it through the smoke, I had a hard time believing it wouldn't have wrecked the gate. There were twice as many sharpeners stuck inside the goat as last time, after all. Hopefully none of Juniper's soldiers had been standing right behind the gate, because that would have been pretty brutal to go through.

"Now what?" Kilian asked, peering into the distance.

"Now we-"

Before I could finish the sentence a flash of lightning came out of the smoke. I reacted on instinct, trying to get Kilian down, but she pushed away my hand and thrust out her arm. I felt goose bumps on my arms as she spat out a word in that strange tongue mages used, sorcery meeting sorcery once again. Whatever it was she'd done, it stopped the better part of the lightning: a shudder run through me but that was the only effect I could feel. The redhead fell on her knees and I made to help her up when I noticed her hair had turned... strange. It looked more like fire than dark red locks, and when she turned to face me her eyes had turned from hazel to an inhumanly vivid green. Her body had a spasm, her back arching like something was trying to break out of it, and I wasn't sure whether I should try to hold her down or let it happen. Thankfully, after a moment it stopped.

"Fuck," she cursed, the words coming thick and slow on her tongue. "I hate it when that happens."

I helped her back to her feet. "Too much magic?" I guessed.

"Tried to abshorb – *absorb* – the hit to keep it from splashing," Kilian replied.

She took a deep breath, then stood on her own.

"I'll be fine, Captain," she told me. "Bit of a headache, that's all, and I'll keep the spells simple for a while."

I clapped her shoulder. "Take a break, Lieutenant," I ordered. "Nothing'll happen until the smoke clears anyway."

I let her limp away without comment, deciding it was about time I relocated myself. Whoever had said lightning never struck the same place twice obviously had little experience with mages.

—

By the time the smoke cleared I'd returned to my old vantage point, the undead gazelle idling by my side. Robber had informed me it had been dubbed 'Stealth Goat' by popular acclaim at which point I'd informed *him* that he was going to find me a stool or I would be dragging him along for the ride as my official footrest. I took great satisfaction in the fact that he looked genuinely worried by the threat. To my surprise he reappeared later with a fold-up stool apparently looted from Aisha's camp. I blithely pretended I hadn't been sending him on a fool's errand and assured him he was safe from my feet for at least the next few days. The first thing I noticed when the ramparts came into sight again was that the new batch of munitions had *definitely* been more powerful than the last. There was no trace of the former gate and even the tightly packed sand and stone surrounding it had been damaged.

I stood in sight of the walls for a long time, letting the lazy breeze fall on my face. Juniper must have believed I was baiting her mages, because there was no repeat of the lightning incident. I didn't think it would have been enough to take me out anyway. I'd punched a sharper two days ago and all my fingers had gotten out of the experience was a set of bruises. Squires were a hard breed to kill, apparently. After remaining in the open long enough that there could be no doubt Juniper had seen me, I left Stealth Goat behind and casually strolled down the path I'd cleared earlier. I left my shield behind, keeping the folded stool under my arm instead. My soldiers milled uncomfortably behind me as I kept walking, stopping about halfway through without anyone from the ramparts trying anything. I was close enough to see that two full lines had crossbows pointed at me, but for now they refrained from shooting. Calmly, I unfolded the stool and placed it on the ground. I plopped myself on it and waited.

Juniper didn't make me wait long. The tall female orc strode out of the gate-hole without a shield or a helmet, though like me she'd kept her sword at her side. I was amused to note she'd brought a stool of her own, of identical make. Must have been Legion-issue. Her face was inscrutable as she made her way towards me, setting up her own seat to face mine barely a few feet away. The wooden frame creaked under the weight of her when she sat down, still silent. A moment passed, then she turned to the side and spat in the dirt.

"So you want a draw," she flatly stated.

I raised an eyebrow. "That obvious, huh," I said, not denying the truth of it.

"I looked up the old rules too, Callow," she grunted. "Two-way draw means we keep half the points we bid. Probably shouldn't have bid twice what Rat Company has in the negatives if you wanted to keep it quiet."

The idea had struck me when the cadets Ratface had sent to scour the College archives for old five company melees had dug up a record three-way draw. When the instructors had outlined the rules for the melee they'd said nothing about draws of any sort, meaning they hadn't specifically denied the old ruling. It was sketchy as Hells, but I was pretty sure I could swing it. There were advantages to having the Black Knight on your side, and if Heiress wasn't above using family connections to her advantage then I wasn't above pulling rank through my teacher.

"Figured it was a good thing to have as a back up, if things went south," I admitted.

"You'd lose the bet," Juniper pointed out.

"Ah, but here's the thing," I smiled. "The Dread Empress specifically phrased so that Heiress only got the appointment if I lost. A draw isn't a defeat, it's just not a victory."

And should, Gods forbid, our Squire lose? Those had been her exact words. I'd wondered in the aftermath of court why a woman who was supposed to be the political patron of Black hadn't seen fit to give me a helping hand when I was his de facto apprentice. It was only the night before the melee I'd realized that she'd subtly steered the terms of the bet to give me a better chance.

"Very clever," Juniper smiled unpleasantly, flashing her fangs at me. "Now tell me, why exactly should I give a fuck?"

"Because it could go either way, right now," I told her frankly. "I still have some of my little minions and I can make more."

"You'll run out of munitions eventually," she growled.

"You'll run out of *soldiers* eventually," I replied. "The munitions won't take you out of the game, sure, but then I still have fighting men left."

"Who'll have to cross an open field while getting shot at," the Hellhound snarled.

"They will," I shrugged. "Which is why I'll put my wounded in the front to soak up the crossbow fire."

The orc's eyes narrowed. "Some of them could be crippled for life. It messes up mage healing if you break the bones again too quick."

My answering smile was a cold, cold thing. "You underestimate how badly I want this, Hellhound. If you have moral qualms about crippling cadets, then don't shoot your fucking crossbows at them."

That was the thing with scruples: they could so very easily be thrown back at the person throwing them at you. Juniper looked at me like it was the first time we'd ever met. In a sense, it was. My little interlude at the War College had been a pleasant diversion and I'd picked up useful skills, but there was a reason I'd come here in first place. I was not so much of a hypocrite that I'd flinch in the face having people crippled when I'd signed the death warrant of thousands by letting the Lone Swordsman go. The other captain rolled a shoulder calmly, chewing it over.

"No deal," she finally said. "Nothing in this for me, Callow. Could go either way, sure. Means I could win."

I sighed. "You know, I wondered what company scores were for when I first heard about them," I told her.

She'd been about to get up but when I continued speaking she stilled. If she was confused by my interjection, then she showed no sign of it.

"Get your officers to brief you," she grunted. "It affects placement in the Legions when you graduate."

"I know that now," I replied. "Didn't seem like a big deal to me at the time, but then I remembered I had a dream."

The orc bared her teeth mockingly. "You going to tell me you have all these big plans so I should let you win? For shame, Callow. You were almost starting to be tolerable."

"Not that kind of dream," I said softly. "I mean the Name kind."

That got her attention, sure enough. Her mouth closed with a snap.

"The gist of it, I think, was that sometimes you have to give to get," I mused. "So that had me wondering: what do you *want*, Juniper?"

"You getting to a point would be nice," she growled.

"See, I keep hearing all these things about you," I continued. "The Hellhound, never lost a game. Best tactician to grace the College since the Reforms, top of the class in every class."

I could see her mustering what was no doubt a pretty scathing retort but I interrupted her.

"The one thing I didn't hear about you," I spoke softly, "was that you're Istrid Knightsbane's daughter."

The orc's meaty hand closed around the hilt of her sword.

"You threatening my mother, Callow?" she snarled.

I shook my head.

"It's telling, that you don't bring the family name into this," I told her. "Means you want to make it on your own merits. Means you're ambitious."

"It'd be a pretty nice feather in my cap to waste you, you know," the orc grinned nastily, "If I beat a Named on the field I'd join as a tribune, or at the very least senior captain."

"You take your chances and try for that," I agreed. "Or you could make a draw with me right now, and be named the highest-ranked officer in the Fifteenth Legion."

She gaped at me and I really enjoyed the sight of it more than I should.

"You can't promise that," she growled.

"Sure I can," I retorted flatly. "The whole thing with being a villain, Juniper, is that you can basically do whatever the Hells you want unless someone stops you. And who's going to stop me in this? Black? If I know anything, he's doing that vicious smile thing he does as he eavesdrops on us right now."

The other captain got her bearings back after a few moments, her now calm face creasing with a frown.

"I'd be under your command," Juniper said.

"You'll be under someone's command whatever happens," I shrugged. "Do you want to serve under the shadow of someone who earned their spurs during the Conquest, or forge an entirely new legion with me?"

I could see the conflict in her eyes, and that meant I was winning.

"You're bribing me," she accused.

"Shamelessly so," I admitted. "But the fact that I have to bribe you means you're worth bribing."

That got a snort out of her.

"All a draw means is that I'm admitting that, right here and right now, we're equals," I said, meeting her eyes. "I'm not too proud for that. Are you?"

I offered up my arm. After a long moment, she leaned forward and clasped it.

"Draw," she grunted.

"Draw," I echoed.

Thunder clapped twice and both our standards appeared in the sky, orange-red. We rose to our feet and I looked aside.

"*Despite the rules*, you said. See? I do listen, sometimes," I whispered.

Daemion

Yeah, hoping for a win against First Company would have been a bit much. A draw is the perfect ending to the war games. Catherine now has several loyal officers to choose from (Nauk, Killian, Ratface, Pickler) and her company would probably follow her to hell at this point. Gaining Juniper as strategist and tactical genius means her new legion will be dangerous.

All in all... this was a greater victory for the Squire than if she had simply won the game.

stevenneiman

Even better, she managed to cheat the fundamental nature of Evil. With Evil, there's always a price for everything, and in this case she managed to "pay" that price by laying a claim to the greatest strategist of a generation

NerfContessa

And the first hammerblow on forging the armies she will shake the world with.

Well done.

FinalPyre

A fun way to end it. I like it!

RSS updated as expected, btw. 😊

Typos:

bush and only barely managed to to trip as my foot got snagged into a root.

to to -> not to

the majority of them was already at my side.

was -> were

of three mages immediately fire back fireballs

fire -> fired

And, if was to be entirely

if was -> if I was

watching another two members of Tordis' tenth bit the dust

watching another -> watching as another

as the Cousin had

Cousin -> cousin ; or maybe "cousin", if you're looking for the emphasis.

tightly packed sand and tone surrounding

tone -> stone (Or maybe a term I'm unfamiliar with?)

I let Stealth Goat behind and

let -> left

setting up her own seat to face mine barely a few feet enough.

enough -> away (?)

scour the College archives

College -> college

"Ah, but here's the thing, "

thing, " -> thing,"

Ed

An aspect of the Squire name maybe?

"Recruit" puts the named in the path of those that will be useful later and gives the tools to draw them into the fold, if those tools are used correctly that is.

In any case this was a superb way to finish off the wargame part of the wargames can't wait to see how Heiress will take it.

nirg

Nicely done!

bradyman

Amazing chapter. I wonder how long it has been since rat company, broke even point wise. Do they get any points for the draw,

beside what they bet? If so, Rat company is in the positives.
Can't wait to see what happens next.

[syphax1](#)

Based on the 'nothing can really go right' principle, my total guess is that they're gonna find out she killed that goblin fella that tried to kill her, and Heiress is gonna paint her as the murderer.

Soronel Haetir

Soronel Haetir

Bart

Killing in defense of your own life is just fine. With no way to scry down there, there should be no way to verify who's telling the truth, unless someone can pay for some sort of talk to dead spell.

[Mental Mouse](#)

Finding the goblin in a dead-end-tunnel with a pile of munitions would practically paint a picture.

[vexingvision](#)

I'm massively enjoying the story, and it's killing me I have to wait another week for the next one.

Excellent writing, thank you so much!

TypoMan

Typos:

and only barely managed to to trip

should be: not to trip

foot got snagged into a root

should be: got snagged in a root

majority of them was already at my side.

Should be: majority of them were already at my side

To my surprise I'd manage to raise all of the carcasses provided

Should be: I'd managed to raise

And, if was to be

Should be: And, if I was to be

tightly packed sand and tone

Should be: tightly packed sand and stone

I let Stealth Goat behind

Should be: I left Stealth Goat behind

specifically phrased so that

Should be: specifically phrased it so that

Unmaker

Typos:

to to trip
not to trip

majority of them was
majority of them were

in a that
in that

a inhumanly
an inhumanly

to have as a back up
to have as a backup
(the noun is 'backup', no space)

Ratface had drilled his legionaries into a very good shape
(usually 'very good shape', not 'a very good shape')

Whirling on myself[,] I steadied my footing at the last minute
and continued to push through.

immediately fire back
immediately fired back

sand and tone
sand and stone

I let Stealth Goat behind
I left Stealth Goat behind

thing, "I
thing," I

Thunder clasped twice
Thunder clapped twice

Reactions:

Oh, that opening quote. On the one hand, that is perfectly in line with the idea of practical evil. On the other hand, I am not sure how commonly a military commander would use that – it really doesn't sound like any other military quote I have heard (I could be wrong).

"It took me a while to get it, but Juniper's actually somewhat predictable"

In addition to the limitations on this that Catherine mentioned, this works only if you have a military mind good enough to also make (almost) all of the right decisions. Otherwise you don't know what she is going to do because you can't make equivalent decisions. This habit of Juniper's is also a weakness in an odd

way – some military doctrines suggest keeping the enemy confused, sometimes to the extent of using less than optimal moves if necessary.

Ratface's Ex? I thought they dropped the idea since Ratface wasn't around to needle.

I set it to a path that passed straight through the middle of the field.

OK, I get clearing a path, but in order to move troops through she would have to clear a wider path, so something like a zigzag path makes more sense. I know she used the first goat mainly to get the second one through, but she did later bring up small groups and then her platoon, so it appears she actually did need to clear a bit more.

Catherine is following in Black's footsteps – Black has Captain and now Squire has Juniper. Of course, having the best tactician in the College as her highest ranking officer is quite an advantage.

I am liking the story pace so far – this could have bogged down quickly in the war college, but didn't.

Daemion

Opening quote: Complete extermination of the enemy is very costly, could be very risky and might result in the creation of heroes to vanquish your evil. It's much more efficient to take out the leaders with assassins or other targeted attacks and then allow the common soldiers to go home to their families. That way you generate goodwill which means less rebels and insurgents, you gain a productive country and not one devastated by war, you incur less costs both among your own troops and your allies and you can end the conflict much quicker.

Juniper always makes the correct choice. If the choice means pretending to be bad/weak/incompetent to lure in an enemy, she will do that, too.

They didn't name it Ratface's Ex, they used the pun 'Aisha'dnt Have Done That' as name and Catherine refused to repeat it, calling it Ratface's Ex in her mind instead.

Juniper isn't taking up the role of Captain for Catherine. She has no Name. She's the Grem One-Eye to her.



gerbilattack

In something like a minefield, a zig-zag would have been a bad idea; zig-zagging your beast means unless you canvas the area

you risk missing mine on the path you are making; zig-zagging the path means that you need to rely on your entire army being able to remember the pattern; and does not make you harder to hit when you follow. That coupled with the risk of your mine finder deconstructing (it did after all, not quite make it to the other side) means that you want the shortest pact. Secondly, remember that the whole point was to both remove mines, and persuade the enemy mages to reveal themselves; if you were clearly attempting to clear the mines, the enemy might have realized this one was not an explosive goat.

naturalnuke

I believe she was banking on the mages not being able to afford the goat being of the explosive variety.

Helios

i love this ending. winning or losing would be mееeh, but this just perfect !

[moridain](#)

I am very, very happy with that resolution.

Well written.

Also, I lost it at 'Unleash the Goat'. Laughed for a solid 5 minutes. 😊

Sigil

Just finished my archive binge. This story is hilarious, It's fun watching Cat grow, and I'm never quite sure what will happen next.

DeNarr

That was fantastic. but now I'm all caught up 😞

How often does the story update?

[sigmacheck](#)

Every Wednesday. 😊

Ashkante

That was amazing, I didn't see that coming at all but it does make perfect sense.

alegio

Perfect ending for this. I couldn't see her winning and losing was just out of question with the empress commentary

stevenneiman

"which I took {to} mean he was just fine."
I genuinely wasn't expecting Catherine to do something like that. Clever girl. Rat army is going to be peeved that they lost even worse, though.

[DarkoNeko](#)

My first thought is, tho "unless Juniper was already propped to lead the "14th"

[Thanatos](#)

So Catherine's little soliloquy about the seductiveness of raw power revealed quite she has quite the... *interesting* fetish. I must admit it was kinda hot, at least her musings on Kilian's body were. I wonder though, whether Kilian's fae blood allows her a certain level of perception of emotions (often associated), and if so what did she think of Cat's arousal.

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

It's refreshing for a story in this genre to not shy away from sexuality being a thing.

Great chapter! Damian said most of the good stuff in the first comment, so on to book 2!

David

Another good arc, I liked the way this turned out. It's good to see an outcome where the "number one undefeated" enemy doesn't look like they're jobbing to the protagonist, while still letting the protagonist "win".

[Illunis](#)

Gahhhh but my predictions for a betrayal at the last minute! What is Heiress' final card?!

Yunamed

Robber, Lord Of The House of Lesser Footrest.

Epilogue

"What say you, Empress of Praes?"

Here you lie upon the blood-soaked ruins of your dominion, surrounded by the corpses of the legions that once swarmed over the world. Hundreds of thousands dead for the sake of your wretched ambition, your mad design to bring to heel the kingdoms of man. In all the history of Creation no one woman has been so wicked as you, and I will have my answer.

Why, o Empress of Ruins?"

She shrugged.

"Why not?"

– Last lines of the "The Fall of Empress Triumphant, First and Only of Her Name"

(Six Months Later) 1324 A.D., 5th of Mawja, Marchford

A year ago, the commander would have given him trouble. Now? William tore the Penitent's Blade out of the orc's throat with a casual flick of the wrist. The sword keened mournfully, taking the greenskin's life with it as it withdrew. The officer had died bravely, as bravely as one of his filthy species could, but with the orc's blood on the floor the last of the resistance was over. It was to the Countess' credit that she'd managed to turn a force of mercenaries and peasant levies into a coherent fighting force in less than a month – though it had certainly helped that their first battlefield had been her own fiefdom. If only all the allies he'd gathered were so competent. The Duke of Liesse had yet to set foot in the city, remaining with the baggage train under the impatient protection of the Exiled Prince.

The hero in question had been miffed he wouldn't get to blood his men on Praesi legionaries today, but Countess Elizabeth had been correct when she'd pointed out that his troops were singularly unsuited to surprise attacks. No doubt the Duke would insist on a triumphant victory parade when the time came for him to enter, and for that the polished lancers of the Silver Spears would serve perfectly. They'd make a stirring enough image, and the story would spread: the Duke of Liesse had returned, to free the Kingdom from the yoke of the Tower.

Putting a complete imbecile on the throne of Callow was something William was going to have to live with, unfortunately. Oh, the Duke did have a sort of low cunning – he'd left Callow before Laure had even fallen, during the Conquest, and taken his treasury with him – but it was the kind of cunning a cockroach would have. He was a master of survival and little else, not to mention hopelessly self-important. That he was the First Prince's creature walked the fine line between a virtue and a liability: this entire rebellion was being bankrolled by Proceran silver,

but William was not so much of a fool as to be unaware the cold-eyed woman had designs on Callow herself. That was fine.

He was already leading a rebellion against the Empire, and he was more than willing to lead one against the Principate if it came down to it.

The Kingdom Under was a much greater worry. That two thousand hardened dwarven veterans had suddenly decided to form a mercenary company in Mercantis just when he'd been buying up every contract he could get his hands on was not a coincidence. The dwarves had a history of sending troublemakers up to the surface to die in other people's wars, but the Sons of Stone were not your usual malcontents. If the King Under the Mountains was meddling in topside affairs William was going to have to keep a very, very close eye on it. Over two thirds of Calernia stood above dwarven tunnels and cities: no single nation had a military whose size equalled even the tenth of what the dwarves could muster if they felt like it.

It would not matter, in the end.

Only eight months had passed since his defeat at the hands of the Squire, but her words still rang whenever he closed his eyes. *Run and hide and muster your armies in the dark. Make deals you'll regret until you have nothing left to bargain with. I'll be waiting for you, on the other side of that battlefield.* The dismissal had been a lash on his back all the way to Refuge, where he'd knelt at the feet of the Lady of the Lake and asked to be taken as a pupil. She'd denied him, not unkindly. After the defeat at Summerholm, that had almost been enough to break him.

What could you say, when the great swordswoman in Creation told you you weren't good enough to beat her old pupil? The sword was all he was good for. His Name was a paradox, in a way: heroes were supposed to galvanize others into something greater than themselves, but his Role thrived on being solitary. The Eyes of the Empire had failed to find him because he'd never been part of a band of heroes, eschewing more blatant heroics for quiet work in the dark. He'd found his answer through pure happenstance, that blessed golden luck that smiled on heroes from above.

He'd found the gates to Arcadia Resplendent, and petitioned the Lady for the right to use them. This boon she'd seen fit to grant, and so began his year in the realm of the Fae. A full year he'd spent fighting for his life against the denizens of that eldritch place, hunted for sport by the horrors of the Wild Hunt. But he'd survived, and learned. There was no comparing his power now to what it had been in Summerholm. On the last day of the year, the gates had opened to let him leave and he'd returned to Creation. Barely a month had passed outside of Arcadia: he would crush the Squire when they next met, and they *would* meet. The pattern had been set, there was no avoiding it. And when the time

came, he would cram her words back down her sneering throat before raising the banner of a liberated Kingdom over her corpse.

Sheathing his sword, the Lone Swordsman left the room and stepped down the stairs. Countess Marchford should have set things up by now, assembling her peasantry in the city square. It was a shame the woman was so ambitious, but as far as commanders went she was by far the best the nobility had to offer. She'd stalemated a Marshal for an entire month during the Siege of Summerholm, holding out until the Legions landed a force on the other side of the Hwaerte and finished the encirclement. Had Grem One-Eye not been driving his army into the depths of the Duchy of Daoine at the same time, it would have been long enough for the Deoraithe to come relieve the siege.

And now she wants to be Queen of Callow, as she would have been had the Shining Prince not died at the Fields. Less of a bitter pill to swallow than the Duke having the best claim to the throne, all in all. She would not be any more inclined to trade a Praesi occupation for a Proceran one than William himself. The streets were full of dead legionaries, the fighting having gotten brutal in its last gaps. A full quarter of the Twelfth Legion had spat in the face of offered surrender, eerily singing that damned Legionary's Song as they made their last stand against thrice their number. In a person that kind of courage would have been worthy of respect, but greenskins were barely more sentient than animals. Just another horror crafted by the Hellgods to plague Creation, an endless horde of foot soldiers carrying the banner of Evil.

His steps took him all the way to the central market, where the citizens of Marchford stood as an uneasy crowd in front of the gallows erected by the Legions. Fifty prisoners, goblins and orcs and humans, already stood on the wooden platform with nooses around their necks. His idea, that: William had not forgotten Summerholm, and neither would those fucking Praesi butchers. He hopped onto the gallows and with a few lazy strides he stood in front of the people, whispers of his Name spreading among the crowd when they recognized his white-gilded armour. There'd been a time where he would have avoided such glaringly heroic garments like the plague, but the time for subtlety was long past. Eyes staring down the masses, the hero took a deep breath.

"Twenty years ago, Praesi boots broke the spine of this nation," he said, and the words carried perfectly.

Utter silence greeted him.

"They were strong, we told ourselves," he continued. "Too strong. What could we possibly have done?"

His eyes narrowed.

"*Cowardice*," he barked.

The crowd flinched as if he'd lashed them.

"There is no bargaining with Evil," he thundered. "No truce with the Enemy. That we ever gave in to the Tower is a stain on the history of this Kingdom."

Slowly, William unsheathed his sword.

"But we are not yet beyond redemption," he told them. "Shame can be expunged. Today, for the first time in two decades, some of us rose to our feet."

His Name burned within him, a cold flame that turned his blood to smoke and dust.

"Tell me, Callowans, do you want to spend the rest of your life kneeling?"

He could feel it swelling up. He could see it in their eyes, the light ground out by decades of occupation. His power spread through the air, thick and lingering.

"Do you want to continue licking the Empress' boot, and let your children inherit that life?" he bellowed.

The whisper first came from the back, twisting and winding and gaining strength as it made its way to the first row and the answer came out as a *NO* that clapped like thunder.

"Neither do I," he admitted when silence returned. "Take heart, citizens of Callow. Today the Kingdom is born again, and I make you this oath."

Green eyes burned.

"*CALLOW WILL BE FREE.*"

Behind him the legionaries dropped, one after another, the cheer from the crowd drowning their dying struggles out. William closed his eyes, letting the sound wash over him, and smiled. There could be no defeat. The Heavens, after all, were on his side. Why else would they have granted him Triumph as an aspect?

—

9th of Mawja, Ater, Inner City

Akua had never particularly enjoyed playing shatranj, though she was skilled at it. The only reason she was currently playing Barika was that, traditionally speaking, it was expected of her to play shatranj while discussing the demise of her enemies. The way the Unonti heiress played was too conservative, much like the

girl herself. Had she not been so reliably loyal, she would never have made it as high in Akua's council as she currently stood. That was the problem with many of the Trueblood's children. The old nobility was too stiff, too set in its ways, and it had transmitted that disease to their inheritors. Thankfully her own mother was much more flexible in her ways, and had raised her as such. The truth was that the Empire was no longer the same as it had been in ages past. The Reforms had granted rights to the greenskins, and there would be no withdrawing those without a civil war – one the nobility might not win, given that the vast majority of the current generations of orcs and goblins were Legion-trained.

The old truth that greenskins were inferiors to the Soninke in every way was no longer valid, and so had to be discarded. The aristocrats who refused to admit this were betraying the guiding rule of all Praesi: truth was mutable, and changed according to one's purposes. Akua was not above using orcs and goblins as tools, though she found the matter distasteful. More importantly, the old hatreds some Soninke still held against humans had to be set aside. Taghreb inferiority, while a fact, was marginal enough in nature it should be ignored. Even the Duni had proved they could have worth, by spawning the most viciously dangerous Black Knight the Empire had seen in centuries. It was a shame the man had declined to take her a pupil, and she truly regretted that she had come to be at cross-purposes with him. Removing Foundling should neuter that liability cleanly enough, and the Knight was much too pragmatic to hold a grudge over such a trifling matter.

"I do not understand why you let the goblin's death pass without making an issue of it," Barika said, moving a legionary forward in an unwise gambit that was going to cost her a priest in three moves.

"I tried to press the issue through Court," Akua noted. "Before I could, a member of the Blackguard dropped a basket with the head of my proxy in it at the mansion gates."

The warning had been clear enough, and she'd never particularly expected that particular plot to bear fruit anyway. She'd had four people out for Foundling's blood in the melee, but the goblin had been the only one to get close enough for an attempt. The scheme had been worth making, and had cost her nothing of worth to implement – much like the entire war games affair. Blackmailing the instructor to change Squire's beginning position and meddle with the memory magic might have been a more expensive endeavour, had the man in question not been caught trying to escape the city and been crucified for his troubles. A rather mild reaction, by the standards of the Black Knight. The last time he'd caught a noble meddling in College business, he'd had their entire family eaten alive by spiders. Malicia was tightening his leash, as she had been for several years.

"Then it was a failure," Barika said, barely hiding a wince when she lost her priest and found her chancellor trapped in a corner.

"You're assuming that the point of this enterprise was to deny Foundling the appointment," Akua said. "While it would have been the optimal result, it was not my main objective."

In the long term, there was no real way to ensure that Squire did not get to lead troops. She was, ironically enough, too well-connected for that. At best the process could be delayed, and Akua's assessment of the cost of keeping her out of the Legions for another year had been too much to stomach. And so she'd planned with the eventuality of failure in mind. By making this a public play through the Court, she'd forced her support in the nobility to be open in their backing. The minor loss of face that ensued from Foundling's victory had caused her fair-weather friends to immediately withdraw their support, allowing Akua to separate the wheat from the chaff. She'd immediately move on those and made examples of them, of course.

Her position in Court was now stronger than it had ever been.

And while Squire had been tearing out her hair over inconsequential collegial games, she'd prepared to place agents in the Fifteenth Legion. *That* plot, the one that mattered, had been a success. That one of Foundling's senior officers had become a spy before they were even appointed to the rank had been a source of great amusement to her over the last few months. It was unfortunate that she'd been unable to find leverage on the officers of the former Rat Company, as they seemed to be Squire's most trusted. Ratface's familial situation had seemed promising but the boy had flatly told her intermediary that if the subject was ever broached again blades would come out. Legate Juniper's open distaste for what she called "human squabbling" made her a lost cause in this regard, and had she not been the daughter of a general Akua would already have her had assassinated. A shame, that such talent would be put to work in her rival's favour. Barika knocked over her empress in a concession of defeat, letting out a sigh.

"So," she murmured. "Are you finally going to tell me what was in the letter that came this morning?"

Heiress smiled.

"Every major city in the south of Callow has risen in rebellion," she replied.

"*What?*" the other girl replied, openly aghast.

Akua pretended she hadn't seen the loss of composure, for her childhood companion's sake.

"The Sixth and the Ninth Legion are to be deployed to put the unrest down," she informed the other Soninke. "The Fifteenth will be joining them, still at half-strength."

The purpose behind keeping the numbers of Foundling's legion at two thousand legionaries only still eluded her, in truth. Part of it must have been the fact that Fourteenth was being raised simultaneously and the recruitment pool was limited, but that answer was too... obvious. There was always more than one angle, when one dealt with the Calamities.

"So that's why you've been recruiting mercenaries," Barika suddenly breathed.

Akua's smile broadened, never quite reaching her eyes. Mercenaries were, technically speaking, illegal in Praes. It would have been too obvious of a way for the High Lords to get around the household troops restrictions put into place by Malicia. But the moment southern Callow had risen in rebellion, it had stopped legally being Praesi territory. The roughly four thousand troops she'd hired in Mercantis would be able to operate there without consequence.

"It won't be enough," a third voice rasped from the corner of the room.

Akua's eyes flickered to the mangled goblin. Half of her face was missing, chopped off by a brutal – and lethal sword wound. Various parts of her body had been snapped by falling rubble and even now still remained at unnatural angles, barely functional. Not even the best necromancers on her payroll had been able to restore Chider to something palatable to look at.

"That would be where you come in, Commander Chider," Heiress replied softly.

The goblin let out a horrible rasp Akua took a moment to recognize as a laugh. Raising a mere enemy of Foundling from the dead would have been a waste of gold, but Heiress had no interest in the greenskin's skills. It was her nature that was of import. Raising a Claimant from the dead, on the other hand, had been worth every denarii. Picking up her own empress, the Soninke aristocrat felt her Name coil inside of her silently, like a snake preparing to strike. She'd wondered, when she'd first come into her Role, what exactly it meant. It was a question every Heir and Heiress had to answer on their own. Was she the inheritor of the stewardship of the Empire, the return of the forbidden Name of Chancellor? Was she the next warlord of Praes, the successor of its Black Knight? Or was hers to be the hand that cast down Dread Empress Malicia, the woman still hated behind closed doors? Wrong, all wrong. Paltry ambitions of lesser souls.

She was Akua Sahelian, and she would inherit all of Creation.

—

7th of Mawja, Ater, the Tower

Black put down the letter, face expressionless.

The rebellion was not, all in all, unexpected. He'd moved Istrid and Sacker further south to deal with the eventuality, assigning the Eleventh to Summerholm instead. More importantly, Ranker and her Fourth were keeping an eye on the Deoraithe. Scribe's agents had found out the Duchess had placed an observer with the rebels, but according to the rest of the network that was the only move she'd made. His personal assessment of Kegan had been accurate, then: she would not take action unless the Liesse Rebellion looked like it had decent chances of succeeding. That Afolabi had lost a full thousand at Marchford would be a black mark on the general's record, but it was a tactical defeat and not a strategic one. No rebel force had yet to dare move north of Vale, and he'd already sent Catherine orders to mobilize her Fifteenth: by dawn tomorrow they'd be moving for the Blessed Isle to join the muster in central Callow.

"So that was your gamble, then," the dark-haired man murmured into the silence.

He'd wondered about the exact form his Squire's actions had taken, back in Summerholm. Obviously she'd let the Lone Swordsman go when she could have killed him — the damaged connection to her Name betrayed as much — but it seemed she'd freed the hero for a specific purpose. The boy had shown no inclination to gather large-scale strength before his encounter with the orphan, and such a sudden change in doctrine would have had to be Name-enforced. *She branded instructions on his Name as the price for sparing him, then let him disappear into the wilds.* Black had not even bothered to try tracking the Swordsman after his run-in with Catherine: the confrontation had initiated a pattern of three, and the hero was therefore beyond his reach. The only person who could feasibly kill him now was Squire, unfortunate as that was.

Still, none of this was beyond the parameters he'd set. The rebellion would have happened anyway, there was no denying that. The numbers did not lie: in the last decade the number of heroes appearing had shot up from once every several years to at least two a year. They were all dead now, of course, but that wasn't the point. Sooner or later, one of his people would make a mistake. When he'd put down the Unconquered Champion last year, he'd been stuck in a pocket realm for what had ended up being three days in Creation proper. Within that lapse of time he'd been impossible to reach, and the Calamities had... not reacted well. Captain had slaughtered an entire village in a fit of blind

rage and Warlock had actually mutilated the soul of an informant in his search for answers. He shuddered to think of what might have happened had Assassin or Ranger gotten involved.

No, the rebellion had always been a given. All it meant was that he had to have measures in place so that the event benefitted the Empire instead of weakened it, and he had managed that much. Barely. Catherine's intervention had the uprising beginning ahead of schedule, and had he not spent the last twenty years preparing the Dread Empire for war it might have been taken by surprise. As things stood, the rebellion would be crushed before the next harvest and Catherine would blood her troops on real battlefield in the process. The inevitable losses would teach her some valuable lessons and temper her reckless streak as well as strengthen her emotional attachment to her soldiers – and by extension the Empire.

"Not a bad plan at all," he decided.

Trading a weakened Name for a few months against an opportunity to advance through the ranks in wartime was bold but not overly so. She wouldn't have known she was damaging her connection to her Role by letting the Lone Swordsman go, of course. He had, after all, carefully kept her in the dark about the way Names functioned. The results of that spoke for themselves. Not even a year into her power and she was already beginning to Speak. She had absolutely no idea how absurd that kind of progress was, no inkling that it had taken Black several years into the same Role before managing it. Ignorance on the subject of what she could and couldn't do with her Name had allowed her to progress through leaps and bounds instead of a slow grind. It was fortunate that this approach was the best available to him, because Black had no real idea how to teach her.

He'd become the Squire when there was no Black Knight and most of what he knew was either self-taught or derived from Name dreams. He'd had two teachers in his lifetime and both tutelages had been purely related to swordsmanship: first his mother, when he'd been young, and then Ranger later in his career. Deciding how to treat Catherine had been something of a problem for him, in all honesty. He could not treat her as an equal, the way he and Ranger had been, but treating her purely as a subordinate was doomed to failure. In the end he'd settled for moulding her instead of teaching her, carefully exposing her to specific influences so that she would grow through them.

And grown she had, in the eight months he'd known her. The reports from his agent in the orphanage had indicated she had potential, but they'd underestimated how much. It was a good thing he hadn't had her smothered in her sleep, as the local overseer's recommendation had originally been. *Morals too heroic in nature*, the assessment had stated. He'd been ready to tie up

that particular loose end should it prove necessary when he'd gone to deal with Mazus, but their unexpected meeting had opened a better alternative.

The dark-haired smiled, rising to his feet and coming to stand by the window. The view offered from the Tower's one hundredth floor was breath-taking, but he'd become inured to the sight over the years. Black had been amused, when Catherine had mentioned that she felt her Name like a living, breathing beast. The way a Named felt their Role revealed much about them. Warlock said his own was akin to opening floodgates, for he rightfully feared the capricious nature of his power. Malicia compared her own to slipping on a pair of gloves, perfectly fitted to her. And him? Gears. An enormous machine made up of a hundred thousand gears, all of them turning. Slowly. Coldly. Implacably.

The moment his agents had gotten him the news he'd felt his Name react. *Lead. Conquer. Destroy.* All three of his aspects were awake. He hadn't felt this alive in decades, and even as the south of the kingdom he's conquered resumed the war he'd won he felt a strange joy welling up inside of him. Interesting years were ahead. And this once, just this once, he was willing to break a rule of his. Baring his teeth at the Heavens, Black dared them to deny him.

"Just as planned," he said.

Bart

More importantly, the old hatreds some Soninke still held against humans had to be set aside.
change this Soninke to greenskins.

She'd immediately move on those and made examples of them, of course.

Either moved or make – move is future tense, made is past tense, and they need to agree.

"He'd been ready to tie up that particular loose end should it prove necessary when he'd gone to deal with Mazus, but their unexpected meeting had opened a better alternative."
Woah, woah, woah! This changes everything.

He hadn't felt this alive in decades, and even as the south of the kingdom he's conquered resumed the war...
should be he'd instead of he's

stevenneiman

The first one is correct as written, if a smidge confusing. She had already acknowledged the power of greenskins, and she was talking about the feelings of soninke towards non-soninke humans. The other two are mistakes, though I think they might have been corrected by now.

Sean

Book one's over! WOOT! WOOT!

Dude, you're kicking ass and taking names.

Any idea how long till book two?

[erraticerrata](#)

I'll put up a more formal announcement later today, but Book 2 updates are scheduled to begin on the 4th of November.

Bart

Darn. I came in today looking for an update. Next week. Scratch that, I mean two weeks. 😊

NerfContessa

And what a great ending it was.

This is where when I first read this I decided I would read till the end.

Marvellous.

nirg

First!!

As good as ever. Keep it up! 😊

nirg

Blah. Not first 😞

Bart

Third. 😊

[moridain](#)

Nice resolution. 😊

Triumph is a dangerous aspect to face... Especially if Catherine hasn't returned her Name to full strength yet.

That Lone Swordsman is a racist asshole though, one who has stained his moral highground with backroom deals and innocent blood. I can't wait for him to lose.

Bart

He can't lose. The story says that he has to face Squire twice more, and the situation won't be completely resolved until the (overall) third confrontation. At that point, as Squire pointed out, the good guy converts the bad guy. We've clearly seen that Lone Swordsman is a bad guy according to our morals, thus he will be converted. After he joins her side, Squire will probably slay him.

Nivek

I sort of expect for Lone Swordsman to wind up being killed by our protagonist and then have her return him as some sort of Death Knight servitor or something. Isn't that the traditional way for a villain to deal with enemies?

[Euodiachloris](#)

Catherine set him up with that, knowingly or unknowingly: she planted seeds that quite likely could make Triumph turn to Hubris, beyond the other damage done with the whole "collect an army" thing... and, hubris usually ends one way, be you a Hero or Villain.

I also find the contrast between Catherine and Akua just as interesting. Both see their individual Names as a means to an end... however, only one seems satisfied with using the Name she actually has as a longer term thing. For all both are equally suited for change. 😊 I can't help but think even Names with "Placeholder" or "Training Wheels" as attributes get a little miffed if you try dumping them at the wrong time. 😊

stevenneiman

You do make a very good point about hubris. My guess is that he is more likely to realize the monster he has become or possibly get cocky and have someone take him down in the third confrontation, or he might become corrupted and lose access to his Name at the wrong time. Maybe he will break his name and have to change the way he thinks as a trial, or perhaps Catherine will be able to redeem herself by defeating him.

Tata Man

Hubris is probably right but, maybe it's more about what's in the fine print of his aspect. Aspects were said to make the wielder embody the Role more upon activation, right? So, this

typically makes them stronger, smarter, quicker, etc. But while they could serve as instructions to the Role, they activate when those instructions are met. If your Role says *Struggle*, you will be stronger when you do. Then if your Role says *Triumph*, then wouldn't that mean that you would get stronger only as you Triumph? Sure, Fate would probably be guiding Roles into fulfilling their aspects but, a Black Knight might fail in his conquest just as a Squire may fail to Learn. Fate guide them heavily but it doesn't guarantee it. And looking at it that way, Triumph would be an aspect that only presses the advantage. If Fate is defied in any way, it's useless. If our Catlin was screwed over by Fate, her Struggle aspect would help her through it. But Triumph? That would likely be a bit less useful.

AvidFan

Good chapter! Can't wait for the- Epilogue? EPILOGUE!? Book 1 is over!? Noooo!

I love how they're aware that their names are like stories and certain actions will force certain reactions. Every plot line a cliché? Make a story that uses the clichés as a plot line. xD (Although, some of them are more aware of it than others. It seems like the Heiress is aware of what her Name can do for her, but doesn't seem to realise that she is already setting herself up to fail, just by thinking that she can rule Creation. It feels like she thinks she's above everyone else. Hubris perhaps?)

FinalPyre

And the first main arc closes. Fun stuff, I look forward to where it goes next.

Typos:

when the great swordswoman in Creation
great -> greatest (?)

the man had decline to take her
decline -> declined

The dark-haired smiled
missing word

of the kingdom he's conquered
he's -> he'd

Barim

With a set of tunnels that extensive, I wonder if anyone's tried to flood the kingdom of Under by trenching a river or ocean to one of the entrances?

[bastardjas](#)

The amount of work involved for that... Dear god.

Considering that they are Under the Mountains, there is no way digging a canal from a water source to their kingdom would be anything short of insanely difficult, if not also a waste of resources- the dwarves could then just dig a trench draining the water out.

[rygelthe16th](#)

But the tunnels were said to be "Over two thirds of Calernia". Presumably some must be near the coast, or even a particularly large river would do.

[erraticerrata](#)

In 732 A.D. a princess from out of the southern principalities of Procer tried to clear out dwarven miners by trenching a river in. It worked, but within the month ever major city in the principality had been sunk underground as retaliation. The water flow was later turned into an irrigation system underground. It's now illegal by Proceran law to interfere with the Kingdom Under, and most major polities have similar rules.

Unmaker

Typos:

had decline
had declined

lost of composure
loss of composure

must have been the that
must have been the fact that

Reactions:

Wow, a lot to comment on.

OK, so now we have a name for the damned hard-wounds-to-heal sword: Penitent's Blade. That name really doesn't work – a penitent is someone who feels remorse but the victims rarely live long enough to feel remorse (although I bet they wish they hadn't gotten cut) and the Lone Swordsman surely doesn't.

Exiled Prince? Named as a 'hero', but is it another Role?

"the great swordswoman in Creation told you you weren't good enough to beat her old pupil" Black later says that only his

mother and Ranger taught him. Ranger apparently has an unbroken string of wins against Black, so perhaps Ranger is the old pupil?

*She branded instructions on his Name as the price for sparing him
Run and hide and muster your armies in the dark. Make deals
you'll regret until you have nothing left to bargain with. I'll
be waiting for you, on the other side of that battlefield.*

Names can be coerced?! Admittedly, it sounds like an insanely dangerous thing to do, but a mind like Black's could make use of such an ability. And it sounds like the form of wording is important – William ran and hid (his visit to Arcadia Resplendent), mustered his armies outside the kingdom using back-room deals (in the dark, if you stretch the meaning), and is making deals he already thinks he will regret.

Oh the freaking irony, that the “hero” thinks orcs are subhuman monsters but the “villain” Catherine sees them as people. Black's opening of the ranks for orcs and goblins is arguably a good act, even if it was done for pure practicality.

“it was expected of her to play shatranj while discussing the demise of her enemies”

Huh? The Heiress does nothing that doesn't benefit herself, so this must be some Name crap, or just for appearances.

“old hatreds some Soninke still held against humans”

Aren't they another race of humans? Or do they just consider themselves a different race? I am confused.

Good on Ratface for standing up to Heiress.

The implications of Chider are interesting. Does Heiress believe that Chider could possibly claim the Name by killing Catherine?

Wait a damn minute, Black is somehow keeping the lid on some of the other Calamities? How? Or was it just a reaction to his disappearance?

I wonder how many times the “Unconquered Champion” has to be defeated until the Name slinks away and vanishes. Since the Names are somehow linked to stories, I guess it happens when the story dies. Which is a point: why hasn't someone discovered manipulation of public opinion as a way to manipulate Roles? Bribe Bard (the Name, if it exists) or a bunch of un-Named bards to spread a tale that creates, destroys, or alters a Name somehow.

[erraticerrata](#)

While it's never been stated outright in the story, it's been implied several times that the Lady of the Lake, the woman who runs Refuge, is Ranger. Which would make her the greatest swordswoman in the world, and Black the pupil.

Unmaker

Chapter 10: "I will not lie to you, Catherine, or deceive you. ... Not out of a sense of honor or altruism, but simply because it would be foolish in the long term. It's the way these things go, you see – if I deceived to you, you would inevitably find out I did at the worst possible moment and then avenge yourself in a way that would lead to my downfall. The amount of my predecessors that died because they failed to learn that simple, easy lesson is staggering."

Epilogue: He [Black] had, after all, carefully kept her in the dark about the way Names functioned.

So apparently not revealing information isn't the same as lie or deceive. Which is technically correct, but I wonder if that technicality will come back and bite him.

Daemion

Well, he did it because he honestly believes it to be the best option for Catherine. He can't offer her formal training because he never received it himself, so he set her up to find her own way through all the challenges thrown at her and she came out much, much stronger than she should have been ... simply because she didn't know, because no one told her that her progress should have been impossible.

The Leaking Pen

The best part is, even though she's been given the data often, both through name dreams, and the discussions of Black when he was Squire, and Juniper suggesting a "transitory" name, she still hasn't figured out that she's supposed to become the Black Knight eventually.

nipi

I always thought that Black was so careful not to give Catherine any reason to hate him because that's how he ended up killing the previous Black knight. Guess I was wrong.

Also why is Heiress called Heiress? Dread emperors and empresses come to power by killing their predecessors. Has there ever been an exception? Wouldn't having someone that feels that he/she should be the next one be a threat to the current ruler. I don't understand why it is tolerated and so openly at that.

Bart

People can feel when there's a rival claimant for a name, as Catherine found out. The Empress surely removes anyone who is a

rival for her Name. The thought probably hasn't occurred to the Empress that Heiress might be going above her head.

[kipperscrawl](#)

HI! Just came over here from readers' recommendation from webserial TGaB by D.D. Webb, and I must say, a Practical Guide to Evil has been quite fun so far! I'm quite sad that it currently ends at Book 1 because now I have to wait a good long while for the story to conclude and not just archive-binge, but that also means I get a chance to be one of your commenters while you're writing it:D Thanks for the excellent tale!

sigmacheck

Very very interesting...

I am not sure if Malicia is really tightening Black's leash, or if Black simply didn't want to scare Heiress off. Because it seems he is very happy with what Heiress did in regard to Foundling.

Heiress to all Creation, isn't someone ambitious? It looks like hubris. I wonder who this spy is – and who that spy is loyal to in reality. ^^ Wouldn't be the first one to change their opinion.

Alegio

Not sure if I am happy cause this came out the day of my birthday or sad cause Its the end of the first book :/.

But still loved this since the first chapter and hope to read it until it ends

[globalgrassroot](#)

Hey there! First time commenter, and I'm absolutely LOVING this series! No seriously, its really good! I'm actually peeved that I've already caught up with everything and have to wait...WAIT...for more content because I'm an impatient ass who wants what he wants now now now! C'est la vie, I guess. I'll have to wait until new stuff comes out. Sigh.

There's one thing regarding Squire's Name problems I'm not getting though. Particularly with regards of why its reacting so negatively towards letting the Lone Jerkman go.

If you think about, the Name Squire would almost certainly incorporate the Role of Ambition. After all, the whole point of squire-dom(?) is that it's a stepping stone to bigger and greater things. One only becomes a squire (or Squire, in this case) because they directly aspire or hold ambitions to become something important (usually a knight). So in that regard, Squire letting the Twerp Lonesome go would neatly feed into the Role of Ambition perfectly. I mean, even Black seems to have figured out

why she let the Hero go, and sort of approves of her machinations, even though it has led to Name problems. I'm also not clear on why exactly would the Name of Squire have issues with letting a foe live as nothing I've seen so far seems to indicate that the Name of Squire has anything to do with sparing someone's life to warrant it feeling "betrayed".

Unless there's something I'm missing here, like how two Names cannot have the same Role attached to them separately (and let's be real; every single Name shown so far could very likely have Ambition as a Role, except for maybe Captain). Or that a Name can in fact incorporate two contradictory Roles within itself, and leave it to the bearer to sort out the balancing issues (in Squire's case, I'm guessing it would be Loyalty and Ambition).

[erraticerrata](#)

Hi! Thanks for all the compliments.

As for why Catherine's Name reacted adversely to her letting the LS go, it's a fairly nuanced issue. As her motives were arguably villainous (as in, sparing an entity that will cause great destruction for the sake of her personal ambitions) that's not what the Name was reacting to. By sparing the hero Cat initiated a pattern, one that usually ends in the redemption or death of the villain. That goes against the very nature of her Name, which is meant to allow her to advance to a more important villainous Role. Through that she temporarily damaged her access to her Role's power.

[globalgrassroot](#)

Ah, I get it now. The Name is basically looking at the bigger picture, and not just the "moment". Damn, Names are convenient!

Though now I am curious to know if a Name can incorporate two potentially contradictory Roles into them. And speaking of incorporating Roles, do all Names have a standard list of Roles attached to them, or are Roles adopted according to the individual?

[erraticerrata](#)

To clarify the terminology, what you're referring to are aspects. A Role is the function of a Name in the pattern (as in, a Tyrant is meant to rule and a Thief to steal). It's possible for a Name to have aspects that contradict each other, yes, but that is a Very Bad Thing. The Named would have to be patently insane to get aspects like that and they couldn't tap into their power without weakening themselves through the contradicting aspect. In the long term, it would outright kill the Named.

stevenneiman

The funny thing is that it strikes me that if her role were more naturally manipulative she would have been able to pull off bending foolish heroes to her whims without breaking the name. Hard to say, though, given that her actions naturally have such a high risk of redemption.

What happens if a Named does get redeemed/corrupted so thoroughly that they lose touch with their Name completely. Do they automatically get a new set of powers as an example of a new trope, do they die, or do their powers simply leave them. Obviously, sometimes Redemption Equals Death so they might just die "naturally" as a result of a redeeming heroic sacrifice or whatnot, but I'm not sure what happens if they don't.

stevenneiman

"when the [great->greatest] swordswoman in Creation told you you weren't good enough"

"Akua would already have [her had->had her] assassinated." I'm not sure if it is grammatically incorrect, but it reads very awkwardly to me at least.

"blood her troops on [real battlefield->real battlefields/a real battlefield] in the process."

"The dark-haired {man} smiled"

"as the south of the kingdom [he's->he'd] conquered"

Spooky. I look forward to seeing what exactly Black has planned.

Tetsuki

I just hope the heiress wont be the main antagonist...

She sounds like a delusional prick. Just die you are not needed I would say. If she at least had an interesting ambition I wouldn't be so annoyed... she just rubs the wrong way everywhere. Please don't let her live for long 😊

[comickry](#)

A phenomenal read, as you certainly know.

Nevertheless, here are some typos I found in Book 1. In the interest of avoiding spamming the comment section, I collected them. Gotta catch 'em all, after all.

Chapter 6: Aspect

"The Most Illustrious Histories of the Inimitable Dread Empire of Praes", volume I to III, made up up the top layer and I lost interest after checking that ones right under were a study of the Licerian Wars. Gods, those bred like lice. → that the ones

"I'm assuming you want me those read those and not, say, bludgeon someone to death with the pile?" → want me to read those

"Only you can answer that. It will come to you in due time. Learn is a typical one, which is why I believe that throwing off the proverbial cliff when learning languages will yield the best results," → throwing one/you off

Chapter 7: Swords

A cognomen was what we mere Callowans would call a nickname, though the books had given me the impression that there was a little more to it than that. → nickname, though the books

Chapter 8: Introduction

With all the weight that meant I was pretty sure his mount could double as a battering ram in a pinch, though that would do to the horse under it did not bear imagining. → though what that Still, stumbling blind into the situation blind was a decent way to head for an early grave: → (remove 1 blind)

"There was a situation Laure that needed seeing to," the Knight spoke mildly. → situation in Laure

Black's band of bodyguards was no longer as silent as it had once been around me, but they'd reverted to silent statues as soon as we'd come in sight of Summerholm. I glance towards Scribe who had, I saw, also dismounted. → glanced

None of the stories I'd heard mentioned her except in passing, and it wasn't like she'd surrendered any information about herself since we'd met. I knew disappeared for a few hours everyday and came back with fresh new correspondence, → knew she disappeared

She looked almost half-sleep, her yellow eyes were half-lidded even as she gave me an once-over before turning towards my teacher. → a once-over (technically this is the exception to the exception of that particular grammar role, so... yeah.)

Chapter 9: Claimant

I snarled at her and reached for my sword before common sense could kick in. That little- → (*italics*)

I might as well have tried to empathize with a statue. A particularly unconcerned statue, even. Pushing down a sigh, I knelt across the table from her. → down a sigh,

Which meant his was no longer about sneaking around: it was about cornering a quarry. → meant this was

My hand drifted to my sword, and with a sinking feeling I struck me that I hadn't been the only one playing a game tonight. → feeling it struck me

The masked ambusher was in the tricky position of having to keep an eye on me as they stepped back, → ambusher

He was trying to get back towards the crowd where he could hide among the crowd, but that kind of thing was harder to manage when I knew exactly what he was trying to do. → (double crowd this close is... weird)

I was in slightly better shape, though not by much: fight in the Pit tended to be on the short side, and they rarely required much running. → fights in the pit

Looking straight into the flash was a good way never to see anything again, and even through my closed pupils the explosion light was horribly painful. → explosion's light / explosion of light

there was not a speck of green on her skin, all of the flesh bared by her chain mail a shade or red nearly orange. → shade of red

Chapter 10: Menace

You can't get back to your games after we're done talking. → can
Getting out had been easy enough, which not that I took the time to think about it was rather surprising: he'd ordered a lockdown of the camp. → now that I took the time

I couldn't see her eyes from where I stood, but I could make out high aristocratic cheekbones and elegantly styled eyebrows. → styled

Black was smiling, the same always did when at his most dangerous. From the sudden wariness in the Soninke's body language, she seemed to be just as aware of that as I was. →
(First sentence is weird)

I shrugged in agreement – the taste was growing on me, though I doubted I'd ever drink it by the barrel the way so many Praesi did. → though I doubted

Chapter 11: Sucker Punch

the other one was made up of former members of the Thieves' Guild → Thieves' Guild

Whether the doubter was actually convinced or just cowed by the uncomfortably emotional display on the Swordsman's part was up in the air, but regardless he objected no further. → but regardless
"I'm guessing Chider's somewhere in this mess?" overhearing the sound of fighting out of sight as I asked the Soninke girl. →
(somethings missing there)

Chapter 12: Squire

I hacked away the shaft of the missile with a trembling hand, but actually taking it out would have to wait: I was pretty sure that kind of bleeding would kill me, after how much of Rashid had already gotten out of me. → how much Rashid

Faster than the eye could follow, I pushed him off the wall. He yelled something I couldn't make out and as he fell into the dark waters and I took a step back from the brink. → make out as he fell

Chapter 13: Order

Squire gave ground fluidly, trying to find an angle where his sword's longer reach would be able to come into play. → gave ground

That's the thing with practical sorts, Commander," Squire told her gently. "We cheat." → (quotation marks)

I could still hear the low voice of the Commander and the shriek of those arrows as they fell from above. → from above

Good," the warrior grunted. "You're awake." → (quotation marks)
Barely," I agreed. "How long was I out?" → (quotation marks)
It's been two days since your little stunt," she said. "You came
damned close to never waking up." → (quotation marks)
Should I sent a thank you note to the Legion healers, then?" →
(quotation marks)
You tore your body up way past what they can handle," →
(quotation marks)
You mean they bled me, right?" → (quotation marks)
Don't be obtuse, girl," she grunted. → (quotation marks)
Who were they?" I croaked out. "The people that died → (quotation
marks)
I'll talk to Scribe, then," I muttered, shivering. → (quotation
marks)
You can do that later," Captain grunted. → (quotation marks)
What does he need me for?" I asked Captain → (quotation marks)
Just needs you to be seen out and about," → (quotation marks)
That's still burning?" I asked. → (quotation marks)
They managed to cordon it off," → (quotation marks)
Let's go and get this over with," → (quotation marks)
Squire," he greeted me, → (quotation marks)
Black," I replied. → (quotation marks)
The restoration of order," → (quotation marks)
You can't do this," I said urgently. → (quotation marks)
And so were party to the assassination of an Imperial governess,"
→ (quotation marks)
You already knew who the members were," → (quotation marks)
They were tolerable, so long as they were harmless," → (quotation
marks)
This is butchery," → (quotation marks)
I am already hated in this city," → (quotation marks)
You bound my Name," → (quotation marks)
Your powerlessness is of your own doing," → (quotation marks,
changed font)
So you're punishing me by killing Callowans?" I snarled. →
(quotation marks)
I am hanging traitors who took up arms against the Tower," →
(quotation marks)
I will have no part in this," → (quotation marks)
I will have no part in this," → (quotation marks)
Stop." → (quotation marks)
Turn around." → (quotation marks)
Did you think this was a game, Catherine? → (quotation marks)
We leave with the noon bell," → (quotation marks)
(Boy, you did dislike opening quotation marks for this one,
didn't you?)

Chapter 14: Villain

If he'd been even a little more thorough, just a little less sure
my wound would kill me... I took a deep breath a steadied my hand.
→ and steadied
They only people they'd hated more were each other → The only

How can you justify working for these tyrants? the Lone Swordsman had asked. I finally had my answer. Justifications only matter to the just. → (I do love this line. It feels me with seething glee.)

Chapter 15: Company

Black had pushed our usual personal lesson earlier in the day, since the evening would likely be spent introducing me at the Imperial Court → to earlier

There was an old fort in the valley the Blackguards escorted me to, a leftover from the days where the Order of the White Hand had occasionally crusaded their way east to Ater itself. → days when

"We're up against First Company, and they get to be on defence too." "Ratface," the captain finished curtly. → (Bracket?)

Chapter 16: Game

I'd have to be swift and quiet if I wanted to make it without getting caught, just like when I'd used sneak out of the orphanage to go fight in the Pit. → when I used to sneak

I passed hand through my hair, only now noticing I'd been running around without a helmet this whole time. → passed a hand

"How many?" I asked, keeping her voice down. → my voice

Chapter 17: Set

You might have an axe to grind and that's your own business, but don't ever talk bad the Black Knight in front of a greenskin. → talk bad about the Black Knight / badmouth the Black Knight

"I was just asking," I replied quickly, awkwardly warding him off with a raised while still balancing his weight on my shoulder. → with a raised (?)

"Nilin's setting up the watches," me sergeant informed me. → my sergeant

Hakram was about to follow suit but I discreetly shook my head → discreetly

I still had a few questions to ask me sergeant. → my sergeant

The outer wall was made of stacked stones and about the height of a half a man, → height of half a man

"Lieutenant Callow, third line of Rat Company," I agreed as she raised my shield and steadied my footing. "And you'd be?" → as I raised

Chapter 18: Match

I frowned and readjusted her plans. → my plans

The greenskin sergeant cocked his head to the side and eyed me thoughtfully as he tried to puzzle out the meaning behind the corrected instructions. → his head

The noise of blade slapping against shields and cheers drowned out everything else for an instant, my own legionaries joining in without hesitation. → blades

The only clean victories are the one in stories, Catherine. → ones

sacrificing people under my command left an even worst taste in my mouth. → worse

Chapter 20: Rise

Black stepped forward and I followed, Captain a close behind us.
→ Captain close

"The necromancy keeping the heads alive goes back to the Declaration," Black mused. "No one's been able to reproduce it since, and not for lack of trying." → (Not a typo, but... as I understood it, the tower was razed at least once, and the magic couldn't be recreated, so how did this room retain its magic?) The usual theme of black marble had returned with a vengeance, but this once there was actually a bit of colour around → marble returned

Chapter 21: Fall

Smiling in that heartbreaking manner of hers, she cast a warmly fond look at the Court. → (warmly fond is weird. Repetitive)

Malicia lightly tread around us, forcing us to turn as the kneeling nobles rose to their feet. → treaded

She might as well have vanished into thin air, → thin air

There had been Black Knights of Duni blood before my teacher and a few Warlock. → teacher, and a few Warlocks.

I'd grown to know the person he presented himself as and even looked the monster he could be in the eye, → himself as

Chapter 22: All According To

On the bright side, she'd unlikely to hold a grudge," he mentioned. "She'll want to win this one too badly to focus on us: she'll go for victory, not payback. → she's unlikely

I'd tried to come up with something to trump the Hellhound and come up empty. → came

Chapter 23: Morok's Plan

Another three clans had been come over to their side in the aftermath of the last victory, bringing them up to a little under four thousand soldiers. → had come over (unless you meant the forced passive, like... "The king has been abdicated.")

Aisha had claimed one within hours of the melee was announced. → melee's announcement

"I have a question," I said. "It's a little personal, though, so feel free to tell me to bugger off if you want." → off if

"Enough," I Spoke, and they went still as statues. "This isn't the Highest Assembly, and you aren't Proceran princes. If I give an order it will damn well be obeyed." → (before you used bold text to indicate Speaking, here you used italics, which you also use for emphasis, memories, and thoughts-rendered-speechlike. This is a source of confusion.)

Chapter 24: Aisha's Plan

More importantly, the ogre tenth had a free path right into my mages. Aside from my sappers they by far my most vulnerable line.

→ they were by far

Hakram and the rest our line had come to stand behind me while I was distracted. → rest of our line

Kilian hadn't though to concentrate on a single target. → hadn't

Ahead of me Kilian's mages were holding off down enemy advance with a near-continuous stream of fireballs → (remove down)

Aisha's legionaries had done the same to another two lines and were getting started on a third. If Morok didn't pull out now, the Lizards he risked elimination by numbers. → (something's missing in last sentence)

His companu sounded the retreat, → company

Oh, fuck you Heiress. Seriously? → fuck you, Heiress.

Chapter 25: Snatcher's Plan

Too many places had been dug into for all of them to be covering a demolition charge, but there was way to tell which of them really were mined. → no way

I watched Ratface position his men just out of crossbow range and prepare his line as Hakram did the same with own with my forces. → (what?)

I would have stayed to watch longer, but Wolf Company was getting close and there was a limit to how any people I could take on even with my Name. → how many

"As you've no doubt noticed," he started, " the walls to my second ring of my fortifications are stone and dirt." → to the second ring

Chapter 26: Juniper's Plan

I was late already, thanks to Hatcher's failed assassination plot, but I shouldn't be a problem as long as – I tensed, waiting for the alarm to ring. → but it shouldn't

"Well," I said. "That's going to be a problem. → (quotation marks)

Chapter 27: Callow's Plan

"And tell them what?" I scoffed. "That I have no idea how to get us how of this mess?" → out of this

As for the sapper lieutenant's main minion, he'd been chewing on something through all the reports which I took mean he was just fine. → took to mean

Epilogue

It was a shame the man had declined to take her a pupil, and she truly regretted that she had come to be at cross-purposes with him. → take her as a pupil

What could you say, when the great swordswoman in Creation told you you weren't good enough to beat her old pupil? → greatest

The dark-haired smiled, rising to his feet and coming to stand by the window. → dark-haired man smiled

Bart

Did you check to see whether those had been called out in the comments already?

[The Warren Peace NFL Report](#)

This is a great comment, if your favorite thing is scrolling.

stevenneiman

"That was the problem with many of the [Trueblood's->Truebloods'] children." Again, plural possessive form of a noun

"It was a shame the man had declined to take her [a->as] pupil"

"She'd immediately [move->moved] on those and made examples of them, of course." Considering the next line, I assume this has already happened

"The purpose behind keeping the numbers of Foundling's legion at {only} two thousand legionaries [only]" I think it might be correct either way, but it reads rather awkwardly as-is.

"The dark-haired {man} smiled"

"But the moment southern Callow had risen in rebellion, it had stopped legally being Praesi territory. The roughly four thousand troops she'd hired in Mercantis would be able to operate there without consequence." This is a realism thing, not grammatical. Generally, nations tend to retain their claim on rebel-held land, to deny the legitimacy of the rebel claim. Just like Al Capone's headquarters is American soil, the rebelling cities of Southern Callow would still be Praesi territory subject to Praesi law.

If anyone is interested in helping (or just reading), there's a wiki now.

This page <http://abridged-guide-to-evil.wikia.com/wiki/Special:Insights/deadendpages> has a list of pages it currently needs for anyone who wants to work on it, and this page http://abridged-guide-to-evil.wikia.com/wiki/Abridged_Guide_to_Evil_Wikia is the main page.

Bart

Ok, that's kind of weird. Why would you call it abridged guide instead of practical guide?

stevenneiman

Some wikis are just named exactly after the mother canon, but not all. The Star Wars one, for example, is called Wookieepedia.

Bart

There is no practical guide wikia. It could have been picked up.

arancaytar

This sounds like an HPMOR reference, from that Pretending To Be Wise chapter.

[charl X](#)

Homor voldemort was a sort of evil for teh lulz villian just like the previous dread emperors and empresses

They are obviously written as a way to point out and gently make fun of evil for fun villians

Even if voldemort tries to be a pragmatic villian harry pointed out that he lost on that fateful halloween because he didnt think being nice could work as a solution (you know in that whole end bit where they are talking) so hes not really a pragmatic villian hes a evil for fun villian

[charl X](#)

Gods damned autocorrect HPMOR is not a typo damnit

[.](#)

Funny the Heiress would be so ambitious and thought so highly of herself when she ran away at the sight of the Squire, Cowed by the Black Knight, heck she wasn't even able to outsmart him either

[ardetor](#)

Is Akua's surname meant to be Cisse? In Book II her surname is stated as Sahelian. Sounds like the author decided to change it during the break between books, but forgot to change the instance here.

linnilalartyr

Thanks for all those chapters!!

I super like this epilogue, it plan and indicate what to come in book two.

I like the heiress who take the side oppose to Cat. It make the story look more exciting. Like how she plan to stab Cat's back in every turn of event~~~~

[charl X](#)

Black really shouldnt have broken his rule.....dont ever tempt marrative fate, never say just as planned hes daring too much there

[intermediarywebserial](#)

"What say you, Empress of Praes?

Here you lie upon the blood-soaked ruins of your dominion,

surrounded by the corpses of the legions that once swarmed over the world. Hundreds of thousands dead for the sake of your wretched ambition, your mad design to bring to heel the kingdoms of man. In all the history of Creation no one woman has been so wicked as you, and I will have my answer. Why, o Empress of Ruins?"

"...the Aristocrats."

ShadowRain

Why not??? I find this tho
So.ething like Joker, pure

sswanlake

Some edits:

when the great swordswoman in Creation told you -> when the
greatest swordswoman in Creation told you

The dark-haired smiled, rising -> The dark-haired *man* smiled,
rising

Ninith settler

All according to keikaku

Reader

I get a strong Malazan meets Enders game feel from the entire War College thing, and the sappers seem very... fiddler crossed with hedge. This is an excellent story, well done.

Seth Enigma

Just finished Book 1. Obviously. Great story so far. I can see why you have a number 1 spot. Your world building is incredible. There's a lot of spelling, grammar, and punctuation errors (an entire chapter had missing quotation marks in front of every bit of dialogue) and in another it seemed as if you were writing in third person in occasion by accident. There are also missing words and some terribly phrased sentence structures. Overall, though, still pretty great. I'm looking forward to starting book 2.

Werekobold Miner

I have finished the first part and the story is magnificent!

I'm curious about how several of the names of people or place are pronounced. I like to let the character say their dialogue in my mind when I read the conversation. When I'm not sure how they

would say a word, I guess the pronunciation and put it there as a place-holder.

So these are the words and how I guess they would sound:

Ater – ah-Tehr?

Daoine – as “Dane”, or Day-nya?

Deoraithe – joree?

Laure – as “lore”?

Miezan – mi-Yeh-zaan?

Praes – as preeze, praise, praaze, prazz, or... pra’es?

Soninke – I guess the “e” is as in “latte”?

Strege – streej or streh-geh?

I’d be very happy if you, The Author of this fantastic Story and the Creator of the land and sea of Calernia, give the official pronunciation of these words.^_^

Max Scherer

yeah i dont know if i stick till the end. Book 1 was great and i like where it is heading, but it seems that Heiress is one of the main antagonists(because they are all villains in a sense) and i just hat her kind of character. The plot, the schemes and anything what she is doing just feels wrong. I will continue, because i have to read more, but if Catherine doesnt get a victory over her in the next two books and just plays in her Palms, my frustration will probably be higher than my interest in reading further.(I dont mean Victory in battle, but to actually deny one of her plans, that gets Heiress really pissed)... Ugh i just dont like too much political play, with such an straightforward MC, Catherine should just kill her >.>

NerfGlaistigUaine

I know it’s been forever, but is the epigraph a reference to Hellsing Abridged?

Rraune

“Akua would already have her had assassinated.”

have had her

Lynn

god, i absolutely despise the lone swordsman. he has nearly all of the traits that i hate in a person. hypocrisy, unjust self righteousness, self importance, not to mention he’s a racist. i can’t wait for catherine to take him down. i wonder if killing a hero will do something to her name?
